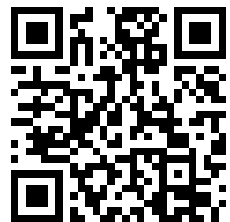

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

GoogleTM books

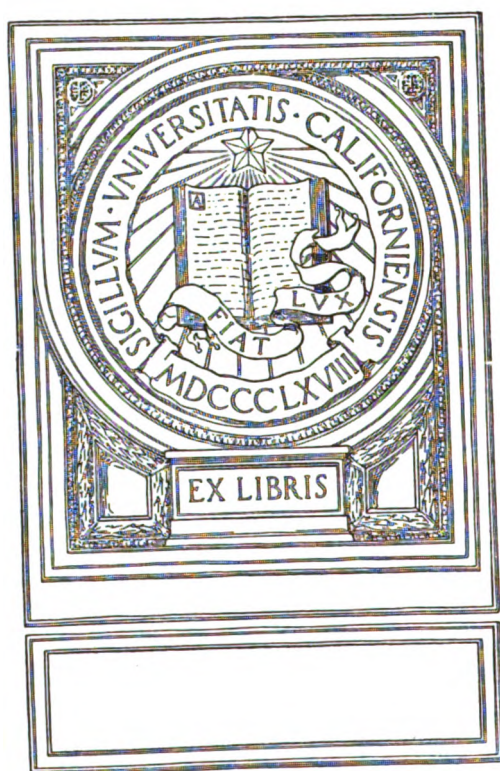
<https://books.google.com>



THE CAVALRY JOURNAL



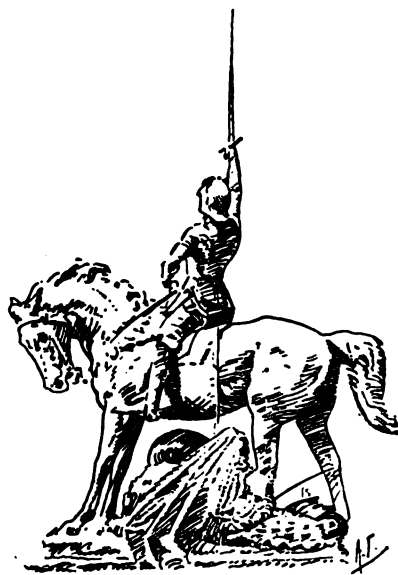
LONDON
THE ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.1



THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXV

JANUARY to OCTOBER, 1935



Published at

THE ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.1

LONDON

1935

WITH THE SANCTION OF THE ARMY COUNCIL.

UNDER THE DIRECTION OF

Field-Marshal The VISCOUNT ALLENBY, G.C.B., etc. (Colonel Life Guards and 16th/5th Lancers).
Lieut.-General The Lord BADEN-POWELL, G.C.M.G., G.C.V.O., K.C.B., D.C.L., LL.D. (Colonel, 13th/18th Hussars).
Field-Marshal Sir P. W. CHETWODE, Bt., G.C.B., G.C.S.I., K.C.M.G., D.S.O., India (Colonel, Royal Scots Greys and 8th K.G.O. Light Cavalry).
General Sir GEORGE DE S. BARROW, G.C.B., K.C.M.G. (Colonel, 14th/20th Hussars and 14th P.W.O. Scinde Horse).
Lieut.-General Sir A. E. W. HARMAN, K.C.B., D.S.O. (Colonel, Queen's Bays).
Brigadier E. F. NORTON, D.S.O., M.C. (Royal Artillery).

Ex Officio :—

Major-General J. BLAKISTON-HOUSTON, D.S.O., Inspector General of Cavalry.
Major-General G. F. H. BROOKE, D.S.O., M.C., Major-General Cavalry, India.
Brigadier F. W. BULLOCK-MARSHAM, D.S.O., M.C., A.D.C., Commander 1st Cavalry Brigade.
Brigadier F. B. HURNDALL, M.C., A.D.C., Commander 2nd Cavalry Brigade.
Brigadier A. L. I. FRIEND, O.B.E., M.C., Commander Cavalry Brigade, Egypt.
Colonel H. L. JONES, D.S.O., Commander 5th Cavalry Brigade.
Colonel S. HOWES, D.S.O., M.C., Commander 6th Cavalry Brigade.

HONORARY EDITORS AND SUB-EDITORS.

Managing Editor :

Major-General T. T. PITMAN, C.B., C.M.G. (Colonel, 11th Hussars).

Editor :

Lieut.-Colonel Z. G. BURMESTER, O.B.E.

Sub-Editors :

Royal Horse and Royal Field Artillery.—Brigadier J. H. GIBBON, D.S.O.
Yeomanry.—Lieut.-Colonel T. PRESTON, M.C., T.D., Yorkshire Hussars.
Royal Corps of Signals.—Colonel R. CHENEVIX-TRENCH, O.B.E., M.C., Royal Corps of Signals, H.Q. Eastern Command.
Canada.—Lieut.-Colonel R. S. TIMMIS, D.S.O., Royal Canadian Dragoons.
New Zealand.—Colonel C. G. POWLES, C.M.G., D.S.O., A.D.C., N.Z. Staff Corps, Wellington.
South Africa.—Captain R. D. S. GWATKIN, M.B.E., South African Field Artillery.
Australia.—Major H. C. H. ROBERTSON, D.S.O., Australian Staff Corps.

Secretary and Treasurer :

Colonel E. L. HUGHES, D.S.O., O.B.E.

Published at

THE ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.1.

Sole Contractors for Advertisements :

Messrs. GALE & POLDEN, 2, Amen Corner, London, E.C.4.

Printers :

J. J. KELIHER & Co., LTD., Marshalsea Press, Southwark, S.E.1.

INDEX

- Aeroplanes *versus* Cavalry (*Diagrams*). By Major S. H. Persse, 15th Lancers, I.A., 263.
- Alphabet of the Horse. By Major-General Sir John Moore, K.C.M.G., C.B., F.R.C.V.S., 136.
- Anthony Trollope's Essays on Hunting. By Captain R. L. Agnew, 97.
- Australian Light Horse, The 10th: Attack at Magdhaba, 23rd December, 1916 (*Map*). By Major H. C. H. Robertson, D.S.O., Australian Staff Corps, 228
- Annual General Meeting, 1.
- Arab Horse of Palestine, The (*Illustrated*). By M. S. O'Rorke, Palestine Police, 118
- B.C. Legendaries, 6.—Eustace Trenchant, Armes Blanches. By Siegfried P., 609
- Calls of the Tarns, The (*Illustrated*). By Richard Clapham, 566
- Cavalry Battle Honours. By C. T. Atkinson and Major H. FitzM. Stacke, M.C., 80
- Cavalry in France, 1918 (*Maps*). By Lieut.-Colonel T. Preston, M.C., T.D., Yorkshire Hussars, 7, 165, 332, 489
- Cavalry Head-dresses, Modern (*Illustrated*). By Lieut.-Colonel E. J. N., Ryan, T.D., 126-254.
- Cavalry, New South Wales (*Illustrated*). By Captain L. Richardson, 198
- Cavalry Raid, General Manontow's (*Map*). By Captain Hinterhoff, Polish Army, 209.
- Cavalry Raids, Two of the Great War (*Map*). By Major E. W. Sheppard, O.B.E., M.C., 395, 531
- Cavalry, Reflections of the use of Modern. By Lieut.-Colonel B. G. Baker, D.S.O., 351.
- City and Country of Hanover in the History of German Cavalry, The (*Illustrated*), 101.
- Correspondence, 439.
- Damascus, The Capture of, 1918, 444.
- Desert Stratagems. By H. C. Maydon, 358.

Editorial, 1, 161, 329.

Famous Highwaymen's Famous Steeds, 581

Fell Foxhounds (*Illustrated*). By *Richard Clapham*, 223.

Gaillard Lancers. By *Tiskat*, 28.

German Cavalry on the Marne (*Illustrated*). By *Lieut.-Colonel A. H. Burne*, *D.S.O.*, 439

Gudar-Logue (*Illustrated*). By *Colonel F. A. Hamilton*, late 3rd Cavalry, *I.A.*, 387.

Horse in Chemical Warfare, The (*Illustrated*). By *Captain H. Barrowcliff Ellis*, *M.M.* 15th Lancers, *I.A.*, 615

Hounds, Gentlemen Please, 138

Indian Cavalry of To-day. By *Major-General E. D. Giles*, *C.B.*, *C.M.G.*, *D.S.O.*, 192.

Lake and Victory, Part III, Monson's Retreat. By *Colonel E. B. Maunsell*, late 14th P.W.O. Scinde Horse, *I.A.*, 591

Magazines :

Home and Dominion, 140, 304, 453, 629.

Foreign, 142, 307, 458, 633.

Musical Relics of British Regiments (*Illustrated*). By *J. Paine*, 575

Napoleon, A Doubt About, 586

Notes, 622

Obituary, 450, 627.

One Hundred and Forty-one Years Ago. By *K. R. W.*, 431.

Operations against the Nuba Gebels, October, 1917, to January, 1918 (*Illustrated and Maps*). By *Major A. J. R. Lamb*, *D.S.O.*, late Queen's Bays, 290, 418, 542

Over the Port, 433.

Polo Pony Breeding. By *Lieut.-Colonel Sidney G. Goldschmidt*, 184

Publications, Recent, 148, 312, 464, 638.

Reading, The Use of the Sun in Map. By *Lieut.-Colonel B. O. Hutchinson*, 10th Royal Hussars, 571

Scots Greys First Colonel, The. By *Percy Cross Standing*, 248.

Shooting Trip, A first in East Africa (Tanganyika Territory). By *Major L. P. Payne-Gallwey*, *O.B.E.*, *M.C.*, 7th Hussars, 72.

Shooting Trip to Lake Rukwa. By *Major L. F. Payne-Gallwey*, *O.B.E.*, *M.C.*, 7th Hussars, 405.

INDEX

v

- Sport, The cream of. By *R. K. M. Battye*, 72.
Sporting News, 160, 318, 478.
Spy Story, A, 442.
Stud, Comprising the whole of his. By *Lieut.-Colonel S. G. Goldschmidt*, 560
Stewarding. By *Lieut.-Colonel Sidney G. Goldschmidt*, 123.

Tactical Employment of Light Tanks with Army in India. By *Major M. S. Bendle*, Hodson Horse, I.A., 46.
Trip to Australia on Three Months' Leave from India, A. By *Captain O. L. Boord*, 10th Royal Hussars, 108.

Yeomanry at Gaza (*Map*). By *Major Oskar Teichman*, D.S.O., M.C., T.D., M.O., Queen's Worcestershire Hussars, 509
Yeomanry at Rafa (*Map*). By *Major Oskar Teichman*, D.S.O., M.C., T.D., M.O., Queen's Worcestershire Hussars, 369.

AUTHORS

- Agnew, Captain R. L.* : Anthony Trollope's Essays on Hunting, 97.
Atkinson, C. T. : Cavalry Battle Honours (*Illustrated*), 80.

Baker, Colonel B. G., D.S.O., Reflections on the use of Modern Cavalry, 351.
Battye, R. K. M. : The Cream of Sport, 73.
Bendle, Major M. S., Hodson Horse, I.A. : Tactical Employment of Light Tanks with the Army in India, 46.
Boord, Captain O. L., 10th Royal Hussars : A Trip to Australia on Three Months' Leave from India, 108.

Clapham, Richard :
Fell Foxhounds (*Illustrated*), 223.
The Call of the Tarns (*Illustrated*), 566

Ellis, Captain H. Barrowcliff, M.M., 15th Lancers, I.A. : The Horse in Chemical Warfare (*Illustrated*), 615

Giles, Major-General E. D., C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O. : The Indian Cavalry of To-day, 192.
Goldschmidt, Lieut.-Colonel Sidney G. :
Stewarding, 123.
Polo Pony Breeding, 187.
Comprising the whole of his Stud, 560

Hamilton, Colonel F. A., late 3rd Cavalry, I.A. : Gudar-Logue (*Illustrated*), 387.
Hinterhoff, Captain, Polish Army : General Manontow's Cavalry Raid (*Map*), 209.

Hutchinson, Lieut-Colonel B. O., 10th Royal Hussars : The Use of the Sun in Map Reading, 571

K. R. W. : One Hundred and Forty-one Years Ago, 431.

Lamb, Major A. J. R., D.S.O., late Queen's Bays : Operations against the Nuba-Gebels, October, 1917, to December, 1918 (*Illustrated and Maps*), 290, 418, 542

Maunsell, Colonel E. B., late 14th P.W.O., Scinde Horse, I.A. : Lake and Victory, Part III, Monson's Retreat, 591

Maydon, H. C. : Desert Stratagems, 358.

Moore, Major-General Sir John, K.C.M.G., C.B., F.R.C.V.S. : The Alphabet of the Horse, 136.

O'Rorke, M. S., the Palestine Police : The Arab Horse in Palestine (*Illustrated*), 118.

Paine, J. : Musical Relics of British Regiments (*Illustrated*), 575

Payne-Gallwey, Major L. P., O.B.E., M.C., 7th Hussars :
A First Shooting Trip to East Africa (Tanganyika Territory), 234.
A Shooting Trip to Lake Rukwa, 405.

Persse, Major S. H., 15th Lancers, I.A. : Aeroplanes *versus* Cavalry (*Diagrams*), 263.

Preston, Lieut.-Colonel T., M.C., T.D., Yorkshire Hussars : Cavalry in France, 1918 (*Maps*), 7, 165, 332, 489

Richardson, Captain L., Australian Staff Corps : New South Wales Cavalry (*Illustrated*), 198.

Robertson, Major H. C. H., D.S.O., Australian Staff Corps : The 10th Australian Light Horse attack at Maghaba, 23rd December, 1916 (*Map*), 228.

Sheppard, Major E. W., O.B.E., M.C. : Two Cavalry Raids in the Great War (*Maps*), 395, 531

Ryan, Lieut.-Colonel J. E. N., T.D. : Modern Cavalry Head-dresses (*Illustrated*), 126, 254.

Siegfried, P. : 6.—Eustace Trenchant, Armes Blanches, 609

Stacke, Major H. FitzM., M.C. : Cavalry Battle Honours (*Illustrated*), 80.

Standing, Percy Cross : The Scots Greys First Colonel, 248.

Teichman, Major Oskar, D.S.O., M.C., T.D., late M.O., Queen's Own Worcestershire Yeomanry :

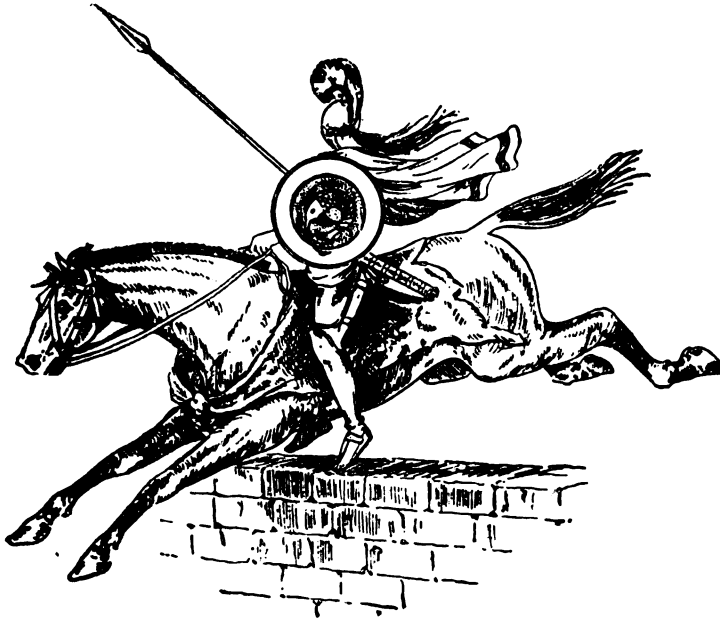
The Yeomanry at Rafa, 9th January, 1917 (*Map*), 369

The Yeomanry at Gaza, 26th March, 1917 (*Map*), 509

Tiskat : Gaillard Lancers, 28.

ILLUSTRATIONS

| | | |
|---|-------------------------|-----|
| The 7th Queen's Own Light Dragoons, 1805 | <i>facing page</i> | 1 |
| Charge of the 1st Heavy Dragoon Regiment at Garzia Hernandez .. | | 104 |
| Charge of the 1st Dragoon Regiment against the 76th French Infantry, at Garzia Hernandez | | 105 |
| Sergeant-Major Kielpennig, 1st Heavy Dragoons, at Venta kel Pozo .. | | 105 |
| The Arab Horse in Palestine | | 120 |
| Modern Cavalry Head-dresses | 126, 127, 256, 257 | |
| Cavalry Memorial in Hyde Park | | 161 |
| Officer. New South Wales Lancers. (Full Dress, 1906) | | 198 |
| Drummer. New South Wales Lancers' Band, 1904 | | 204 |
| Trooper. New South Wales Mounted Rifles, 1897 | | 204 |
| New South Wales Mounted Rifles (Jubilee Contingent, 1897) | | 204 |
| Trooper. Australian Light Horse. (Marching Order, 1935) | | 204 |
| Fell Foxhounds | | 224 |
| Operations against the Nuba Gebels | 294, 295, 418, 424, 546 | |
| Major Charles Phillip Anslie, 4th Queen's Own Dragoons, 1808.. .. | | 329 |
| The German Cavalry on the Marne | | 440 |
| A General Officer of Marlborough's day | | 489 |
| The Call of the Tarns | | 568 |
| Silver Kettle Drums. 6th Dragoon Guards (Carabiniers) | | 576 |





Printed by J. J. KELLY & Co., LTD., Marshalsea Press, Southwark, S.E. 1.

2000



Robert Dighton, Junr., del. 1805

Copyright of H.M. The King

THE 7th OR QUEEN'S OWN LIGHT DRAGOONS, 1805

FROM THE ORIGINAL DRAWING AT WINDSOR CASTLE
BY GRACIOUS PERMISSION OF HIS MAJESTY THE KING

This frontispiece is the reproduction of a water-colour drawing by Dighton, one of a set presented to the Royal Collection at Windsor Castle by Mr. Augustus Walker.

This particular drawing is signed and dated "Robert Dighton, Junius del. April. 1805", and described as "The 7th or 8th of Own Light Dragoons". It is very interesting as showing apparently a sort of field-dress kit of an Officer of the Regiment in the dress jacket but without the buff and with the buff cap substituted for the buff.

The sabretache and shabraque have the Queen's cypher, G.R. (reversed) under the crown, instead of the King's G.R. The Cap is of the kind known as a "Hugobonnet", in Germany, and a "militon", in France, but for which no definite designation was adopted in this country. The buff and the lace on the horse furniture are gold, although the uniform is otherwise a silver-laced one. The scimitar blade of the sabre should also be noticed.

THE frontispiece is the reproduction of a water-colour drawing by Dighton, one of a set presented to the Royal Collection at Windsor Castle, by Mr. Augustus Walker.

This particular drawing is signed and dated, "Robert Dighton, Junr., del, April, 1805." and described as "The 7th or Queen's Own Light Dragoons." It is very interesting as showing apparently a sort of field-day kit of an Officer of the Regiment in the dress jacket but without the pelisse and with the undress cap substituted for the busby.

The sabretache and shabraque have the Queen's cypher, C.R. (reversed) under the crown, instead of the King's G.R. The Cap is of the kind known as a "flugelmutze" in Germany, and a "mirliton" in France, but for which no definite designation was adopted in this country. The belts and the lace on the horse furniture are gold, although the uniform is otherwise a silvered laced one, The scimitar blade of the sabre should also be noticed.

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

JANUARY, 1935

EDITORIAL

MINUTES of the ANNUAL GENERAL MEETING of the CAVALRY JOURNAL COMMITTEE, held in the Council Room of the Royal United Service Institution, Whitehall, at 3 p.m. on 14th November, 1934.

Present:—Field-Marshal The Viscount Allenby, G.C.B., G.C.M.G., G.C.V.O., D.C.L., LL.D. (in the Chair); General Sir George de S. Barrow, G.C.B., K.C.M.G.; Lieut.-General Sir A. E. W. Harman, K.C.B., D.S.O.; Major-General T. T. Pitman, C.B., C.M.G.; Brigadier E. F. Norton, D.S.O., M.C.; Colonel R. Chenevix-Trench, O.B.E., M.C.; Lieut.-Colonel T. Preston, M.C., T.D.; Major J. A. Paton.

1. The Minutes of the last Meeting were read and signed.
2. The Statement of Accounts for the year was examined and passed. The Account showed a credit balance of £722 13s. 10d., an increase of £14 13s. 10d., as against a loss of £169 7s. 1d. for the previous year. This satisfactory result has been entirely due to a reduction of £175 in the cost of printing the JOURNAL.
3. In an effort to increase membership it was decided that all Yeomanry Regiments should be circularised.
4. The Committee decided that in the year 1935 a coloured frontispiece should be supplied with the January and July numbers. It was hoped that the partial restoration of this popular feature of the JOURNAL would attract sufficient additional subscribers to justify the expenditure.
5. The new printing and advertising contracts were approved.

6. It was proposed by Major-General Pitman, seconded by Major Paton, and carried unanimously, that the Inspector of Cavalry at Home, Major-General Cavalry in India, and Commanders of Cavalry Brigades at Home and in Egypt, be invited to become *ex-officio* members of the Committee.

7. It was proposed by Colonel Preston that each regular regiment be asked to submit one article a year for publication in the JOURNAL. After discussion, it was decided that this suggestion should be put up to Cavalry Brigade Commanders for their consideration.

8. The Committee passed a vote of thanks to the voluntary contributors of articles to the JOURNAL during the past year :—

Lieut.-General The Lord Baden-Powell, G.C.M.G.,

G.C.V.O., K.C.B., etc.

Major-General E. D. Giles, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., Major-General Cavalry, India.

Colonel E. B. Maunsell, late 14th P.W.O. Scinde Horse.

Lieut.-Colonel O. J. F. Fooks, 14th/20th Hussars.

Lieut.-Colonel H. G. Eady, M.C., Royal Engineers.

Lieut.-Colonel R. S. Timmis, D.S.O., Royal Canadian Dragoons.

Major F. Thornton, 16th/5th Lancers.

Major H. W. Hall, M.C., late Queen's Bays.

Major H. C. H. Robertson, D.S.O., Australian Staff Corps.

Major G. S. Patton, 3rd Cavalry, United States Army.

Commander T. Atwood, Royal Navy.

Captain E. W. Sheppard, O.B.E., M.C., Royal Tank Corps.

R. G. B. Spicer, M.C., Inspector-General, Palestine Police. The British Legion.

Central Press Photos, Ltd.

Editor, *Militär Wochenblatt*.

9. A vote of thanks to Field-Marshal The Viscount Allenby for having kindly undertaken to preside at the Meeting was proposed by General Sir George Barrow, seconded by Lieut.-General Sir A. Harman, and carried unanimously.

* * * *

The following appointment has been announced :—Colonel J. F. H. Brooke, D.S.O., M.C., A.D.C., to be Major-General, Cavalry, India, with effect from 1st April, 1935.

The following moves of regiments will take place during the trooping season, 1935–36 :—

| <i>Unit</i> | <i>From</i> | <i>To</i> |
|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Life Guards | Hyde Park | Windsor |
| Royal Horse Guards | Windsor | Hyde Park |
| 1st King's Dragoon Guards | Egypt | India |
| 3rd Carabiniers | Aldershot | Hounslow |
| 4th/7th Dragoon Guards | Tidworth | Edinburgh |
| The Royal Dragoons | India | Shorncliffe |
| The Scots Greys | Edinburgh | Aldershot |
| 7th Hussars | Hounslow | Egypt |

* * * *

His Majesty the King has been pleased to approve of the following alliances :—

4th Light Horse Regiment (Corangamite Light Horse), Australian Military Forces, to the 4th/7th Dragoon Guards.

10th Light Horse Regiment (West Australian Mounted Infantry), Australian Military Forces, to the 10th Royal Hussars (Prince of Wales's Own).

* * * *

The King's Medal with Clasp "1933" for the champion shot of the military forces in India has been won by Sergeant W. H. Bayes, 13th/18th Hussars.

* * * *

This year the following regiments will complete 250 years' service on the British Army roster, having been raised at the time of the Monmouth rebellion :—

1st King's Dragoon Guards; The Queen's Bays; 3rd Carabiniers; 4th/7th Dragoon Guards; 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards; 3rd The King's Own Hussars; 4th The Queen's Own Hussars.

* * * *

On 22nd September, 1934, Major-General H. P. Leader, C.B., was drowned in a yachting accident at Instow, at the age of 69.

He was gazetted in 1885 to the Suffolk Regiment and transferred in 1894 to the Carabiniers, and served with the Regiment during the South African War under General French in the Colesberg and in relief of Kimberley operations. In December, 1901, he commanded the 1st Scottish Horse, which he led till the end of the War.

He became Commanding Officer of the Carabiniers in 1905, and after his period of command he was A.A.G. and later G.S.O.I. to the Rawalpindi Division. In 1911 he was given command of the Sialkot Brigade.

After the outbreak of the Great War he brought his brigade to France, and in 1915 was appointed to command the 1st Indian Cavalry Division. Then, in December, 1916, he returned to India as I.G. Cavalry, and in 1919 he commanded the Baluchistan Cavalry Force during the Afghan War, retiring from the Army in 1920.

He was exceptionally gallant and cool, and his personality and loyalty to those both above and below him endeared him to all who knew him.

* * * *

The 1935 International Horse Show will be held at Olympia from Thursday, 20th June, to Saturday, 29th June, both dates inclusive.

* * * *

The Editor from time to time receives books for review. He would be glad to know the names of any officers who are prepared to review these books. Officers should mention the particular subject they are interested in, and the Editor will, when a particular book on their subject is received, send it to them. No payment is given but the reviewer can keep the book.

* * * *

The undermentioned have become subscribers for 1935 :—

Brigadier E. F. Norton, D.S.O., M.C., Royal Artillery.

Lieut.-Colonel J. E. N. Ryan, T.D., R.A.M.C. (T.A.).

Captain C. H. Bushell, The Queen's Bays.

Captain E. W. Brook, late 20th Hussars.

Captain R. Booth Scott, The Duke of Wellington's Regiment.

Captain C. E. Dalton, Editor, *The Antelope* (Royal Warwickshire Regiment).

Lieutenant F. D. Jameson, 3rd Carabiniers.

2nd Lieutenant G. F. Cordy-Simpson, 3rd Carabiniers.

2nd Lieutenant The Marquis of Kildare, 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards.

2nd Lieutenant A. A. K. Rugge-Price, 13th/18th Hussars.

2nd Lieutenant The Hon. P. J. M. Rous, 16th/5th Lancers.

Lieutenant John Wickey, M.M., Fort Garry Horse.

Corporals' Mess, Lord Strathcona's Horse.

* * * *

We have been asked to publish the following :—

**KING EDWARD VII. CONVALESCENT HOME FOR OFFICERS
AT OSBORNE**

Osborne House, East Cowes, Isle of Wight, formerly the Island home of Her Majesty the late Queen Victoria, was given to the Nation by H.M. King Edward VII as a Convalescent Home for Officers.

The House, which is situated on the Solent in an exceptionally beautiful Park of 450 acres, was duly converted into a most delightful and comfortable Convalescent Home for the reception of CONVALESCENT OFFICERS, both serving and retired, of the ROYAL NAVY, ROYAL MARINES, ARMY, ROYAL AIR FORCE, ROYAL INDIAN NAVY and INDIAN ARMY ; CADETS of the aforementioned Services, and, under certain conditions, both serving and retired CIVIL SERVANTS who, owing to the nature of their duties, have to serve abroad.

A staff of fully qualified nursing sisters, masseurs, etc., is employed, and special facilities are available for dietary, massage and electrical and light treatment. Medical attendance is free, but in case of special nursing or other special

measures or special drugs, a charge is made to cover the cost.

Massage, Diathermy, Ionisation, Radiant Heat, Ultra-Violet Rays and all electro-therapeutical treatments are provided at a charge normally of 2/6 per week.

The organisation of the Home, however, is such as to eliminate, as far as practicable, the atmosphere of Service discipline, and it combines all the advantages of a first-class Convalescent Home with those of a Country Club for those patients who, in the later stages of convalescence, are able to take full advantage of the recreational facilities provided.

Osborne has its own private Golf Links within the grounds, about three minutes' walk of the House and the Club, which is second to none in the Island, and has its own resident professional. There are also hard and grass tennis courts, a croquet lawn, bowling green, badminton court, miniature rifle range and also a private bathing beach on the Estate. During the season the 4½-ton sloop "Osborne" is available daily for yachtsmen, and during the winter months the Isle of Wight Foxhounds meet four days a week and the foot beagles on two days. Officers may hunt with the latter pack free of charge.

Frequent entertainments, theatricals and dances, are held throughout the year in the Recreation Room, which is provided with a piano, radio-gramophone and cinema. A Silence Room is provided for those who desire quietude.

Osborne also has its own motor car, which conveys patients free of charge to and from the railway station. The car is available for long and short runs at a small charge. Garage accommodation is available for patients bringing their own cars.

THE CHARGES PAYABLE are very reasonable, and are as follows :—

- | | |
|---|--------------|
| (a) Cadets and certain subordinate Officers | |
| and Officers on half-pay | 4/6 per day |
| (b) All other Officers | 6/- per day |
| (c) Civil Servants | 10/- per day |

For further particulars and Booklet apply to the House Governor, Osborne House, East Cowes, Isle of Wight. Telegraphic Address: "Convalescent, Cowes." Telephone No.: Cowes 251.

THE CAVALRY IN FRANCE, AUGUST-NOVEMBER, 1918

By **LIEUTENANT-COLONEL T. PRESTON, M.C., T.D.,**
Yorkshire Hussars.

PART IV.

THE BREAK-UP OF THE 2ND CAVALRY DIVISION.

On 4th September the Cavalry Corps commander was ^{4th Sept.} summoned to G.H.Q. and saw the Commander-in-Chief on that day and the next. No written record of their conversation appears to have been preserved, but Sir Douglas Haig evidently told Sir Charles Kavanagh that one of the three cavalry divisions would have to be split up and its brigades allotted to different armies. The 2nd Cavalry Division was selected, and in the afternoon of 5th September it received orders to send the 3rd, 4th and 5th Cavalry Brigades to the First, Third and Fourth ^{5th Sept.} Armies respectively. Although during the remaining two months of the War these brigades occasionally worked as complete formations, they were mostly divided up by regiments among different corps, who in turn allotted squadrons to divisions for local reconnaissance duties. In many cases even the squadrons were split up and their troops lent to infantry brigades. The 2nd Cavalry Division was, in fact, broken up to replace the corps mounted troops which, under orders from home, had been done away with the previous year.

* * * *

To understand how this came about, we must recall that at the beginning of the War each infantry division had its own cavalry squadron* for purposes of local protection and recon-

* In the original B.E.F. the first six divisions each had a squadron of the 15th or 19th Hussars, which were replaced by yeomanry in April, 1915. All other divisions (except Indian, Canadian and Australian) had yeomanry squadrons from the outset, both in France and other theatres. The 7th and 8th Divisions for a short time had complete regiments, namely the Northumberland Hussars and Northamptonshire Yeomanry respectively. The Dominion and Indian divisions had squadrons of light horse and Indian cavalry.

naissance. These divisional squadrons performed excellent service in their proper rôle until trench warfare set in on the Western Front, when they were relegated to odd jobs, such as finding working parties in the line and orderlies and police behind it.

In May, 1916, G.H.Q. sent out a letter, from which the following is an extract:—

“In consequence of the growth of the Army and the development of the Corps organization, much of the independence of action and movement formerly belonging to the Division has passed to the Corps. It has been found necessary, therefore, to reconsider the organization and distribution of the mounted troops hitherto allotted to Divisions.

The allotment of these troops was originally made with a view to providing the Divisional Commander with a small mobile force under his immediate control for reconnaissance, protective and escort duties; and on the assumption (originally correct) that the Division would be moving either independently, or with one or more roads allotted to its exclusive use.

These conditions are unlikely to recur; any future movement will be by Corps, marching and fighting in depth on a comparatively narrow front. The mounted troops belonging to the Corps must, therefore, be assembled under the direct control of the Corps Commander, and organized as Corps units.

The Commander-in-Chief has accordingly decided:—

(a) To convert the squadrons of Divisional Cavalry into Corps Cavalry Regiments . . . one regiment being allotted to each Corps.”

This arrangement of Corps cavalry regiments continued until the summer of 1917, in which year various influential people in England began to press for drastic reductions in the strength of the cavalry in France. It was urged firstly, that the nature of the fighting was such as would prevent cavalry ever being used; secondly, that the men now serving in the cavalry were

badly needed for infantry and other arms ; and thirdly, that the sea transport of remounts and forage took up too much of our shipping resources, at that time strained to the utmost by submarine attacks.*

Accordingly, in the latter half of 1917, nearly all† the Corps cavalry units were either converted into cyclists or used as infantry reinforcements.

Sir Douglas Haig had never altered his opinion as to cavalry on the Western Front. He held, and rightly, that mounted troops would be needed as much at the end of the campaign as they had been at the beginning ; that if that were so, it would be difficult to re-create so highly trained an arm, once it had been disbanded ; and that even during the long period of trench warfare the cavalry formed a valuable mobile reserve. On 7th January, 1918, the Commander-in-Chief told the War Cabinet, with sure insight, that the mounted arm would be of great service in the year 1918, both for defensive and offensive purposes ; but in spite of this, the Government was contemplating still further reductions in the cavalry. Horses had to be fed ; to feed horses ships must be used ; more ships would shortly be needed to bring the American troops across the Atlantic ; and the German submarines were by no means yet completely conquered. It was therefore decided to reduce the Cavalry Corps from five divisions to three, and the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions left France early in March, 1918.‡ We know what then happened. The enemy launched his tremendous offensive on 21st March : every cavalry unit was sorely needed and heavily engaged, and the Germans would almost certainly have won the War but for the fact that we had three cavalry divisions while they had none.

* Actually, forage did take up more room on ships than any other item of supplies. During the whole war nearly 5½ million tons of forage were shipped to France—more than the tonnage of ammunition—and only three-quarter of a million tons of petrol. In Palestine it took four times as much tonnage to feed the animals as to feed the troops themselves.

† A few Corps retained their mounted troops : for instance, the Australian and Canadian Corps each had a regiment of Light Horse, and the XI Corps had King Edward's Horse. The III Corps had the Northumberland Hussars until 19th March, 1918, when they became cyclists, but one squadron was remounted on horses a week later, and the other two in the summer of 1918. This regiment went to the XIII Corps on 1st October, 1918. The XIV Corps kept the Northamptonshire Yeomanry, who did good service in Italy.

‡ The re-organization of the Cavalry Corps is dealt with in detail in the "Cavalry Journal" for April, 1932, and the fighting in March-April, 1918, is described in that and the following numbers.

Except for re-mounting one Yeomanry regiment, however, nothing more was done to increase the cavalry in France, although early in September, 1918, the C.-in-C. again asked the War Office to reinforce him in mounted troops. Whether this would have been practicable, and what effect it would have had on the final operations, will be discussed in a later article ; it is enough now to state that during the last two months of the War Sir Douglas Haig had only the one Cavalry Corps of two divisions—1st and 3rd—at his own disposal as Army Cavalry ; the 2nd Cavalry Division never fought again as a complete formation.

There can, however, be no doubt that the decision to break up one cavalry division was the only wise one under the circumstances. Some people might think that *army* cavalry was a luxury, but in September, 1918, *divisional* cavalry was clearly a necessity. Once the final British advance began, infantry divisional commanders and brigadiers needed mounted men almost every day. They were constantly in the position of not knowing, for example, whether a wood a mile away was unoccupied, or full of Germans, or held by our own men ; and we saw in the last article several typical instances of the value of small cavalry detachments in finding these things out.

The 2nd Cavalry Division when split up provided 9 regiments, i.e. 27 squadrons. There were also at least four surviving corps cavalry regiments—Northumberland Hussars, King Edward's Horse, Canadian Light Horse, and 13th Australian Light Horse—giving 12 more squadrons, or a total of 39 squadrons to work with the 59 infantry divisions in the British Armies in France at that time. As all these divisions were never in the front line simultaneously, it was possible to allot, on an average, one cavalry squadron to any division that really needed it, during the operations lasting from the beginning of September to the Armistice. At the same time it must not be forgotten that the Cavalry Corps was now so weak in proportion to the total size of the Army that it could hardly be counted on as a really formidable offensive weapon.

PLANS FOR THE FINAL OFFENSIVE.

On a visit to England on 9th September, Sir Douglas Haig ^{5th Sept.} had told the Government that a change had taken place in the character of the War, and that a decision might be obtained in the very near future. Preparations were already far advanced for the successful attack by which, on 12th September, the First American Army—with some French assistance—expelled the Germans with heavy loss from the St. Mihiel salient. After various conferences between Marshal Foch and the Allied commanders-in-chief, it was decided that as soon as possible after the St. Mihiel attack, four convergent and simultaneous offensives should be launched as follows:—

By the Americans west of the Meuse in the direction of Mézières ;

By the French west of the Argonne in the same general direction ;

By the British on the St. Quentin—Cambrai front in the general direction of Maubeuge ;

By Belgian and Allied forces in Flanders in the direction of Ghent.

It was hoped and expected that the first two of these attacks would press the Germans back into the difficult country of the Ardennes, whilst the British offensive threatened their principal lines of communication. The results to be obtained from the different attacks depended very largely upon the British effort in the centre, where the best German divisions were massed behind the formidable Hindenburg Line ; and Sir Douglas Haig did not decide on the attack without weighing the various factors and consulting his Army Commanders. The moral effect of an *unsuccessful* attempt on the Hindenburg Line, to say nothing of the loss of life, would be very serious. General Rawlinson, commanding the Fourth Army, when asked his opinion, hesitated to give an answer until the Battle of Havrincourt and Epehy (12th–18th September) had been fought, which brought the Fourth and Third Armies within striking distance of the main Hindenburg defences. He then declared himself

in favour of an attack on the latter, and the preparations were at once put in hand.

The Battle of Cambrai and the Hindenburg Line—as the C.-in-C. calls it in his Despatches—lasted from 27th September to 5th October, 1918. It began on the former date with an attack by the Third and First Armies towards Cambrai, followed on 29th September by the Fourth Army's attack on the Hindenburg Line on a 12-mile front from Holnon (just north-west of St. Quentin) and Vendhuille. This tremendous battle, lasting nine days, carried our troops right through the enemy's last trench systems, so that "nothing but the natural obstacles of a wooded and well-watered countryside lay between our Armies and Maubeuge."*

The first days of these operations offered no chance for cavalry action, but certain regiments were moved up to positions of readiness. In the Third Army opposite Cambrai, for example, the Oxfordshire Hussars (corps cavalry to the VI Corps) sent troops to work with four different divisions on 27th September, whilst on the 28th and following days the rest of the regiment moved forward from Hermies to Ribecourt in case it might be wanted. On the 30th, two troops acted as advanced guard to the 185th Brigade (62nd Division): the Germans, however, were strongly posted in and north of Rumilly; shell and machine-gun fire was very heavy, and the Oxfords lost two men killed and five wounded, with six horse casualties.

THE CAVALRY ON 1ST-3RD OCTOBER.

(See Sketch at end of article).

27th Sept.

On 26th and 27th September the Cavalry Corps was transferred from G.H.Q. Reserve to the Fourth Army. As mentioned earlier in this article, it contained only the 1st and 3rd Cavalry Divisions, but had attached to it the 4th Guards Brigade† and the Household Machine Gun Brigade.‡ The 5th Cavalry Brigade was already in the Fourth Army, having

* Despatches.

† 4th Grenadier Guards, 3rd Coldstream Guards, 1/1st Honourable Artillery Company, 4th Guards Light Trench Mortar Battery, A/58 Battery, R.F.A.

‡ No. 1 (1st Life Guards) Battalion and No. 3 (Royal Horse Guards) Battalion, Guards Machine Gun Regiment. Also XVIII Corps Cyclist Battalion.

been allotted to the III and Australian Corps until 30th September, on which day it went to General Braithwaite's IX Corps. There were thus seven brigades of cavalry ready to operate in the open country beyond the Hindenburg Line if the opportunity should arise.

Moving up from the back areas by night marches, the Cavalry Corps arrived on the evening of 29th September in its assembly position, the 3rd Cavalry Division bivouacking round Caulaincourt, Bihecourt and Vermand, whilst the 1st Cavalry Division was around Hervilly and Hamelet, just south of Roisel. The 4th Guards and Household M.G. Brigades were further back, in Bray and La Neuville. All the villages being practically destroyed, there was hardly any shelter, and as the night of the 29th was one of high wind and drenching rain, conditions were very uncomfortable for men and horses.

As already noted, the Fourth Army attacked the Hindenburg Line on this day, and throughout the 30th the units of the Cavalry Corps stood to at short notice. On 1st October† the Army attacked what was known as the Beaurevoir-Fonsomme Line, which was the last of the enemy's prepared defences. A footing was gained in this line by the troops of the IX Corps, and during the evening patrols of the 5th Cavalry Brigade managed to pass beyond the line for a short distance. They found that the Germans were holding Ramicourt village and the ridge south of it with machine guns, and reported that no mounted advance was possible as yet. The 5th Cavalry Brigade spent the night in the valley north-east and south-west of Magny-la-Fosse where, at 1 a.m. next morning (2nd) a telephone message was received from IX Corps that one regiment, with tanks, was to pass through the infantry at dawn. The G.O.C., 5th Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General Neil Haig) replied that he would try, but that there was grave risk of losing the regiment, which might be badly wanted later on. This warning had the desired effect, and the order was cancelled. At the same time "C" Squadron, 20th Hussars, was lent to the 32nd Division, and later in the day patrols from this squadron

† This was the date on which the 24-hour clock timing was adopted in the British Army. To avoid confusion, however, it will not be used in these articles.

and also from the 12th Lancers made plucky attempts to get forward, but were checked by machine-gun fire from Ramicourt. On this day the French First Army—immediately on the right of our Fourth Army—occupied St. Quentin and reached the canal line.

3rd Oct.

At 6.5 a.m. on 3rd October the Fourth Army renewed its attack. Sir Henry Rawlinson wished to secure the high ground about Mannequin Hill, the villages of Montbrehain and Beaurevoir, Prospect Hill, and the hill north of Gouy and Le Catelet, the attack being entrusted to the IX, Australian and XIII Corps from right to left. The 5th Cavalry Brigade was to follow closely the infantry of the IX Corps and seize any opportunity for cavalry action which might arise.

At first the attack went well, and at 9.35 a.m. the Cavalry Corps was told to move its two divisions forward, the 3rd Cavalry Division to have its head at Bellenglise by 12 midday, and that of the 1st Cavalry Division to be Bellicourt. At 10.30 a.m. General Rawlinson spoke to General Kavanagh on the telephone and told him that he would give a decision by 12 o'clock as to whether the cavalry divisions were to move forward from the line of the canal. A quarter of an hour later General Kavanagh telephoned to General Mullens and gave him the following order:—"The 1st Cavalry Division will get in touch with the situation on the Montbrehain-Beaurevoir front." Just about this time the 5th Cavalry Brigade had reported that there was no chance for cavalry, but this report had gone in to the IX Corps, and was not known at Cavalry Corps H.Q. until later.

At 12.15 the Army Commander again spoke to the Cavalry Corps Commander and told him that as soon as Beaurevoir and Montbrehain were in our hands the 1st Cavalry Division would move through on its mission. Shortly afterwards, General Montgomery (M.G.G.S., Fourth Army) rang up General Home (B.G.G.S., Cavalry Corps) to say that the Commander-in-Chief had given particular orders that the cavalry should not be committed unless Montbrehain and Beaurevoir were in our possession.

About 1 o'clock, reports were received in Cavalry Corps H.Q. that both these villages and various other objectives had been captured. These reports, though based on that of an artillery observing officer, turned out to be quite inaccurate and hopelessly optimistic. It was then reported from IX Corps that Montbrehain had been taken and that the 5th Cavalry Brigade was moving forward to the line Mericourt-Beauregard-Doon Hill, with orders to patrol towards Bohain; but shortly after this, and before the 5th Cavalry Brigade could possibly have had time to get there, IX Corps received another report—again from an artillery observing officer—that cavalry and tanks were through Mericourt and mopping up prisoners, whereas in actual fact no cavalry got within two miles of Mericourt all day. 3rd Oct.

While these various reports were reaching the higher commanders, the forward brigades of both cavalry divisions were doing their best to find out the real situation by means of mounted patrols. The 3rd Cavalry Division, with the 6th Cavalry Brigade in front, tried to ascertain what was happening at Montbrehain and south of it, and gained touch with the 5th Cavalry Brigade; whilst on its left the 1st Cavalry Division sent forward patrols to gain touch with the 2nd Australian Division on the Roman road and in front of Beaurevoir. About 1 p.m. an officer's patrol from the 6th Cavalry Brigade, under Lieutenant J. B. Bickersteth (Royals), reported that our infantry had been in Montbrehain but had been driven out of it by a counter-attack; also that our troops held Ramicourt. In spite of this very definite information, it was still thought at Cavalry Corps H.Q. that Montbrehain was in our hands; and at 3 p.m. Sir Charles Kavanagh ordered General Harman (3rd Cavalry Division) to move forward south of Montbrehain, seize the high ground beyond Brancourt, and cut the St. Quentin-Le Cateau railway about Bohain. At the same time General Mullens (1st Cavalry Division) was to keep close touch with the 3rd Cavalry Division, supporting its left flank and moving forward between Montbrehain and Beaurevoir. The 1st Cavalry Division was to keep one brigade in Corps reserve.

3rd Oct.

Accordingly, General Harman started his advance. Keeping the Canadian Cavalry Brigade west of the canal in divisional reserve, he sent the 6th Cavalry Brigade forward to Magny-la-Fosse, with the 7th Brigade following it. By 4.45 p.m. the 3rd Dragoon Guards (Lieutenant-Colonel C. L. Rome) had reached the hamlet of Preselles, the rest of the 6th Brigade being near Joncourt. The 3rd D.G's were now practically in the infantry front line, and heavy shell-fire was opened upon them; they soon lost two men killed and thirteen wounded, as well as a number of horses, and it was obvious that the enemy was still holding Montbrehain in strength. Some machine guns of the 6th Machine Gun Squadron came into action against the Germans, as also did two guns of "C" Battery, R.H.A.

In the meantime General Kavanagh had received, about 3.15 p.m., reports which proved conclusively that our infantry had not captured either Montbrehain or Beaurevoir, and that the enemy held Mannequin Hill. These reports came both from cavalry patrols and from No. 6 Squadron, R.A.F., which was working under Cavalry Corps, and they were further confirmed by the Brigade Major, 6th Cavalry Brigade (Captain Euan Wallace) who made a personal reconnaissance. Later—about 5.30 p.m.—after a conversation on the telephone between Generals Kavanagh and Rawlinson, the latter ordered the cavalry divisions to be withdrawn to their previous assembly areas west of the canal. Cavalry Corps issued orders accordingly at 5.57 p.m., adding that the 3rd Cavalry Division should leave one brigade just west of Bellenglise to keep touch with the situation on the IX Corps' front, whilst the 1st Cavalry Division left one regiment to keep touch similarly with the Australian Corps. The 6th Cavalry Brigade and the 19th Hussars were accordingly left on the canal line by their respective divisions.

These orders, however, took some time to reach the forward troops, and as the evening drew on the situation opposite Montbrehain was none too good. At 8 p.m. the 3rd Dragoon Guards and Royals (less one squadron 3rd D.Gs. keeping touch with the infantry in the line) were placed for a time at the

disposal of the 46th Division, who had suffered heavy losses and expected further counter-attacks ; whilst as an additional precaution the 5th Cavalry Brigade was told to form a dismounted party under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel A. C. Little, 20th Hussars.

It was quite dark by the time the different cavalry units withdrew across the canal : night bombing by enemy aeroplanes was very severe, one bomb falling on a party of some 100 German prisoners and killing more than half of them outright, just in front of the 6th Cavalry Brigade column.

During the next two days Montbrehain and Beaurevoir fell, thus clearing the way for another advance.

THE SECOND BATTLE OF LE CATEAU.

(See Sketch at end).

G.H.Q. issued orders on 5th October for the Fourth and ^{5th Oct.} Third Armies to launch a vigorous attack on the 7th, before the Germans could organize a new defensive line, while any success gained was to be exploited by the cavalry. The date of this attack was shortly afterwards postponed until 8th October.

Our troops had now reached open country with few signs of the devastation of war. The ground was open and undulating, devoid of hedges and wire, and was well suited to the employment of tanks and cavalry. Until the little river Selle was reached, the most likely points of resistance were the villages and small woods, and the railway line running north and south, just west of Bohain and Busigny. The villages were all intact, and most of them were still occupied by French civilians, who had been in the power of the enemy for more than four years.

Sir Henry Rawlinson's orders for the attack on 8th October ^{5th Oct.} included an advance by the IX, II American, and XIII Corps from right to left, on a total frontage of some 12,000 yards, the ultimate objective being the general line Mericourt-Brancourt-Prémont-Serain-Villers-Outreaux, the latter village being attacked by the Third Army.

THE RÔLE OF THE CAVALRY.

8th Oct.

The 5th Cavalry Brigade, under the IX Corps, was to push on towards Fresnoy-le-Grand and Bohain if opportunity arose, whilst the Cavalry Corps was to be ready to move in the direction of Le Cateau, securing the railway junctions at that place and at Busigny. It was then, if possible, to swing northwards and try to cut the enemy's communications about Valenciennes. The Cavalry Corps commander was to decide when to send the cavalry through.

As things turned out, it was not possible for the cavalry to carry out its task in full, although it did very valuable service. The story of its part in the Second Battle of Le Cateau will be easier to follow if the following short summary is kept in mind.

On 8th October the 1st Cavalry Division made determined but unsuccessful efforts to break through on both sides of the Roman road about Prémont and Serain. A few regiments, especially those of the 9th Cavalry Brigade, which was leading, had sharp clashes with the enemy.

On 9th October the 3rd Cavalry Division managed to break through astride the Roman road about Marez, and advanced some 7 miles to the high ground west and north-west of Le Cateau.*

On 10th October the 3rd Cavalry Division, followed by the 1st, failed to force the passage of the Selle, and the Cavalry Corps was then withdrawn.

An attempt will now be made to describe the three days' operations in detail.

THE 1ST CAVALRY DIVISION ON 8TH OCTOBER.

The 1st Cavalry Division was detailed to lead the Cavalry Corps' advance, and by 7 a.m. on 8th October was assembled in a position of readiness about Nauroy, with patrols forward in close touch with the infantry. The 3rd Cavalry Division concentrated an hour later south-west of Joncourt and Magny-la-Fosse, its duty being to support and exploit any success gained by the 1st Cavalry Division.

* This will be described in the next article of this series.

At first the infantry attack* made good progress, and at 7.50 a.m. Major-General Mullens moved his report centre forward to the north-eastern end of Estrées, his division being then disposed as under:—

9th Cavalry Brigade in valley north of Wiancourt ;

2nd Cavalry Brigade just east of Follemprie Farm ;

1st Cavalry Brigade in valley west of Wiancourt.

Reports about this hour showed that Doon Hill and Beauregard had been taken, and shortly afterwards news came in that our infantry were in Prémont and partly in Serain ; but it was clear that the Germans were fighting a stiff rearguard action and were not in any respect in a disorderly retreat.

General Kavanagh, who had joined General Mullens in Estrées, ordered the latter to push on with his division between and on both sides of Prémont and Serain villages if the situation permitted ; but General Mullens, after receiving reports about 10 o'clock from the 9th Brigade and after going forward himself to reconnoitre, found that the machine-gun and shell fire about Prémont and Serain was so heavy as to preclude any mounted advance at present. His plan was that the 9th Cavalry Brigade should lead the advance straight down and along both sides of the Roman road, with the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Brigades following in echelon behind the right and left flanks respectively, each moving parallel to the road and about 600–800 yards from it. It will be best to follow the fortunes of each brigade in turn.

THE 9TH CAVALRY BRIGADE.

The G.O.C., 9th Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General d'Arcy ^{5th Oct.} Legard) had detailed the 19th Hussars (Lieutenant-Colonel G.D. Franks) as leading regiment, and on this regiment reporting at 8.30 a.m. that our infantry were close to Prémont and Serain and that the enemy was withdrawing his guns, General Legard moved his brigade forward to the valley east of Genève (9.15.). At 9.50 a.m. the 19th Hussars reported that they were about to pass through the infantry line astride the Roman road, whereupon General Legard rode forward to see the situation for

* Zero hour was at 5.10 a.m.

himself. He found that the infantry, though in possession of Prémont and Serain, could not get on beyond the road connecting the two villages, and that the 19th Hussars were equally unable to get forward. Captain Tremayne was wounded during an attempt to push his squadron along the Roman road in face of very hot machine-gun fire from the northern houses of Serain, whilst on the right Captain Sir Digby Lawson's* squadron in Prémont found itself unable to debouch from the village even on foot. The third squadron (Major Lyon) was now ordered to work round south of Prémont and prolong the right flank but this movement was stopped by machine-gun fire from Mirand and La Sablière Woods and the long wood south of them, and all attempts by the 19th Hussars to advance either northwards or eastwards were definitely held up. During this fighting, four guns of the 9th Machine Gun Squadron (Major Moncreiffe) were working with the 19th, and two of them under 2nd Lieutenant F. Twist, operating on the right flank, deserve special mention. Coming into action against two German machine guns, Twist and his men fired 2,000 rounds in 15 minutes and silenced both enemy guns, whose teams were seen running away. The led horses of our machine gunners were sent to Prémont village, but were shelled en route, losing five horses killed and five wounded.

General Legard's next step (11.45 a.m.) was to order the 8th Hussars (Lieutenant-Colonel G. M. Mort) to support the 19th and push forward to Marez, covered by "Y" Battery, R.H.A.; also one squadron 15th Hussars to replace "C" Squadron, 19th Hussars (Captain Tremayne's) which had been withdrawn from Serain. The 15th Hussar squadron, under Captain Barrett, was to seize the high ground a mile north-east of Serain if it could; if not, it was to contain the enemy by fire whilst the remainder of the Brigade advanced via Prémont. On reaching Serain, Captain Barrett found the infantry holding the southern outskirts of the village, very weak in numbers and short of ammunition. Arrangements were made to send this up to them, and a troop of the 15th Hussars was pushed

* A Yorkshire Hussar officer attached to the 19th.

through the village to try and dislodge the German machine guns on the far side. The attempt failed, the troop officer and six out of twelve men being wounded. 2nd Lieutenant Lambe's sub-section of the 9th Machine Gun Squadron, attached to the 15th Hussar squadron, firing on to the Roman road east of Serain, managed to silence four enemy machine guns; but many more remained in action, and their fire, with that of the German artillery, absolutely prevented any advance down the Roman road.

It was therefore decided that the whole of the 19th Hussars should endeavour to work round the eastern side of the Sablière Woods, passing in the first instance to the south of Fraicourt Farm towards Bohain and then swinging north. The regiment was, however, soon held up by hostile machine guns holding a line north and south of the Brancourt-Bohain railway, and Major Lyon's squadron, which tried to charge some of them, failed to reach them and lost Lieutenant Egerton (killed).

Lieutenant-Colonel Franks now personally led two troops of "A" Squadron in another mounted attack on hostile machine guns, and was killed; the 19th Hussars thus losing a most gallant commanding officer, who had ever been an inspiration to those under him, and who fell, as he would surely have wished if it had to come, in open cavalry fighting which he and many others had foreseen, and during the final advance to victory.

Two other troops crossed the railway near Brancoucourt Farm, wheeled to the east and got into some enemy field guns with the sword. The Germans put up their hands, but then, seeing how few were their captors, took up bombs and drove them off again, Lieutenant Birtwistle being killed and Lieutenants Cockburn and Cayzer found later to be missing, Lieutenant Byass being the only officer who came back. This marked the end of the 19th Hussars' attempted outflanking movement: the regiment withdrew at 2.15 p.m. to the railway embankment north-east of Brancourt, and at 3 p.m. the Brigade ordered it back to Prémont, where it came into brigade reserve. The 8th Hussars had by now also rejoined the brigade; they had

for some time waited near Fraicourt Farm in support of the 19th, and had lost 33 horses from shell-fire.

We must now return to the 15th Hussars who, as we have seen, had one squadron in Serain. At 1.10 p.m. the infantry in that village reported that they could not hold on to their position, and the O.C. 15th Hussars (Lieutenant-Colonel H. Combe) was ordered to support his squadron in Serain with as much of his regiment as might be necessary. An hour later, however, the situation there became easier, and the 15th were ordered to withdraw. At 2.45 p.m. they were detailed to keep in touch with an infantry attack on the high ground and woods east of Prémont and Serain to be carried out by the XIII and II American Corps; but for some reason this attack did not take place, and the whole of the 9th Cavalry Brigade was ordered at 5.45 p.m. to withdraw forthwith to bivouac about Beaufort. The brigade was, however, to be responsible for filling a gap said to exist in the infantry front line between the right of the 25th Division and the left of the Americans: the 15th Hussars were told off for this duty and found and filled the gap for the night with two squadrons in front and one in support, until relieved by infantry at 4 a.m. next morning.

THE 1ST CAVALRY BRIGADE.

8th Oct.

We left the 1st Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General H. S. Sewell) at 8 a.m. in its assembly position just west of Wiancourt. It had a liaison officer with 9th Cavalry Brigade headquarters, and "A" Squadron, 11th Hussars, also kept closely in touch with the 9th Brigade, moving forward whenever the latter did so. The 1st Brigade waited near Wiancourt till 11 a.m., when it moved forward to Vaux-le-Prêtre Chateau, the 11th Hussars under Lieutenant-Colonel R. J. P. Anderson being close behind the 9th Brigade which, as we know, was by now held up in Prémont and Serain. Half an hour later, "A" Squadron, 11th Hussars, was thrown forward to clear up the situation in Mirand Wood and the other woods east of Prémont; the squadron sent in reports which showed that the woods were strongly held by enemy machine guns, to say nothing of

considerable shell-fire. Soon after midday, patrols of the Bays were sent on to keep touch with the 11th Hussars.

At about 1.30 p.m. Brigadier-General Sewell received orders from Major-General Mullens to push forward south and south-east of Prémont and thence northwards towards Maretz, with the idea of clearing away the opposition in front of the 9th Brigade. General Sewell thereupon went forward to a quarry where he met Colonel Anderson (11th Hussars) and asked him to reconnoitre the woods with a view to making a detour through them. After a conference of C.O.s, the Brigadier (accompanied by a few other officers) went out at 2.20 p.m. to make a personal reconnaissance of the ground of attack; and about the same time important information came in from Lieutenant Taylor, 11th Hussars, who had been out on patrol. He had been to Mirand Wood and reported that there was a line through the woods clear of the enemy but not occupied by our infantry; La Sablière Wood was, however, held in strength by the Germans.

For some reason which is not clear from contemporary accounts, no further attempt was made to get round Prémont via the woods. Doubtless the enemy's fire was too hot, and even though the 11th Hussars' patrol had reported a way through, it does not follow that a regiment or brigade could have advanced along it, and evidently the senior officers on the spot did not think so.

At 2.45 p.m. a squadron of the Queen's Bays, in touch with the infantry about Prémont was ordered to find out the exact whereabouts of our front line from Fraicourt Farm to the Roman road, and to ascertain whether the Americans were joined up with the XIII Corps near the latter road; and at 4.30 p.m. General Sewell was ordered to take his brigade back to bivouac in the Montbrehain area for the night.

THE 2ND CAVALRY BRIGADE.

Brigadier-General A. Lawson's 2nd Cavalry Brigade was not ^{5th Oct.} called upon until after 11 a.m., when General Mullens ordered it to send reconnaissances round west and north-west of Serain

—his idea being that it might be possible for this brigade to come round on the left of the 9th Cavalry Brigade.

General Lawson accordingly ordered the 9th Lancers to send on a squadron, the remainder of the regiment to support it if it was successful. It seems to have been 1 o'clock before news came in from the 9th Lancers that Serain was clear of the enemy but that Elincourt was held by snipers and machine guns, whereupon the Brigadier—whose headquarters were now at Les Folies Farm—despatched the 4th Dragoon Guards (Lieutenant-Colonel E. M. Dorman) to support the 9th Lancers. The 4th D.G.'s soon came under heavy machine-gun fire from the Elincourt direction, causing several casualties to men and horses, and the next step was to try and deal with the German machine guns. The O.C. "H" Battery, R.H.A., with the brigade observers, were able from the northern exits of Serain to locate several machine guns and also Germans digging in west of Elincourt. "H" Battery was, therefore, brought into action; but about this time six enemy aeroplanes, flying low, attacked brigade headquarters near Les Folies with bombs and machine guns, though fortunately only inflicting a few casualties. It was thought advisable to move the third regiment (18th Hussars) further back, and the two leading regiments being now definitely held up, no further progress was made. A warning order from the Division was received at 4.30 p.m. and confirmed later, that the Brigade would be withdrawn to the Gouy area for the night, and at about 6 p.m. it started to ride back by Ponchaux, Beaurevoir and Gouy to Mont St. Martin, bivouacking between there and Rue Neuve.

During this march Beaurevoir village was severely bombed from the air, just as "H" Battery, R.H.A., was passing through it, 26 men and 25 horses being killed or wounded and two guns damaged. Some of these losses were caused by the explosion of 6-inch shells on a lorry which received a direct hit from a bomb. There was a good deal more bombing throughout the night, but luckily the 2nd Cavalry Brigade sustained no further casualties, though bombs fell on both sides of it.

THE 3RD CAVALRY DIVISION AND THE 5TH CAVALRY BRIGADE
ON 8TH OCTOBER.

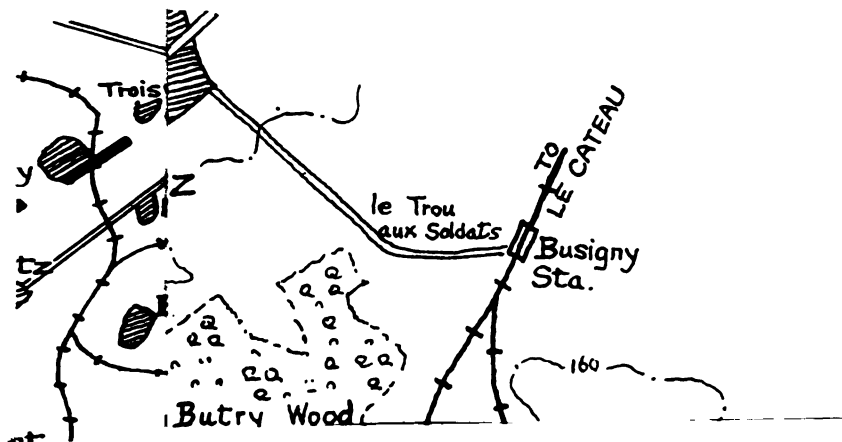
Major-General Harman's 3rd Cavalry Division never came ^{5th Oct.} into action on this date. By 8 a.m., in accordance with Cavalry Corps orders, it formed up in areas south-west of Joncourt and south-west of Magny-la-Fosse, and by 10.30 a.m. General Harman had moved his headquarters to Estrées on the Roman road. Of his three brigades, the 6th was in Corps reserve north of Wiancourt; the 7th (in a valley south-east of Genève) had orders to keep in touch with the 1st Cavalry Brigade and follow it should it move forward; whilst the Canadian Brigade—on the other side of the Roman road—was similarly in touch with the 2nd Cavalry Brigade. At 4.45 p.m. the Division was ordered back for the night to bivouac in the area Magny-la-Fosse-Bellicourt-Nauroy-Joncourt, the headquarters of the 6th Cavalry Brigade being in a room in the famous Hindenburg Tunnel, which linked up Bellicourt, Nauroy, Magny-la-Fosse and other places by a huge subterranean system. The tunnel contained among other things a light railway, and was lit by electricity throughout. Four Germans who looked after the two electric light plants had been captured a few days before at the same time as the tunnel, and were obliged to continue working for the British. They pretended for several days that one of the electric plants was mined, but on the engine being started up in the presence of one British officer—the tunnel having been first cleared of all troops for safety—this proved to be false.

The 5th Cavalry Brigade, under Brigadier-General Neil Haig, was, it will be remembered, under the IX Corps (the extreme right Corps of the British Army) and not under the Cavalry Corps. Beyond an unsuccessful attempt to break through south of Brancourt-le-Grand and capture some German field guns near Jonnecourt Farm, the Brigade got no actual cavalry fighting, though it suffered a number of casualties from shell-fire during this and the next two days.

RESULTS OF 8TH OCTOBER.

From the point of view of the infantry, the attack of the 8th October had been a great success, the Fourth Army having taken all its objectives, with 56 guns and over 4,000 prisoners. The enemy still retained, however, as has been seen, sufficient cohesion to prevent a break-through by the cavalry, and although in the early morning the prospects seemed bright, by 2 p.m. (to quote a cavalry officer who was present) "the fight had developed into a regular infantry battle . . . and although efforts were continuously made by the leading cavalry troops to pass through to their objectives, it was always found impossible to advance far in the face of machine-gun and artillery opposition, without incurring heavy losses . . . much assistance was, however, rendered to the infantry."

The 1st Cavalry Division sustained about 200 casualties, and when one recalls that it comprised 9 regiments, 3 machine-gun squadrons and divisional troops, the losses seem so light that it might perhaps be questioned whether more risks could not have been taken in the endeavour to break through. But the Commander-in-Chief, having only two cavalry divisions left, had issued particular instructions to the Cavalry Corps commander that heavy losses were not to be incurred; and when one regiment was held up, to order another to advance against the same opposition would only have added to the losses without, in all probability, doing any good. Many of the fearful casualties in the infantry during the previous three years had been due to battalions being sent forward in the face of fire which had already stopped other battalions. Not till comparatively late in the War was the principle accepted that, in an attack, reserves should be used to exploit a success rather than to redeem a failure; and that if there was no success, it was better to admit it and try again another day in another way. In the Cavalry Corps on 8th October we have seen how General Mullens, when his leading brigade was held up, tried to work his other two brigades round the flanks; and when these too failed to make headway, General Kavanagh wisely decided



F
 E
 T
 S
 R
 S
 E
 H
 n
 t
 i
 l
 r
 n
 t
 t
 g
 g
 y
 e

 it
 it
 ie
 le
 as

2.

1.

{

t

r

c

ε

ε

l

e

t

i

ε

ε

ε

ε

t

l

t

l

l

c

t

v

c

l

v

l

ε

t

i

v

(

v

not to commit the 3rd Cavalry Division, but to hope for better conditions next day—a hope that was fully justified.

The lack of water in this area was very serious; there seemed to be hardly any streams or ponds, and the horses of the 9th Cavalry Brigade were actually 30 hours without water, i.e. from 1 p.m. on the 7th to 7.45 p.m. on 8th October; whilst the 5th Cavalry Brigade got no proper water for 18 hours. Extra fatigue was caused both to men and horses, as it was often found necessary to withdraw advanced regiments further than the tactical situation demanded, simply to obtain water.

Allusion has already been made to night bombing. The Germans were evidently very nervous lest our cavalry should break through, and tried this means of preventing it: between 5.30 p.m. and midnight on 8th October they made a most determined bombing attack on both sides of the Roman road between Beaurevoir and Bellenglise.* Fortunately our casualties were light; but it was a most nerve-racking ordeal for men who had been on the move, or waiting in reserve, from before dawn until after dark in full marching order. Apart from the actual danger, it meant that no fires could be lit during the hours of darkness, so no one could have anything hot to eat or drink, either before starting in the early morning or after getting into bivouac at night. Infantry cookers or hay boxes would have been invaluable, but in those days the cavalrymen had neither.

* * * *

The G.O.C. Fourth Army still hoped that the cavalry might be able to break through if the victory were followed up at once, and he therefore issued orders on the evening of the 8th for the offensive to be resumed early on the 9th. The rôle of the cavalry was the same, but the 3rd Cavalry Division was to be leading division.

(To be continued)

* The 4th Guards Brigade in bivouac near Bellenglise suffered 30 casualties.

GAILLARD LANCES.

By TISKAT.

I.

THE "Frontier Mail" rolls out of the dingy shadows of Lahore Junction, into the bright yellow sunlight, over the Chenab bridge, past Shahdara and its imposing Moghul monuments. It gathers speed and the level featureless country flits swiftly past. The morning loses its freshness, and the drowsy heat replacing it, is more in keeping with the landscape. Of standing crops, only faded brakes of sugar cane remain. Round the mud-walled hamlets, each shaded by a clump of trees, creaking Persian wheels give life to plots of vivid green crop, but the canal distributaries are empty, and the world generally is burned dry. The rains ceased early this year, and the sun, without the aid of water, can only destroy. Now the people's hope rests on the winter rains, which may yet bring help to them and to their patient cattle. For these, another failure means lack of fodder, and often death.

The Grand Trunk Road, with its endless stream of traffic, runs close beside the line. Unhastening bullock carts, as ever holding maddeningly to the good tarred portion of the road, overloaded and over-driven Chevrolet and Ford trucks, swift cars covering the country with dust, and an occasional string of camels, heedless and contemptuous of the modern hustle and noise, typify the contrasts which India ever affords.

An hour slips past un-noticed, and then the train slows down and stops by the crowded platform at Wazirabad. We change for the final stage of the journey and, pushing through throngs of phlegmatic country-folk who wait for trains not due for many

hours, we gain the comparative peace of the branch line platform. Amongst those waiting for the train, three men wear the mufti of the Regiment, and we know that we are once more back with the "Duke's."

They come towards us immediately, two Tiwanas (Punjab Mussulmans of Shahpur District) and a burly Sikh, their faces wreathed in smiles of welcome. They give the greeting of equals: "Salaam, Sahib; Salaam, Mem-Sahib," and they salute smartly. "How are your honours?" "When did you arrive?" "Now! In the mail." "What luck that we should have been here." "How is the chota sahib?" "Is he now studying at school?" "Is there anything that we can do now for your honours?" This spate of questions ended, they explain their own doings. "I've had ten days' leave to get married." "My house fell down during the rains, and I had to go home to arrange about rebuilding it." "My brother, who manages my farm, is very ill, and I've been there to see about things." In Indian Cavalry regiments, recruited as they are from the Yeoman farmer class, change of occupation is, perforce, the best recreation. Leave is not merely a period of relaxation. It is a necessity to enable the men to look after their domestic affairs, and so it must be given generously. The system may seem incongruous in a regular army, but it is an important factor in obtaining the pick of a sturdy class as recruits.

The conversation is interrupted by the blowing of whistles and waving of flags. We get into our carriage and the train moves off, puffing busily along from wayside station to wayside station. The same scene is re-enacted at each. Parties of country-folk, men followed by their women, clamber down on to the low level platform, hand their tickets grudgingly to the coolie-cum-ticket-collector at the gate, and climb into grossly overloaded country pony carts. Those who have been waiting on the platform, many of them since early morning, hump their baggage and run excitedly up and down. In the end some nearly miss the train.

At one station the "up" train is waiting side-tracked. We have scarcely stopped when a smiling face appears at the off-side

window. The breathless visitor salaams. "I saw your honours as you passed my carriage." "Have your honours had a good leave?" "Shabash!" (grand). "My wife is ill, and the "Kaptan" Sahib has given me ten days' leave." There is a shrill whistle, he looks over his shoulder, drops to the ground, salutes, and says: "I'm off but I'll see you again next week. Salaam, salaam."

A few more minutes pass, and then the seven thousand mile journey is finished. A brother officer greets us cheerily, and Fateh Khan, my orderly, with two sowars in fatigue dress, force their way through to the carriage. After a hurried exchange of news we are whisked off by car, leaving Fateh Khan and his satellites to deal with the luggage.

II.

By mid-November the hot weather has finished, and then the Indian climate is as nearly perfect as is possible. The days are clear, brilliant and warm, and the nights are cold and crisp enough to make a fire welcome. Everywhere the winter crop is sown in readiness for the rain. As yet there has been none, the dust increases daily and the fields show no sign of growth. This is the season generally chosen for training camps and manœuvres and, for a month or so, troops move pretty well where and as they please, without having to pay damages for the privilege.

* * * * *

The Regiment in "Mass" is dismounted on the parade ground, the men resting on their rifles, and the horses expectant with ears pricked. They are spick and span now, with polished leather and burnished steel glinting in the sun, but the dust is waiting. The Horse battery has trotted past, and now the "Lily-whites" file out of a side-road just ahead. We wait our turn.

Waits like this are always whiled away with "back-chat" badinage, whereby both we and the men learn much of each other. They love camp and manœuvres, away from the dull routine of cantonment life, and they look forward to them with as much zest as does a schoolboy to his holidays. On their return they yarn about it for months, and boast and "throw a chest" as if it had been the real thing.

"Mount." In a moment the men are in the saddle, and then three hundred rifle muzzles rise like one above the columns of paggrees, swing forward and thud home in their buckets. Our Colonel moves out on his twenty year old charger, but neither of them reveal their years. The old horse knows his part and plays it well. With arched neck, and mouthing his bit, he walks proudly ahead, setting the example to the escort of trumpet-major and the bearer of the regimental flag—red and silver and blue, with blazoned crossed lances. The men watch the little party with paternal pride, and nod their heads and murmur "Shabash!" If ever there were light cavalryman and horse, we see them now.

Squadron by squadron the Regiment follows; first, regimental headquarters; then the Dogras, quiet, gentle looking men on their chestnuts; next the Sikhs, imposing with their shining black beards and their eager expression; then the Mussulmans, the starched ends of their paggrees standing up jauntily, plume-like, above the column; finally, the lurching bumping machine guns bring up the rear. Squadron trumpeters take up the trumpet-major's "March at ease," the sign for the men to indulge in their battle cries reserved for occasions such as this. The Dogras give the lead and, as their last echoes die away, the Sikhs chant their "Sath Sri Akhal" (There is but one God) with its long-drawn ending. When they have finished Risaldar Raushan Khan of our squadron rides clear of the ranks and, standing in his stirrups, bellows: "Aek nara Hydari!" (One shout for Hydar (a mythical hero)). The response comes in a full throated roar: "Yaaaah Allaaaah!" (Hail, God), and then Raushan Khan leads a second, and finally a third shout, for Hydar. Honour is satisfied.

Because of the fetlock deep dust, we march in single file on either side of the road, with dust intervals between troops. The column jogs along at a steady eight miles an hour, khaki paggrees and "grey-back" shirts bobbing up and down together, sword hilts and scabbards swing and glint, and the rifle butts bump gently in the mouths of the buckets. Mingled in the ranks of each Mussulman troop there are tall lithe Tiwanas with their black hair neatly bobbed and curled at the edge, equally tall but heavier built Awans of the Salt Range, slim Gakhars from

Jhelum District and stocky Janjuas from Kahuta near Rawal Pindi. They vary as much in their characters as they do in their build, but they are all good men and true, plegmatic and calm in a scrap, mildly contemptuous of all who are not of the "risala" (cavalry).

The horses teach another lesson. While the older men are mounted on the staid and steady troop horses, some of the youngsters are riding the hard-mouthed pullers and the ill-paced rogues. This is not according to precept, but there is a measure of wisdom in the troop leaders' arrangements. As youngsters ourselves, we also have had to put up with the horses and ponies which we could afford, seldom the best, but in the end it has done us good, teaching us perseverance and patience.

Alternately trotting and walking, with a ten minutes' halt at the end of each clock hour, the miles are covered quickly and, as the stages are easy, the day's march is soon finished. Bivouac lines have already been marked out by the regimental colour party, the horses are watered and in an hour they are groomed and feeding, the men are busy putting up their tents and drawing rations and forage, and the Mess lunch is waiting ready in the shade of a great banian tree. Round the camp, groups of villagers and crowds of admiring children stand and stare, the elders doubtless reminiscing and comparing the scene with those which they have seen before, during every cold weather which they can remember. Three men stand near the impromptu mess, edging ever nearer until, when lunch is finished, one comes forward and announces that the chances of getting a few duck are good. There is a big "jheel" (lake) some three miles away, he says, and, if anyone would care to try the evening flight, he is at their service. So it is arranged.

III.

Five regiments of cavalry in one camp is an unusual sight in this modern world stinking of petrol and grease. A couple of thousand glossy coats and intelligent heads, collected in so small a space, must gladden the hearts of the Gods and of Saint George. The world is not entirely mechanized.

Evening, with the day's work done, is the best time. The whole camp is hard at "stables" and then, as the blue mist, mingled with dust and the smoke of the cook-house fires, settles down, the horses are rugged and file to water, regiment by regiment. Returned to their lines, all is restless stamping and expectant murmuring until the nose-bags are put on and then contented silence reigns, except for the working of many thousands of equine teeth. A great peace descends upon the camp, and so to tea, followed by a bath and then a visit to one or other of the neighbouring messes. Finally, "early to bed and early to rise" is a necessary if golden rule and, in that pleasant half asleep, half waking state, when the world seems remote, the sweet notes of silver trumpets, faint and far away like fairy trumpets, sound us to sleep.

The early morning, with a heavy dew on the ground and a clammy cold insinuating everywhere, is not so pleasant. Breakfast is a hurried silent meal, and waiting orderlies are soon busy tightening girths and giving saddles a final rub over in readiness for the critical eyes of their masters who, at this hour, are sometimes a little difficult to please. Wrinkled muzzles and ears laid back show what the horses think of these preparations, and of even the shortest wait in the chill air. With movement, however, the outlook changes, blood flows more easily, ears go forward and livers, "begot by long service in bad stations," begin to settle down.

IV.

The sun is up and a bracing freshness has replaced the penetrating cold. Redland is at war with Blueland, and a group of spectators await the first clash of arms. The scene is set in flat country, where villages, patches of jungle and brakes of sugar cane limit visibility to two or three hundred yards. Everything is peaceful, and here and there villagers are busy watering their crops to the music of their Persian wheels.

Suddenly there is a hammering of hooves on the hard ground. Two Blue sowars gallop by, messengers bringing tidings of the invaders from a reconnoitring detachment in touch with the Reds somewhere out in front. The Persian wheels momentarily cease their creaking, and then peace returns.

A quarter of an hour passes. Then a single horseman appears silently by a clump of sugar cane. He pauses, scans the ground to his front, and is joined by another. They signal to someone invisible beyond them, and then move forward at a steady trot, making for the next patch of cover. Simultaneously, to the right and to the left, other pairs of scouts appear for a second or so in the open spaces, all intent on their quest. Parent sections and troops, reserve troops of the van guard and then the main guard follow in quick succession. They move quietly, in open inconspicuous formations, all at the same even trot, business-like and efficient, collecting their information and hiding the strength behind them. Close on their heels ride Brigade Headquarters led by our well-beloved Brigadier. The Persian wheels are again silent, and groups of villagers form at vantage points to watch the play.

Dust above the trees shows that more is yet to come. Half a dozen officers pass on, followed by their trumpeters and orderlies carrying the flags of two famous regiments. Then they come: be-helmeted Hussars, their slightly stooping seat accentuated by the double bandolier; horse artillery, all shining leather and paint work, and sparkling steel, bumping and rattling over the rough ground; a regiment of Indian Lancers now, alas! bereft of their lances except for ceremony; finally a troop of Madras Sappers and Miners, in their strange stove-pipe hats; short columns here, there and everywhere, appearing and disappearing, in no apparent order and yet under perfect control. Bobbing and jingling and clinking they pass; a thousand horses, ears pricked, alert, mouthing their bits, all suppressed excitement; in very truth, Cavalcade. The villagers, and many others also, think it a pretty picture: cavalry at play. Yet these men have attained a high standard of training in the work which they are now practising: the struggle to gain information of the enemy in detail, on which factor success in battle largely depends. No genius has as yet invented a substitute which can compete with the simple man and his horse in this exciting game. The popular idea of charging lines of horsemen, knee to knee, survives only in the musical ride or in the minds of the uninitiated. In the hands of those who know how to use it, cavalry still paves the way to

victory by its searching and screening powers. Victory gained, it comes into its own in the relentless pursuit of the broken enemy, where its ability to live on all but barren country gives it a mobility denied to the machine.

V.

At the end of manœuvres the brigade returns home just in time for Christmas and ten days' Christmas leave. Everyone receives the benefit of this break, Dogra, Sikh and Mussulman as well as British officer, and half the men celebrate the "Burra Din" in their homes. The Mess and families thin out; a team to Lahore for the polo, the horse show and gaiety as well; others out into the country to shoot. New Year's Eve, however, sees them all back in readiness for the "Proclamation Parade" on the 1st January, the ceremonial parade held each year to commemorate Queen Victoria's accession to the Imperial throne of India.

* * * * *

The Regiment moves off to pay its homage, gay in review order—blue and silver "lungis," scarlet "kamarbands" and dark blue puttees. The wicked burnished lance heads sparkle above the red and white pennons, like sun-lit spray over breakers. The fluttering pennons fill the narrow tree-lined lane like running water. They ripple gently like a stickle on a Border stream.

On the parade ground the Regiment forms line on its markers, while other units are taking position to right and left. "Sit easy" is ordered. The pennons relax and droop, and the horses yawn and blink and then doze in the warm sunshine.

Beyond the parade ground fields of young crops, fresh green with blazing patches of yellow where the mustard grows, reach to the middle distance. Farther out greeny brown trees thicken to form a sombre border, and the distance fades into a soft blue haze. Clear against the translucent sky, but fading imperceptably and mysteriously into the haze beneath, the snowy peaks of the Pir Panjal float between earth and Heaven, as though the Gods watched the pageant. The Empress could desire no lovelier setting for the commemoration of her Proclamation.

The "Jack" breaks from the flagstaff and a bugle sounds. The Regiment "carries lance," and the pennons spring to life and flutter in salute. Massed bands play a slow march and the line is inspected, and then the Royal salute is fired. At each gun the dozing horses start and blink, heads jerking together, and gradually they awake.

The salute completed, the brigade forms for the march past. The Horse Artillery lead, their gun muzzles like a straight-edge. Then come the "Lilywhites," sombre in their khaki drill save for the lines of sabre blades glittering evilly in the sun. At the passing line our squadrons wheel in succession into column of squadrons, and the long straight lines advance towards the saluting base gay and aflutter, lance heads sparkling above the dancing pennons—gaillard lances.

At night there is a gathering in Mess, wives as well as men, for this is a regimental occasion, and the bachelor Second-in-Command receives us as guests in his own charming way. Groups form round the blazing fires, the delicate colours and flowing lines of the ladies' dresses contrasting with the blue and scarlet and gold of the mess kit, all against a setting of silken splendour which once adorned the palaces of Peking. The ladies, by mutual consent, examine the massed Christmas cards of the Army in India, arrayed in serried ranks on the mantel-shelves. Then the trumpeters of the Regiment, standing in a circle in the hall, sound the mess call. The double doors are thrown open and we file into the dim lit dining room, where mahogany and silver and glass gleam under the shaded candles. After dinner there are games organized by the subalterns and then, led by our Colonel's wife, the life and soul of the party, the ladies are initiated in the "gentle" art of "Freda." We envy no one the opening of their New Year.

VI.

Celebrations do not end, however, with New Year's Day. The Indian officers have issued invitations, carefully typed by the Adjutant's clerk who fancies his knowledge of etiquette, stating that Risaldar-Major Ranjhit Singh and the Indian Officers of the Regiment request the pleasure of &c., &c.'s company at a tea party in the Indian Officers Club at "1700 hrs." on the 2nd

January. These tea parties, though sometimes rather frequent, are valued regimental events, and at them we learn much about our hosts and about ourselves as well. The Club is a three-roomed building standing in a pleasant little garden created by the Indian Officers themselves. A neatly trimmed hedge surrounds a lawn set with flower beds, and the verandah is gay with geraniums. The first room is the hall or ante-room, and the feast is laid in the inner sanctum; a long table, covered with table cloths, is set out with stiff vases of flowers, plates of sandwiches, cakes large and small, and cups and saucers. The Mess Daffadar has obviously been called in to supervise the arrangements, and everything is as it should be. The room is decorated with bright coloured streamers, Christmas fashion, and on the walls there are photographs of the Emperor and Empress, of our Colonel-in-Chief, and of various regimental groups dating back almost to Mutiny days.

The Indian Officers, dressed to kill in their elegant Darbar kit, each according to the fashion of his creed, stand in a group by the entrance to their garden. The burly Risaldar-Major almost fills the gate-way and hides those behind him. He maintains a dignified silence, but the others murmur amongst themselves and twirl their moustaches. The guests arrive in twos and threes and, after exchanging greetings, they mingle with the hosts and little groups form to discuss the weather and the crops.

At tea the table is arranged with discernment. The Colonel's wife and the next senior lady sit right and left respectively of the Risaldar-Major, the Colonel opposite him, and the other ladies are placed, those who speak Urdu next Indian officers who do not speak English, while those who understand only a little of the language are taken in hand by the English-speaking "Sardars." The Risaldar-Major, incidentally, speaks excellent English with the accent of Oxford, though where he acquired the latter has never been discovered, but he is given to occasional blunt expressions which take his audience by surprise.

To begin with the conversation is somewhat formal and stiff, but soon it flows freely. We reminisce and discuss many things, domestic matters in the lines or in the villages, recruiting and its problems, developments in India and so forth, all with a

pleasing frankness which makes for understanding. One bluff risaldar announces that, in his opinion, the country is going to the dogs. "Why," says he, "after the Mutiny there was a gallows in every village and it was never empty. Those were the times." Scarcely conclusive argument, but he is a die-hard and a troop leader whose men obey his nod. Others express the hope that some day one of their number may be selected as a King's Indian Orderly Officer, four of whom go each year to serve His Majesty. This hope is based partly on a desire to see England and its wonders, but mainly on their wish to serve the King in person. Down the table my wife, whose Urdu is fluent though not always grammatical, is chatting merrily with her partner. She enquires after his two small sons and of the prospects of a good harvest, whilst he cross-questions her searchingly about our home leave and on the doings of our school-boy son. Sometimes some of the ladies find lengthy conversation, in a comparatively strange tongue, rather a strain but some one always comes to the rescue, no one shirks, and we all thoroughly enjoy the party.

The evening draws on to the whisky and soda stage, when caution is necessary. Our hosts' ideas of hospitality would shake even the most confirmed Scotsman. Having passed successfully through this ordeal the party disperses.

VII.

With the morrow the normal training and routine of regimental life is resumed. Since the war much of this is taken up by "office," but this does not always mean clerical work. After "stables" every day, each squadron commander retires to his office where the clerk, proud of his industry, has prepared a pile of documents for signature. By the time these are dealt with, the troop leaders, the squadron daffadar-major (sergeant-major) and squadron quarter-master-daffadar, all changed into mufti, have arrived. Usually there are also a few N.C.Os., interested in some event of the day, who want to see the fun. The "Sardars" take their seats, the N.C.Os. remain standing, and a small crowd of lesser individuals wait outside on the verandah.

The last piece of paper is signed and the squadron commander looks up, the signal for the senior risaldar to rise. He

says : " There are several cases to be dealt with, your honour. To-day, at early feed, Sowar Khan Zaman gave insolence to Lance-daffadar Murad Khan, and he is being brought before your honour. Six men also want short leave, and there are three "umedwars" (applicants for registration as recruits). He hesitates to mention other problems at this juncture.

Sowar Khan Zaman's case is heard first. The evidence against him is clear, but his offence is rather one of argument than of insolence. He is given seven days' confinement to the lines and salutes, saying : " I am very grateful to your honour." The squadron commander gasps, then calls him back and gives him another seven days to teach him manners. Khan Zaman's face falls visibly and, crestfallen, he is marched away but, scarcely is he out of sight when the risaldar whispers : " He meant it, your honour. He is young, and was very pleased to have been let off so lightly." The delinquent, really rather a simple soul, is recalled and told that his first punishment stands, but that in future he must be careful not to make remarks which may be misconstrued.

The applicants for short leave are brought in next. During the cold weather training season each squadron is allowed four short leave vacancies, limited to twenty days, for necessitous cases. The roll shows that only one vacancy is unfilled at present, and now six men want leave. They are told in turn to state their cases. The first, a daffadar, says that he must be present in person at his " tahsil " office in ten days' time to pay his land revenue. This is an adequate reason and so his name is written down. Number two says that he is involved in a law suit, so he comes in for a searching cross-examination. He has already had two lots of ten days for this same law suit, and now he says that the hearing has been appointed for the following Thursday. It transpires that, on the first occasion, the " vakil " had postponed the hearing without informing him and that, on the second, certain important witnesses had been absent so that an adjournment had been ordered. This is a common story when these simple country folk indulge in litigation, and their pockets suffer out of all proportion to their means. Delays and complications are not seldom due to slackness on the part of the " vakil " on whose

advice the case has been started, but he suffers no loss thereby. This is pointed out forcibly to number two and he ruefully agrees, his name is entered on the list and the squadron commander makes a note of the "vakil" and the court concerned, so that the facts may be referred to the Civil authorities. Next comes a lad who produces a telegram stating that his father has died, and who asks that he may have ten days' leave immediately so that he may attend the funeral. This is a matter of peculiar urgency with these people, and there is no doubt about the necessity of his case. The fourth applicant is a hefty Awan sowar who, when asked his reasons, hesitates and then grins sheepishly. "I had no Christmas leave and I would like ten days now, so that I can see my people and my home." This is ingenuous frankness, perfectly sincere, so he too gets his reward. Investigation of the remaining two cases proves that one of them is not genuine, only a good "try on," so five remain for the one vacancy. The squadron commander checks their leave records, and again their reasons, before he finally decides on the order of priority in which they may go. He reads out the result: first, the lad whose father is dead; second, the Awan because he told the whole truth and also because he had no short leave last year, and so on. There are no complaints from those who will have to wait their turn, and the Indian officers, glad to be relieved of a responsibility which might lay them open to accusations of favouritism, nod appreciatively, commending the wisdom of Solomon.

The stage is now cleared for the three "umedwars," who are ushered into the office by various relatives and village friends. They have been scrubbed and polished and dressed up to do credit to their connections in the Regiment. All three are likely looking lads, though one is obviously well below the five foot seven height standard laid down for Punjabi Mussulmans. The clerk produces the "umedwar" book, in which the particulars and the result of the preliminary medical examination of all would-be recruits are entered. The squadron commander questions them and records their answers. Details regarding the first boy are filled in thus: "Mohammed Yar Khan, Punjabi Mussulman Tiwana, 18 years; height, 5 feet 11 inches; chest, 38/36 inches; village and tahsil, Mitha Tiwana; district, Shah-

pur; father, Pensioner, Daffadar Ahmed Khan, late of the Regiment; security, Risaldar Raushan Khan and Lance-Daffadar Gul Mohammed; education, 6th class—an excellent type.” If he passes the Commanding Officer’s inspection and the medical examination successfully, the lad is then sent back to his home, whence he is called in his turn to fill a vacancy. The popularity of service is proved by the fact that each squadron has a waiting list of about fifty in its “umedwar” book, all relatives of serving men or of pensioners, and many have to wait for as much as eighteen months before they can be taken.

All goes well until the small “umedwar” is measured at five foot four and, as his age is given as eighteen, he cannot be accepted. This causes great consternation, especially amongst the Gakhars to which tribe he belongs. A Gakhar officer pleads his case: “He is of excellent family. His father, Risaldar Barkat Ali, who is now on pension, served in the Regiment, your honour, for thirty years and fought in three campaigns and, your honour will remember, he was not an inch taller than this boy now is.” Barkat Ali was a well-known character in the Regiment, an Indian officer of the best type and so, although it is a rule that no exception can be made, the situation is complicated. Another argument is produced: “The lad cannot be more than fifteen, because his father went to the war in 1914 and did not return to his home until 1918.” This is logic and it gives the “umedwar” a chance because, with the long waiting list which makes his enlistment in less than eighteen months unlikely, he may put on an inch or two of the deficient height. The problem is left for the Commanding Officer to decide, and the conference adjourns to his office.

When he is ready to see them, the lads, now quaking with nervousness, are led in by the Indian officers. The Colonel passes the two bigger lads without demur and questions them about their pensioner parents. They are then dismissed and the case of Barkat Ali’s son is considered. Everyone wants to take him, but neither Colonel, Second-in-Command, nor squadron commander relishes the idea of an undersized man. The adjutant, who is responsible for the training of all recruits, is called from his desk and asked what he can make of the boy. He removes his

glasses, blinks, and then surveys the shivering youth. After a pause he says slowly : " He'll do." That settles the question and the decision is given accordingly. He can be registered, and then he must be sent home with strict injunctions to drink much milk so that, when his time comes, he will measure the correct height. If he fails then, there can be no help for him. Everyone is satisfied with this order, especially the Gakhar rank and file on the verandah who have listened to the whole discussion. The senior risaldar gruffly tells the boy to salute and hustles him out of the office, whence he is carried off by his exultant friends.

By the time that these transactions have been completed it is well on into the afternoon, but still another little ceremony remains. Two stalwart young Sikhs, wearing drill order and carrying their swords, are waiting on the office verandah. They spring to attention and salute, and the senior steps forward and says : " Kal acting lince ban gaye, huzoor " (Yesterday we were promoted lance-corporals, your honour). I shake hands with them and congratulate them, and then they raise their sword hilts to me and I place my hand on each; a pretty ceremony symbolic of the service which they will render to us. It is a custom observed by every N.C.O. on his promotion, and these two fledglings will wait patiently where they are until they have sworn fealty to every British officer in the Regiment.

VIII.

The arrival of a draft of remounts creates a stir and brings out the horse coper in us. The Colonel and the Second-in-Command generally succeed, however, in effecting a just distribution amongst the squadrons and thwarting the designs of the greedy. For the first few days the remounts are segregated in open lines, so that there can be no risk of their bringing infection into the stables. During this time they are handled and groomed and fed by carefully picked men, in order to get them accustomed to their new surroundings. This is none too easy a process in the case of " Direct Issues " fresh from the voyage from Australia. Ragged, unkempt and frightened, these snort and shy away when anyone approaches them, breaking head-collars and ropes in their frantic efforts to escape the imagined oppressor.

Gradually they come to hand under gentle treatment and hand feeding, and in a fortnight their world is a brighter place.

Colour is the deciding factor in the issue to squadrons; chestnuts and odd colours to "A," blacks and browns to "B" and bays to "C" and Headquarters. This is where the fun begins. The Indian officers and the men spend much of their spare time studying the new arrivals, and conferring amongst themselves about what they would like and, more important, what they don't want. Any horse of doubtful colour, if a good one is claimed by at least two squadrons as theirs, but, if bad, is always described by those concerned as of a colour other than theirs. The bluff does not hold but it keeps them all amused. When the partition is finally made, the decisions are accepted quietly, though some unlucky troop leader, given a long-backed, herring-gutted and coffin-headed washy bay, may declaim that there has been a mistake as he has received a chestnut! The joke is never pursued too far, for the perpetrator knows that it may well be turned against him, there being worse fish in the sea than ever came out of it.

* * * * *

The other side of the picture is pathetic. Each year, usually in February, the old and worn out horses, those over fifteen years of age who are not considered fit for one month's active service, are cast and, by a merciful regulation, mostly destroyed. At a preliminary parade the Commanding Officer selects the definitely worn out cases. The casting rolls are then prepared and, on the appointed date, the horses are inspected by veterinary officers, who either grant a reprieve or sign the death warrant.

The poor old war horses are drawn up in line. They all look so anxious, there can be no doubt that they understand the import of the occasion. One by one they are led out and trotted past the watching group of judges. Some look round appealingly, but they must know that we can do nothing. Then—flick—the spirit reasserts itself, the terror dies in their eyes, and they step out as proudly as they did on the day they passed their remount test. These are the cases which make one want to cry. Others, again, seem to realise that their time has come, they accept their fate philosophically and potter past to their doom. I hope that there

is a Horses' Valhalla, where they foregather under a warm sun in lush meadows by clear running streams.

IX.

A batch of recruits have completed their training and have been passed into the ranks. Before this event in their lives is final, however, they must be sworn in with fitting ceremony on a regimental parade.

The squadrons in review order, dismounted with lances, are formed in a hollow square. In single rank in the centre of the square stand some dozen lads, Dogras, Sikhs and Punjabi Mussulmans. They wear "drill order" for, until they are sworn in, they are not considered eligible to wear the "review order" of the full blown sowar. The Regiment stands at ease, with shining lances ordered, the pennons drooping lazily from the staves. They are satisfied. They have these embryo lancers hemmed in in their grasp, certain of their service.

The Second-in-Command draws his sword and brings the Regiment to attention with lances carried. The Colonel walks on to the parade, takes his position facing the recruits and nods to the Risaldar-Major. At a signal from the latter, the three religious teachers of the Regiment, Dogra Pandit, Sikh Granthi and Mussulman Maulvi, march together into the square and halt, each opposite the recruits of his own class. They wear their ceremonial robes of office and each carries the sacred tokens of his creed, on which the oath will be taken. When all is ready they read in turn, slowly and phrase by phrase so that the recruits can repeat the words after them, the oath in accordance with the custom of the class. The oath completed, each recruit steps forward and touches the sacred object with his right hand, and becomes a trained lancer.

The religious teachers withdraw, and the Colonel addresses the rank: "I have watched you daily throughout your training. You have worked hard and now you are up to the standard required by the Regiment. This is only the beginning, however, and you still have much to learn. You have just now sworn that you will serve the Emperor loyally and faithfully, and that you will obey the orders of your superiors, officers or N.C.Os., what-

ever these orders may involve. I know well that you will do so, but I would remind you of another duty. Wherever you are, whatever you do must be done to uphold and brighten the fair name of the Regiment. We are the Enth Regiment in the Army but, and remember it well, we are the First Regiment in work." Just then, by chance, a straying puff of wind catches the lance pennons. They flutter, jubilant, and so the contract is sealed.



**THE TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT OF LIGHT TANKS
WITH THE ARMY IN INDIA.**

By MAJOR M. S. BENDLE, *p.s.c.*, Hodson's Horse, I.A.

*(Published with the permission of the Council of the
United Service Institution of India.)*

LIGHT TANKS WITH CAVALRY.

THE object of the first part of this Paper is to examine the minor tactics of the employment of Light Tanks in co-operation with Cavalry, not to discuss grand tactics or the principles of employment of mobile forces.

The most satisfactory method, however, of approaching the subject appears to be first of all to review the characteristics of the Cavalry arm, and define its most important and most probable tasks, thus visualizing the circumstances in which the co-operation of Light Tanks is most likely to be required. From these premises it will be easy to deduce clearly what the requirements are, and how they can most satisfactorily be met.

The main characteristic of Cavalry is its *mobility*, which confers upon it the power to—

- (a) move and fight at a distance from the main armies;
- (b) perform reconnaissance and protective duties without causing delay to slower moving troops;
- (c) act against an enemy's flanks and rear;
- (d) carry out a rapid and vigorous pursuit;
- (e) fight a delaying action and disengage without being seriously committed;
- (f) move quickly from a position in reserve to take advantage of a fleeting opportunity created by the other arms, exploit success, or restore a dangerous situation.

In addition to the above the mobility of Cavalry confers on it certain other capabilities, which are worthy of mention, *viz.*—

- (a) elasticity, or power to move in extended formations and concentrate rapidly, *i.e.*, controlled dispersion;
- (b) speed of movement across fire-swept areas, thereby avoiding heavy casualties;
- (c) power to charge and assault the enemy with the sword; the “*arm blanche*”;
- (d) ability to co-operate with Armoured Fighting Vehicles; and, as a corollary, to avoid getting to close grips with hostile Armoured Fighting Vehicles.

An analysis of the above characteristics and capabilities shows that Light Tanks possess them also to a marked degree, subject only to certain limitations as to mobility and maintenance. In addition they have the invaluable assets of immunity from S.A.A. fire and ability to fire their machine guns while moving.

It is advisable at this juncture to compare the relative mobility of Light Tanks and Cavalry, as it is upon this factor that the question of their co-operation mainly depends.

Over favourable ground Light Tanks can move distinctly faster than Cavalry, and this will usually enable them to make good delays caused by obstacles. (It is always preferable for them to go round two sides of a triangle along a known track, than to risk, for example, a difficult unreconnoitred obstacle on a more direct route with the consequent additional mechanical and crew strain.)

Apart from maintenance difficulties, which will be referred to later, the main obstacles to Light Tank Movement can be summarized as follows :—

- (a) Any river, canal or stream of more than a certain depth. The stronger the current the less depth can a light tank negotiate owing to water piling up. The conformation of the banks is also all important. (Their fording capacity can doubtless be increased by improved design, and much can be done by Sappers in the way of flying bridges, rafts, etc., such as are at present being experimented with);

- (b) rocky or boulder strewn ground; this may well be impassable to them;
- (c) heavily inundated or rain sodden ground, which reduces their speed;
- (d) very precipitous hill and *nala* country, which may either be impassable to them or only passable at a very slow speed.

Cavalry can traverse all these more rapidly than Light Tanks, and even where Light Tanks are definitely obstructed by them can often carry on. On the other hand there will be occasions when Light Tanks will be able to move over bullet-swept zones where Cavalry are either partially or entirely held up.

What is perhaps not fully realized is the extent to which the efficient co-operation and mobility of these arms depends on their close association and understanding of each other. Thus when all ranks of the Cavalry are "Light Tank minded" they continually study the ground over which they move from the Light Tank aspect, and do not forget to send in information on the subject. At the same time the Light Tank Officers and men are afforded opportunities of seeing how Cavalry move across country. Mutual confidence is thus established. The use of special Cavalry Liaison Sections, to "ground scout" for the Light Tanks, can also be practised. It is obvious that, when the going is good, the Light Tanks will leave a Cavalry Liaison Section far behind, nor can it work in bullet-swept zones. It may also be said that Light Tank personnel should be capable of reconnoitring their own ground, but there is no doubt that, given practice, and used with forethought, such a Liaison Section can be of great assistance in difficult country.

The above leads to the conclusion that in so far as mobility is concerned, Light Tanks are eminently suitable for co-operation with Cavalry over normal ground, though it is essential always to remember the most serious difficulty, which is that as often as not where the Cavalry can go comparatively fast the Light Tanks may have to go slow, and *vice versa*. Just short of an objective in an attack, for example, there may be an unfore-

seen obstacle which horses can surmount without checking but which will hold up Light Tanks for an appreciable period.

From the above emerges the first and most important basic principle underlying the whole tactical employment of Light Tanks with Cavalry. It is best described by the following quotations :—

- (a) From Tank Training, Volume II, 1927, 263. “ The conception of Armoured Fighting Vehicles operating in close physical contact with Cavalry . . . is out of date. They are weapons which make their presence felt at the right time and place by methods best suited to their characteristics ”;
- (b) from Cavalry Training, Volume II, 1929, 85 I. vi. “ Cavalry and Tanks should never be ordered to conform rigidly to each other’s movements, as such action will hamper the initiative of both.”

Whenever it is in any way feasible the Cavalry and the Light Tanks should always co-operate, but their co-operation must be *elastic*; sometimes one will play the more important part in an operation, sometimes the other.

Before proceeding with the actual details of minor tactics in their co-operation it is next necessary to define the basis of discussion more closely by an examination of the following :—

- (a) The most probable and most satisfactory allotment of Light Tanks to Cavalry;
- (b) the scale of opposition and the types of terrain envisaged in various circumstances;
- (c) the actual tasks which are most likely to be allotted to the Cavalry when the Light Tanks are co-operating with them.

(a). Our Cavalry is divided into Army Cavalry, the larger bodies acting under the Commander-in-Chief, and Divisional Cavalry, the Regiments which are allotted as an integral part of each Infantry Division. In the Army in India the highest existing Cavalry formation in peace time is the Brigade, though it is possible that in certain war contingencies a Cavalry or “ Mobile ” Division might be formed. The Cavalry Brigade in India is a self-contained, well-balanced, handy formation, able

to use its mobility, and also, with its six gun R.H.A. Battery and its Machine Guns and Vickers Berthiers, possessed of considerable hitting power, which can if necessary be used to give covering fire to Light Tanks.

It is suggested that normally Light Tanks should not be placed under the orders of a smaller Cavalry Force than a Brigade, except when so temporarily sub-allotted by the Brigade Commander for specific purpose.

The Light Tank Company, at present organized with a Headquarters and three Sections (27 Light Tanks in all), is the smallest self-contained Light Tank unit from an administrative point of view, the Section of seven Light Tanks being the smallest tactical unit for fighting purposes (though a sub-section of three may on occasions be detailed for purely reconnaissance duties). In any case it is a principle of the first importance that they should not be frittered away in "penny packets."

We will assume, therefore, that the normal allotment of Light Tanks to Cavalry in the Army in India will be one Company to a Brigade, and will formulate our tactical handling on this basis.

(b). Next come the scales of opposition and types of terrain, the two being more or less closely inter-related. The opposition can perhaps be suitably divided into three categories:—

- (a) Not quite first class; comprising Cavalry, Artillery and Tanks, as well as Infantry, with Machine Guns and some Anti-Tank weapons and Armour piercing ammunition but comparatively poorly disciplined and organized; fairly competent Air Force;
- (b) Second class; some Cavalry of low category, a little Artillery and a few machine guns, but no Anti-Tank weapons, besides Infantry; negligible Air Force;
- (c) Tribesmen; armed with modern rifles, but with no machine guns or Artillery.

As regards the terrain, two types only, the plains and the mountainous North-West Frontier country of India, are postulated. It will be advisable here to mention briefly their peculiarities and probable effect on Light Tanks. The plains are, for the most part, uniformly flat and devoid of tactical features,

with the exception of a few rivers and a large number of canals and water channels of varying dimensions.

Apart from these, a great many of which are definite Light Tank obstacles, there is nothing to obstruct movement, except recently irrigated or "water worn" areas. Owing to the absence of observation points, and the numerous small woods and villages, however, visibility is surprisingly poor. While rendering control of the Light Tanks and successful co-operation more difficult, this facilitates the attainment of surprise. This terrain is, therefore, not unfavourable to the combined action of Cavalry and Light Tanks.

The North-West Frontier type of country comprises steep rocky ridges and hills, intersected by precipitous boulder strewn *nalas* of varying degrees of difficulty. Except where roads have been constructed only footpaths or mule tracks exist. Light Tanks can work over a proportion of this country, but not by any means all.

In a campaign in the Middle East, however, the most likely terrain is a combination of the two extremes, long stretches of flat plain interrupted occasionally by sharp rocky ridges, such as occur for example in Palestine or Afghanistan.

The inference is that in such a campaign the majority of the Light Tanks available will be used with the Cavalry in the plains sectors in their true mobile rôle, fighting in the mountain areas devolving mainly on the Infantry, occasionally reinforced by some Light Tanks.

Of the opposition envisaged, Class *C* need only be expected in the mountainous tracts, Classes *A* and *B* in either type of terrain.

(c). Now to take the tasks which are most likely to fall to the lot of the Cavalry and Light Tanks.

F.S.R., Volume II, 1919, 11.2 states :—

"The main duties of Cavalry may be classified as follows :—

- (i) Reconnaissance.
- (ii) Protection.
- (iii) Participation in battle, including pursuit and withdrawal.
- (iv) Raids and other special missions.
- (v) Use as a mobile reserve."

Mobile troops, as opposed to the main armies, have always in the past been sent out well ahead, while the latter were still a long way apart, not only to obtain information, but to seize tactical features such as a river line, and to delay the enemy and harass their concentration in such a way that their main forces will be in a less favourable position when battle is joined. In a Middle Eastern terrain, where the comparative paucity of roads and good tracks militates against the successful employment of Armoured Cars on distant reconnaissance, situations are certain to arise in which a Commander will wish to utilize Light Tanks backed up by Cavalry to obtain such information, to confirm or supplement air reports, to "make sure," even though they cannot be expected to operate at such a distance as Armoured Cars where adequate roads do exist.

During the last hundred years such tasks, though losing none of their importance, gradually became so difficult of achievement owing to the reduced assaulting powers of the mounted man against small arms fire, that Commanders were compelled to forego the advantages hitherto accruing therefrom; it now appears reasonable to suggest that the introduction of efficient Light Tanks has restored the value of the mobile troops.

Work of this nature will, therefore, undoubtedly fall to the lot of the Army Cavalry again in the future, and at the very outset of a Campaign; its success or failure may well be one of the determining factors towards final victory or defeat. Working ahead of the main armies Cavalry and Light Tanks may expect ample opportunities of carrying out all the normal operations of war; it will be sufficient for our purpose therefore if we confine our examination of the minor Tank-cum-Cavalry tactics to this type of work, and do not enter into the major tactics of their subsequent participation in the main battle, and thereafter.

The tactical doctrine thus formulated for Light Tank working with Army Cavalry will also hold good in principle should they be employed with a Divisional Cavalry Regiment.

We now have our picture complete:—A Company of Light Tanks with a Cavalry Brigade (Indian War Establishment) working as Army Cavalry out in front of the main Armies, over

a normal Middle Eastern terrain, with the opposition as already depicted.

It is proposed to discuss the use of the Light Tanks in such circumstances under the following headings :—

- (a) On the line of march.
- (b) Reconnaissance.
- (c) With an Advanced Guard.
- (d) Attack and pursuit

against

Armoured Fighting Vehicles.
Cavalry with Artillery.
Infantry with Artillery.
Artillery.

- (e) Defence; Rear and Flank Guards.
- (f) Protection at rest; Outposts and Perimeter Camps.
- (g) N.-W. F. Warfare; (Passage of Defile, withdrawal, etc.).
- (h) Inter-communication and Control.

ON THE LINE OF MARCH.

On the line of march the position of the light tanks must depend firstly, on the tactical situation (including the scale of opposition anticipated) and how it is expected to develop, secondly on the ground, and thirdly, on technical limiting factors. In any case they should not be mixed up with the mounted troops, unless this is unavoidable during a night march which should seldom be the case; they should then be either at the head or the tail of the fighting column. "Cavalry Training," Volume II, 1929, Section 86.2 states: "If secrecy is important, the movement of tanks will *normally* take place at night, and they will have to lie hidden or camouflaged by day." This is perhaps hardly true of light tanks working in co-operation with cavalry, though there will be occasions when night movement is essential. They are inconspicuous and can, it is suggested, if secrecy is all important and at all feasible, move with the cavalry brigade's M.T. column, until the time for their actual participation approaches. Camouflage is not of great value as, unless the ground is very hard or rocky, it is

usually their tracks which betray them to the air, particularly those scrapes on the ground caused by sharp skid turns. After the opening actions of a campaign, however, it seems unlikely, once the enemy have realized that there are light tanks working with our cavalry, that anything but local surprise on the battlefield, due to rapidity of manœuvre, will be possible; they will always be on the look out for them.

Unless the route is good or there is moonlight, or they can use headlights, whether shaded or unshaded, night marching is both exhausting to the crews and uneconomical in petrol and lubricants.

Where rapidity of advance is urgent, the light tanks must be right forward, moving by bounds between the advanced guard and the main body so as to be readily available if required. This presents no difficulty if the cavalry can move off the road, or if the brigade is moving across country, when it will be in diamond or with two regiments forward, in either case the light tanks being well up behind the centre of the landing regiment or regiments.

If the enemy have very few or no anti-tank weapons, the light tanks may well even precede the advanced guard, moving by bounds. They may thus often brush aside weak resistance before it has time to stiffen. They will only be used in this way with a particular object in view.

If not likely to be required tactically it is best for them either to move at the head of the M.T. column, behind the rear guard, or when feasible independently by a separate route.

For all moves it is essential that the cavalry brigade commander should study the ground beforehand with particular reference to the light tanks, and, subject to tactical considerations, move them so that they gain the fullest advantage from it; the ideal being for them to move at their economic speed, by bounds of 4-5 miles at a time, and with sufficient periods for brakebands to cool off after hilly country, so as to obviate avoidable mechanical strain.

RECONNAISSANCE.

When the ground is favourable, and when speed is of paramount importance and the opposition anticipated not too

strong (*i.e.*, Class *B* or *C*), there will be many occasions when they can with advantage be sent on right ahead of the cavalry to reconnoitre tactical localities. They can thus at times secure for the Commander very important information, whether negative or positive, much earlier than would otherwise be possible.

As mentioned before, it is important that light tank officers and men should be trained to the same pitch of efficiency as cavalrymen in reconnaissance work. (The provision of horses in peace will greatly assist them in developing an eye for country.)

Provided the enemy have no anti-tank weapons a light tank reconnaissance detachment will often be able to get close up to an occupied locality or move through a bullet-swept zone, where cavalry could not go, and obtain very valuable information, brushing aside minor opposition.

Consider for example their value for such work through villages, high crops, etc., which are extremely difficult for cavalry to reconnoitre.

On other occasions, where ground precludes their carrying out the reconnaissance themselves, they may by fire be able to make opportunities for Cavalry Patrols to obtain information. In this way they act in similar fashion to a reconnoitring squadron backing up its patrols.

Another extremely useful reconnaissance rôle for light tanks is an evening sortie to ascertain whether or no there are any formed bodies of enemy within such distance of the cavalry, but beyond the range of their outposts, that they are likely to be able to molest them during the night or at first light.

Of course, like all other work allotted to the light tanks, reconnaissance tasks must only be ordered with due regard to the endurance of the crews, and to maintenance duties which will be discussed later. It is probable that very often the number of light tanks available, and the necessity for conserving them for more important tasks, will preclude their use in this way. If they are so used, other essentials are firstly, good orders or instructions to enable them to reconnoitre intelligently and realize the value to the commander of particular positive or

negative information gained, and secondly, adequate facilities for inter-communication.

The commander can himself utilize a light tank in order to traverse bullet-swept areas and carry out personal reconnaissance, but the fighting light tank is not really well adapted for this purpose, as it is difficult to observe from when closed down, and the machine gunner would have to be dismounted. Normally, reliance should be placed on the light tank personnel to render adequate reports.

When light tanks are on in advance, it may sometimes be advisable to detail a light tank escort, with R/T to the Commander moving up in his car ahead of the cavalry to reconnoitre. An alternative, which will be referred to again later, is for the commander to be provided with a track or wheel-cum-track reconnaissance vehicle of his own.

To summarize, reconnaissance is in suitable circumstances a very valuable light tank rôle, and a cavalry commander who does not on occasions make use of them for this purpose will be failing to obtain full value from them. It must not be supposed from this, however, that they are in any way self-sufficing for reconnaissance; as often as not it will fall to the cavalry to find and fix the enemy for them. The type of co-operation must vary, according to the circumstances. Light tanks should not be used for reconnaissance tasks which can be equally well carried out by the cavalry.

WITH AN ADVANCED GUARD.

The preceding remarks dealing with "on the line of march" and "reconnaissance" apply generally. It should be remembered that the basic rôle of the light tanks is to maintain the mobility of the cavalry. They must not be frittered away on detachments, nor prematurely or wantonly exhausted, but by using some with the advanced guard and so maintaining mobility, and brushing aside enemy forward troops to seize tactical localities and discover the dispositions of the larger bodies before resistance can harden, situations which would ultimately have demanded far more rigorous action can often be avoided.

Nevertheless, it should be a principle that detachments should only be made from a light tank company for very cogent reasons. If light tanks are required with the advanced guard the most satisfactory solution is often to place the whole company, under its own commander, forward "in support of" the advanced guard. The company commander can then push up a section, for a limited task, to assist the advanced guard, keeping the brigade commander who himself will be well forward, informed.

The whole company thus remains under the control of its commander, and through him of the brigade commander. As has been found with the battery, Royal Horse Artillery, in an advance this is more satisfactory than placing a section under the command of the advanced guard commander. Circumstances may, of course, arise in which for special reasons it would be advisable to place a section of light tanks under the command of the advanced guard commander for a specific purpose. If opportunity offers, the light tank company may well, as mentioned before, be sent on ahead of the advanced guard to seize a tactical locality. Their use with an advanced guard through a North-West Frontier defile will be dealt with subsequently.

ATTACK AND PURSUIT.

Usually the majority of cavalry work in the opening stages of a campaign or phase of operations will be against the hostile mobile troops, and later when taking part in the main battle cavalry will normally be operating on the enemy's flanks or rear to harass them and exploit success. Cavalry will seldom, if ever, be called upon to carry out a mounted attack against undemoralized Infantry in position, except those of low category ("Cavalry Training," Volume II, Section 1.6).

Consideration of the co-operation of light tanks with cavalry in the attack will, therefore, be mainly confined to the types of attack which are most likely to fall to their lot.

Before entering into the details of their tactical handling in the attack against particular categories of enemy, what

appear to be the most important general principles for all attacks will be enunciated :—

- (i) The light tanks must not be committed prematurely, or used piecemeal, but must be kept for the decisive encounter.
- (ii) Every effort must be made to obtain surprise when they are finally launched.
- (iii) The greatest care must be taken in selecting their objectives and rallying points so as to minimise the risk of confusion between them and the cavalry. As previously emphasized, co-operation must be elastic, though fully co-ordinated.
- (iv) The commander must give the light tank commander very careful orders and instructions, and time for him to pass them on to the occupants of every tank, as, once loosed, inter-communication may be impracticable for a considerable period. The light tank leader must be thoroughly "in the mind" of the cavalry commander, so that he can instinctively act on his own responsibility in such a way that his light tanks will pull their full weight.
- (v) Normally the light tanks should be directed against the enemy's flanks and rear, with the object of silencing hostile machine gun fire; they need not concern themselves with riflemen. They should usually be given the best "going" so that they can exploit to the full their extra speed.
- (vi) Attack does not necessarily imply actual assault or "savage rabbiting"; the best results may often be obtained by machine gun fire at decisive or even effective ranges, particularly if in enfilade.
- (vii) Light tanks, like any other arm of the service, require the maximum possible covering fire when committed to any attack. Supporting artillery must be ready for counter battery and anti-tank targets.

Now to deal briefly with some of the types of enemy which light tanks working with cavalry may be called upon to attack. It is not proposed to consider hostile tanks, as so much would depend on their comparative performance and armament. As is the case with armoured cars, light tanks in opposition would tend to stalemate each other, the victory going to the side with the better leadership, training, and morale, and the best handled mobile artillery in support.

ATTACK ON CAVALRY WITH ARTILLERY.

Even with the element of surprise attained light tanks will find it difficult to deal cavalry a vital blow; they can melt away so quickly and, if committed to dismounted action, will naturally make the fullest use of any Tank obstacles.

Whenever possible, opportunities should be made for the light tanks to lie up and ambush hostile cavalry. If surprise is not attainable the correct "tactique" for the light tanks should be to tempt the hostile guns to drop their trails prematurely during a bound, and then to attack the cavalry from a flank so as to drive them away from the shelter of their artillery. This may provide an opportunity for the cavalry with which they are co-operating. As against infantry, in an attack against dismounted cavalry, light tanks should be directed on their machine guns and light machine guns (and led horses).

ATTACK ON INFANTRY WITH ARTILLERY.

The primary object of a cavalry commander, even when he has light tanks working under his orders, will be—not to attack infantry in position head on—but to manœuvre them out of their positions and get them on the move. The normal tendency of the enemy threatened with such an attack will be, on the other hand, to go to ground behind a tank obstacle if possible. Again for the light tanks surprise is all important, and whenever at all feasible, their attacks should be directed from a flank or the rear on the hostile machine guns.

ATTACK ON ARTILLERY.

Except in the case of exploitation tasks, when the situation is somewhat abnormal, attacks on hostile guns should be avoided,

or left to the cavalry, unless the element of surprise is present, or there is a considerable volume of covering fire. When this is not the case light tanks may find it possible to use ground to defilade themselves from the hostile artillery, at least from view.

Should light tanks ever surprise hostile guns limbered up within 1,000 yards, and if the ground is not unfavourable, a headlong dash from a flank would present reasonable chances of success. Apart from destroying the crews and teams, the impact of a light tank on a field or horse gun will presumably cause certain deterioration thereto. If, however, light tanks are ever committed to attacking guns which are in action, more deliberate and slightly more complicated methods are indicated. For example, one section of the company could be used as bait, the second to attack, and the third to provide covering fire.

The bait section should attempt to get the guns firing at them from comparatively innocuous range, while the remaining two sections, the attack section leading, slip round to the other flank. The attack section then endeavour to interpose the battery teams, etc., between themselves and the guns and shoot them up from behind at short range, while the third section give covering fire with only turrets exposed. In favourable circumstances smoke might be of great value in assisting light tanks to close with such an enemy.

PURSUIT.

"Cavalry Training," Volume II, Section 7.2 says: "The power of cavalry in pursuit can be greatly increased by the bold employment of armoured cars and machine guns in carriers, which by making wide detours, etc."

How much truer is this of light tanks. The combined action of the two may then well be decisive, provided the tank crews and the tanks can stand the strain imposed by exploitation of their powers to the full.

"Cavalry Training," Volume II, Section 7.5, says: "Fatigue and deterioration of horseflesh will be disregarded—risks, which at other times would not be justifiable, must be freely accepted."

TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT OF LIGHT TANKS 61

This must be applied to light tanks with certain reservations; as with cavalrymen, it is obvious that the endurance of all ranks must be taxed to the uttermost if circumstances require it, but if light tanks are to continue functioning at all, spare crews, spare parts, and petrol and lubricants must be got up at regular intervals in a way that is not necessary for cavalry.

DEFENCE, REAR AND FLANK GUARDS.

It is unlikely that in mobile warfare cavalry will have to hold a prepared position for any length of time. For them any form of rigid defence is most undesirable; their rôle is to use delaying action as far ahead as possible of the locality to be safeguarded.

The main rôle of light tanks working with cavalry in the defence will be the decisive counter-attack, along previously reconnoitred routes, either directly the enemy have penetrated the position, or earlier, if a suitable opportunity occurs ("Cavalry Training," Volume II, Section 88.3).

When light tanks are launched on a counter-attack it is most important to limit their objectives clearly and fix a suitable rallying point or points. It may not infrequently be advisable to send them ahead of the cavalry to delay the enemy's advance first at some suitable point beyond the latter's reach. This they are quite capable of doing by adopting an elastic manœuvring rôle, keeping concealed, and opening fire suddenly with only turrets exposed. There is no question of their being asked to hold on to any specific piece of ground as Infantry must do. For this they are entirely unsuitable.

Light tanks are also of great value in defence for checking hostile attempts to outflank.

REAR AND FLANK GUARDS.

For light tanks working with cavalry a rear guard action is very similar to the defence. They will normally be used to counter-attack or to check hostile enterprise on the flanks.

Again their counter-attacks may take place either well away should circumstances permit, or not until the cavalry have become comparatively closely engaged. The counter strokes may

be either by fire of stationary machine guns from a suitable position, or by actual assault. If feasible, when the light tanks are in ambush, a few cavalymen to keep hostile patrols at a distance with rifle fire, and so not disclose their presence prematurely, are advisable. Surprise is all important.

It seems unlikely that within the cavalry brigade it will often be necessary to utilize light tanks with a flank guard, though such occasions may sometimes occur, for example when the normal rate of advance of the brigade is for some reason retarded, and there is a definite threat from a flank, possibly from enemy armoured fighting vehicles. Their flank guard work will therefore be mainly confined to occasions when the whole brigade is doing flank guard to another force.

In either circumstances, unless owing to the lie of the country some locality exists to which they can be sent forward with real advantage, they should usually be kept in the flank guard commander's hand as part of his mobile reserve, and only employed when he has received fairly definite information. If committed prematurely when carrying out lateral protection, it is all the more difficult to extricate them in time to counter what subsequently proves to be a more serious threat.

PROTECTION AT REST. (*Outposts and Perimeter Camp*).

Light tanks must have regular opportunities for routine maintenance, but there seems to be no reason why they should not at times be located in an outpost system, so that their searchlights and machine guns can be turned on to one or more localities in which enemy might be expected to mass. And, as mentioned in an earlier paragraph, an evening sortie by light tanks just before dark which can satisfy the commander that there are no formed bodies of the enemy within 9 or 10 miles of his force, *i.e.*, considerably further than normal cavalry night outpost dispositions can ensure, must be most reassuring. A task of this sort will, however, frequently be prohibited by the necessity for rest and time for maintenance.

In a perimeter camp, light tanks should not be asked to hold part of the perimeter, but a clear track should be left the whole way round inside the outer defences, so that in emergency they

can move unimpeded to any portion to use their searchlights and machine guns.

NORTH-WEST FRONTIER WARFARE.

In North-West Frontier warfare the scope of cavalry action in the hills is limited; they cannot be expected to piquet a defile of any size or length, though they may have to seize the mouth of one in front of the slower moving infantry or to cover the infantry withdrawal through the foot-hills once they have emerged from a defile. Cavalry can rarely expect that tribesmen will allow themselves to be caught on ground suitable for mounted action.

In carrying out such operations as the above, however, light tanks can be of the greatest assistance, provided that the ground is not so precipitous or boulder-strewn as to limit their movement unduly.

When, as will usually be the case in such warfare, the enemy are not equipped with artillery or anti-tank weapons, light tanks can with great advantage be sent on ahead of the advanced guard and piqueting troops, either to cover the piquets into position by shooting up the reverse slopes of the features to be piqueted, or occasionally to seize the feature themselves, if the ground is suitable, though this will seldom be the case.

When covering piquets up into position, it is essential that, in order to avoid confusion and casualties to the piqueting troops from light tank fire, all the light tank crews should know exactly where the piquets are going to and by what route.

Another minor difficulty is the disposal of the led horses of cavalry piquets; if the gorge is narrow and precipitous, they may have to be sent some distance from the piquet, though a more satisfactory arrangement, if feasible, is for them to proceed with the main body, M.T. vehicles being left to bring in the piquets after withdrawal. If this is not done they may be very late in rejoining, and may also delay the light tanks which are covering their withdrawal. For this sort of task light tanks have a great advantage over armoured cars in that they can turn in their own length in places where the latter could not turn at all.

Light tanks are of equal value for withdrawing piquets as they can be left to the last with impunity, they are also useful, if they can be spared, for escorting the cavalry transport column through a defile, during the passage of which they can in addition provide some anti-aircraft protection should it be required.

INTER-COMMUNICATION AND CONTROL.

The foregoing examination of the tactical handling of light tanks with cavalry has shown that even with the fullest facilities for training together, and with leadership that is potentially all that can be desired, little can be achieved without adequate machinery for inter-communication and control, both between the cavalry and the light tanks and within the light tank company. More particularly is this so owing to the fact that "articulated dispersion" is one of the essentials of their co-operation; the distances apart at which they must be considered in touch for purposes of inter-communication being at times considerable.

There can be no doubt that for both purposes R/T provides the most important link. Within the company sets should be provided at least down to section, if not to sub-section commanders.

If it is to be the responsibility of the light tank company to provide the link with the cavalry commander then an additional tracked vehicle or vehicles equipped with R/T must be included in their establishment. It is suggested that a more satisfactory alternative would be to provide the cavalry brigade commander with a reconnaissance vehicle of similar capacity on a track, or wheel-cum-track, chassis, equipped with R/T., which could be included in the war establishment of brigade headquarters or the brigade signal troop and manned by Royal Corps of Signal personnel.

Though a vital necessity, R/T alone will not suffice; at present it is only one-way and somewhat slow, though this should in time be remedied; there are also difficulties with regard to wave-lengths, interference and jamming.

Supposing for instance a cavalry brigade commander is in the fortunate position of having aircraft working with him as

well as light tanks, and of having W/T communication with the former as well as R/T with the latter.

It will be necessary to set up the W/T set approximately a mile from the R/T vehicle or the one will jam the other. The difficulties resulting from the multiplication of W/T and R/T sets within a formation, apart from deliberate interference by hostile wireless, can be readily imagined.

Auxiliary means must therefore be developed to the full. There must be a galloper party for the light tank company at brigade headquarters; this can be provided by one of the cavalry regiments, and might consist of a selected N.C.O., with a horseholder, and a machine gunner, trained to operate the light tank type of machine gun, who when required can hand over his horse to the tank commander and take his place in the tank. There is also the liaison section ground scouting for the tanks which has been mentioned before; this can in emergency be used for inter-communication purposes.

When not in bullet-swept zones and the going is sufficiently good, motor cyclist despatch riders and baby cars (of which the latter are probably the more satisfactory) are economical and rapid, but they are naturally not to be relied upon when the ground is difficult, and of little or no value in bullet-swept areas. Once contact has been gained, if R/T fails, it may be necessary to use a fighting tank for inter-communication between the brigade and the tank commander. In emergency, aircraft also can and should be utilized to convey important information or orders to the light tanks, and to discover their whereabouts for the commander.

Within the light tank company various codes of flag signals have been tried, and are no doubt of value though only up to a very limited range. It is also possible that at times cavalry and light tanks might make use of the brief cavalry battle code, but with the same limitations.

One of the most important adjuncts towards control within the company is the development of standard tactics for different circumstances, so as to avoid as far as possible an uncoordinated *mêlée*. This will be assisted if all sections in the company are homogeneous. It is for consideration whether it would not be

advisable to eliminate the sub-section leader link, and reorganize the Company with a larger number of slightly smaller sections, say of 4 tanks each, or the maximum which it is found one man can hope to control during battle. This would greatly simplify questions of inter-communication, command, etc.

Both within the company, down to individual tank crews, and from the cavalry commander to the light tank commander, the vital importance of clear orders and instructions, and the one being in "the mind" of the other, has already been stressed.

LIGHT TANKS WITH INFANTRY.

Not only on account of their scope of action and actual speed in movement, but for almost every reason, there can be no doubt that light tanks are more suitable for co-operation with cavalry than with infantry: their retention for use with the latter must usually result in the surrender of much of their mobility, and in the majority of cases be uneconomical.

Infantry have not the mobility either to find and fix suitable targets for light tanks in mobile warfare to give them the necessary covering fire when they are operating from a flank or the rear as they normally should be, or to exploit success when they achieve it. It also seems inevitable that light tanks working with infantry will be mainly in demand when the latter are committed to attack a hostile force in position, and will be used for tasks which would be more suitable for medium tanks or at least for light tanks reinforced by medium tanks.

Apart from operations confined to the mountainous country of the North-West Frontier type, it seems probable, therefore, that the majority, if not all, of the light tanks available, will be utilized at all events in the initial phases of a campaign to co-operate with the cavalry in carrying out those vital tasks which then fall to the lot of mobile troops, which have already been discussed. Possibly certain companies might be retained in G.H.Q. reserve.

There is no doubt, however, that in mountain warfare, providing they can move over some of the ground, light tanks will be of invaluable assistance to infantry in all the more usual operations, and as piqueting a defile, destruction of a village,

withdrawal, etc. In this type of warfare, in fact, they can act as mobile pill-boxes, most demoralising to the tribesmen.

Apart from mountain warfare, should a proportion of the available light tanks be allotted from the outset, or later withdrawn from the mobile troops, to work with infantry, it seems probable that they will definitely be retained in the hands of the higher commander as a mobile reserve, for a decisive stroke should conditions permit, or to restore the situation.

It seems unlikely that a whole company of light tanks will normally be allotted to an infantry brigade; a section would be more appropriate, the company being retained as divisional or army troops. Possibly at times a section might be utilized to co-operate with the divisional cavalry regiment with advantage. Another possible rôle is in co-operation with embussed infantry, though the tactical limitations of such a force are too well known to require elaboration here.

In any case the principles for their employment should not differ materially from those enunciated for their co-operation with the army cavalry.

MAINTENANCE AND SUPPLY.

For light tanks problems of maintenance and supply are of very great importance, and will more often than not dictate the extent to which they can be employed. It follows that, in the first place, if operations of any length and severity are in view, the reserve supply of light tanks for replacement of total losses must be adequate.

Particularly in a Middle Eastern theatre, light tanks will seldom if ever be able to "live on the country" in the same way as the horse can. Bhoosa and grain can often be found and collected; petrol and oil very rarely.

The results of exhaustion are very different also on a light tank company compared with, say, a regiment of cavalry. Generally speaking a tank is either fit to run or definitely unfit, in which case it must be left behind until the defect can be put right. The horse on the other hand carries on long after he is much below par. He will, and often did in the Great War, carry his rider for miles while the latter was fast asleep from

exhaustion; the most ardent advocate of mechanization will hardly claim that the light tank will do likewise, though over reasonable ground the two members of the crew might take turns at driving and sleeping. But the driver of a light tank, even over good going, must always keep continually alert.

It appears essential that at least a proportion of the light tank spare crews should be carried on track or wheeled-cum-track vehicles which can come up to the fighting tanks during pauses in the operations, so as to relieve them as required. These vehicles might also carry a first refill of ammunition.

With the whole of "A" echelon carried on 30-cwt. six-wheelers there is little or no hope of any such reliefs until late in the evening, as unarmoured six-wheelers can seldom move across country unprotected when close up to the fighting troops, and may not be able to move across country at all without the assistance of the field troop. They must therefore travel with the remainder of the brigade's "A" echelon M.T. This is not satisfactory, though it may be possible in emergency to transfer a limited amount of ammunition from the less heavily engaged tanks to others which have run out. As regards crews, the only solution at present is that they must see through a day's operations, the reserves tackling the evening overhaul. While this is the case it seems probable that occasions may arise when full value will not be obtainable from the light tanks owing to crew exhaustion. Another course worthy of consideration would be to have all the light tanks "portés" on "camions" as in the French Army; the tanks only being released when operations are imminent. This not only saves the crew, but is also much more economical in petrol and in tank tracks which otherwise deteriorate more rapidly than other components.

Provided that six-wheelers can follow the cavalry and light tanks at all, and with the assistance of the field troop it is surprising what difficult country they can now cross, there should be no difficulty in bringing up petrol and spare parts from supply refilling points in the evenings, at any rate sufficient for a limited number of days' operations. If no M.T. is expected to reach the column for a definite period, then the circuit

of action of the light tanks must be limited to what they can carry with them.

For light tanks working with cavalry it is essential to eliminate the three-tonner lorry from their organization entirely: at present the company "B" echelon is much too unwieldy, and, if the ground is at all difficult, cannot be expected to be "up" in the evening, during mobile operations, in sufficient time to admit of the necessary overhauls being carried out. The inclusion in the "B" echelon of certain special vehicles for the salvage of derelict light tanks is probably a necessity.

R/T between the cavalry commander, the fighting company, and its "A" and "B" echelons will of course simplify these administrative problems to an appreciable extent.

It follows that the commander in employing his tanks, must always think out the administrative problems involved beforehand, and must, in allotting their tasks, consider fully this question of maintenance.

There has as yet been no opportunity of assessing the endurance of the crews if they have to operate under war conditions in hot weather for considerable periods, closed down.

CONCLUSIONS.

To summarize, it is suggested that the following are the most important conclusions which can be logically derived from an examination of the subject:—

1. The characteristics of light tanks make them eminently suitable for co-operation with cavalry; with which they form such a formidable combination that they restore the former value of mobile troops.
2. Apart from a limited rôle in North-Western Frontier warfare, or against opposition of definitely low category elsewhere, their employment with infantry is far less likely to achieve far reaching results, and must mean at least a partial surrender of one of their most important assets—mobility.
3. Their most valuable and probable rôle will be in co-operation with cavalry, employed at the very outset

of a campaign or phase of operations on army cavalry tasks, thereafter co-operating in the battle and exploiting success. The most suitable allotments as far as the army in India is concerned is therefore a company of light tanks to a cavalry brigade, unless a mobile division is created, with possibly a proportion in G.H.Q. reserve.

4. The salient principles in their tactical handling are as follows: These apply whether they are co-operating with cavalry or with infantry, but perhaps require more stressing in the former case owing to the far greater mobility of the operations:—
 - (a) Co-operation, though “intimate,” in that the light tank commander must be really “in the mind” of the superior commander, and all ranks of both arms imbued with mutual confidence and understanding, must be elastic, though fully co-ordinated.
 - (b) Detachments should only be made from the light tank company temporarily and for very definite reasons; whenever possible the whole company should work under the control of the company commander. Light tanks must not be frittered away in “penny packets,” or on unimportant tasks, or tasks which the other arms can perform satisfactorily without them. They must be retained for the decisive blow. At the same time their most valuable characteristics of mobility and protected fire power must be exploited to the full.
 - (c) “Light tank mindedness” must be developed in all ranks of the arms of the service with which they are working. The Commander must continually keep in mind the light tank aspect of every situation, and when employing them must make due allowance for their maintenance.
 - (d) In all attacks light tank objectives and rallying points must be very carefully selected to obviate risk of collision with their own troops; generally speaking they should be directed on the enemy’s flanks or rear,

their main task being to neutralize machine gun fire likely to hold the other arms up. Fire from stationary light tanks may frequently, at decisive or effective ranges, be of greater value than shock tactics.

5. (a) The machinery for inter-communication and control must be developed, the first essential being the provision of R/T.

(b) First line maintenance echelons must be re-organized on a more mobile basis.

6. If it is accepted that the most important rôle of the light tanks will be with the army cavalry, commencing from the very outset of a campaign, it is clear that a very high standard of tactical co-operation between the two arms must be reached and maintained in peace.

It seems obvious therefore that the only way in which this can be achieved is by including a company or squadron of light tanks as an integral part of a cavalry brigade in India, as were the horse brigade machine gun squadrons in the Great War. Whether the light tank unit should be cavalry or Royal Tank Corps hardly comes within the terms of reference of this paper.



THE CREAM OF SPORT

BY R. K. M. BATTYE.

A LONG, dusty train journey, a visit to the local Forest Office, forty dustier miles in a lorry, a night in the Wainganga river-bed, another in a bullock cart and a fortnight's unsuccessful pursuit of a problematic tiger. And the month was March.

Afternoon and North Chanda, a rickety camp table, indigestible scones, transparent butter and eye flies—but the month was still March. My camp was pitched near a village under the shade of some tamarind trees and I was toying with one of those unattractive bearer-made travesties of the product of the Scottish girdle, and reflecting generally on the discomforts that the keen but impecunious sportsmen had to put up with if he chose the hot weather in which to work, when presently a half-naked Gond strolled towards the camp out of the jungle. I paid no heed to him but continued with my tea and reflections, and he passed on to the servants' tents behind.

Presently Abdul, trusted henchman and cook, brought over some more scones, his face was lit up with a knowing smile. It did not matter now how bad his cooking was. Master would forget all about scones when he knew what Abdul was smiling at.

"Sahib," he beamed, "a Jungli has just come in to say that one of his largest she-buffalos has been killed by a tiger!"

"Then send me the Jungli, oh Abdul."

The little man strolled up with his axe over his shoulder.

"Well, what news have you brought?"

"Sirkar, the very worst has happened. My finest she-buffalo which was due to calf next month has been killed and devoured by a shaitan tiger."

Shaitan hell, thought I. "But where, oh Jungli?"

"Sirkar, was I not sitting on the bund of the Pipri talao watching my herd graze their way past towards the village last evening? Did not the shaitan spring out of the bushes, seize my she-buffalo by the throat and there devour her? Is her carcass not now lying in the open maidan near the Pipri lake?"

"And how far is her carcass from the jungle?" I queried.

"Sirkar, it is perhaps two hundred paces, no trees are near."

"Abdul, put me some supper together. Bansi Ram, my pillows, flea bag, rifle, gun, revolver and the longest skinning-knife. I will start in fifteen minutes' time."

The sun was just going down when after a tiresome six mile tramp through the forest we came out on to a large clearing at one end of which was a small artificial lake. What water there was left in it was held up by an embankment along the western side. Round the others where the water had receded were growing clumps of low rushes—some green and sprightly but others withered and bent; a few dried-up buffalo-wallows further from the water showed the extent to which the lake had one time reached.

"Now where is the carcass of your unfortunate she-buffalo?"

"There, Sirkar, can you not see her horns and her ribs sticking up out of those dry rushes over there?"

"Ah, yes, but the vultures have picked it clean of all succulent matter, I see. I wonder, will the shaitan think it worth his while returning to feed on bones to-night?"

"Without doubt, Sirkar, he will surely come, if for no other reason that to drink of the waters of the lake, and he will assuredly pass by way of the carcass."

"C'est un fait accompli," I almost expected to hear him say next.

It did not take long to decide on the plan of campaign, there were only two choices: one, to retire to the nearest village for the night and perhaps make a very early approach towards the carcass just before dawn in the hope of finding the tiger still there cracking the bones; and two, to make a "chupao" among the dry rushes near the carcass and sit and watch for his approach all night. Being an enthusiastic sportsman and well

armed, the latter course appealed to me the more. So with feverish haste the jungli and his companion were set to work on scooping out a hollow in the soft earth with their hands, while I went off to the nearest bushes and cut some leafy branches to spread round the hiding place.

In ten minutes' time all was ready. The hollow was about 18 inches deep and 7 feet long by 3 feet wide, with a small log at one end against which the rifle was propped pointing towards the carcass fifteen yards away. A parapet of foliage surrounded the hollow and inside were spread my flea-bag and pillows; a gun loaded with lethal lay at hand on one side and the revolver, water bottle and cold chicken on the other.

"All right, that's grand—now you two go off to the village and pray for me, and don't come near this place again till it's light to-morrow morning."

"Insha' Allah, Sirkar, may the tiger be dead by then."

"Insha' Allah," I replied.

Then with one last look at me as much as to say "you're for it," and a warning on no account to sleep, the little man and his companion disappeared into the quickly gathering dusk.

It was a dead still night with a cloudless sky, and the moon, then in its second quarter was well up in the welkin, shedding a pale sombre light over the almost bare surroundings and throwing up the edge of the jungle away behind into black relief. The faint drumming of a tom-tom from the village came floating up through the calm air, and the occasional splash of a fish or bull-frog in the water were the only sounds that disturbed the silence. A bat flitted across the moon and a few mosquitos danced in the air above my head. I lay staring up at the stars and gave myself up to reflection. What a marvellous night and, for me, what a unique situation.

* * * * *

I had been drowsing thus for perhaps an hour, very sceptical about the possible return of the tiger when from quite close there came the sound of muffled grunts and rumblings mingled with the crackling of dry rushes. At first I thought it was a sounder of pig making their way down to drink and rootling up the rushes

as they passed, but some instinct warned me to wait until whatever it was had passed before sitting up and taking a look. It was just as well that I did, for a moment or so later when I ventured to look up *there* was a large tiger not more than 15 yards from me, making his way briskly down to the water. His near quarter presented itself towards me and he was walking fast, apparently having either failed to notice my presence or else perhaps he thought I was some harmless "faquir" doing yoga exercises in the moonlight. It took some seconds to recline again noiselessly and to manœuvre the heavy rifle round from its position against the log and when again I raised myself into a sitting position there was no sign of the tiger. I imagined I heard him taking a bath in the lake, but the imagination in circumstances such as these is very fertile and the splashings continued for a longer time than a hungry tiger would probably have wasted on a bath; perhaps a school of frogs or turtles was having a whoopee party in the shallows. Reluctantly I lay down again in the hope that if I kept quiet the tiger would return to his waiting dinner. My attention and senses were all alert and I had never before experienced such excitement; a new sensation had been achieved!

There was not very long to wait, but the next visitors, I confess, gave me a surprise. It was just after 10 o'clock when a faint crackling of rushes over on my right made me sit up, and there, perhaps 80 yards away, one behind the other, two nearly full grown tiger cubs were stalking stealthily down towards the lake. This time I wasted no valuable seconds in concealment but heaved the rifle round, turned on the electric torch and fired at the rearmost tiger. The rifle roared in the still quiet night, a spurt of flame and a little smoke for a moment obscured my vision and then I saw to my disgust that I had allowed too much lead for movement and the two tigers were galloping off in different directions, their tails erect and their thoughts probably concentrated on their quickest way to safety.

"Well," I thought, "I deserve that: I can't expect to be successful when I behave like a damned fool and try to shoot tigers in the night at 80 yards' range in a state of insurpassable excitement and with a heart thumping at sixteen annas."

I considered myself fortunate to have seen three tigers as it was, and being persuaded that it was impossible that any more should come after that explosion, I turned over and soon fell asleep.

Much has been written on the subject of the various noises tigers give vent to at different times. It is said that their ordinary prowling call "Aungh-Ha" is frequently abbreviated into a sharp high-pitched "Ungh," and that it is sometimes indistinguishable from the bell of a startled *sambhur*. I certainly thought it was a *sambhur* giving the alarm when I was awakened at 2.30 a.m. that night, but thinking things over more recently I believe that it may well have been a tiger that was responsible for this interruption to my dreams. The fact remained, however, that something was about, and whether it was a tiger or just a *sambhur* it made no odds; if a *sambhur*, then what was the cause of its alarm? Two plover screeched together: "Did-you-do-it, Did-you-do-it—did—did—did——" then silence for 10 minutes while I lay like a log and listened, a thousand fancies chasing one another through my mind, till I almost slept.

Then, all at once, a stertorous sniffing, followed by a grating, dragging sound behind my head from the direction of the buffalo's carcass brought me back to the earth. Something was at the "kill" barely 15 yards away. My hair stood on end and flesh crept as I was certain my thumping heart would be heard and give the show away. Slowly I turned over so that the butt of the rifle which was already pointing towards the "kill" fitted into its accustomed place, then I raised my head and shoulders and turned on the light. The beam was reflected in two enormous pale emerald eyes which were suddenly turned towards me. They gave to the dull orange form of the tiger a startlingly vital appearance as he stood there almost broadside on staring at where I was lying. His head was held high and at his feet was the carcass of the buffalo by now some 50 yards from me.

"Thank God, there was the little log on which to steady the trembling rifle." I drew a bead on the junction of the neck and shoulder, then squeezed the trigger. There was a roar from the

rifle (and possibly tiger, too) and the flame and smoke mingling with the dust kicked up by the shock of discharge so close to the ground made it impossible to see what was happening. The torch was useless against such fog so I turned it out and sprang to my feet with the rifle pointing at the ground 5 yards in front. I could see much better by the moonlight if the wounded animal were charging; but no, there was only a mass on the ground among the rushes where the tiger had been and no sign of him crawling off. I slipped another cartridge into the right barrel and fired again at the mass, with no result. All seemed well so I sat down and stared at it through glasses. It was impossible to make out whether the mass was tiger or carcass or both, and although I could see no stripes I was sure that I had not missed: foresight was well down, rifle accurate and steady, yet doubts kept creeping in. For an hour I lay and worried, sitting up every now and then to take another look. I could not make it out.

By 4 o'clock the moon had moved well round in the sky. Vitality was then at its lowest ebb and the inevitable reaction after the preceding few hours' excitement was beginning to creep in. I thought that I might rest in peace and quiet till it got light; but this was not to be.

Whether I heard or sensed the presence I cannot say, I can only remember feeling the necessity to sit up again and look round, so cautiously I peered up over the log. All seemed serene and I could make out nothing moving about at first. Then away over on the far side of the clearing just coming out of the jungle I saw something approaching. It might have been a pig, or a bear, or anything, but it was too far away to see clearly what it was. I kept my head down and watched through a small gap in the foliage while the animal boldly approached the mass.

It was half-way there before I realized that it was a tiger—another full grown one, unwounded and apparently in perfect health, the fifth I'd seen since taking my cold chicken supper, and I'd eschewed the flask, what is more!

He glided quietly round the mass sniffing here and there but kept on the move the whole time. I wondered if he'd come on and sniff at my hollow, but fortunately he decided to return

without completing his investigations, and after a minute or so's suspense I was relieved to see him disappear into the jungle by the way he had come. Sleep after this was impossible. I drowsed till dawn.

When the light came I pulled on my boots and prepared for disappointment. It came. All there was to be seen was the straggling carcass of the buffalo with no sign of a tiger dead or wounded anywhere near.

"Was all that excitement just a dream?" But no, the carcass was definitely further away from the hollow than it had been the previous evening, and what about the three empty brass cases on my flea-bag? Perhaps there would be some blood about.

Just then my orderly and the two villagers with a few of their friends arrived from Pipri and I recounted to them the night's experiences. They had heard the shots and had arranged for a bullock cart which was just coming.

"Optimists."

"Well, let's just have a look round for any blood, I am sure I hit the creature though it disappeared like a bat into hell and I never saw it again after I fired."

We searched in silence for some minutes—then

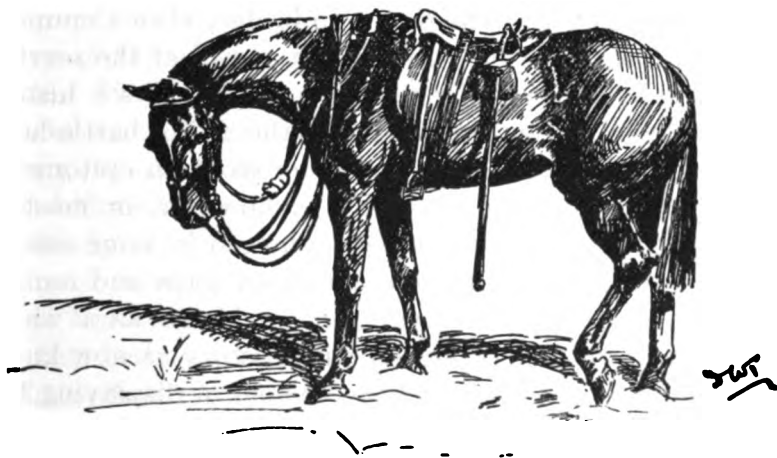
"Sahib, khun yeh hai!" sang one of the little men pointing with triumphant urgency towards the ground at his feet, his eyes almost popping out of their sockets. Sure enough there was some fresh blood, a little trickle, 10 yards from the carcass and on the side opposite to my hiding place. So he'd gone this way!

We formed up into a short phalanx with protection at the head and on each side and proceeded thus for some way. The blood trail got plainer and the grass longer the further we went. Excitement was intense. We could see the trail by the blood-soaked grass away on ahead for 30 yards or so, then suddenly it gave out where the grass was thickest. Very carefully we approached the patch ready to meet a charge at any moment, but nothing happened. Nearer and nearer we crept until at last there was no further to go and we peered in, and there, lying on his left side showing up bright orange against the

grass in the morning sunlight lay the tiger. He was dead right enough; the bullet had entered in front of the left shoulder and passed out behind the right where there was a gaping wound. Rigormortis had set in and he was as stiff as my Battery Commander after a guest-night!

Then everybody started shouting at once; the orderly stood on his head; a villager gingerly poked the corpse with his forefinger, and I unloaded and rolled in the dewy grass for it was good to be living; the bullock cart arrived and nearly ran me down.

Virtue is its own reward and folly the reward of the fool, but some things can only be achieved by a judicious exercise of both, the cream of sport for one.



*CAVALRY BATTLE-HONOURS**The Present Omissions*

By C. T. ATKINSON and MAJOR H. FITZM. STACKE, M.C., *p.s.c.*

A War Office letter issued early in this year (1934) has announced that the authorities have decided to re-open the general question of battle-honours for past wars, that regiments may submit claims for such additional distinctions as they might desire, and that the closing date for the submission of claims will be the 1st July, 1935. No restrictions are laid down as to what regiments may or may not claim; and the evident intention of the War Office at present is to ascertain the wishes and desires of regiments in this matter.

The purpose for which battle-honours are borne on the standards, guidons and appointments of regiments was indicated in 1882 by the Duke of Cambridge, then Commander-in-Chief, as being that of "affording a record of the services of the regiment and furnishing to the young soldiers a history of its gallant deeds"; and undoubtedly the roll of battle-honours of each regiment does furnish to some extent an epitome of its record in the field. As we shall see, however, in most cases this record is at present incomplete—indeed in some cases it is definitely misleading; for there are many gaps and omissions, whilst the roll of battle-honours, if considered as a whole, is most curiously out of proportion with history as now known.

This is due to the fact that the custom of displaying battle-honours on standards, guidons and appointments was only adopted as a general practice about half-way through the "pre-war" history of the Army, at the beginning of the XIXth century; and for a long time this practice was not made retrospective, so that during the greater part of the reign

of Queen Victoria regiments bore battle-honours for the campaigns of Wellington (1808–15) but none for most of the earlier campaigns, such as those of Marlborough (1702–12). Eventually as historical knowledge grew, a Committee—the “Alison Committee”—was appointed in 1882 to consider revision. This Committee and the subsequent “Ewart Committee,” which met intermittently between 1909 and 1914,* recommended various past battles, which were then granted as battle-honours—notably “Warburg,” “Beaumont” and “Willems,” now borne by so many cavalry regiments—but for various reasons this work of revising the roll of battle-honours had not yet been completed when the last war swept all matters historical aside. Now at last the question has been reopened, and it is hoped that historical research will enable the outstanding omissions to be rectified.

That some such revision would be of value can hardly be doubted when the present gaps and omissions in the record are realised. Out of the total of 76 battle-honours which at present stand as record of the deeds of our cavalry during the 250 years which elapsed between the Restoration in 1660 and the outbreak of the last Great War, only 8 represent the entire first half of that long period—from 1660 to 1790—as against 23 for the campaigns of the ensuing 25 years, from 1790 till 1815, and 45 for the last 99 years from 1816 till 1914. This disproportion is not to be attributed to any lack of deeds deserving of honour in the early period, which witnessed some of the most remarkable exploits of British horse ; it is due to a variety of causes which we will briefly summarise.

First and foremost is the fact that until recent years the records of the early campaigns, such as those of Marlborough and of Cumberland, had not been adequately studied and recorded, so that even such gallant episodes as Ligonier’s last great charge at Lauffeldt were known only to a few historians, not to the Army at large. This has now to some extent been rectified, at any rate as regards Marlborough’s campaigns, for

* A full account of these two War Office Committees and of the manner in which the present roll of battle-honours has been evolved may be found in an article by Major T. J. Edwards in the April, 1934 number of the “Journal of the Royal United Service Institution.”

several successive works of historical value have recently increased the general knowledge.

Secondly, and in part because of this lack of knowledge, the scale on which the more recent campaigns have been rewarded with battle-honours has not as yet been followed in the case of the earlier wars. For example, out of Marlborough's ten years of fighting in the Low Countries only four great battles have been selected for commemoration, all minor engagements being disregarded, whereas in more recent campaigns battle-honours have been awarded for fights both great and small, ranging down to actions by single cavalry regiments.* Further, since the days of the Peninsular War it has been customary to grant, in addition to distinctions for individual battles, a general honour for each campaign, to record the operations as a whole, to cover the minor actions not sufficiently important for individual distinctions, and to reward the work of regiments which missed the major engagements; but such "campaign" honours have not been granted as yet for the earlier wars.

Thirdly, until recent years there has been a general rule that battle-honours should commemorate only successful campaigns and battles. This rule, it is true, has not been without exceptions—for who could affirm that the famous Charge of the Light Brigade at Balaklava was in any real sense a tactical victory?—or that the campaigns of the Duke of York in Flanders in 1793–5† were strategically successful?—but its existence has prevented recognition of many gallant deeds. In the battle-honours granted for the last Great War, however, this rule has been altogether set aside; and unsuccessful campaigns, such as that in Gallipoli, are now commemorated by battle-honours, as also is the gallant but unsuccessful Defence of Kut.

Fourthly, there has been a ban on the commemoration of Civil Wars.

* As an example may be quoted the brilliant little action of Sahagun (1809), an affair of 500 sabres against 450 (for details see Fortescue, Vol. VI).

† For which half-a-dozen battle-honours have been awarded for individual engagements.

The disproportion, due to these causes, between the earlier and the later periods of our Army's history, so far as battle-honours are concerned, has led to some curious anomalies in the cases of those regiments which earned distinction in the earlier wars but missed the later campaigns. Thus until the year 1909 the Queen's Bays bore only one battle-honour, and even now have only three, to record their two centuries of service before the last war; whilst the 8th Hussars, raised in 1693, have at present not one single battle-honour to commemorate the first 110 years of their distinguished career. Even in the case of the younger cavalry regiments the honours now borne on their appointments do not fully record their varied service in the field. It may, therefore, perhaps be of interest to consider in outline those deeds of our earlier wars which would appear to merit their long-delayed recognition.

The fighting history of our Army really begins with a series of Civil Wars, from Naseby, where the forerunners of some of our oldest regiments fought on opposing sides, to Sedgemoor and the Boyne. These battles, however, come into a special and a controversial category. Let us note simply that at the Boyne and at Aughrim the opposing army was in large part French, so that this was not altogether a Civil War; and then let us pass to the earliest campaigns of the British Regular Army in Europe, those fought under King William in the Low Countries between 1689 and 1697.

The very first battle of those campaigns seems worthy to be commemorated by the regiments engaged. On 17th August, 1689, the nucleus of an expeditionary force which had been sent out to co-operate with our allies in Flanders—the 2nd Troop of Life Guards and the Blues, with two battalions of the Foot Guards and seven of the Line—took part in the notable fight at Walcourt, not far from Maubeuge. The British infantry were the first into action, and put up a fine defence until a counter-



Life Guards
1689

attack headed by the Life Guards and the Blues swept down on the advancing French and drove them back in rout. Both regiments of our Household Cavalry would have good reason to commemorate this first victory of the British Army in its most famous theatre of war.

The ensuing campaigns were not marked by any other such brilliant success: indeed, the two big battles of Steenkirk (1690) and Landen (1693) were definite defeats; but in both these battles the British cavalry displayed great gallantry and suffered heavy loss in covering and protecting the retreat of the defeated but unbroken battalions of Foot. At Landen, King William himself led the Life Guards and five regiments of Horse* to meet the French cavalry, whom they engaged most gallantly, making charge after charge against greatly superior numbers to cover the retreat of the exhausted infantry. Throughout the seven successive years of campaigning from 1691 to 1697 the cavalry were actively engaged, in reconnaissance, in covering the sieges of fortresses,† in protecting convoys and foraging parties, in raids on the enemy's lines and in every other kind of minor operation. At present the regiments engaged display no record of that hard work and good service, but even if the two principal battles must be acknowledged as defeats, the campaigns as a whole cannot be dismissed as unsuccessful. The Peace of Ryswick, with which they ended marks a definite check to Louis XIV, a blow to his pride and prestige, as he had to surrender conquests and to recognize William III as King. At the least, therefore, a general campaign honour of "Flanders," with the appropriate dates, similar to those now borne for the "Peninsula" and for "South Africa, 1899-1902," would seem an appropriate reward for the regiments who helped to achieve this result.‡

Similarly in the next great period of our military history, the campaigns of the great Duke of Marlborough, much of the work of the cavalry has not yet been commemorated. The four

* The present 1st, 3rd, 4th and 6th Dragoon Guards and another regiment afterwards disbanded.

† Notably the great siege of Namur in 1695.

‡ The surviving regiments representing the cavalry of these campaigns are the Life Guards, all seven regiments of Dragoon Guards, the Royals, Greys and Inniskilling Dragoons, the 3rd, 4th and 7th Hussars, and the 5th Lancers.

biggest battles of these campaigns have indeed been given as battle-honours, but several others of Marlborough's engagements are now sufficiently authenticated to deserve consideration for recognition; and apart from these his cavalry did much hard work which might perhaps be recognized by some general "campaign" honour such as that suggested above. These campaigns of Marlborough, with the subsidiary campaigns in Portugal and Spain, have, however, already been discussed in an article in the last number of this Journal,* which need not be further elaborated here.

Omitting the Civil War of 1715, in which the cavalry largely decided the day at Sheriffmuir, we come to the war of 1743-8. The opening battle, "Dettingen," is already borne as a battle-honour, but from the time the operations were transferred from Germany to the Low Countries our regiments have nothing to show. In this case, as in the campaigns of 1691-7, the principal battles were none of them victories, but in each instance the British cavalry engaged did splendid work. At Fontenoy the Allied cavalry had the thankless task of covering the deployment of the infantry for some hours under a heavy fire; and later, when the British battalions at last fell back after their heroic struggle against odds, the cavalry regiments rode forward into the cross-fire to cover their retirement, and effectively prevented the French cavalry from taking advantage of their exhaustion and loss. The casualties of the cavalry that day were not so severe as those of the infantry,† but they prove the part they



The King's Regt. of Horse
(later The K.D.G.) 1745

* In that article it was suggested that commemoration might well be given to several important battles and actions during the campaigns of 1703-12, notably to the engagements at the Schellenberg in Bavaria, at Elixem in Brabant, at Barcelona, Almenara and Saragossa in Spain; whilst the services of the cavalry both in the Low Countries and in Spain and Portugal seem to deserve a general "campaign" honour for each of those theatres of war; and the 3rd Hussars have a claim to a special distinction for the naval action of Vigo Bay.

A detailed article on the cavalry action of Elixem has already appeared in this Journal (July, 1931).

† 350 out of about 3,000, as against 3,650 out of about 10,000. The cavalry regiments engaged were the Life Guards, the Blues, the King's and the 7th Regiments of Horse (now the K.D.G. and 7th D.G.), and the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th and 7th Dragoons (of which the 3rd, 4th, 5th and 7th have since been converted into Hussars or Lancers).

played ; whilst Cumberland is reported to have selected the Blues for special praise and to have ridden across to thank them in person. "Fontenoy," therefore, might be a distinction of which the British cavalry could well be proud ; nor was this the only battle in which the British cavalry distinguished themselves during these campaigns. At Roucoux in October, 1746, the Greys, the Inniskillings and the 7th Dragoons (now Hussars), the only cavalry regiments not recalled to England for the emergency of the "Forty-Five," covered the withdrawal of the British infantry from the position they had maintained so stubbornly. Next year at Lauffeldt the Greys and the Inniskillings again distinguished themselves greatly, accompanied on this occasion by Cumberland's Dragoons, a regiment raised in 1746 but disbanded after the Peace of 1748. When the British infantry, after a tenacious defence of the villages of Val and Lauffeldt, had been at last dislodged by the repeated attacks of greatly superior numbers of the French and were falling back, Saxe brought forward masses of French cavalry to turn their retreat into a rout. Disaster could hardly have been averted had not Ligonier, the veteran Huguenot who ultimately rose to be Commander-in-Chief of the British Army, led up these three cavalry regiments to save the imperilled infantry. Charging home, they broke right through the French squadrons, threw them back in disorder, captured five standards and, although then checked by the French infantry behind, fully achieved the object of their desperate charge. Saxe himself was all but taken by a trooper of the Greys, and the British infantry were enabled to draw off in fair order. All three regiments* suffered heavily, and Ligonier himself was unhorsed and made prisoner, but their achievement was fully worthy of the price paid. Gallantry such as this in an unsuccessful action would seem almost more worthy of special commemoration than any victory ; and this last charge of Ligonier's Brigade, fully comparable in its devotion to that of the Light Brigade at Balaklava and actually more successful, deserves to rank with certain other instances in which British regiments have won

* The 4th and 7th Dragoons (now Hussars) were also present and appear to have assisted to cover the retirement, although they did not actually take part in Ligonier's charge.

enduring honour even in defeat.* Fontenoy, Roucoux and Lauffeldt, gallant actions as they were, cannot claim to be commemorated as victories, nor can these campaigns in Flanders be reckoned to have achieved as much as those of William III in the same country ; but these operations in Flanders were of definite assistance to our Austrian allies, drawing off French armies which otherwise would have effected their total defeat. Campaigns in which so much gallantry and devotion was displayed by Horse and Foot alike seem to deserve some recognition ; and even if the three battles be not commemorated, these campaigns might be allowed the grant of a general honour to the cavalry regiments concerned.†

The Seven Years War (1755–63) which followed, was fought out, so far as the British Army was concerned, mainly in the forests of America and the mountainous jungles of the West Indies, and so offered only one field suitable for the action of cavalry, those provinces of Western Germany in which the Anglo-German army under Ferdinand of Brunswick foiled the invading armies of France. The campaigns in this theatre of war are memorable for the first battle-honour ever bestowed on a British regiment, “Emsdorff” given to Elliot’s Light Dragoons, now the 15th Hussars, for their amazing exploit in their baptism of fire, when they charged and routed five times their numbers of French infantry, and at a cost to themselves of 125 casualties had the lion’s share in the capture of 2,600 Frenchmen. “Warburg,” granted by the Ewart Committee in 1909 to the twelve cavalry regiments whom the hatless and wigless Granby led to the attack, was a brilliant and dramatic achievement ; but, if the British cavalry as a whole never got the chance of another such outstanding success, several regiments have lesser actions to their credit which might well be considered. At Corbach in July, 1760, the K.D.G. and 3rd D.G. made a most gallant charge, and at a heavy cost extricated a detachment which the rashness of the Hereditary

* An instance in point is the gallantry of the 9th Norfolks in covering the retreat at Almanza, for which they were awarded (according to tradition) their Britannia badge.

† The Life Guards, the Blues, the 1st and 7th Dragoon Guards, the Royal Dragoons, the Greys, the Inniskillings, the 5th Lancers and the 3rd, 4th and 7th Hussars.

Prince of Brunswick had involved in an action against inferior numbers: at Clostercamp near Wesel that October, when the same Hereditary Prince had failed in a daring night attack on the French camp, and his British infantry, having exhausted all their ammunition, were falling back in great peril, the Royals and the 10th Dragoons (now Hussars) came to their help and checked the pursuit with a splendid charge, earning great credit and enabling the infantry to withdraw to safety: at Vellinghausen in July, 1761, thirteen regiments of British cavalry were present, although not heavily engaged, at one of the largest battles of this war (for the contending armies comprised no fewer than 150,000 combatants) the entire omission of which is one of the outstanding anomalies of the present roll of battle-honours. These Westphalian campaigns did not see many pitched battles. Ferdinand was generally too weak to afford the risk of a general engagement, and too wary and skilful to let the French force one on him against his will. Minor affairs, however, were numerous, the light troops and skirmishers were constantly in action, and the Greys, the Inniskillings, the Blues and the 15th Hussars were all prominent in one or other of some very successful attacks on the enemy's outposts and in many raids on convoys and foraging parties. Even if Corbach is deemed too small for separate mention, if Clostercamp is ruled out by lack of success, and if at Vellinghausen, the only other pitched battle comparable to Minden and Warburg, the cavalry never got properly into action, still these actions and the many minor affairs would seem perhaps to justify a general honour of "Westphalia" to commemorate a series of campaigns as arduous and successful as any now recorded in the Army List.*



Royal Dragoons
Light Troop
1761

* The regiments which served in these campaigns were the Blues, the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 6th and 7th D.G., the Royals, Greys and Inniskillings, and the 7th, 10th, 11th and 15th Dragoons (now Hussars).

It was not only in Germany that our cavalry were distinguished. In 1762 a campaign little known to-day was waged to protect our ally Portugal from invasion by Spain. In this a small British force was engaged; and at Valencia de Alcantara in the hill country of the Portuguese frontier, a newly raised regiment of Light Dragoons, now famous as the 16th Lancers, received their baptism of fire in a brilliant little fight.

Thirteen years later that same regiment, with their sister regiment, the 17th Light Dragoons (now Lancers) entered on the difficult and arduous campaigns of the American War. Almost at once they gained distinction, both in the fighting which led to the capture of New York and by a raid behind the enemy's lines in which they surprised and captured in his own headquarters the American General Lee. Later, when Clinton marched across New Jersey in July, 1778, on his way from Philadelphia to New York, and Washington tried to intercept his march, the 17th Light Dragoons are noted as having done very well in repulsing an attack on the baggage train during the sharp fight at Monmouth Court House, which enabled Clinton to achieve his object. That autumn the N.C.Os. and men of the 16th were drafted into the 17th, who for the rest of the war remained the sole representatives of the British cavalry in America. Most of our other mounted troops there were irregulars like Tarleton's Legion, who achieved some remarkable successes during the operations in the Carolinas; but the handful of the 17th who fought under Cornwallis were still more feared and disliked by their enemies. The Eastern States of America were at that period no cavalry country: thickly wooded, with few open spaces and many swamps, they afforded mounted troops few chances; but the 16th and 17th Light Dragoons had sufficient opportunities of hard fighting and



Light Dragoon
1762
(after Hinde)

made enough of them to suggest a claim to a general campaign honour of "North America." To refuse recognition to these services on the ground that the struggle falls into the category of "civil wars" would seem illogical, since by the Declaration of Independence in 1776 the colonists had repudiated their allegiance; whilst the backbone of the army opposed to us in the later stages of the war were the French battalions under Rochambeau and Lafayette. It is true these operations ended with a defeat, but they were not more disastrous than other campaigns for which battle-honours are borne to-day;* and further it must be noted that out of the eight major engagements of the campaigns in America, six were British victories. The lack of final success was not the fault of the British regiments: indeed, by Washington's own admission, the American cause was on the verge of defeat when de Grasse and his fleet arrived from the West Indies and for a few critical weeks transferred local "command of the sea" to the French. It was the naval failure off the Chesapeake on 5th September, 1781, which sealed the fate of Cornwallis and lost us America.

The next contest in which the British Army was engaged, that against Revolutionary France, produced in all five battle-honours for the British cavalry, three of them—"Villers-en-Cauchies," "Beaumont" and "Willems"—won in the Netherlands in 1794; the fourth, "Egmont-op-Zee," given to the 15th Hussars for an engagement during the Duke of York's campaign in North Holland in 1799; the fifth, "Egypt," given for the campaign so brilliantly begun by Abercromby, which culminated in the one real triumph, both strategical and tactical, won by the British Army over the forces of the French Revolution. "Villers-en-Cauchies," "Beaumont" and "Willems" were all brilliant actions well worthy of record, but it must be noted that some regiments, including the 8th Light Dragoons (now Hussars), served in those campaigns but, being so unfortunate as to miss those three engagements, have at present nothing to show for their share in these operations,

* A case in point is the disastrous expedition to South America in 1807, for which "Monte Video" is borne by the regiments which stormed that town.

although the 8th were very heavily engaged on more than one occasion and distinguished themselves considerably. In these campaigns there were many minor cavalry actions besides those which have been rewarded with battle-honours—notably one sharp action near Malines, where the 15th Hussars made a most effective charge, shouting “Remember Emsdorff,” and routed a French column; so that here again a general honour of “Flanders” with the appropriate dates might seem justified. Even if in these campaigns we failed to prevent the French from over-running the Netherlands or the Dutch from deserting the Coalition, this was mainly because after Fleurus the Austrians abandoned all effort to defend the Netherlands and left us to our own resources; because the Prussians, whom we had subsidized to send 60,000 auxiliaries to our help, took the money and then sent their troops to Poland; because the Dutch made little or no effort to emulate their ancestors’ resistance to Louis XIV and to Philip II of Spain. The Duke of York was no military genius, but he had a most difficult task, and it was no fault of his British troops that he could not carry it through to success.

The campaign in North Holland of 1799 was a similar instance. The 15th Hussars bear “Egmont-op-Zee,” but the 7th Hussars, who also distinguished themselves, at present have nothing for this campaign. It was not a cavalry country, but both the 7th and the 15th Hussars were prompt to snatch the chances that came their way. Both regiments did sterling work, which seems to deserve the recognition which a general “campaign” honour could give.

A “side-show” of this war of the French Revolution also deserves to be rescued from oblivion, namely the very trying series of campaigns in the West Indies between 1794 and 1797, in which the scattered British forces were engaged in operations to conquer the French islands, to rescue the French colonists of San Domingo from the revolt of their negro slaves, and then to save the British colonies from the same hideous fate. The fighting was often desperate, the climatic conditions were terrible, and the mortality among the devoted troops was in

consequence deplorable. The "Maroon War" in Jamaica and the protracted struggle with the French-led black insurgents in Grenada were operations as trying as anything in the history of our Colonial Wars; and if our West Indian colonies to-day are happy, loyal and well-governed territories, this is due in no small measure to the British soldiers who saved them then from the fate of Haiti at the cost of their own lives; for a very large proportion of the troops perished either in action or by disease. Six regiments of Light Dragoons still represented in the Army List to-day* took part in that deadly warfare and were especially distinguished by their good service; for example, it was officially stated that in the Maroon War it was "to the impression made by the undaunted bravery of the 17th Light Dragoons . . . that we owe the submission of the rebels." Such services may be thought to deserve enduring distinction.†

When war was resumed in 1803, on the rupture of the short-lived Peace of Amiens, some time elapsed before British cavalry got a chance of distinction in European warfare. Campaigns were simultaneously being waged in India which provide some splendid examples of cavalry work, Leswarree, Assaye, and Lake's vigorous pursuit of Holkar conspicuous amongst them. Of the British regiments who covered themselves with glory in those campaigns there survive only the 8th Hussars, with "Leswarree" and "Hindustan," and the 19th with "Assaye" in addition to the "Mysore" and "Seringapatam" which record an earlier struggle against an Indian enemy nearly as formidable as the Mahrattas. It would not be hard to pick out other actions in these campaigns which would be worthy of recognition, but in this instance the outstanding claims have been met.

In Wellington's Peninsular campaigns, the majority of the engagements have been recorded. Yet even here the list of honours has curious gaps. There is nothing to record the good work of the cavalry who covered Wellington's retreat

* The 13th, 14th, 17th, 18th, 20th and 21st.

† An interesting account of these campaigns is to be found in Sir John Fortescue's history of the 17th Lancers.

from Busaco to the Lines of Torres Vedras, and who, in the following spring, chased Massena back from the "wasted vines." The Royal Dragoons with the 14th and 16th Light Dragoons did splendid work in these operations.* They were heavily outnumbered but they established a remarkable ascendancy over Massena's cavalry, and it is hard that their work has so far remained uncommemorated. If the actions during these operations were mainly squadron affairs, seldom rising to anything on a really large scale, their cumulative effect was considerable, so that "Retreat to Torres Vedras" and "Pursuit from Torres Vedras" are naturally suggested by parallels in the honours for 1914-18. In addition, these campaigns included two quite substantial brigade affairs, of no small importance in what they achieved and of great merit in the way in which they were fought, which it is strange to find at present omitted. Usagre in May, 1811, and Villagarcia in April, 1812, were both well-handled affairs in which the British cavalry dealt effectively with superior forces of the enemy and achieved substantial successes. In the first, Lumley with the 3rd D.G., the 4th Dragoons (now Hussars), the 13th Light Dragoons and two Portuguese brigades, perhaps 2,000 sabres in all, drew Latour Maubourg into a fight in which the latter's superior numbers were neutralised by the advantage of ground which Lumley contrived to secure. Three French regiments† were completely routed by Lumley's charge, and the whole of Latour Maubourg's division was thrown back in disorder, losing nearly 350 men, at a cost to the British of only 20.



French 4th Dragoons
1811

"It was a handsome thing and well done," as Moore wrote of the 15th Hussars' exploit at Sahagun on the Corunna campaign ;

* Of which an admirable and vivid account is given in Tomkinson's "Diary of a Cavalry Officer."

† The French 4th, 20th and 26th Dragoons. By a coincidence, the British 4th Dragoons (now Hussars) here routed their opposite numbers, the 4th Dragoons of the French Army. For those who like to visualise their history, it may be of interest to note that the 3rd D.G. and 4th Dragoons, both being heavy cavalry, wore red jackets braided with yellow, their facings at that date being respectively white and light green, and huge Napoleonic cocked hats, whilst the 13th L.D. then wore dark blue jackets of Hussar pattern with buff facings and white braid. The three French Dragoon regiments wore brass helmets with black horsehair crests and green coats with facings respectively of red, yellow and orange.

and although Sahagun well merits reward, Usagre surpasses it in scale and is fully comparable to it in merit.

Villagarcia also was a neat stroke. Soult, who had come up to try to relieve Badajoz, was hurrying back to Andalusia on hearing of the fall of that fortress. Stapleton Cotton with three cavalry brigades was pressing hard after him, and at Villagarcia Ponsonby's brigade of the 12th, 14th and 16th Light Dragoons, as they then were, caught up his cavalry rear-guard of two brigades. The French commander, Lallemand, thinking he had only one brigade to tackle, turned to fight but, just as his leading line was about to engage Ponsonby's regiments in front, the 5th D.G., leading Le Marchant's brigade, came up by a side-road upon the French flank, deployed with great speed and crashed into Lallemand's left flank, while the 16th Light Dragoons, putting their horses at a wall on which the French had relied to protect their front, leapt the obstacle in line and charged down upon their astonished opponents,* the other British regiments following close behind. On a smaller scale this charge was as effective as that which the British cavalry was to deliver three months later at Salamanca.



5th Dragoon Guards
1812

Usagre and Villagarcia certainly call for recognition, but for importance and brilliance the work of the 11th Hussars at El Bodon in September, 1811, stands fully as high. Marmont had come up in force to relieve Ciudad Rodrigo; Wellington, apparently displaying rather less than his customary prudence, had delayed falling back to a safe concentration point in rear; and the French cavalry engaged Picton's Third Division at El Bodon. The deeds of the 5th Fusiliers and 77th Foot (2nd Middlesex) on that day have been well told by Napier,

* The French regiments here were the 17th and 27th Dragoons wearing brass helmets and green coats with facings respectively of rose-pink and orange, and the 2nd Hussars in maroon jackets with scarlet facings and white braid. The 5th D.G. wore, of course, red coats with green facings and yellow braid, beneath big "athwartship" cocked hats, whilst the three Light Dragoon regiments wore dark blue jackets with facings respectively of yellow, orange and scarlet.

and make the omission of El Bodon from the present list of Peninsular honours hard to understand. Their steadfastness was equalled by the gallantry of the 11th Hussars, who, supported by the 2nd Hussars of the King's German Legion, and undismayed by the greatly superior numbers of French cavalry, completely baffled Montbrun. Wellington afterwards published a General Order in which he specially drew the attention of all the troops to the conduct of these regiments, saying that the cavalry regiments present were engaged with numbers infinitely superior to themselves but "charged repeatedly, supporting each other." An account by a German officer declares that the individual squadrons charged eight or nine times apiece and each time had fresh opponents to face; for as each French attack was thrown back, Montbrun drew out new squadrons from the mass of his reserves for a fresh onslaught. Luckily for the 11th and the Germans, a narrow approach prevented the French employing several squadrons at once, but for all that it was a fine achievement. It was an odd fate which on 1st September, 1914, brought the 11th Hussars into action at Nery against the German 15th Hussars, the 1914 representatives of the Hanoverian Guard Cavalry to whom the Peninsular battle-honours of the K.G.L. Hussars had descended.



French 2nd Hussars
1812

One more Peninsular action remains to be noted, the repulse at Benevente on 29th December, 1808, of half-a-dozen squadrons of the Imperial Guard under Lefebvre Desnouettes, one of Napoleon's best cavalry commanders. This was mainly the work of the 10th and 18th Hussars and the King's German Legion, who though outnumbered by more than two to one, routed the French, drove them back across the Esla and captured 70 of them, among them Lefebvre Desnouettes himself.*

* Gordon, of the 15th Hussars, whose *Journal of the Corunna Campaigns*, published in 1914, is a most interesting and valuable addition to the narratives of the retreat, speaks of Napoleon's "mortification" at the defeat sustained by his guard almost within his own view—he goes on to say how "uniformly successful" the 18th had been "in their rencontres with the enemy."

Yet the 10th and 18th have not got "Benevente," nor have the four regiments, 7th, 10th, 15th and 18th Hussars, whom Paget handled so skilfully and successfully during the retreat to Corunna, any record as yet, of that hard service. They were already embarked when Moore fought his action on 16th January, 1809, so to give them "Corunna" would be absurd, but they might perhaps be allowed "Retreat to Corunna." If there was a dark page to that story it is not that which records the work of the cavalry.

After 1815 it became usual to award battle-honours soon after the conclusion of a campaign, and in consequence gaps in the list are thenceforward infrequent; though there may be some individual actions for which certain regiments may desire to submit claims; but, thanks to the present opportunity, it may be hoped that henceforward the roll of battle-honours may adequately represent the services of each regiment of our Army.



ANTHONY TROLLOPE'S ESSAYS ON HUNTING

By CAPTAIN R. L. AGNEW.

THERE is no greater proof of the popularity of hunting to-day than the flood of books on the subject that appear every winter. Novels, reminiscences and text books are all equally sought after, and it is doubtful if any topic commands such a wide circle of readers.

In view of this fact, it is curious that no one has, of late years, re-published the "Hunting Sketches" by Anthony Trollope, which were collected in 1865 from his articles in the "Pall Mall Gazette." Trollope was a man who knew a great deal about fox-hunting, and even more about the types of people who follow hounds. It is with the latter that he deals in his "Sketches." He wrote at a time when hunting was just starting to gain the wide popularity and to contend with some of the difficulties that it meets with to-day. If some of his remarks, such as those about "the existing plethora of money" and liking "to see three or four ladies out in a field," seem rather strange to us, most of his observations are as valuable now they were seventy years ago.

Trollope had considerable knowledge of country life, but, like Leech, Millais and other of his literary and artistic contemporaries, he also knew something of hunting from London. He had experience of "getting up at six o'clock in November to go down to Bletchley by an early train," and the difficulty, very acute in the days before motor-cars and telephones, of not knowing whether a catchy frost in the country would be sufficient to make the day's hunting impossible.

With the different kinds of people who go hunting, he is very much at home. If he is a little hard on "The Man who Hunts and doesn't like it," he undoubtedly hits off that type of sportsman's doubts and difficulties very neatly. On the other hand,

although he admittedly has his trials too, it is to be hoped that "The Man who Hunts and does like it" seldom has such a thoroughly unsatisfactory day as that portrayed.

Perhaps it is in his sketch of "The Lady who rides to Hounds" that we find most that is not applicable to modern conditions. In these days when quite fifty per cent. of any field is composed of ladies, it seems odd to find them referred to as something of a *rara avis*. At the same time, he admits that even then their numbers were steadily on the increase. His assertion that in the general way ladies ride better than men, because they have always been properly taught, is also doubtful to-day, when the art of riding in general is so much more closely studied.

One thing that we clearly have to be thankful for, is the disappearance of the lady who "demands" assistance. Her demise is probably in part due to the increased knowledge of the sport that ladies have to-day, but it is possibly also accounted for by their very increased numbers. When that imperious "demand" for assistance would be given as often as not to one of their own sex, the chances are that it would be left unuttered altogether!

It is interesting to find in his sketch on "The Hunting Parson" that he is by nature inclined to agree with those "old ladies" of both sexes who think that a clergyman should not hunt. Although he shows clearly by his arguments that there is absolutely nothing to uphold such an assertion, and although his reason convinces him that it is unjust, in his heart of hearts he thinks that there is something in it. From the author of "Barchester Towers," such an opinion must of necessity carry some weight. However, to anyone freed from the oppressive Victorian conventions on the subject, his arguments on the other side of the question are more powerful still.

On the subject of "The Hunting Farmer," Trollope has much to say that cannot even now be too heavily stressed. He points out that, with the men who live by the land antagonistic, "any attempt to maintain the institution of hunting would be a long warfare in which the opposing farmer would certainly be the ultimate conqueror." "Let anyone remember," he says, "with what tenacity the exclusive right of entering upon small territories is clutched and maintained by all cultivators in other

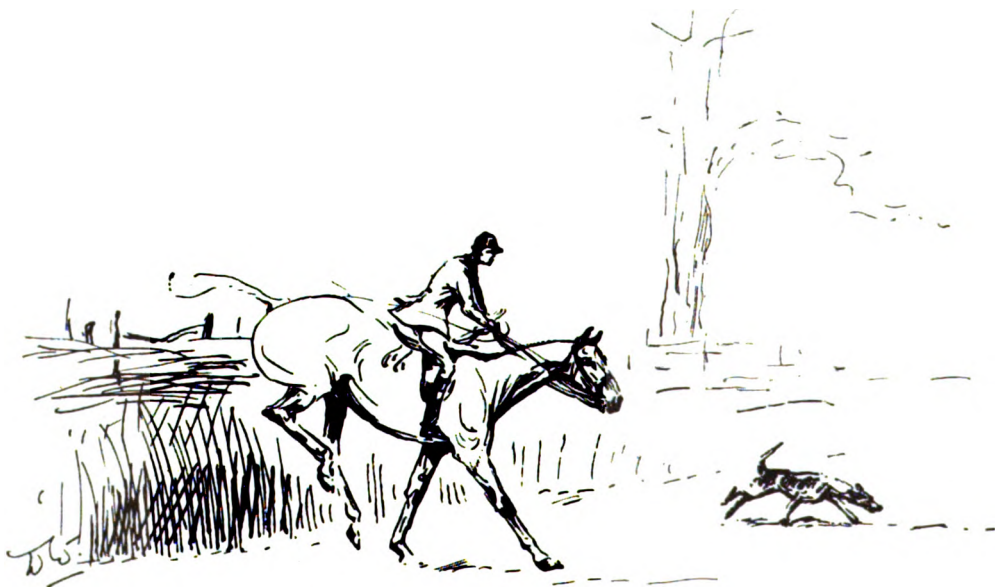
countries; let him remember the enclosures of France, the vine and olive terraces in Tuscany, or the narrowly watched fields of Lombardy; the little meadows of Switzerland on which no stranger's foot is allowed to come, or the Dutch pastures divided by dykes, and made safe from all intrusions. Let him talk to the American farmer of English hunting, and explain to that independent, but somewhat prosaic husbandman, that in England two or three hundred men claim the right of access to every man's land during the whole period of the winter months! Then, when he thinks of this, will he realise to himself what it is that the English farmer contributes to hunting in England? "

Perhaps the most amusing sketch is that on "The Man who Hunts and never Jumps." There are still a few sportsmen in every hunt who, with detailed knowledge of the country and much understanding of the ways of foxes, contrive to see most of the fun without jumping a fence. But, alas, tarred roads have made their task almost as dangerous as that of the men who ride straight. Such a man, as the writer points out, must be true to his resolve and never jump at all. "He must not jump a little, when some spurt or spirit may move him, or he will infallibly find himself in trouble." He quotes the example of "an old Duke of Beaufort who was a keen and practical sportsman, a master of hounds, and a known Nimrod on the face of the earth, but he was a man who hunted and never jumped." Speaking of a less constant neighbour, the Duke used to say: "'Jones is an ass. There he is and he can't get out. Jones doesn't like jumping, but he jumps a little and I see him pounded every day. I never jump at all and I'm always free to go where I like.' The Duke was certainly right and Jones was certainly wrong." But as the author points out, "a man will not learn to ride after this fashion in a day, nor yet in a year."

In the essay on "The Master of Hounds," there is much delightful reading. One example of the retort courteous that turns away wrath is worth repeating: "'I wonder, sir, how much you'd take to go home?' I once heard a Master ask of a red-coated stranger who was certainly more often among the hounds than he need have been. 'Nothing on earth, sir, while you carry on as you are doing just at present,' said the stranger. The

Master accepted the compliment, and the stranger sinned no more."

Finally, in the essay on "How to Ride to Hounds" we get excellent instruction delightfully given. Although admittedly written for the beginner, the greatest expert can find benefit from it. When finally the author has got his tyro well away alongside the pack, near enough to see them, but wide enough not to impede them, he ends his remarks: "If thus you live with them, turning as they turn, but never turning among them, keeping your distance, but losing no yard, and can do this for seven miles over a grass country in forty-five minutes, then you can ride to hounds better than nineteen out of every twenty that you have seen at the meet, and will have enjoyed the keenest pleasure that hunting, or perhaps I may say, that any other amusement can give you."



*THE CITY AND COUNTRY OF HANOVER IN THE
HISTORY OF GERMAN CAVALRY*

IN December, 1933, one hundred and thirty years had passed since George III, King of Great Britain and Ireland, gave orders for the raising of a Corps of all arms, the so-called "King's Germans." This Corps, the Royal German Legion, which was from its inception a purely Hanoverian body under Hanoverian leaders, stood shoulder to shoulder in the comradeship of arms with English troops in the campaigns against Napoleon and his allies.

The periods of military co-operation between the Kingdom of England and the Duchy of Hanover (as it then was) begin at the end of the 17th century. In 1692 Duke Ernest Augustus of Hanover furnished King William III of England with a corps of 8,000 men, the cavalry of which had an opportunity of distinguishing itself in the battle of Neerwinden on 13th July, 1693.

At the beginning of the 18th century we find the Hanoverian regiments side by side with their English allies in the War of the Spanish Succession, fighting against Louis XIV of France under the brilliant leadership of the Duke of Marlborough. Major T. J. Edwards, M.B.E., F.R.Hist.S., has dealt exhaustively with the battles of Hochstaedt-Blenheim, Ramillies, Oudenarde and Malplaquet in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL* of 1932. The present article will only refer briefly to the part which the Hanoverian Cavalry Regiments played in those battles.

In the battle of Hochstaedt-Blenheim on 13th August, 1704, the Goeden Regiment of Hanoverian Dragoons fought with great obstinacy and courage, losing in a short time all its officers. The situation had become critical, when an ordinary Dragoon leapt in front, took over command, and utterly repulsed the enemy cavalry. At Ramillies on 23rd May, 1706, Marlborough chose the right time to throw a large part of his cavalry, including the Hanoverian Dragoons, from the right flank to the left,

thereby penetrating to the flank and rear of the enemy, by which he turned the battle in his favour. Here fell an octogenarian cavalryman of Von Pentz's Regiment of Dragoons, which had especially distinguished itself.

At Oudenarde, on 11th July, 1708, Colonel Von Loesecke earned great distinction. He it was who risked his life entirely for his ruler and leader, who subsequently became King George II of England. By preserving the King from harm he secured the continuity of the House of Guelph.

The Hanoverian cavalry played a prominent part in the battle of Malplaquet on 11th September, 1709. In that fierce cavalry engagement it sustained exceptionally heavy losses. Nevertheless they succeeded together with the allied cavalry in completely beating the enemy.

After the Elector George Louis of Hanover had ascended the English throne as King George II in 1714, the connection between the Hanoverian troops and the English army became still closer.

The effect of this was particularly widespread and useful in everything that concerned cavalry. Great importance was attached to the systematic training of man and horse. In 1767 a Commission, of which Lieut.-General von Freytag was a member, met to frame decisions about a new method of equitation. This consisted in the "German seat," introduced in England at that time, whereby the rider achieved control of his horse by means of an upright seat and long stirrup-leathers.

This kind of equitation was called "German riding." It was taught in Germany chiefly in the Hanoverian cavalry, as well as in a few of the stables of the nobility. Every officer and man was made to join a sort of riding squad. Instruction in riding took place in a riding school attached to the regimental headquarters of every regiment. In order to obtain a standardised course of training, regimental rough-riders (as they were called) with the rank of officers were appointed to each regiment; these men had, to a great extent, received their training in the stables of the nobility. During the long years of peace that followed the Seven Years' War the training of both man and horse became more and more thorough. Cavalrymen learnt also how to control well-bred

horses so that the British and Hanoverian cavalry earned even then a very high reputation throughout the world by virtue of their skill in riding and the quality of their horses. This close co-operation of the cavalry of both countries re-acted very favourably on horse-breeding and training in Hanover, inasmuch as it awakened understanding of, and interest in, the training and maintenance of the well-bred horse.

The great political convulsions which took place in Germany at the beginning of the 19th century were a fateful period for the Hanoverian army. In spite of the excellent conduct of the army on active service, the Hanoverian government signed the Convention of Artlenburg on 5th July, 1803, and thus by a stroke of the pen brought the history of their proud troops to an end. Yet although the army was disbanded, the spirit of courage and loyalty to their hereditary ruler, even if he lived beyond the English Channel, could not be extinguished. It shone forth again with renewed lustre in the incomparable regiments of the Royal German Legion, which arose like a phoenix out the ashes of the disbanded Hanoverian army.

It would be far beyond the scope of this short essay to give anything approaching an exhaustive account of the deeds of the cavalry regiments of the Royal German Legion, for which reason only the most important events have been selected.

In 1803 King George III of England ordered the Duke of Cambridge to raise a larger corps of all arms, which was afterwards called the King's German Legion. Next, two regiments of cavalry, one of heavy and one of light dragoons, were formed in Weymouth, consisting mostly of the former Hanoverian cavalymen. The formation of another regiment of light dragoons followed in 1805.

In 1805 the Legion formed part of an expeditionary corps dispatched to Hanover, which, however, was unable to achieve its object. But its appearance on native soil resulted in an exceptional flow of voluntary recruits. Until 1806 the cavalry of the Legion consisted of two regiments of heavy and three of light dragoons. The latter had been dressed as Hussars from the time of their formation, and afterwards changed their name to that of Hussars. In 1807 a part of the Legion were sent to

Denmark, where it took part in the siege of Copenhagen. It was at the engagement at Kjoerge that detachments of the Legion fought for the first time under the command of General Sir Arthur Wellesley, later Duke of Wellington, with whose name the subsequent brilliant exploits of the Legion have become inseparably connected.

In 1808 the Legion appeared in the theatre of war south of the Pyrenees known as "The Pensinsula," where for the next few years their chief exploits took place. The first of their engagements was in the unfortunate battles of General Moore, in which the third regiment of Hussars took part. But England continued her efforts, in conjunction with Spain and Portugal, to drive the French out of Spanish soil, and, with them, Napoleon's brother Joseph Bonaparte, who had been raised to the throne of Spain. In due course nearly all the cavalry came to be employed there, although never under entirely German leadership, but always distributed among the various British corps. On 28th July, 1809, Sir Arthur Wellesley began the series of his victories with the sanguinary battle of Talavera, where Major-General von Langwerth fell at the head of his Brigade. The British nation erected a monument to him in St. Paul's Cathedral.

In consequence of the unusually great odds which Wellington had to face when fighting the French, he was often confronted with very heavy tasks, in overcoming which his genius as a commander is manifest. In 1811 Wellington was compelled to raise, for the time being, the siege of Ciudad Rodrigo, in spite of the magnificent courage displayed by his troops in the battle of El Bodon (23rd September), where Cavalry-Captains Ernst Poten and Georg Bergmann earned the battle honour "El Bodon" for the First Hussars, a regiment which had been commanded throughout the whole Peninsular War by Colonel von Arentschild. In the same year Lord Beresford prevented Marshal Soult, as a result of the battle of Albuhera, from succouring the hard-pressed garrison of Badajos. Another German Hussar regiment (the Second), had an opportunity of performing a brilliant feat of arms during the blockade of the city of Cadiz,



CHARGE OF THE 1st HEAVY DRAGOON REGIMENT AT GARZIA HERNANDEZ



**CHARGE OF THE 1st DRAGOON REGIMENT AGAINST THE
76th FRENCH INFANTRY AT GARZIA HERNANDEZ**



**SERGEANT-MAJOR KIELPENNIG, 1st HEAVY DRAGOONS.
AT VENTA DEL POZO**

of which they formed part of the garrison: This gained them the battle honour "Barossa."

The victorious battle of Salamanca on 22nd July, 1812, in which the First Hussars again distinguished themselves by their resolute attacks over ground highly unsuitable for cavalry, was followed on the next day by Garzia Hernandez, a battle of pursuit. (See picture on page 104.) It was here that the conduct of the Brigade of Heavy Dragoons earned itself imperishable laurels. Their squadrons attacked individual cavalry and infantry regiments which formed themselves into squares to ward off the impetuous attacks. Yet the cavalry were able, despite heavy losses, particularly among officers, to burst into the squares as they were forming, and ride them down. Most of the enemy fell under the cut-and-thrust of the Hanoverian Dragoons; the rest were captured. This was a rare example in the history of war of a successful cavalry attack against infantry in close formation, and represents a brilliant episode in the history of Hanoverian cavalry. The attack of the Third Squadron of the First Dragoons against a battalion of the 76th French Infantry is particularly interesting. The latter let the Dragoons approach to within about 100 yards, and then fired a volley, killing the Squadron Commander, a lieutenant and a large number of troops, and thus repulsing the attack. A second attack staged by the next senior officer immediately afterwards would have met with the same fate. But the horse of a Dragoon named Post, falling upon the very bayonets of the infantry, tore a gap in their front, through which the cavalry poured into the square and destroyed or captured nearly everybody. The picture on page 105 shows this episode.

The Brigade of Heavy Dragoons consisted of tall, strong men whose remarkable physical strength gave them an advantage in hand to hand fights. Thus, for example, in the battle of Venta del Pozo, Sergeant-Major Kielpennig of the First Heavy Dragoons, although wounded by a lance and surrounded by countless enemy lancers, was able to hack his way out and avoid capture. See plate on page 105.

The Light Cavalry regiments of the Legion took a very creditable part in the trying duties of reconnaissance and flank-protection.

A salient characteristic of the Hanoverian horseman, who grew up with his horse, was one which has its roots in the nature of the people of Lower Saxony. This is their marked love for their horses which they would always make the first object of their care, even in times of the greatest difficulty and privations, regardless of their own comfort.

After Las Rosas, Venta del Poso, Vittoria, Villa Franca, Tolosa San Sebastian, Bayonne, St. Etienne, Tarbes and Toulouse the Hanoverians, always under the trusty leadership of Wellington, took part in the campaign of The Hundred Days, and thence to the battle of Waterloo, where they rose to the height of their military fame. The part they took in this historic battle forms "the fairest leaf of oak leaves entwined about their Colours."

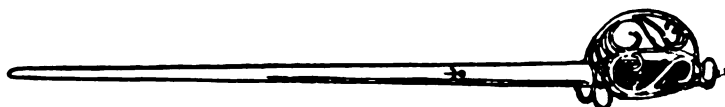
Decades passed; the Hanoverian army was absorbed in 1866 into the Prussian army, which in turn became the army of the German Empire. Even under altered political conditions Hanover retained its significance as the nursery of the spirit of German cavalry and of efficiency in horsemanship. Since 1867 the city contained within its walls the German Military School of Equitation. Its task was to be the source from which good horsemanship should flow into the cavalry of the army.

It took a comparatively small part in foreign matters, with the exception of a few big tournaments in London and Malmö (Sweden). After the World War the Cavalry School took over this task from its predecessor, the Military School of Equitation. The international contests in horsemanship gradually grew in scope and significance. The German cavalry, small as it was, had to take part in them. It organised a team which took part in a number of foreign tournaments, and at the Olympiad of 1928 appeared for the first time with other nations in competitions which are the essence of horsemanship, viz., training, jumping and "military" riding. In 1928 Germany was first in the chief training test; her next task was to win in other events. Other nations, particularly the Italians, had a very great advantage, thanks to their great ability, to their experience handed down through generations, and to the marked superiority of their animals which in most cases traced their

pedigree back to the English thoroughbred. In Germany people began to select their horses under the influence of these events. A detached consideration of the statistics of successful horses pointed to two types both of which had produced winning competitors every since 1920. One was the Hanoverian pedigree horse which had retained for centuries a close connection with the English thoroughbred and with the Hanoverian shire horse; the other was the "Trakehner," a pedigree horse which had been brought to a high pitch of efficiency through the proper employment of breed and training. These are the horses with which the Hanoverian Cavalry School is at present doing most of its work.

Every nation has its own character, its own peculiarities and its mode of life, all of which express themselves in horsemanship, which is, after all, a characteristic expression of certain specialised tendencies. The Germans, carrying on the tradition of riding which has been described in the first part of this essay, clung to the tested method of the upright seat and long stirrup-leathers. It was only gradually that the modern, and now international, style of jumping which is practised particularly in Italy with such mastery, has gained adherents and esteem. An occasional set-back, like the failure at Aix in 1928, ought to teach us how long and tedious a business it is to acquire ease in a new method. It was long before the efforts of years were rewarded, not with a single chance success, but with a series of notable international victories.

The most remarkable of these are the three consecutive victories (1931, 1932, 1933) gained in competition with first-class international teams in Rome, which secured the permanent possession of the Coppa Mussolini. In mentioning these victories we cannot say too emphatically that we owe them chiefly to our horses, and that these horses for the most part trace their pedigree back to the land which has for centuries cultivated the pedigree horse, and has maintained the closest connection with the country which is the native soil of intensive horse breeding.



*A TRIP TO AUSTRALIA ON THREE MONTHS'
LEAVE FROM INDIA.*

By CAPTAIN O. L. BOORD, 10th Royal Hussars.

" I SHOULD not waste time in Australia if I were you, but go on as soon as possible to New Zealand." This was the remark made to me just before I left India by one of the many people who believe Australia to be mostly a country of waterless plains cut up by big sheep stations with a native population consisting of nothing but kangaroos and aboriginals.

Unfortunately I had only five weeks in which to see the small part of this vast continent over which I travelled, but I soon realised that it would be ridiculous to go rushing off to New Zealand when there was an opportunity of seeing the real Australia—not in her cities—but inland on the huge sheep stations. They reflect the true spirit of Australia.

Nobody will deny that there are vast plains. In the North West they sweep away to trackless infinity with little vegetation beyond the scrubby undergrowth of the bush. In their silent immensity they reduce man to his proper proportion in the scheme of things and fill him with a sense of his power. This is the secret of the personality of the man "out back." It is in the parts where the inhabitants are isolated that we can clearly see the national character. The hospitality of the Australian is proverbial and deservedly so. People living in parts where household goods are only procured with difficulty will give of their best, often denying themselves to give to the stranger, and this is done with a gesture so gracious that the recipient is almost made to feel that he does them a favour in consuming their delicacies. To their mind any form of humbug is an unforgiveable sin. Tellers of tall stories cut no ice, and they are outspoken in showing their contempt for anything of which they do not approve. They have a ready sense of humour and delight in a good practical joke.

Their love of animals is noticeable, the horse coming before the rider when comfort, food and water are difficult to obtain.

Bird and animal life mean much more to them than the city dweller can imagine.

It is a prevalent illusion in the old world that the monotony of the Australian landscape extends throughout the continent, but this is not at all the case as the climate ranges from temperate to tropical and ensures a magnificent prodigality of nature. In all my travels I have never seen more varied and beautiful scenery than in the coastal belt.

There are huge tracts of virgin forest where the tall gum tree out-tops its companions, the oaks, palms, cedars, tree ferns and those strange grass-trees known locally as "black boys."

The virgin bush like that of Taronga, wisely conserved as a National Park, close to Sydney, gives place to hills and behind them to mountain ranges of widely differing character.

The Blue Mountains are well named. A mist of purple hangs about the depths of gigantic chasms, growing lighter in tone towards the heights until the sky comes to meet it.

The rock-wallaby have their haunts in the undergrowth, the eagle soars overhead, while birds of unimaginable brilliance of plumage fill the lower reaches.

In the plains even the corrugated iron roofs and buildings have fitted themselves into the colour scheme, and the light quivering about their steely blueness invests them with an elusive quality, although they are far removed from the orthodox conception of what is fitting and beautiful in a landscape.

On the stations the homesteads are usually of the bungalow type with a typical roof which makes a splash of colour among the prevailing tones of greyish green. The gardens and lawns of bullock grass are well watered from household tanks filled by collection from the roofs.

There is comfort of the modern type, electric installations and plentiful baths, although no bathroom is considered complete without a shower in Australia!

The bond between owner and station hand is very interesting compared with European standards; there is a freedom and

camaraderie unknown in the Old World, but it would be entirely false to say that social grades are non-existent.

The difference goes deeper than this, however. In the main one might say that the Australian values a man for what he is rather than for what he possesses, a precept that everyone preaches but very few practice in the Old World.

How vast the stations are one does not realise without personal experience; in some cases the owners use private aeroplanes to survey their lands which frequently exceed 100,000 acres. Usually these "runs" are divided into paddocks which are in size anything up to ten or fifteen square miles. One can look along a wire fence which is as straight as a die as far as one can see to the horizon. The trees in these runs have been killed off by a process known as "ring-barking," in order that the moisture may be utilised to nourish pastureland.

It is very noticeable that little grass will grow under growing trees. This ring-barking gives a very desolated appearance to the flat landscape of which mile after mile is the same in appearance. The ground in the dry season is brown and dull and resembles a battlefield; dead gum trees like soldiers stand stiff and gaunt, ghostlike in their bleached deadness, and the ground is littered with their dead branches.

In so vast a country the seasons vary, and therefore, gangs of skilled men, sheep-shearers and farm hands travel from place to place, where special quarters have to be provided for them by law, which seems a great waste of capital expenditure when a tent would suffice.

Unfortunately such legislation is inevitable in a country ruled by the labouring classes, although it is quite unnecessary.

It was a revelation to me to see the "Boss of the Board," the wool classer and his assistants arrive in smart cars of the latest model at the big stations. The wool-shed in a state of buzzing activity is also a sight worth seeing. To watch an expert shearer removing fleece after fleece at an average of two minutes per magnificent merino sheep, is as interesting to the onlooker as it is disconcerting to the animal, who, not without reason, appears dazed at the lightening change in his condition.

What a change! It is really hard to realise it was once something rather magnificent.

Shearing is a great art; the expert shearer will seldom leave a mark of blood on the shorn animal.

There are other features of station life which are equally as absorbing. Herds of cattle and large numbers of horses running wild are spread out over miles of fenceless country. To watch a half-caste handling a young unbroken three-year-old in a yard and finally backing him and riding him within ten minutes at full gallop, cracking his stock whip as he goes rounding up a further contingent, is an every-day occurrence well worth seeing. Magnificent horsemanship of a rough and ready kind is often witnessed at a mustering of the herds. Cutting out is done in a clear patch of country. One animal at a time is picked out and separated from his fellows by the horseman who urges his captive in the desired direction with continuous crackings of long lashed stock whip.

Huge herds of cattle travel for enormous distances to the nearest rail-head on rough tracks bordered by common pastures generally three chains wide at least—reservations where they find sufficient grazing at a trifling cost per head. Ox teams of sixteen to twenty beasts plod along with the wool bales, or draw massive tree trunks to the homestead. I have even seen a team of small donkeys hooked on to a waggon, and one night when motoring to Urana from Widgiewa saw a "swagman" with the whole of his family in a caravan drawn by a team of Jersey cattle. He, wearing a black Mexican sombrero, was walking alongside, whilst his wife brought up the rear on a pony. She was dressed in trousers, silk stockings, high-heeled shoes and long-necked spurs with colossal rowels, and was driving on the spare draft animals.

Who would expect to find in Australia a camel caravan, but they are there because they can subsist on the coarse vegetation of the bush, where horses would succumb for lack of nourishment.

Admittedly, rain is infrequent and the rivers behave in a casual fashion, but the fecundity of the soil is such that seven years' drought can be recompensed by one year's harvest after

the rains. In the prodigality of Artesian water bearing areas alone is assured the future development of Australia.

Quite half the population of Australia is concentrated in the cities. Like Sydney that may have been started by force of circumstances rather than town planning, but either by fate or chance they are set superbly, a fact which will be keenly appreciated when Australia takes her rightful place as one of the great centres of the world for tourists. Sydney has almost an unfair advantage in her natural setting; so much has been said and written in praise of her harbour and bridge, that the greatest tribute is perhaps the silence which overtakes the animated passengers on the decks of the incoming liner as the vessel comes up from the Heads.

The sea appears to wind in and about the city in numerous bays and inlets curling round a coast line of wooded slopes where balconised houses of varied design are set among trees like pearls and emeralds in a coronet of red-gold earth. Truly the landscape gardener had ideal material in Sydney, and has made the most of it. The new bridge has become an integral part of nature's scheme and is an imposing landmark for miles.

The newer parts of the city are well planned and spacious, the fine buildings constructed of ripe tinted sandstone.

Sydney is essentially a city of youth and pleasure. After business hours boys and girls stream out to tennis courts or beaches, bathing, surfing and games go on long after dark. Brilliant arc lamps illuminate both courts and beaches. However Sydney may expand, the air will be for ever fresh and exhilarating, with wide spaces of virgin bush-like Taronga to fill her lungs with ozone, and with the great western breakers from the Pacific eternally rolling into her shores.

Taronga must be quite the happiest zoo in the world! Its boundaries come right to the ocean edge and make a natural home for water-loving denizens of the animal world. From the sea it stretches back to the bush, with all the natural conditions for bird and beast life. It was here that I first saw the nest of the bower bird, the inside of which is blackened with charcoal held in the bird's beak.

Crowds of holiday picnickers swarm to this sanctuary; but why do they kill the beauty of the scene with the unsightly litter, paper and other discards of the picnic basket? They are not alone in this, but may well have inherited the taint from the "Old Country" whose holiday crowds are not free from reproach in this matter.

Around the coast of Sydney are innumerable beaches and bays which at some time or other in the day are perfect for water sport, and of these Bondi, Palace Beach and Coogee are already as widely known as other famous resorts on the European coast.

It would be ridiculous to make out that the shark danger is non-existent, although it is not by any means so serious a menace as certain sections of the Press would lead one to imagine. Shark-proof bathing pools are provided in parts where there is risk and the thousands of bathers who disport themselves daily are sufficient proof of the efficacy of the precautions.

The same outlook that makes the Australian inclined to look on life as a permanent holiday may account for his racing propensities.

Throughout the Commonwealth the birth of a city and the laying out of a racecourse seem to have been simultaneous; one finds them in the most primitive of townlets. To witness the crowds at Randwick, Caulfield, or Flemington is almost warranted to destroy the impression that the Commonwealth is sparsely populated. Side by side with this goes the national propensity for betting and ingenious indeed are means adopted to overcome the restrictions of conscientiously objecting States.

The Australian thoroughbred horse is a treat to the eye of the connoisseur and horse lover, while the racing is the most comfortable in the world. There is no need for the wild rush from the stands to the paddock and then back via the betting ring that is characteristic of the English racecourse. Everything has been placed conveniently for the racegoer and paddock, tote and stand will all be found in close proximity to each other.

While touching on racing I overheard an expression on a country racecourse which struck me as novel. I was at Wagga races and an amateur riders race had just been run and the

horses were filing into the saddling enclosure, when a crowd of youths collected on the rail and shouted, "Where's your basket?" to the unfortunate jockey of the favourite who had been beaten at the post by bad riding. Fortunately an Australian has a thick skin and only words resulted.

Now to return to Sydney I wonder how often it is realised that, while surf-bathing on Sydney's many beaches is going on, at the same moment ski-ing and tobogganning are being practiced on Kosciusko, Australia's highest peak whose lower slopes provide excellent golf and fishing in the summer months. Koala Park is another spot worth a visit while in Sydney. Here the native bear (Koala) can be seen in its natural surroundings living solely on the leaves of the gum tree. They look like live teddy bears of our nursery days, and are quite harmless. Like all Australian animals the females carry their young in pouches. It was here that I saw a Wallaby, which is a small type of Kangaroo, and to the layman looks much like a kangaroo but has a thinner tail and is darker in colour.

The social life of Sydney is largely carried on outside the home. As is natural where an outdoor life is possible all the year round; no woman wishes to be tied to household concerns. But the Sydney hostess can also dispense hospitality within the intimacy of her home of a highly artistic quality. In the large houses on Darling Point, and in Edgecliffe dinner parties are given before dances or a visit to the theatre.

Here as in other large cities in Australia the theatres are most up to date, and comfortable. I saw an exceedingly good rendering of the musical comedy "Music in the Air," which was running concurrently with the London production. Stanley Kelloway, the famous Australian actor, delighted crowded houses every evening with the charm of his rendering the part of the music master in this delightful piece.

The Botanical Gardens are worth seeing and are the daily haunt at lunch time of the city typists.

Life in Sydney is very pleasant in a delightful climate which corresponds to the South of France.

Flowers grow in abundance as in most of Australia, and the houses are tastefully decorated with large bowls in which one

notices daffodils, hyacinths, sweet peas and stocks at the same time; flowers that in England bloom at different periods of the year.

Boronia, a shrub with a lovely fragrance, is indigenous to Australia only, and is much worn by women.

Like Sydney, Melbourne is also in a wonderful setting, with the Yarra River flowing through the centre of the city. It has the atmosphere of the typical cathedral city of England surrounded by a belt of factories. Nevertheless, it is so progressive and competitive as to be worthy of Sydney's steel.

Wide, well kept streets and dignified houses suggest the inherited civic pride of their forbears who would permit no transported convict to land in the town, a pride which has preserved its stern opposition to any institution which tends to detract from the ordered dignity of the city. Australians may be rather amused at Melbourne's apparent exclusiveness, but, if for no other reason, they should be grateful for this outstanding manifesto of the absurdity of the belief which seems to have taken possession of some Europeans, that Australians are the descendants of convicts. Some of them, indeed, may be, but if the conditions of that grim period of so-called justice are investigated, it will be seen that often the sole crime of the deported was merely a well-developed spirit of adventure.

Toorak, one of the residential quarters is most delightfully laid out with fine mansions standing in their own grounds. Unlike Sydney the people of Melbourne live much more in their charming homes and do most of their entertaining in them.

Round Melbourne there are several hunt clubs. The country is grass with rocky granite hills in parks and the fences exclusively timber and wire. Very few beside the hunt servants wear pink, and practically all the women ride astride. The horses look rough but are fit and magnificent performers and rarely make a mistake.

The field take on timber at a stretched gallop, and the women are well to the fore. Any qualms about not jumping unless hounds are running do not exist, and it is very noticeable that practically no rails are broken. This is because there is usually a strand of barbed wire six inches above the top rail and the

horses jump well clear of it having been caught out in their early hunting days. It is really marvellous to see these horses perform; they are natural jumpers having had no proper organised training but just introduced to hunting indiscriminately.

I was out with the Melbourne hounds one day and saw the huntsman and quite a number of the field jump a fence of four strands of wire with no wood in the fence except for the uprights. He was casting hounds at the time and appeared to be watching his hounds as his horse was in mid-air. A run of fifteen miles is quite a common-place and there is an obstacle at least every half-mile.

From Melbourne I travelled to Adelaide by night in a very comfortable sleeper and arrived at Government House in time for breakfast.

Adelaide is situated between St. Vincent's Gulf and the Mount Lofty Ranges. From the top of Mount Lofty the view of the city is exquisite. It is evident that the man who planned the lay out of Adelaide was a master of the art. This was originally entrusted to Colonel Light and he carried out his mission exceedingly well.

The Royal Show was on while I was in Adelaide. I was much struck by the solid show-ring fences that were included in the course every afternoon of the show. For a horse to clear such a course without a fault at the speed at which the contest is carried out is a remarkable performance.

At Adelaide I caught my ship for India and had only one more day in Australia and this was in Western Australia.

The ship got into Fremantle at 8 a.m. and did not sail till 5 p.m., so there was just time to have a look round.

Looking at Perth and Fremantle to-day it is difficult to believe that the first immigrant ship arrived at the latter port as lately as 1829.

In the early stages of this State's history superficial judgement condemned it as waterless and unprofitable, but there was water, and gold in plenty for the finding.

Apart from the varied interest of the harbour and the Swan River up to Perth, the most attractive feature to my mind is the exceedingly fine stretch of natural country known as King's

Park. This connects Fremantle and Perth by as interesting an avenue as one may wish to meet, in which the natural characteristics of the Western Australian landscapes have been preserved. A magnificent war memorial has been built overlooking the city of Perth and river.

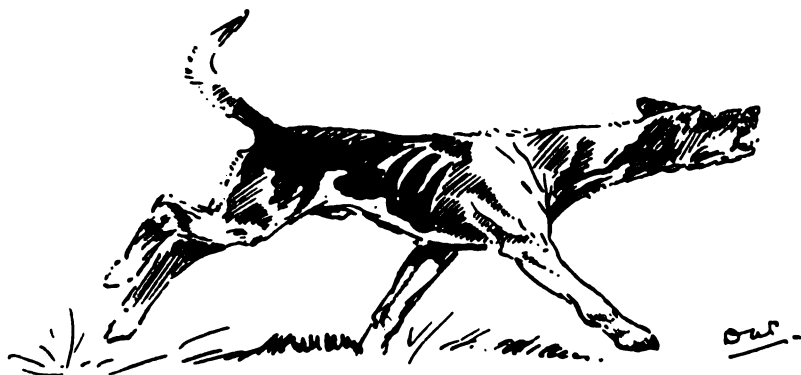
While in Western Australia I was fortunate enough to see some of the wild horses, known as "Brumbees," in virgin bush. The animals startled by the approach of our car galloped off at breakneck speed led by the stallion and followed by a dozen or more of his female attendants. These horses once trained and broken make excellent saddle horses, and never need tying up when one dismounts, but follow one about like a dog.

An original road out of Perth built by convicts in the early days is still in use. It is made of round blocks of timber sunk into the ground.

Perth is an attractive town built of red brick and tiled roofs, and has already some imposing buildings such as the new Post Office, but the most attractive of all is Government House, built after the style of a Scotch country house, and surrounded by coniferous trees.

No Australian would believe you if you told him that he suffers from the inferiority complex so far as his native land is concerned, yet it manifests itself in a certain depreciation of the landscape; an attitude of local disparagement that may be traced to the homesick and prejudiced, although the aura that surrounds the homeland is largely due to the distance that lends enchantment.

It is a magnificent continent with many diverse attractions, its climate varies from snowfields to the tropics, and it is well worth a visit.



THE ARAB HORSE OF PALESTINE

By M. S. O'RORKE, The Palestine Police.

THE breeds of the better type of Arab horses most commonly met in Palestine and Trans-Jordan are the following :—

| | |
|-----------|----------|
| K'beishan | Tweissan |
| Abayan | Julf |
| K'heilan | Jarban |
| Makhladi | Hamdani |

Though naturally the majority found here are of the Gaza or Beersheba district breed, nevertheless a considerable number of Syrian and Trans-Jordan horses find their way into the country each year, particularly to the north and north-east where the Syrian pony is favoured. Few Nejdian ponies are imported, and few of the local breeds are exported, although recently there has been a considerable increase in number of Gaza and Beersheba bred horses sent to Egypt for racing, where their performances are bringing them to public notice.

Racing in this country within recent years has done much to promote the breeding of better horses in the Gaza-Beersheba district, which so far as Palestine is concerned, is the only breeding area of importance. Few locally bred horses have been, however, tried out in Syria or Egypt, as for some time owing to the supposedly general impurity of breed, considerable difficulty has been met with in having them classified as Arabs in those countries. This impurity is believed to date from 1919 when some English and Australian thoroughbred mares were presented by the Commander-in-Chief to the more important sheikhs of tribes, and it is understood were used for breeding purposes. This is undoubtedly true as some of the better horses certainly

have had a foreign strain. This is, however, gradually disappearing, local horses are breeding more true to type, and greater numbers are being classified and are racing in Egypt and Syria.

It is difficult to compare the performances of the locally bred horse with that of the Syrian or Egyptian as the best of the latter countries are not seen here. It is, however, definite that such of the better local ponies which have been classified and tried in these other territories have done remarkably well. So far as Trans-Jordan and Sinai horses are concerned, they are not so suitable for racing as those locally bred.

The following are the average times recorded at local meetings and may be of interest :—

Five furlongs : 1 min. 11 secs.

Six furlongs : 1 min. 27 secs.

One mile : 2 mins. 5 secs.

One mile and one furlong : 2 mins. 21 secs.

One and a-half mile : 3 mins. 5 secs.

Police Remounts.—There is little to choose between Trans-Jordan and locally bred horses regarding their relative merits as police remounts, although both are considered more suitable from the point of view of size and stamina than the Syrian bred. The latter, or at least most of those which have been imported to this country, are seldom over 14.1, while 14.2 is a very average pony of Palestine or Trans-Jordan.

Generally speaking, Arab horses make excellent police remounts; they are very hardy and have quick powers of recovery, but for obvious purposes stallions must be gelded. This Force, the mounted strength of which is 650 is mounted practically entirely on Arab geldings. The castration of these ponies has only been undertaken within the last few years, and it is of interest to note that although many were aged ten years and upwards, the mortality through castration has approximately been only one half per cent. The "Emasculator" method of castration is generally adopted and the instrument used is the Hungarian pattern, which has been obtained from Germany. Gelding, far from detracting from usefulness and stamina, has proved most successful, and naturally has considerably lessened the difficulties of stable management and training. It has also to a certain

extent robbed the smuggling convoy of its best asset in avoiding detection, e.g., a mare.

A Police endurance ride is held annually on the occasion of our Force Sports. The ride is generally about 60 kilometres in length and takes place over difficult mountainous and rocky tracks. Teams consist of four and their performances are remarkably good. While the scheduled time for the ride is calculated and kept secret, marks are not lost by reason only of completing the ride in a shorter time. Each horse on arrival is examined by a veterinary officer for fitness, general condition, shoeing, saddlery, including saddle sores, girth galls, etc., and marks are allotted.

The following are the times taken by the first two teams so placed in last year's ride, and give some indication of their performances, although all horses, with the exception of cases of accident, were remarkably fit on finishing :—

First Team : 7 hours 50 minutes.

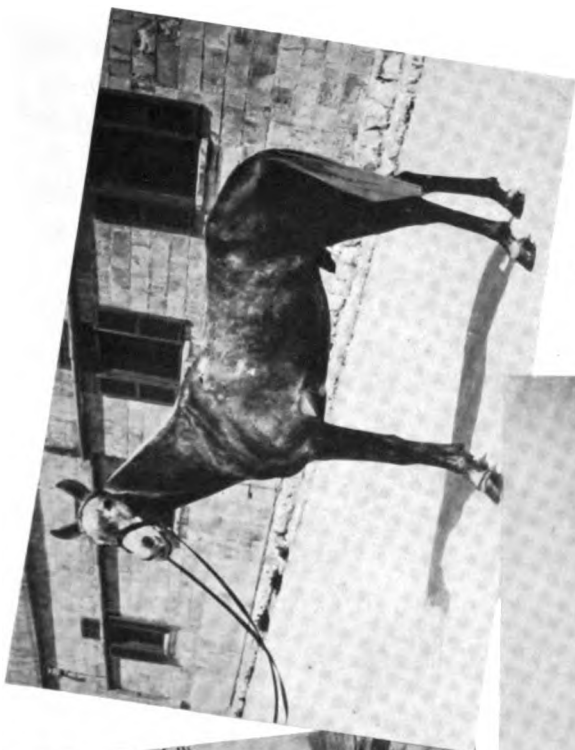
Second Team : 8 hours 10 minutes.

Hunting. Their hardiness and quick powers of recovery make Arabs very suitable for hunting in this country where the going is either very hard or very heavy; earth cracks and pot holes are many, and the only really common form of jump is the very objectionable cactus hedge with its poisonous thorns. Hunters are seldom sick or sorry, and, although the changes in temperature from day to day are most considerable, if well looked after they are little affected by a long day under a very hot sun or biting cold rain, even if this follows a hack of thirty miles to a meet the previous day and is followed by a corresponding hack the following day. They are fair and bold jumpers even with only a little schooling and seldom put a foot wrong. They are intelligent and clever to a degree and given their head will go anywhere.

Polo.—Polo has recently been started in this country and ponies for the most part are locally bred. They have generally a good natural balance, are bold, very intelligent, handy and have fair mouths; a remarkable fact when it is considered they are backed at about the age of two and ridden in the most cruel type of bit by a native with “no hands.” With patience and proper



Typical Police Horse
Breed—K'hailan
15 hands. 7 $\frac{3}{4}$ years
Price £50



Breed—Abayan
Height 14.2. Age 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ years
Price £25
Light in bone; very intelligent; Gelded a few weeks before this photograph



One of our best Polo Ponies
Bred in Beersheba

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0

training they are very quickly made to play a useful game even after a month's proper handling, while with continued training they become most useful. Generally their only disadvantage is lightness and size, but this is only felt when playing against English and Australian ponies and occasionally Barbs. We do not encourage the playing of any horse but the Arab.

Cost.—The cost of the locally bred ponies varies according to the following factors :—

(a) Season of the year. The price drop considerably in the late spring when racing is stopped and forage prices rise. The price usually rises about the beginning of December when rains are due.

(b) Dry or wet winter. The difficulties of feeding during a drought force many to sell at prices which would not be considered if the season were a good one.

Latterly the price of good locally bred ponies suitable for racing has considerably risen owing to the enhanced opportunities of winning races in Egypt, and as a result selling very well. Nevertheless it is possible to buy a good four-year-old from £25 to £30, but prices for reasonable five years' old are considerably in excess of this, £40, £50 and £60 being often paid for something particularly good.

Trans-Jordan horses are generally a shade cheaper, while the price of an ordinarily good Syrian pony ranges from £30 to £35.

Sale. The sale of the better-bred horses is invariably accompanied by a certificate (Hijjah) signed by the Sheikhs and elders of the tribe or sub-tribe from where the horse has originated, stating the "Beit" or breed of the horse and its age and description.

These certificates, by reason of the fact that the Arab inhabitants are very proud of their horse and its breeding, are reliable documents and are invariably accepted without hesitation by Courts of Law and the public.

The following is an expression which is commonly found in most certificates. "This horse covers all breeds of mares." The reason being that many breeders are of the opinion that horses

of certain breeds, of which K'heilan Ajouz is one, cover only the mares of their own "Beit." It is difficult to verify this.

Arab mares are seldom sold if there is any likelihood of their leaving the countries of Syria, Palestine, Trans-Jordan or Arabia, and there is seldom an outright sale.

It is the general custom to sell only a share in a mare, though the animal itself passes to the possession of the purchaser. This sale is accompanied by the following conditions more often than not :—(a) That the purchaser obtains the seller's consent before having the mare served by any particular stallion; (b) that the first, second or third filly, or even the first three fillies bred from the mare are the property of the seller, or alternatively, that the purchaser retains the first filly and returns the mare to the seller.

I think it may not be out of place to quote the old Arab proverb in conclusion : That true Paradise is only to be found on the back of an Arab horse or in the arms of one's beloved.



STEWARDEDING.

BY LIEUTENANT-COLONEL SIDNEY G. GOLDSCHMIDT.

EFFICIENT stewarding is an important aid to good judging and adds greatly to the enjoyment of the spectators. It should therefore be the duty of Show Committees and Secretaries to arrange that there should be an adequate number of stewards appointed, and it should also be made a condition of their appointment that they know their job and are willing to devote themselves to it.

A judge cannot give his whole attention to the matter in hand if it is distracted by having to do the stewards' work also, and to help to keep the proceedings in the ring moving in an orderly manner. A badly-stewarded class can be a positive nightmare to a conscientious judge, and a source of irritation to the spectators by introducing an element of doubt and uncertainty, and by making the procedure in the ring difficult to follow. The important point of punctuality is also in the hands of the stewards.

The first thing, therefore, is to appoint a head steward and he should be, if possible, a man with previous experience and in addition he should have sufficient personality to take command of the junior stewards and to see that not only are they allotted definite duties but also that they do not allow their attention to be distracted from their task.

The classes we are considering at the moment are those for horses. At a miscellaneous Agricultural Show it is best to have a separate group of stewards for the horse classes, although it is an advantage to have the same head steward for the whole show as by this means it is easier to adhere to the time-table.

One class may have to be hurried up to allow the ring to be cleared in time for the next. On the other hand, if it appears for some reason that the judging of any class is going to finish too soon, a timely word to the judges will enable them to prolong matters, so that a pause in the proceedings can be avoided.

It is not possible to draw up a set of instructions to fit all circumstances, so much depends on the size and site of the Show and the lay-out of the ground. It is imperative, however, that it should be the sole duty of one steward to collect the competitors preparatory to their punctual appearance in the ring.* This is sometimes a difficult task, partly because for some reason grooms seem incapable of finding out for themselves when their class is due and further, the same groom may have to appear in two classes that follow each other. Sometimes there is delay because the saddle and bridle has to be changed from one competitor to another, in which case it is the duty of the collecting steward to ask for indulgence in the ring. I may mention that it is the duty of the owners to see that their grooms are instructed about times, etc., and that they have adequate help to ensure punctuality.

There should be another steward or a deputy in charge of the gate leading into the ring and another at the exit. As it is one of the duties of the former of these officials to deal with late comers, he must be capable of firmness and tact. Sometimes unpunctuality is outside the control of the competitor and the judges may have to be consulted as to whether they are to be admitted or not. This should be done through the intermediary of the head steward.

The control of the competitors in the ring should be in the hands of the head steward and he should have two assistants, one to help him in the actual control and the other to be in charge of the prize cards, rosettes and records of the winning and placed horses. It is their duty also to keep the ring clear of unauthorized persons.

Previous to the Show there should be two meetings of the stewards, presided over by the head steward. The first meeting,

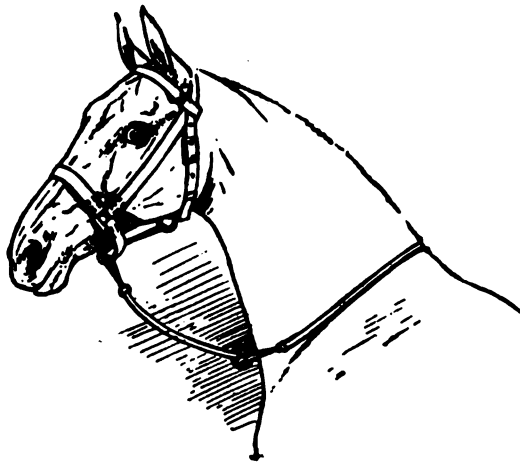
* For this purpose there should be a separate collecting ring adjoining the Show ring, without which no show can be efficiently run.

at which there should be stewards representing all the classes, should decide the programme and time-table. The second meeting, at which all the stewards should be present, ought to be held either the evening before the Show or on the same morning. The duties should be apportioned and reliefs for lunch (should there be no interval in the programme) arranged.

It is the duty of the stewards in the ring to ensure an orderly exhibition and to convey the judges' instructions to the competitors. The latter duty is not so simple as it sounds as in the excitement of the moment the minds of competitors are not very receptive. This is specially true of the children's classes.

Another duty to which a steward must be definitely allocated is to see that the competing horses are duly measured and examined for age. There are certain classes with a height and age limit and the Society's veterinary surgeon must be in attendance to verify both points. When the competitors appear before the judges this must have been already attended to.

It will be seen that for everything to work smoothly and to time, complete arrangements must be made beforehand; this as well as the actual stewarding on the day, involves considerable self-sacrifice on the part of those gentlemen who undertake the duties of steward. It is tiring work and often entails missing interesting items of the Show.



MODERN CAVALRY HEAD-DRESSES

BY LIEUTENANT-COLONEL J. E. N. RYAN, T.D.

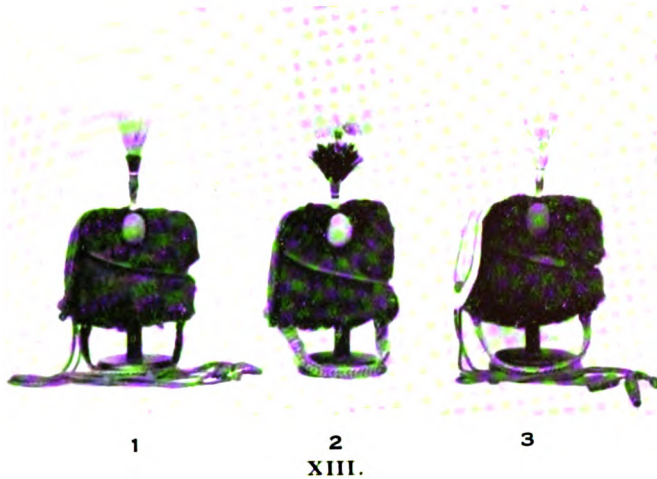
PART IV. HUSSARS.

HUNGARY was the birthplace of hussars. During the latter half of the fifteenth century Matthias Corvinus, one of a line of Hungarian sovereigns waging war against Turkish aggression, raised levies on the system that each town and village had to furnish one fully equipped horse-soldier for every twenty men. From this particular mode of recruitment is derived the name "huszár,"—"husz" in Magyar meaning "twenty"—preserved in almost its original form in the languages of the different European peoples into whose armies similar troops were introduced.*

After the battle of Mohács in 1526 when the Hungarian king was slain, the Turks invaded and overran Hungary to the gates of Vienna, and it was not till a hundred and seventy years later, after the battle of Zenta in 1697, that the country was finally freed. The State of Austria-Hungary had in the meanwhile come into existence through identity of rulers, and the first standing regiments of Hungarian hussars formed part of the Emperor's forces. The Nádasdy hussars raised in 1688 and existing till the dissolution of the Austrian Empire after the Great War as the 9th Austro-Hungarian Hussars, was the oldest hussar regiment in the world.

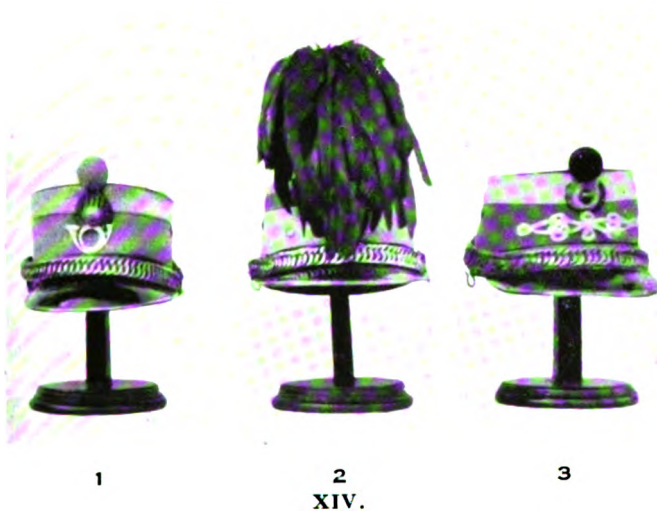
Two of the characteristic features of the hussar dress, the fur cap or busby and the slung jacket or pelisse, are derived from the costume of these early regiments. The busby was originally a conical cloth cap bordered with fox or wolf skin, with the loose top falling over to one side, forming a protection for the neck against sabre cuts. The fur band deepened, until in the mid-eighteenth century during the reign of the Empress-Queen Maria Theresa, the cap had developed into its present form with high fur sides, the loose top becoming a separate cloth bag. The slung jacket was at first simply the skin of a wolf or some

* It is also suggested that the origin of the word "hussar" is not Hungarian but Slavonic, and of similar derivation to the word "corsair," the earliest hussars being recruited from banditti in Hungarian Slavonia.



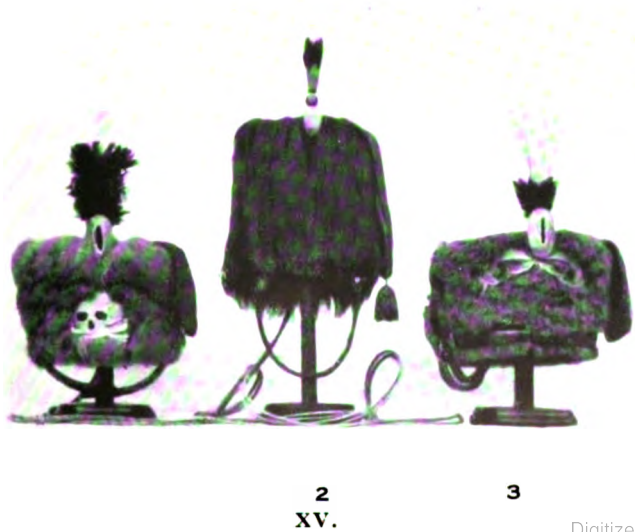
Gt. Britain—

- 1—"Sharpshooters" Yeomanry.
- 2—8th Hussars—Officers.
- 3—13th Hussars.



France—

- 1—Chasseurs à Cheval Warrant Officers.
- 2—Hussars—Officers.
- 3—Hussars.



Germany—

- 1—1st Life ("Death's Head") Hussars—Officers.

Belgium—

- 2—Guides—Officers.

Germany—

- 3—15th Hanoverian Hussars—Officers.



1

2

3

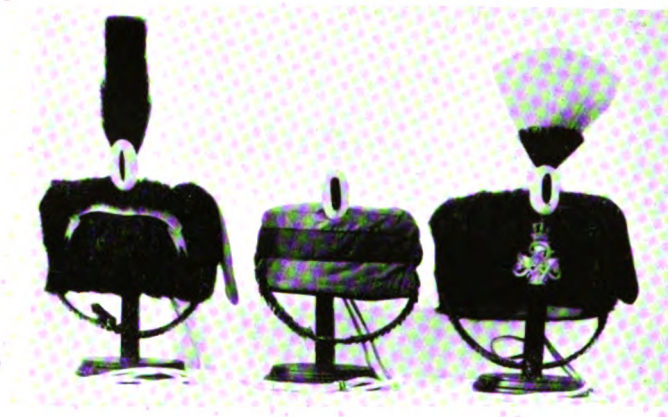
XVI.

Germany—

1—2nd Life ("Death's Head") Hussars.

2—Guard Hussars.

3—17th Brunswick Hussars.



1

2

3

XVII.

Germany—

1—9th (Rhine) Hussars—Trumpeters.

2—Hussars—(Field Service Cap).

3—7th (Rhine) Hussars N.C.O.'s.



1

2

3

XVIII.

Germany—

1—5th Blücher Hussars.

Gt. Britain—

2—"Sharpshooters," Yeomanry.

Germany—

3—9th (Rhine) Hussars—Officers.

other wild beast hung over the shoulders as a protection against wind and rain, and used as a wrap at night. This became early in the eighteenth century a fur-lined jacket worn in bad weather over the tunic; both of these garments were braided after the fashion of the Hungarian national costume. The curved sabre and sabretache, braided boots and breeches and horse-cover or shabraque, also form part of the traditional hussar costume and equipment.

While the elaborately dressed hussars of the modern British, German and Russian armies wore the fur busby, in French styled a "colback" and in German simply a "pelzmütze" or fur cap, those of France and Austria-Hungary and some of the lesser Powers had another head-dress also Hungarian in origin but from a later date than the busby. During the latter half of the eighteenth century the Imperial (Austrian) hussars had adopted as their headgear a high cylindrical felt cap without a brim, and with a cockade and feather plume in the front. To this was added as a shade for the eyes a leather peak, for which the Magyar word is "csák," and this practice having been officially sanctioned in 1798, there originated the shako which, in forms varying between the high field service cap of Italian officers and the flat topped cap worn in the British and several foreign armies, has become the most universal military head-dress of the present day.

Another form of busby worn by hussars in the Balkan countries is the "kalpak" or "talpack," derived from the fur cap which is the national head-dress of many peoples in the Near East. It is smaller and lower than the busby proper or "colback," and is made of grey or black curled lambskin, with a coloured crown or busby bag and in front a single upright feather or hair plume. This type of cap was also adopted by Rifle regiments in the British army, the astrakhan folding cap being a later modification.

Hussars were introduced into the British Cavalry much later than in the principal European armies, their place being taken by the Light Dragoons, the first complete regiments of whom were formed in 1759. In the year 1805 directions were issued for the clothing of the 7th Light Dragoons to be altered to that

of hussars, and by 1808 this change was completed in the whole of the cavalry brigade stationed at Ipswich consisting of the 7th, 10th, 15th and 18th Hussars shortly before their departure for the Corunna campaign. As Light Dragoons these regiments had already a shell jacket or dolman braided like that of the Hungarian hussars, and to this was added a slung jacket or pelisse and, instead of the bearskin-crested helmet, a shako, followed by a fur cap similar to that worn fifty years earlier by the Austrian hussars of the time of Marie Theresa. The English name for this cap was a "busby," a "buzz" being the term for any sort of fuzzy wig, e.g., that famous legal luminary of Dickens, Sergeant Buzfuz. It was like its foreign ancestor, of sable fur for officers, with a red and white osprey plume and a scarlet cloth bag or fly at the side. Gold cap lines encircled it diagonally with flounders and tassels at the ends. As a species of headgear it left much to be desired, being very tall and uncomfortable and possessed of an unhappy knack of falling off. French and Austrian hussars of this period wore a shako, and so in 1812 a bell-topped shako in black beaver was adopted for British hussars. A distinctive feature of this shako was a braided "wheel" or rose on the front; the drooping plume was of black cock's-tail feathers, and the chin-strap was of gilt scales fastening by lions' heads. The 15th Hussars had special permission to wear a shako covered with scarlet cloth instead of black beaver, which they continued to do till the year 1856.

After an interval of a third of a century, the busby was in 1846 again restored as the head-dress of British hussars.* It was described as of regimental fur, and was still much higher than the modern model. The plume was an aigrette, and the bag was plain and had a plaited top let into the crown of the cap. The lines were worn from the front of the collar only and not looped on the breast, and the chin-strap was of the curb-chain pattern and fastened by lions' heads. After the Crimean Campaign the present braided tunic copied from that of the Austrians superseded the shell jacket, and the slung jacket disappeared. The busby also became smaller and the form was altered

* The 11th Hussars had worn the busby from the time of their conversion from Light Dragoons in 1840, the bag being crimson instead of red as for the remaining three regiments the 7th, 8th and 10th Hussars.

following the model of the "colback" lately introduced for the French hussars, being higher behind than in front and capped to fit the back of the head. An oval boss or cockade was also copied, but this change was not adopted by officers of the 14th Hussars, who maintain this distinction. The bag or fly was also braided after the French fashion, and the cap chain for officers was corded. The plume was then only eight inches high, but became gradually taller until, a decade before the South African War, it attained to almost its present dimensions.

The busby worn by the twelve regiments of British hussars up to 1914, which is still the official full dress head-dress for the existing nine regiments (see illustration No. XIII, 2, 3) is therefore derived from the old Hungarian fur cap modified by French taste during the Second Empire. It is slightly conical in form and nearly a couple of inches lower all round than the cap worn in the charge of Balaklava. The busby for officers is described in the Dress Regulations as of sable, but, owing to the high cost of this fur, lynx skin, longer and dyed to the same colour, was commonly used. For the troops the fur is that of a species of coarse-haired seal dyed black. A triple line of gold or yellow cord encircles the cap diagonally, and is prolonged as a pair of lines with slides and olive ends which pass through a loop under the bag, around the neck, and are fastened on the right breast.* The oval boss or cockade is covered with gold or yellow gimp, and the curb-chain chin-strap, which is corded for officers, is attached by hooks only.

The busby bag is separate and is sunk within the fur rim of the crown. Contrary to the tradition in European armies, with a few exceptions to be noted later, it hangs on the *right* side of the busby, and is probably a survival of a long padded bag fastened to the shoulder to ward off sword cuts. There is a single line of gold or yellow braid round the seam and down the centre of the bag with a gimp button at the point of junction; field officers of the 11th Hussars have worn for a long time a figured rosette worked round the button. The favourite colour in all armies has always been scarlet; four regiments—the 7th, 8th, 10th and 15th—have their original red bag, and two—the 4th and

* In the 11th Hussars the lines are plaited, and in the 7th Hussars the ends are worn in front of the collar. Officers of the 15th Hussars do not wear cap lines round the busby.

14th—a yellow one, while for the 11th it is crimson, the 3rd garter blue, and for the 13th Hussars what is still described as buff though now actually white as for the now amalgamated 19th Hussars. The bag of this latter regiment, as well as the dark blue and crimson bags of the 18th and 20th Hussars, have disappeared on their amalgamation.

The ostrich feather plume for officers was introduced after the South African War instead of osprey on account of the risk of extermination and cruelty to the egrets, and it has gained in height the inches lost by the busby. The base is of vulture plumage. The small plume for the troops is of horsehair. The plume is supported in an ornamental socket, and is encircled by a ring.* It is generally white, the base being red in the 8th and 18th, black in the 10th, and crimson in the 11th Hussars, while the 20th Hussars had an all-yellow plume, and the 4th and 15th Hussars have a completely red one. Before the introduction of khaki the busby was worn in marching order minus the plume, with a blue frock.

The head-dress for the bands of all hussar regiments when employed mounted at tattoos, etc., is now similar to that formerly worn in the squadrons, but before the War the band of the 11th Hussars had a unique distinction, the busby being of grey racoon skin. How this originated is not known, but it had at least forty years' existence, and may possibly have been inspired by the troopers' busby of Hungarian hussars of the mid-eighteenth century, which was of similar fur. Sixty years ago commanding officers had wide powers as regards the uniform of their units, and as it was a general thing for bands to wear distinctive forage caps, the grey busby which was officially recognised in 1912, was probably an extension of the same idea. The round forage cap or "pill box" (see illustration †No. V, 4), blue, except for the 11th and 15th Hussars who had crimson and scarlet caps, was superseded in 1905 by the present "drummer-red" cap. The 11th Hussars kept their crimson colour, and the 13th Hussars have a white cap with a blue band.

Of the fifty-five regiments of Yeomanry in 1914, approximately half were hussars; the thirty-eight senior regiments were

* A precious stone was sometimes set in this, doubtless a memento from "the girl I left behind me."

† CAVALRY JOURNAL, October, 1933, page 587.

raised between 1794 and 1848, and the others after the South African War. Some of the old regiments had hussar uniforms like those of the Light Brigade with gold or silver closely braided shell jackets and scarlet and gold girdles, the busby having generally a plain red bag and no cockade. Amongst these were the Sherwood Rangers, Suffolk, Royal East Kent, and Royal Bucks Hussars in green, the Westmorland and Cumberland and Royal 1st Devon in scarlet, and the Royal Gloucestershire Hussars in jackets of Badminton blue. The head-dress of the Royal East Kent, who were Mounted Rifles, was an astrakhan cap resembling that of the 60th Rifles. A slung jacket was also worn by troopers till the eighties of the last century, and officers still wear astrakhan-trimmed jackets in full dress at levées and for ceremonial functions. The modern hussar uniform was also the kit of several Yeomanry regiments such as the Denbigh, Northumberland, West Kent, Middlesex, Oxfordshire and "Sharpshooters"—the purple and green busby bags of the last two regiments were unique. A busby and tunic of the "Sharpshooters," the latter with netted olivets instead of ball buttons as on the regular hussar tunic, are shown (see illustrations XIII, 1, and XVIII, 2). Nine of the sixteen existing Yeomanry regiments (including two Scouts regiments) are hussars. The uniforms of Canadian Militia Hussars resemble those of the British regiments with which they are allied.

Louis XIV introduced hussars into the French Cavalry. At the close of the seventeenth century during the campaign against the Austrians under Prince Eugène, Marlborough's brother in arms, some Hungarian hussars in the service of the Emperor deserted to the French forces where they were adopted as servants by officers intrigued by their bizarre costume. Their numbers having increased, they were employed as scouts and raiders, and as their new skirmishing tactics proved very successful, some permanent hussar regiments were formed. The earliest of these was the "Régiment de Berchény"* formed in 1720, which exists to-day in the French Cavalry as the 1st Hussars. Four other Royalist regiments subsequently created the Chamborant, Esterhazy, Saxe, and Colonel-Général

* It was in this regiment that the Baron de Marbot, famous for his memoirs, commenced his career, and had his encounter with the Austrian Barco hussars.

"Houzards," are also represented in the same numerical seniority at the present time.

The head-dress of the earliest regiments was the Hungarian fur-bordered cap worn with a braided tunic and pelisse. In the last quarter of the century, following the example of the Imperial (Austrian) Hussars, this was changed to a tall cylindrical felt cap tilted on one side of the head, and wound round with a narrow cloth bag-tail, the last few inches of which was adorned with a tassel and hung down. This cap was worn till after the period of the Revolution when, again copying the Austrians, the peaked shako was adopted. During the Napoleonic era this was bell-topped and dark in colour,* being changed to a scarlet cylindrical shako after the Restoration. About 1845, during the reign of Louis-Philippe, the mode was for red or light-blue conical shakos with drooping tri-coloured plumes. With the advent of the Second Empire in 1852 the "colback" was introduced as the head-dress for all French hussars, the form and ornamentation inspiring the British model.

After the fall of the Empire came a reversion to the shako, much lower than when worn 20 years earlier, but with some resembling features, and which remained the head-dress of the fourteen regiments of French hussars up to 1914† (see illustration No. XIV, 2-3). It is slightly conical and covered with light blue cloth, with an upper band of silver or white braid and a lower one of patent leather. The crown is of black leather, and the peak is bound with brass. In front is a Hungarian knot figured in white or silver braid, and above this a metal cockade in the national colours, fastened by a silver or white cord loop and a button. Behind the cockade is a ball, silver-corded for officers, and of different coloured worsted for each squadron. In review order a dark green cock's-tail plume was also worn, the colonel of the regiment being distinguished by an upright white plume, and the regimental staff by tricoloured drooping feathers. The curb-chain chin-strap is fastened by lions' heads, with a third one at the back for looping it up.

* The "Compagnies d'Elite" of the Hussars and the Guides had bearskin "colbacks."

† The cadets of the Ecole Spéciale Militaire, at St. Cyr, still wear a shako resembling in form the hussar shako, with a red and white plume.

Allied to the French hussars were the twenty-three regiments of "Chasseurs à Cheval" corresponding to British Light Dragoons. They were distinguished previously to 1870 by green uniforms, characteristic head-dresses at the end of the eighteenth century being a cocked hat or fur-crested helmet, and about 1845 a large bearskin "colback" which was altered during the Second Empire to the model worn by hussars. After 1870 the Chasseurs were given, instead of the busby, a shako similar to that of the hussars, the only difference being a black, instead of white, braid band for the troopers' head-dress, while a badge consisting of a wound hunting horn takes the place of the knot (see illustration No. XIV, 1). The uniform was also the same—a light blue tunic with red breeches; the képi now worn by the Light Cavalry has a light blue band.

The two corps of French Colonial Cavalry, the Chasseurs d'Afrique and Spahis, continue to wear their pre-war uniforms. That of the former is the Chasseur uniform with the addition of a red kummerbund, and on service a white cover for the képi protecting the back of the neck. The native Spahis wear a white camel-hair burnous or "haïk" over a red Zouave jacket and cape, forming a hood if required. The officers have a képi and a red tunic. This is the only instance of a red uniform in the French army.

German hussars owed their fame to Frederick the Great and his general, von Ziethen, called the "Hussar-father." Ziethen, though a Prussian, had served with the Austrian hussars, who were the first exponents of the new Light Cavalry tactics. He profited so well from his mentors that, later being opposed to them with Prussian hussars at Rothschloss in 1741, he defeated them, and—shades of the chivalrous past!—was congratulated by his former teacher. Under his training the Prussian hussars of the mid-eighteenth century, came to be amongst the best of their arm. His bearskin cap and leopard skin mantle are to be seen in the Armoury in Unter den Linden.

The twenty-one pre-war regiments comprised one of the Guard, seventeen Prussian line regiments, and three Saxon.* The six senior regiments preserved the unusual colours indicative of

* There were no Bavarian hussars in the modern German Army.

their irregular origin, the Guard and 3rd Ziethen Hussars having a scarlet tunic or "attila," while the two Life or "Death's Head" regiments wore black, the 4th Hussars brown, and the 5th Blücher Hussars one of crimson cloth (see illustration No. XVIII, 1). The remaining fifteen regiments had light and dark blue or green uniforms, except the 17th Brunswick Hussars who wore black from their origin as a "Free Corps" in the War of Liberation. An undress "attila" less elaborately braided in silver was also used by officers in all regiments (see illustration No. XVIII, 3). It is recorded that the black tunics of the "Death's Head" Hussars originated from the plunder of a Benedictine monastery during the First Silesian War, while the brown uniforms of the 4th Hussars were similarly made by Frederick from the habits of Franciscan monks when he happened to be short of cloth for his newly-raised hussar regiments.

The head-dress of Frederick's hussars was a conical felt cap with bag-tail, or a high fur busby. From the beginning of the last century till 1843 a shako was worn by the Prussian hussars, when the felt cap was restored except for the Guard and 3rd Ziethen regiment, who were given brown seal fur—for officers otter-skin—busbies. In 1850 all Prussian hussars had similar busbies with a false peak sewn on back and front. After the Danish War of 1864 the Guard Hussars received a lower black seal cap with a falling horsehair plume which later became general, officers retaining the otter cap with upright plume. From 1903 the standing (Hungarian) plume was adopted for all ranks.

The German busby or "pelzmutze," worn in 1914, differs in several respects from that of British hussars, being lower and of equal height all round with an outward splay at the top. The officers' cap is of grey opossum fur (see illustration No. XV, 1), the otter-skin cap having been changed shortly before the War; the men's cap remained of short coarse-haired sealskin. The busby bag is plain and following the Hungarian tradition, hangs on the *left* side towards the back.

The colour of the bag was scarlet or crimson for thirteen regiments, the others having cornflower-blue, white, or primrose yellow, and one—the 10th Hussars—a rose pink bag. The plume for officers is of two types, some regiments (including the

Guard, "Death's Head," and Brunswick Hussars) having white osprey plumes with a ruff of black ostrich feathers, while in others the upper part is of white feathers with a black vulture ruff. The horsehair plume is white for troopers, black and white for N.C.Os. and red for trumpeters (see illustrations Nos. XVI and XVII, 1, 3). The oval silver or white cockade or "nationale" has a black centre for Prussians and a green one in the Saxon regiments.

The silver or white cap lines are short and were worn from the back of the cap looped round the collar; off parade on foot they were rolled on the right side of the cap. For officers and N.C.Os. there is an interwoven black or green silk stripe. The Guard Hussar busby has additional lines with tassels on the right side after the Hungarian fashion (see illustration No. XVI, 2). The scale chin-strap has the Imperial cockade under the right side. On manœuvres a field-grey cover with a red band was worn over the cap (see illustration No. XVII, 2).

On the front of the busby are various decorations, the usual one being a scroll inscribed "Mit Gott für König und Vaterland" (see illustration No. XVII, 1). The two "Death's Head" regiments have as well a skull and crossbones (see illustration Nos. XV, 1 and XVI, 1), while the Guard Hussars have instead the Guard Star (see illustration No. XVI, 2), and the 7th (Rhine) Hussars the crowned cypher of King William I with the scroll underneath (see illustration No. XVII, 3). The 15th Hanoverian regiment has on laurel leaves "Peninsula, Waterloo, El Bodon, Barossa" (see illustration No. XV, 3), and the Saxons only their Star.

The 17th Brunswick Hussars or "Black Brunswickers" have two claims on our attention, first from their battle honours, and also because their hussar kit was adopted in 1812 by officers of the 60th and 95th Rifles, the latter now the Rifle Brigade. From 1886 this regiment formed part of the Prussian Cavalry but its separate origin was shown by, amongst other details of uniform, a blue and gold or yellow State cockade, gold or yellow busby lines, and a yellow scroll inscribed "Peninsula, Sicilien, Waterloo, Mars la Tour" above a small "death's head" (see illustration No. XVI, 3). The officer's busby was of black bearskin.

(To be concluded.)

THE ALPHABET OF THE HORSE

By MAJOR-GENERAL SIR JOHN MOORE, K.C.M.G., C.B.,
F.R.C.V.S.

- A** is for Army, strong and complete,
Horses the backbone, conflicts to meet.
- B** is for Breeding, consider outlook,
Horses in numbers, note by the book.
- C** is for the Cart that comes after the horse,
A useful combine, and a matter of course.
Also for Colman, active and keen,
Who brooks no dissensions coming between.
- D** is for Dublin, and its great Show,
Where dealers in hundreds usually go.
- E** is for Economy, figures disclose,
Expense of machine over nature grows.
- F** is the Foal, handsome and bright,
A promising youngster, his mother's delight.
Also for Forshaw, a man among men,
A lover of horses, and good with his pen.
- G** is for Gelding, true action and straight,
With frame in proportion, and well up to weight.
Also for Gilbey, whom everyone knows,
A constant attender at all the horse shows.
- H** is the Harness that draught horses wear,
Its perfect condition necessitates care.
- I** stands for Improvement, of quality fine
In Hunter selection, hard to define.
- J** stands for Judges, a difficult thing
To apportion the placing when in the ring.
- K** is the Kindness which all horses require,
And which their own natures are wont to inspire.

- L** is the Land which gave horses their birth,
Their food, and their pleasures, to say nothing of mirth.
- M** is for Mare, and Mother as well,
Credits to offspring, all do excel.
- N** is for Nondescript, fortunately rare,
Misfits are evils, suggesting beware.
Also for National Societies strong,
Their really good work keeps rolling along.
- O** is for Oats, hard, solid and good,
When put in the manger, there's no better food.
- P** is for Profit, accruing to State,
Of intelligent Policy, well up-to-date.
Also the Price which good huntsmen pay,
For really fine hunters, able to stay.
- Q** is the Question one usually asks
Re suitable horses for various tasks.
- R** is the Rent horse breeding provides,
According to custom, and something besides.
- S** is for Soundness certificates show,
A thing of necessity as we all know.
- T** is the Trial for a big race,
Determining fitness in the event of a place.
- U** stands for Useful in matters of trade,
Whatever the contracts commonly made.
- V** is for "Veterinary," skilled and reflective,
Of sound common sense, and views in perspective.
- W** is for Winner, whatever the sphere,
Race, Ring or Show, there's always a cheer.
- X** is for Xtras, in rations to give
For any hard work, enabling to live.
- Y** is for Youngster, that will grow into fame,
Competing for prizes, and so making a name.
- Z** is the last, and now for Good Luck
To horses in general, with plenty of pluck.

HOUNDS, GENTLEMEN, PLEASE.

(A TALE OF THE PENINSULAR WAR)

"HOUNDS, Gentlemen, please," meaning, "Clear off the track"
As the huntsman and whips come along with the pack—
Hearing this sets me thinking of old days in Spain,
And this tale of the Duke and his huntsman, Tom Crane.

"What! Hounds at the front! That's campaigning *de luxe*,"
Says some spectacled strategist deep in his books,
But the Duke looked on hunting as kin to his art
And a straight riding soldier was dear to his heart.

Though a stickler for duty, for that was his sort,
'Twas no part of his job to lose five seasons' sport.
And better than brooding in billets to sit,
Was to gallop about with his hounds and keep fit.

So all being quiet for the time on our front
We settled down cheerly one winter to hunt,
And a river divided convenient and clear
What we called our own country from that of Mounseer.

But over this river one morning the hounds
With the fox close before them ran right out of bounds,
And the field was left pounded, but not Mr. Crane,
Through the ford like a flash he was with them again.

And he bent in his saddle and waved on the pack
When a cry came behind him of "Tally Ho, back!"
But the fox hadn't doubled though hounds were at fault,
It was just a loud hint to tell Tom he must halt.

And he called off his hounds and he turned to obey
When a troop of French Cavalry loomed in his way,
But he trotted to meet them entirely at ease
Crying out as he neared them "Hounds, Gentlemen, please!"

Said their leader in English "By fortune of war
You're a prisoner brave red coat whoever you are,"
But "Hounds, Gentlemen, *please*," was still all that he heard—
With a note of reproof in the last pleading word.

"Let me by, let me by, sure you'd ruffle a saint,
When I get back to master I'll lodge a complaint,
Though this soldiering's all very well in its place,
When it meddles with hunting it's just a disgrace."

Then that gallant troop leader went off in a roar,
And in finnikin fanciful lingo he swore,
That by all sacred blueness or such rigmarole
An English goddam was a drole of the droles.

Then he called me a cockin and wished me, good chase,
"And I offed it" said Crane "at my hunter's best pace"—
And he tooted his horn and he splashed through the ford
And as cool as could be cantered up to my Lord.

And the Chief looked severe and was starting to chide—
"What the . . . made you cross to the enemy's side?
You had orders precise," but Tom answered him pat,
"Well! The fox had no orders," and left it at that.

O. B.



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

The "Army Quarterly" continues its admirable array of historical articles, but topics of more current interest figure somewhat more largely than in recent issues. An article by Major Wardle discusses and suggests remedies for a Commanding Officer's difficulties in maintaining a spirit of keenness in a unit; Brigadier Brooke considers the training of N.C.O.s in leadership; General Bruce throws light on the present ticklish situation in the Far East, where he foresees inevitable war if Japan, the U.S.A. and ourselves cannot come to an agreement on outstanding problems peacefully and, above all, speedily.

"Fighting Forces" for August also contains an article on the Far East by General Bruce, this time tracing the rise of Japan to Empire status; there is a thoughtful review of the new Official History of 1914 and a discussion by the Editor of the relationship between the Press and the Services. In the October issue Captain Tuke describes from a new and popular angle the 1st Divisional manoeuvres on Salisbury Plain, and Major Burne contributes another of his admirable tours of old-time battlefields, on this occasion however going no further back than the Marne in 1914.

The item of the greatest general interest in the "Royal Artillery Journal" is an outline of the Saar problem by Major Reynolds. The Duncan Essay (not the prize-winning one) here reprinted deals with counter battery procedure; the extracts from Marshal Foch's "Conduct of War" have now reached their penultimate stage.

The "Royal Engineers' Journal" contains little of other than Sapper interest, though Colonel Bruce's lecture on the

northern frontier of India, and Lieutenant Dobbie's account of a week's holiday spent in the desert south-east of Egypt are worth perusal.

The "R.A.V.C. Journal" continues its historical notes on Egypt in 1915-1916, and its discussions of multifarious technical problems.

The "R.A.S.C. Quarterly" for May includes such varied items of interest as "Supply of Ammunition in a Withdrawal," "M.T. Inspection in War" and the "Operation of the S. and T. Services of a Corps," from all of which the thoughtful reader will learn much.

The "Journal of the United Service Institution of India" includes the Gold Medal Essay by Major Durnford on lessons to be learnt from the French methods in Morocco for application on the North-West Frontier of India; other articles of interest include one by Colonel Wason on the use of smoke, and a description by Brigadier Collins of the new Indian Military Academy at Dehra Dun.

The "Canadian Defence Quarterly" has an article on the Far Eastern situation between Russia and Japan, by Lieutenant Gosforth; a forecast by Major Scudamore of the future of Germany, and a continuation of the narrative of the recent Japanese operations in Manchuria.

The "Royal Air Force Quarterly" has as its chief items of interest a paper on "The Principles of War and the R.A.F. Maintenance of the Aim," by Wing-Commander Howard Williams, some anonymous "Thoughts on Mobility" and a paper on the recent history and present position of Egypt by Major Pemberton.

E. W. S.

FOREIGN MAGAZINES

The French "Revue de Cavalerie" for September-October contains an excellent article on the life and work of the late Marshal Lyautey by his friend and subordinate, General Brécard. The article is, of course, of very general interest, but makes it clear that the early training which Lyautey received as a regimental cavalry officer, as well as on foreign service, contributed largely to his adaptability and resourcefulness in later life in Morocco.

Major Poupel contributes an amazingly convincing article concerning defence against armoured fighting vehicles. Speaking from his lengthy and diversified service with tanks in war during 1917-1918, he considers that the fear of the tank is overdone; that even against normal automatic weapons, if well directed, the tank's activity becomes seriously hampered. The crews of the vehicles are liable to demoralizing face and eye injuries under accurate fire; their mobility, except over the most favourable terrain, suffers greatly when opposed by a resolute and mobile defence. The author is prepared to admit the greater speed of the modern tank, but does not believe that this speed will avail much in actual battle, although its advantages will undoubtedly be great for an approach march or along roads.

The armoured motor-borne machine gun requires horsemen and motor cyclists, both to clear the roads of obstacles and to reconnoitre woods and other cover into which it cannot penetrate. Similarly, the tank really requires infantry support to make good the ground already gained, or to destroy those anti-tank weapons which the armoured vehicle cannot be sure of silencing in its advance. Nothing is more demoralizing than the feeling experienced behind armour of being cut off as the

defence closes up in rear of the advancing tank. The crew of the tank, moreover, is haunted by the consciousness that it cannot go to ground, while it must remain the natural target for every weapon within sight and range.

For these reasons the author is of opinion that the first condition of a successful defence against tanks is to infuse some belief in the unarmoured arms that the armoured vehicle is not invincible. At present the contrary seems to be frequently the case.

Battle experience would show that whatever improvements may be introduced in armoured vehicles, the latter can still be resisted. If their approach has been detected, if obstacles can be arranged on their lines of advance, if the defending troops are capable of manœuvre and know how, and have been taught, to employ their weapons against the armoured attack, the defence should very often be successful. There is too great a tendency at peace-time exercises to exalt the capacity of the armoured vehicle. By over-emphasizing their power there exists a grave risk that the morale of the defence will be undermined long before the test of battle arrives.

Major Gazin concludes, in a third instalment, his story of the German advance to the Marne in August–September, 1914. His thesis is sufficiently explained by the title of his articles, “Lost Occasions”; it deals with the manner in which the French Fifth Army was enabled to elude the pursuit of the German First and Second Armies during the days, 30th August–3rd September. It does indeed seem amazing how Lanrezac’s Fifth Army escaped destruction on 1st–2nd September. This can be attributed to the faulty command of the German cavalry and the lack of drive exhibited by Bülow commanding the German Second Army. To this must be added the lack of control exercised by German G.H.Q. over the two German cavalry corps that were advancing with these two armies. Richthofen’s 1st Cavalry Corps, in particular, moved aimlessly forward and was lost to the German High Command. It is now perfectly clear that the Germans did let slip a remarkable opportunity during these days. Bülow’s day of rest after the

battle of Guise (31st August) was largely responsible for the French escape on 1st September. Kluck's permission granted to Marwitz's IInd Cavalry Corps, to oblique more westwards in order to observe the B.E.F., was a further boon to Lanrezac : after the crisis of 2nd September the French Fifth Army was relatively safe. It is an engrossing story in which Major Gazin seems to show clearly how a powerful and reasoned control of the German right wing could have brought the French Fifth Army to destruction. Like many other French writers, he has not a very high opinion of the part played by the B.E.F. : yet it saved the French Fifth Army as much as the German mistakes. The moral for the future, he thinks, is the necessity for the skilful use of the larger cavalry formations, well supported by a strong aviation.

The second portion of the account, by an anonymous writer, "B," of the cavalry operations in the High Atlas mountains (April–August, 1933) concludes this detailed study of the employment of mounted troops in mountain warfare. The Atlas is, of course, very rough country and utterly unsuitable for normal cavalry work. But General Giraud seems to have employed mounted troops with success under difficult conditions. The mounted detachments were kept small and reinforced by native levies ; they were armed with light automatic rifles. By employing them along valleys or over the more open ground that was encountered, much was done. Also by linking the cavalry to a company of armoured cars together with two platoons of motor-borne machine guns under the same command, it was found possible to advance with rapidity and with very little loss. The actual detail of the operations is given ; although covering several weeks, they were divided into distinct "episodes," each of which occupied four or five days.

The United States "Cavalry Journal" for September–October opens with a long review of the new volume which recently appeared in Germany, *Moderne Kavallerie*, by Lieutenant-General G. Brandt, formerly Inspector-General of Cavalry of the German Army. Much of the book is concerned with the

historical development of cavalry, which is well summarized in the present article. The importance of the innovations introduced by Gustavus Adolphus are strongly emphasized; the author regards him as the leader who first restored cavalry to the place it occupied for the decision of battle in the days of Alexander and Hannibal. Clearly he regards the armoured knighthood of medieval days as scarcely cavalry at all. Nevertheless, he does not forget the Mongol cavalry of Jhengiz Khan; and he shows how the Mongols profited from the fact that they possessed no stable homes nor country; while, strangely enough, these Mongol horsemen became experts in the capture of fortified towns. After tracing the progress made by cavalry during the Napoleonic wars, General Brandt approaches the Great War. He inclines to the view that the Germans made a great mistake in not massing their cavalry on their right flank. The difficulties in the way of supplying such a great cavalry force, he claims, have been greatly exaggerated; in 1915 Garnier's cavalry corps during the Wilna operations managed to dispense with oat-trains—so did von Schmettow's mounted troops in Rumania during the German invasion of that country in 1916. He doubts whether mechanized units could do quite as much as these commanders were able to do with their horsed units under such difficult conditions of supply.

Only twice in the Great War did cavalry operate on the truly grand scale: the first occasion was the movement of Garnier's cavalry corps after the battle of Wilna (September-October, 1915); the second was the intervention of the Desert Mounted Corps in September, 1918, when the British troops virtually destroyed three enemy armies. A third but lesser instance of a similar use of cavalry might be found in von Schmettow's advance with two cavalry division in Rumania (November, 1916) whereby he rendered possible the arrival of Falkenhayn's army east of Carracal. Another noteworthy achievement of cavalry is the work of a Polish division in 1920, when it seized Koziatyn, the seat of Russian headquarters, situated 100 miles behind the front. The Russian cavalry

under Budjenny was also employed in mass during that same campaign with good effect, but with lesser results.

The great successes of cavalry in the past have always depended on the skill and foresight of the High Command. But to achieve results of the highest class cavalry must be trained and organized in such a manner as will render it an apt instrument in the hands of their leader. Frederick the Great lavished 60 per cent. of the national income on his army ; no less than 18 per cent. of that same income being devoted to his cavalry alone. Great commanders who can use cavalry to good effect have been, and will be, rare geniuses.

Lieutenant S. T. Tyng gives an interesting account of the little-known French cavalry raid on 8th-10th September at the battle of the Marne on the left of the Allied line. General Sordet had just been replaced by General Bridoux in command of the cavalry corps allotted to Maunoury's Sixth Army. General de Cornulier-Lucinière, commanding the 5th Cavalry Division, was then given the mission of attacking the rear of the enemy forces defending the line of the River Ourcq, in order to distract Kluck's attention from his front, "no matter how tired men and horses may be." The troops were indeed exhausted, and only mustered 2,000 sabres, with 10 guns and 6 machine guns. Nevertheless, on the evening of the 8th this force reached the River Ourcq at Troesnes and engaged the enemy. Thence it moved east and north until, on 9th September, a part of the division attacked a German convoy at Hartennes ; from that point Cornulier-Lucinière retired westward to Verrines, where he spent the night 9th-10th. Next morning he had a smart action at Trumilly and withdrew in general northerly direction. By this time the whole of the German rearward services were alarmed, and the raid thus came to an end. Although lacking in any great strategical significance, and having attained small concrete results, Cornulier-Lucinière's exploit stands alone in this type of operation on the Western Front, and for that reason merits closer study than it has hitherto received.

Two short articles, by Major C. C. Benson and Major J. L. Philips respectively, relate certain experiments made with

regard to the allotment of light machine guns to cavalry. Both authors, arguing from these trials, are strongly of opinion that the light machine guns should form part of every rifle squad. At present the American rifle troop has two (or more) rifle platoons and a light machine-gun platoon—these being differently organized. It is strongly urged that these platoons should be fused and organized on a common basis with the light machine guns evenly distributed throughout.

Incidentally, Major Benson has some clear views as to the use of horsed and mechanized cavalry in combination. "Horsed cavalry should hold critical points (after clearing roads of obstructions, etc.) as long as is necessary to insure rapid passage for the combat, service and supply echelons of the mechanized elements. Mechanized cavalry will normally remain as long as possible at some well-equipped base, in order to perfect the mechanical condition of its vehicles, while the horsed cavalry co-operating with it is throwing out covering detachments several days' march in advance." For these tasks, the provision of light machine guns throughout the units is regarded as essential.

The Austrian, Spanish and Swiss journals contain some readable matter of a general and more historical type, but offer little that is of definite cavalry interest.



RECENT PUBLICATIONS

“Imperial Policing.” By Major-General Sir C. W. Gwynn. (Macmillan). 10s. 6d.

This book, written by an ex-Commandant of the Staff College, deals with a subject which is of the greatest importance to the British Army and to every officer in it, even the most junior, for none of us but must feel that at any time we may be called on in the course of our duty to take part in dealing with civil disorder in some part or another of our wide-flung Empire, and a general knowledge of the accepted principles of action in such cases, and of the reasons for success or failure in applying them in the past, must be a very present help in such time of trouble. The subject, strangely enough, is one which has never before, as far as we know, attracted the attention of any writer, so General Gwynn has broken virgin soil, and most admirably has he covered the ground he has chosen.

His first two chapters deal with the principles and doctrine of dealing with civil disorder, where the situation has got beyond civil control and has to be handed over to the army to deal with. He lays down four general rules for guidance : (a) Questions of policy must be left to the civil government ; (b) Only the minimum military force required must be employed ; (c) Firmness and timely action are all important ; (d) Civil and military authorities must co-operate closely. He stresses the importance of concentration and offensive action as against the dispersion of force and passive attitude often favoured by the civil authorities, of keeping a not too large but mobile reserve, of an efficient and well-organized intelligence service, and of good relations with the loyal and neutral elements of the population to render this possible. He then goes on to discuss the actual use to be made of troops in the suppression of disorder and of the role of the various arms in this task.

So much for principles and doctrine. Then follow ten historical examples, all chosen from post-war incidents and therefore well up to date : Amritsar and Egypt in 1919 ; the Moplah Rebellion in 1921 ; Chanak, 1922 ; Khartum, 1924 ; Shanghai, 1927 ; Palestine, 1926 ; Peshawar and Burma, 1930 ; Cyprus, 1931 ; and in each case there is given an account, with maps and plans illustrating it, of the incidents in question, followed by the lessons to be drawn from it for future use. This part of the book too is most admirably and judiciously done, and forms a valuable commentary on the theory outlined in the first section. It is in a word really true, and not a mere laudatory phrase to say that this is a book indispensable for every officer of the British Army to read, study and, if possible, possess for reference, as an essential and hitherto somewhat neglected item in his military education.

“The Baton in the Knapsack.” By Lawrence Currie.
(Murray). 12s.

Some months ago one of our coming novelists, Mr. A. G. Macdonnell, published a book on Napoleon and his Marshals which might have been described as lively but somewhat inaccurate. This new book on the same subject has told the same story with greater attention to historic truth, but unfortunately with little of its predecessor's vividness and vigour. It contains an admirable series of portraits, and the sketch—it is little more than an outline picture—of the Napoleonic epic is concise and clear, though a general map would have been a considerable aid to its comprehension. Mr. Currie's conclusions on the whole matter strike us as being somewhat superficial. The Emperor's struggle with England was dictated by no mere idle thirst for domination, but was essential to his aim of a France independent of the influence of international finance personified by English gold. His Continental system was the only reply possible to the English blockade, since only by excluding England's trade from Europe could her monied interests be induced to accept a durable peace. The wars between 1803 and 1812 were all forced upon Napoleon, much

against his will, by the Continental monarchies at the instigation of England, and that of 1812 against Russia came about on the ground—by no means “trivial,” as Mr. Currie terms it—that Russia had gone back on her undertaking to co-operate in excluding British goods from her ports, just at the moment when the Continental system was about to achieve its object of reducing England to agree to the peace with France for which Napoleon had for ten years been working. Mr. Currie’s acquaintance with the history of the period of which he writes has not been sufficient to enable him to appreciate Napoleon’s point of view in this matter. He is on surer ground when he deals with the personalities of the Marshals who form the main subject of his work, and about these he has much of interest to tell, especially to those readers whose previous acquaintance with them is a slight one.

“Marlborough: His Life and Times.” Vol. II. By the Rt. Hon. Winston Churchill. (Harrap). 25s.

Mr. Churchill’s second volume has more than fulfilled the high expectations raised by his first. Marlborough now steps into history as the leading figure in the European war against the France of Louis XIV. We see him in turn as one of the co-heads of the British Government, the diplomat weaving the threads of the anti-French coalition, its leader and inspirer, and finally in the field, the greatest commander England has ever known, and the first general of his age in Europe. Mr. Churchill has drawn for his large-scale portrait on all available sources, published and unpublished, including his family’s manuscripts at Marlborough House and Blenheim, and many of the Duke’s private letters to his wife and his colleague in the Government, Godolphin, throw vivid new light on every phase of his multiple activity. The result is a truly magnificent picture of what Marlborough was and what he did. We live with the hero through the manifold difficulties strewn in his path, the selfishness and faction of home politics, the short-sighted caution of the Dutch, and the obstinate opposition of their generals to the running of even the slightest risks for

great ends; the treachery of Bavaria, and the double dealing of Savoy; the incoordinated aims and actions of his lesser allies; and the stupid favouritism of the Emperor of Austria—all these so menaced the course and success of the military operations that only a man of sublime tact, inexhaustive patience, and complete devotion to the common cause could have prevailed over them to bring it to success. Yet this Marlborough did, and the story of how he did it is so vividly told and so full of important lessons that it would be impossible for a reviewer to overpraise or overvalue it.

In this volume Mr. Churchill has brought his narrative only down to the end of the year 1705, thus leaving three of Marlborough's four famous victories to a subsequent volume—or volumes. His high light is, of course, Blenheim, and the story of the design, development and execution of that most remarkable campaign is as much a masterpiece in its own way as the operation it describes. To make its comprehension and that of all the military events narrated easy even for the layman, there has been included one of the clearest and most complete set of sketch maps and little plans it has ever been the reviewer's good fortune to see, and these, together with portraits, pictures and facsimile letters, make the book a delight to the eye as well as to the mind. At last the greatest of British soldiers has found a worthy biographer.

“Florence Nightingale, 1820–1856.” By D. B. O'Malley. (Butterworth). 5s.

This book, first published in 1932 at 10s. 6d., has now been reissued in a cheap edition, which however includes all the original maps and illustrations, and is in fact indistinguishable from its prototype. Miss O'Malley, though she leaves her heroine in her own last words “only at the beginning of her work,” covers in her story the most spectacular and best-known portion of her career—her marvellous work in the Crimean hospitals. The first part of the volume (to 1854) is devoted entirely to the growth of the personality and character which rendered possible the immense achievement described in the

second part ; and in this we are given a vivid, horrible and yet appalling picture of the heroic sufferings of our soldiers in the Crimea, and the self-sacrificing and devoted toil by which the Lady with the Lamp brought order out of chaos in the hospitals, and relieved an intolerable mass of human suffering and saved lives out of number. We are shown, too, a darker side yet—the official callousness and trivialness that rendered her work so difficult ; the self-seeking of politicians, the jealous obstinacy of the higher military medical authorities, the weakness and intrigue that surrounded her on all sides, and threw upon her an unexampled burden, from beneath which she none the less emerged triumphant. It is a dreadful and noble story, which Miss O'Malley has made so vivid and heartrending and inspiring that it is impossible to put it down till one has read it to the end.

“Napoleon's Heritage.” By B. Fortescue. (Murray). 10s. 6d.

This book is described as “an ethnic reconstruction of the Corsican heredity and environment” in which the author finds the secret of his career. Much of it is taken up with a detailed description of the island, natural features and climate, the two races which inhabit it, and the racial character of both peoples—their sense of personal and family honour, their greed for pre-eminence, their passion for vengeance under insult or wrong, their clan spirit—and so forth. Then the author goes on to show how all these characteristics are displayed in the history, life and deeds of the greatest Corsican of all time. There can be no doubt that they exercised no little influence over him ; but that they furnished the sole, or even the most reasonable, explanation of his career, of his duel with England, of his great achievements in peace and war, and of the fate that finally overtook him and his works, we refuse to believe. Those who have more than a nodding acquaintance with Napoleon's history will, we feel sure, agree that Mr. Fortescue's case is made plausible only by a careful selection and editing of his authorities, while the style of the book, with its queer grammar and punctuation, involved sentences, and lavish

use of pseudo-scientific jargon, does not make for easy reading. His thesis, though interesting, fails to our mind to carry conviction.

E. W. S.

"The Legion Advances." By Rex Ingram. (Ivor Nicholson and Watson, Ltd. 7s. 6d.).

The author of this book who served in the R.F.C. during the War and produced the films "Prisoner of Zenda," "Scaramouche," "Four Horsemen of the Apocalypse," etc., has written a stirring romance of the corps which is always on service. The author evidently knows North Africa inside out and likewise the Foreign Legion. The style is vigorous and this book can definitely be said to be one of the best novels of the Foreign Legion that has been written for some time.

"For Fishermen Only." By H. Atwood Clark. (Phillip Allan. 10s. 6d.).

Mr. Clark has already given us two delightful books of sporting recollections. His latest, in its more specialised line, is well up to the standard of its predecessors.

To read the experiences and opportunities enjoyed in the world of sport by Mr. Clark's generation is apt to make one despondent. One is inclined to ask if we, in our turn, will have so much of interest to relate about sport in our time. Perhaps we should be consoled by remembering, that the facilities of modern transport are giving us access to lands and rivers not open to the average sportsman of Mr. Clark's day.

"For Fishermen Only" is full of anecdote, wisdom, and lore, which cannot fail to interest anglers of all ages from twelve to eighty. We close the book with a wish that the author was deep in an armchair in our smoking-room after a good dinner. That would certainly mean a short night and a late start next morning.

A book admirably suited for a Christmas present to a fisherman son, nephew, or friend.

"Salmon Tactics." By Percy E. Nobbs. (Phillip Allan. 10s. 6d.).

Anyone fortunate enough to contemplate a fishing holiday in Canada should buy and read this book however experienced they may be on waters in other parts of the world. Although chiefly concerned with the habits and capture of Atlantic salmon in Eastern Canada, it will interest all salmon anglers. Moreover, it is refreshing to read a fishing book by one whose experience lies mainly outside the British Isles, and who does not jar the somewhat insular prejudices of the average English sportsman.

The book contains valuable information about guides, and the tact required in dealing with them; also about flies which sting and make life miserable, as well as about those which lure fish and make life joyful. There are some interesting remarks on the effect of the Canadian climate on rods and gut. Here one is surprised the author finds so much merit in ferruled green-heart rods, and leaves the infinitely preferable spliced variety unmentioned.

The main interest of the book centres in the behaviour and habits of salmon in Canadian rivers, and the practice of angling for them. The author reveals the keenest observation coupled with up-to-date scientific knowledge. He writes delightfully, and in a style which will, perhaps, remind many of "Minor Tactics," by G. M. Skues. The book is illustrated with some excellent pen-drawings and line-diagrams. G. A.

"Gymnastics." By Captain K. S. Wootten, The Oxfordshire & Buckinghamshire Light Infantry. (Gale & Polden). 5s.

This book should do a great deal to dispel the popular fallacy that proficiency in gymnastics causes a muscle-bound state of the body. The reader must be impressed by the insistence that suppleness and co-ordination rather than great strength are the foundation of all gymnastic exercises. Captain Wootten very rightly points out that the majority of gymnastic exercises can only be perfected after a great deal of perseverance. The excellent descriptions and photographs should be of great help to both student and instructor. H. C. P.

"The P.V.H." By Bt.-Major George Hurst, Royal Signals.
(Gale & Polden, Ltd). 21s.

This is a very interesting history of the Peshawar Vale Hunt, and is delightfully illustrated by "Snaffles" and by Major H. M. Tulloch of the Poona Horse. Major Hurst was previously Master of the Nerbudda Vale Hunt in Jubbulpore, and showed excellent sport before going to the Peshawar Vale, where he has enhanced his reputation.

The Hunt started in 1870 and has survived in spite of many vicissitudes, both financial and on account of frontier disturbances. It is now recognised as the leading Hunt in India. The Master is handicapped by many difficulties. Rabies, though not so prevalent as formerly, is still a danger. Hounds have to be sent to the hills during the hot weather. Continuity in control is not easy as the Master and Hunt Staff are rarely in Peshawar for more than two seasons.

The help given by Hunts and individuals in England, both in gifts of hounds and in advice as to purchase of hounds, is gratefully acknowledged by the Author. Tribute is also paid to the work put in in the War by Lieut.-Colonel T. W. Irvine, I.M.S., who was drowned while out hunting with the P.V.H. in January, 1919.

The book is very well written; the chapters "The Story of the Hounds" and "The Charm of the Valley" being especially good. The enthusiasm for any generosity towards the Hunt by local Pathan landowners, big and small, is well described.

All those who have hunted or are likely to hunt in India will find it well worth buying a copy of this excellent book. All profits on the sale are to be handed over to the Hunt.

W. W. A. L.

"R. E. Lee." By Douglas Southall Freeman. (Scribners).
Two Vols. 15s. each.

In latter years there has been almost a spate of literature, at any rate in this country, on the history of the American Civil War, most of it directed on focussing opinion on the

subordinate Federal leaders, rather than on what used to be looked upon as the main issue. Here we have an American life of Lee of apparently a completely comprehensive nature. Two volumes only, each of some 600 pages, have as yet appeared, and the story is brought up only to the death of Jackson. Two more volumes are to appear. The size of this publication may put readers off, but it must be realised that this is a complete biography of R. E. Lee, not merely of the Confederate General of the American Civil War. Here we get the early story of the man, his upbringing and his first tastes of war—all of which were to produce the character of the Confederate leader. Then came the troubles. A series of letters shows most interestingly the turmoil and the development of his mind. "I can anticipate no greater calamity for this country than a dissolution of the Union," we find him writing; "Secession is nothing but revolution." Against his will, but following the dictates of his conscience, he eventually made "the answer he was born to make."

One gets a remarkable picture of his endless troubles, with political leaders without experience and an untrained army; but the man always seems to rise superior to his difficulties. The narratives of the campaign, very thoroughly documented, are told in a clear and concise manner, entirely without bias. The author claims that it is possible that he may "irritate some readers by restraint, and disappoint others by failing to answer some of Lee's detractors." As a result, he has produced volumes of real historical value. We are left at the moment of the death of Jackson, when Lee "loses his 'right arm.'" The next volumes of his hopeless struggle against Grant's ever-increasing power should be even more interesting.

"Echoes of Old Wars, 1513-1854." By Colonel C. Field, R.M.L.I. (Herbert Jenkins, Ltd.). 10s. 6d.

The most important engagements, both naval and military, within the above dates are included in this volume. The author has collected a number of vivid letters giving the personal

experiences of officers and men who took part in the respective actions. There is little doubt that these letters are all absolutely genuine, but judging by one's experience of censoring letters written by the rank and file during the Great War, one cannot put too much reliance on the statements contained in them. The book, however, is extremely interesting and well worth reading.

"Selection and Training of the Polo Pony." By Grove Cullum.
(Charles Scribner Sons, New York). 18s.

Yet another attempt to clear up the problem of the best method of selecting and training a polo pony, and ending with a series of comments on the tactics of the game. It is extremely interesting to study these problems from an American point of view. The Americans have, in recent years, taken us on at our own game and beaten us. If we read this book we shall appreciate some of the reasons why we should not be afraid to come out of our groove, and by adopting some of the tactics of our principal opponents, regain the superiority which we have lost.

"The Silver Horn." By Gordon Grand. (Country Life)
10s. 6d.

When E. O. E. Somerville writes such an enthusiastic appreciation to a book on hunting, one feels that, anyhow, she "ought to know," but when it comes to placing Mr. Gordon Grand in the same category with Beckford and Surtees, it is perhaps piling it on a "bit too thick." "Silver Horn" is certainly a delightful story, and the illustrations by K. F. Barker are excellent character sketches. The book is very well got up and cheap at the price.
T. T. P.

"Master Toby's Hunt." By A. O. Fisher. ("Country Life").
5s. net.

Master Toby's early morning adventures on the pony that drew the mowing machine are related in verse and illustrated

with very good drawings in a rather exaggerated style and easy for a small child to understand. The author of the verse has missed an opportunity in not giving it a good swinging rhythm; all children love a good rhythm, and hunting verse seems to demand it. The review copy of the book was handed to two boys, aged four and seven years, to read, and it was read with pleasure by both. Their reception seems to indicate that any child between three and eight years would be pleased to find it on Xmas morning.

"Rum 'uns to Follow." By A Melton Roughrider, with a Foreword by Guy Paget. ("Country Life"). 10s. 6d.

This is a book of stories and reminiscences well told by a Leicestershire roughrider in his own particular language. Most of the prominent hunting personalities are mentioned, and anecdotes and stories—several of which are scarcely complimentary—are added.

The counties dealt with are the Quorn, Fernie and Pytchley, and the period covered is that of the last seventy years. A light and entertaining book, which will amuse those who have hunted in the Shires.

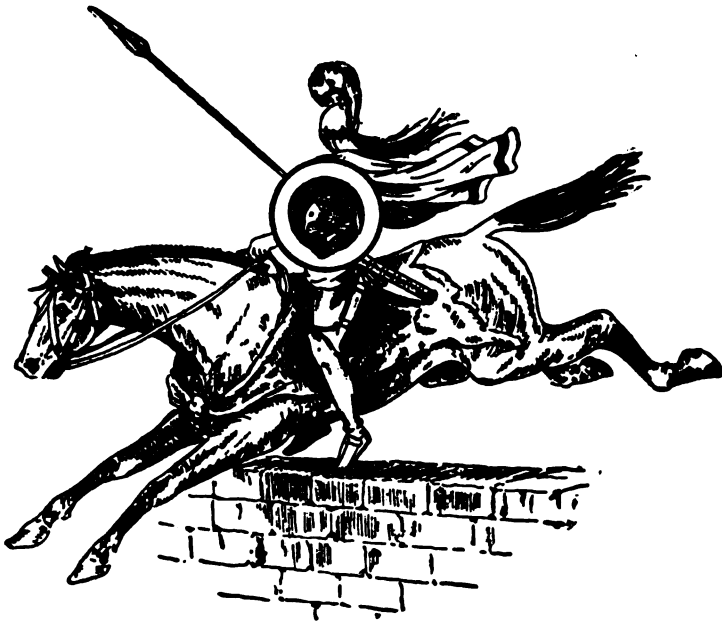
"Thoroughbred and Hunter." By William Fawcett. (Eyre & Spottiswoode). 25s.

A new book by Mr. Fawcett is always welcome, and this one is no exception. It is full of interest, and is the outcome of a long personal experience. The main theme is the breeding, training and management of racehorses and hunters from foalhood to maturity, and there is a most useful chapter for the soldier on "Point-to-Points—Their Training and Winning."

Some excellent illustrations by Lionel Edwards are included in the volume. An instructive and entertaining book, highly suitable for Christmas gift.

The following have also been received and will be reviewed in the next number :—

- “High Command in the World War.” By Captain W. D. Puleston. (Charles Scribner). 12s. 6d.
- “Prince Rupert.” By James Cleugh. (Geoffrey Bles). 10s. 6d.
- “Brown Jack.” By R. C. Lyle. Illustrated by Lionel Edwards, R.I. (Putnam & Co.). 10s. 6d.
- “History of the Great War, 1914–1918.” By C. R. M. Cruttwell. (Oxford University Press). 15s.
- “Sport and Travel in East Africa.” By Patrick R. Chalmers. (Philip Allan). 12s. 6d.
- “Big Game.” By H. Frank Wallace. (Eyre & Spottiswoode). 8s. 6d.



SPORTING NEWS

CAVALRY FOOTBALL ASSOCIATION

RESULT OF THE DRAW FOR THE 1934-1935 COMPETITION

1st Round.

| | | | |
|--|----------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Match A. | 7th Q.O. Hussars | <i>v.</i> | 15th/19th Hussars. |
| Match B. | Royal Horse Guards | <i>v.</i> | 3rd Hussars. |
| Match C. | 4th/7th D. Guards | <i>v.</i> | 12th Lancers (or Bye). |
| Match D. | 9th Lancers | <i>v.</i> | Life Guards. |
| Match E. | 5th Innis. D. Guards | <i>v.</i> | Queen's Bays. |
| Match F. | 3rd Carabiniers | <i>v.</i> | 4th Hussars. |
| Byes : Royal Scots Greys and 16th/5th Lancers. | | | |

2nd Round.

| | | | |
|----------|--------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| Match G. | Royal Scots Greys | <i>v.</i> | 16th/5th Lancers. |
| Match H. | Winners of Match F | <i>v.</i> | Winners of Match B. |
| Match J. | Winners of Match D | <i>v.</i> | Winners of Match E. |
| Match K. | Winners of Match C | <i>v.</i> | Winners of Match A. |

Semi-Finals.

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------|---------------------|
| Winners of Match G | <i>v.</i> | Winners of Match J. |
| Winners of Match H | <i>v.</i> | Winners of Match K. |

The first named Teams in the 1st and 2nd Rounds have choice of ground.

The time of kick-off will be arranged to allow for thirty minutes extra play in the event of a draw.

Referees and Linesmen in the 1st and 2nd Rounds will be arranged mutually, *vide* Rule No. 22. In the Semi-Finals and Final they will be arranged by the Hon. Secretary, Major T. G. Upton, R.M.C., Camberley.

The 1st Round will be completed by 9th February.

The 2nd Round will be completed by 9th March.

Re-plays in accordance with Rule No. 17.

Semi-Finals.—This year, one Semi-Final will be played either at York or Edinburgh and the other on a ground and date selected by the Committee.

The Final will be played on Fulham Football Ground on Saturday, 27th April, 1935 (the day prior to the laying of the Wreath at the Cavalry Memorial).

Kick-off at 11.0 a.m.





Photographer—Sylvia Lewes, 4a, High Street, N.W.3.

THE CAVALRY MEMORIAL IN HYDE PARK

CAVALRY REGIMENT

APRIL 1914

1914

Alfred.—This
to approve of the
of Canada, being

The following
Office—

Colonel C. J. [Name] [Rank] [Regiment] [Location]
Cavalry Brigade [Location] [Rank]

Colonel R. [Name] [Rank] to be C. [Location] at Quebec.

Colonel H. F. [Name] [Rank], Major [Name] [Rank] in
Charge of Cavalry [Rank] Pay Office [Location] [Rank]
Dec. 1, 1914.

We congratulate Major [Name] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
B.S.O., Inspector-General [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] to
Major-General, Brigadier F. [Name] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
on his appointment as A.D.C. [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
H. V. Cherrington, M.C., [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
appointment as a [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
[Rank] [Rank]

Lieut.-Colonel Sir Martin [Name] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank], who
recently died, joined the [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
years' service in the Navy [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank] [Rank]
where he served in the South African War. In 1905 he [Rank]
but at the outbreak of the Great War he returned to the [Rank]
was wounded and mentioned in despatches four times.
represented in Parliament at Central Finsbury from 1910
and Finsbury until 1923.



THE CAVALRY MEMORIAL IN HYDE PARK, LONDON

THE CAVALRY MEMORIAL IN HYDE PARK

Digitized by Google

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

APRIL, 1935

EDITORIAL

Alliance.—His Majesty the King has been graciously pleased to approve of the 7th Hussars, Non-Permanent Active Militia of Canada, being allied to the 7th Queen's Own Hussars.

* * * *

The following appointments have been announced by the War Office:—

Colonel C. A. Heydeman, M.C., to be Commander 2nd Cavalry Brigade, with effect from Oct. 4th, 1935.

Colonel R. Evans, M.C., to be Chief of Staff at Quetta.

Colonel H. F. Brace, D.S.O., M.C., to be Officer in Charge of Cavalry Record and Pay Office, with effect from Dec. 1, 1934.

We congratulate Major-General J. Blakiston-Houston, D.S.O., Inspector-General of Cavalry, on his promotion to Major-General, Brigadier F. B. Hurndall, M.C., A.D.C., on his appointment as A.D.C. to the King, and Colonel H. V. Charrington, M.C., late 12th Lancers, on his appointment as a Gentleman-at-Arms to His Majesty's Bodyguard.

* * * *

Lieut.-Colonel Sir Martin Archer-Shee, C.M.G., D.S.O., who recently died, joined the "Britannia" in 1886, and after four years' service in the Navy transferred to the 19th Hussars, with whom he served in the South African War. In 1905 he resigned, but at the outbreak of the Great War he returned to the Army, was wounded and mentioned in despatches four times. He represented in Parliament Central Finsbury from 1910-1918 and Finsbury until 1923.

* * * *

▲

The following obituary notice has been sent to us by a correspondent :—

At the end of January this year a very distinguished German Cavalry leader, Lieut.-General Count Eberhard von Schmettow, passed over. His was a name well known in the cavalry history of his country; he bore striking likeness to that Major von Schmettow who led the 7th Prussian Cuirassiers at the famous "chevaudrade de mort" of Bredow's brigade in the battle of Vionville-Mars la Tour on 16th August, 1870.

General von Schmettow was identified with the famous "Death's Head" Hussars, and commanded the brigaded 1st and 2nd Regiment of them at the outbreak of the Great War. In August of the same year he was given command of the 9th Cavalry Division and saw service both on the Western and Eastern German fronts, gaining particular distinction by the break-through at Brzezany. His leadership of the 8th Cavalry Division in Lithuania and Kurland in 1915 gained him further honours and command of the Cavalry Corps von Schmettow (6th and 7th Cavalry Divisions) that fought its way over the Carpathians into Roumania. In 1917 he was appointed to the G.H.Q. of the German Armies, and was responsible for the planning of the battles of the Marne and the Vesle in that year. He retired from soldiering full of honours, as Adjutant-General to the Emperor, with a well-earned reputation for all that a cavalry leader should be—keen, intrepid, resourceful and imperturbable.

* * * *

The following have consented to become *ex-officio* members of the Committee of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL :—

Major-General J. Blakiston-Houston, D.S.O., Inspector-General of Cavalry.

Major-General G. F. H. Brooke, D.S.O., M.C., Major-General Cavalry, India.

Brigadier F. W. Bullock-Marsham, D.S.O., M.C., Commander 1st Cavalry Brigade.

Brigadier F. B. Hurndall, M.C., A.D.C., Commander
2nd Cavalry Brigade.

Brigadier A. L. I. Friend, O.B.E., M.C., Commander
Cavalry Brigade, Egypt.

Colonel H. L. Jones, D.S.O., Commander 5th Cavalry
Brigade.

Colonel S. Howes, D.S.O., M.C., Commander 6th
Cavalry Brigade.

* * * *

The undermentioned have become subscribers for 1935 :—

The Officers' Reference Library, Montreal, Canada.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. Devitt, V.D., 4th Canadian
Hussars.

Lieut.-Colonel A. E. Nash, Mississauga Horse.

Lieut.-Colonel J. G. Kennedy, M.C., The Scottish
Horse.

Major W. A. C. Heyman, 4th Q.O. Hussars.

Major John Bell-Irvin, The Lanarkshire Yeomanry.

Major R. Straker, O.B.E., M.C., The Northumberland
Hussars.

Major C. L. Reid, The Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry.

Major The Lord Conyers, M.C., The Nottinghamshire
Yeomanry.

Major A. Heywood-Lonsdale, The Shropshire Yeomanry.

Captain J. N. Hotchkis, late Royal Artillery.

Captain R. A. G. Tilney, The Leicestershire Yeomanry.

Lieutenant The Viscount Borodale, M.P., The Leicester-
shire Yeomanry.

Lieutenant I. F. M. Spence, The North Somerset
Yeomanry.

Lieutenant H. B. Taylor, The Yorkshire Hussars.

2nd Lieutenant Hugh L. Hibbert, The Queen's Bays.

2nd Lieutenant W. C. W. Sloan, 3rd Carabiniers.

2nd Lieutenant The Earl of Macduff, The Royal Scots
Greys.

2nd Lieutenant H. H. A. Montgomerie, The Royal Scots Greys.

2nd Lieutenant P. A. Uniacke, 4th Q.O. Hussars.

2nd Lieutenant T. M. P. Tew, 9th Q. Royal Lancers.

2nd Lieutenant J. Pringle Delius, 13th/18th Hussars.

2nd Lieutenant C. P. V. Hervey, The Cheshire Yeomanry.

2nd Lieutenant C. H. Williamson, The Northumberland Hussars.

The Commandant Escola de Cavalaria, Lisbon, Portugal.



THE CAVALRY IN FRANCE, AUGUST-NOVEMBER, 1918

By **LIEUTENANT-COLONEL T. PRESTON, M.C., T.D.,**
Yorkshire Hussars.

PART V.

THE SECOND BATTLE OF LE CATEAU *(continued).*

THE RENEWAL OF THE ATTACK ON 9TH OCTOBER.

A thick mist shrouded the fields when, at 5.20 a.m. on ^{9th} Oct. 9th October, the Fourth Army resumed its attack in conjunction with the First French and Third British Armies on either flank. Sir Henry Rawlinson had the IX Corps* on the right, directed on Fresnoy-le-Grand and Bohain; the II American Corps† in the centre, directed on Becquigny and Busigny; and the XIII Corps‡ on the left, with Marez, Honnechy and Maurois as its objectives.§ The Cavalry Corps was in rear of the XIII Corps, its rôle being the same as for the previous day—namely to secure the railway junctions at Le Cateau and Busigny, and thereafter to make for Valenciennes.

On this day the 3rd Cavalry Division (Major-General A. E. W. Harman) was to be in the lead, and that officer held a conference at 4 a.m. when he decided that the division should

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----|----|----|---|
| * IX Corps Commander | .. | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir W. P. Braithwaite. |
| 1st Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General E. P. Strickland. |
| 6th Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General T. O. Marden. |
| 32nd Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General T. S. Lambert. |
| 46th Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General G. F. Boyd. |
| 5th Cavalry Brigade | .. | .. | .. | Brigadier-General N. W. Haig. |
| † II American Corps Commander | .. | .. | .. | Major-General G. W. Read. |
| 27th American Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General F. O'Ryan. |
| 30th American Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General E. M. Lewis. |
| ‡ XIII Corps Commander | .. | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir T. L. N. Morland. |
| 25th Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General J. R. E. Charles. |
| 50th Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General H. C. Jackson. |
| 66th Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General H. K. Bethell. |

§ See sketch facing page 26 in January number.

advance with the 7th Cavalry Brigade in front, the 6th Cavalry Brigade as right flank guard, one regiment Canadian Cavalry Brigade as left flank guard, and the remainder of the latter brigade in divisional reserve. The 7th Cavalry Brigade, it should be noted, already had patrols in touch with the infantry (25th Division) about Prémont and Serain ; and before 7 a.m. the three brigades of the 3rd Cavalry Division had assembled in a valley between Brancourt-le-Grand and Vaux-le-Prêtre, the 1st Cavalry Division being in corps reserve on the line Montbrehain-Beaurevoir.

At 8.30 a.m. the mist lifted and the morning came out bright and clear, and a quarter of an hour later news came in from returning wounded that the infantry had occupied Marez without opposition and that they had temporarily lost touch with the Germans. A motor-cyclist, sent forward to ascertain the situation, reported that he had found our infantry on the eastern edge of Marez.

After a talk with the Corps Commander who had now come up, General Harman decided to alter his plan and advance on a two-brigade front, with the 6th Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General Ewing Paterson) on the right of the Roman road, the Canadian Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General R. W. Paterson)* on the left, and the 7th Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General A. Burt) in reserve. The objective was that laid down for the Corps, i.e. the high ground south-west, west, and north-west of Le Cateau to Neuville, with left flank on the line Neuville-Rambourlieux Farm-Troisvilles. Orders were issued immediately, and divisional headquarters were moved forward to a point a mile west of Prémont. In the meantime, Cavalry Corps had ordered the XVIII Corps Cyclist Battalion, and the bus columns of the 4th Guards Brigade and Household Machine Gun Brigade, to come up to about the same point.

Before describing the cavalry operations in detail, it must be borne in mind that the country consisted of open undulating fields free from trenches or wire, the only obstacles being fences immediately round the villages and outlying farms. Most of

* It was rather a curious coincidence that both these brigadiers, who were not related, should bear the same name.

the houses were occupied by their civilian inhabitants, many of whom had hung large white sheets and cloths outside presumably in the hope that they would not be shelled.

It will be best to follow the fortunes of the two leading brigades separately.

ADVANCE OF THE 3RD CAVALRY DIVISION: THE 6TH CAVALRY BRIGADE.

(Sketch 1).

It was about 8.35 a.m. when the 6th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to move forward at a trot. The 1st Royal Dragoons (Lieutenant-Colonel F. W. Wormald) acted as advanced guard and moved parallel to and south of the main Le Cateau road, followed by the 10th Hussars (Lieutenant-Colonel F. H. D. C. Whitmore). "C" Squadron, 10th Hussars (Captain W. S. Murland) moved wide on the right as flank guard to the Division, and came under machine-gun fire almost at once from La Sablière Wood, whilst the remainder of the Brigade, moving at a fast pace to Maretz, was fired at from the direction of Honnechy and Escaufourt.

9th Oct.
Sketch 1

"C" Squadron of the Royals, under Captain W. P. Browne, was now ordered to push on if possible towards Honnechy and Maurois, and managed to reach a quarry near the railway on the western side of Honnechy, whilst Lieutenant J. F. Houstoun-Boswall with some scouts got up to a house in the railway fork south-west of the village. The enemy were holding the hedges and orchards on the edge of Honnechy, as well as the high ground to the south. While making a personal reconnaissance about 11.30 a.m., General Ewing Paterson met the brigade major of an infantry brigade which was held up in front of Honnechy, who told him that the infantry were so exhausted and the resistance so strong that it was not intended to advance further that day. About half-an-hour later General Harman met his two leading brigadiers and it was settled that a vigorous attempt should be made to capture Honnechy and Reumont, or the whole advance would peter out. The 6th Cavalry Brigade was reinforced by one regiment (Inniskillings) from

the 7th Brigade and was ordered to take both villages as soon as possible, then seize the high ground west of Le Cateau: the attack was timed to start at 2 p.m., and the infantry would join in.

The general plan was that the Royals should make a mounted attack on Maurois and Honnechy from the west, supported by the 10th Hussars, whilst the 3rd Dragoon Guards (Lieutenant-Colonel C. L. Rome) advanced from the north of Busigny and came in on Honnechy from the south-east. The Inniskillings were to follow in support of the 3rd D.Gs. and form a defensive flank facing Escaufourt and Proyard Wood. "C" Battery, R.H.A. (Major D. Scott) was to take up a position south-east of Maretz and bring covering fire to bear on the south-western outskirts of Honnechy, whilst the machine guns of the 6th Machine Gun Squadron (Major J. C. Humfrey) were also detailed to cover the advance of the Royals and 3rd D.Gs. On the other side of the Roman road the Canadian Cavalry Brigade would co-operate by moving north of Maurois and making for the high ground north of Reumont.

The famous regiments engaged in this attack bore themselves in a manner wholly in keeping with their past traditions. The advance of the 3rd Dragoon Guards and Royals began simultaneously: as each squadron rode forward it was met by heavy H.E. shell and machine-gun fire, and to make matters worse a number of enemy aeroplanes suddenly appeared and, flying low, followed the advancing cavalymen with machine-gun bullets and bombs.

The Royals almost immediately came upon a deep railway cutting not marked on the map and had to swing northwards, cross the railway further up and gallop round the northern edge of Maurois, arriving at a farm on the Le Cateau road midway between Maurois and Reumont. The latter village was still held by the Germans, whose machine-gunners were firing straight down the main road at 400 yards range. Captain Browne's squadron, which was still leading, suffered some losses in trying to get across the road, so Colonel Wormald decided to pass his regiment over the road slightly further back and then make for

the high ground south-east of Reumont. This movement was carried out most successfully: the Royals gained the ridge and, with the help of the Canadians across the main road, forced the enemy to retire out of Reumont. 9th Oct.

Meanwhile the 3rd Dragoon Guards had been riding forward from north of Busigny, and their leading squadron under Captain N. K. Worthington immediately came under heavy enfilade fire from the direction of Proyart Wood and Escaufourt. The fields were free from wire or fences and the going was good except for numerous small ditches: there was one wide brook with a bad take-off, but not a single horse refused. As each squadron came up to the railway embankment it had to close in to pass under the bridge carrying the railway over the Busigny-Honnechy road (see Sketch 1), and it was here that most of the casualties occurred; the advance, however, was not checked, and opening out again, the 3rd D.Gs. made their final gallop to Honnechy—which was captured about 2.30 p.m.—and afterwards occupied the orchards east of the village. These orchards were soon heavily shelled and Colonel Rome was wounded.

“This mounted attack by the Royals and 3rd Dragoon Guards was carried out with great dash and skill. The bursting H.E., the rattle of machine-gun fire, both from the ground and from the air, the explosion of the bombs dropped by the aeroplanes—all contributed to make the noise absolutely deafening.”*

As had been the case several times in the dark days of the March retreat, the appearance of the cavalry had a most exhilarating effect on our infantry. Here at Honnechy the infantrymen forgot their former exhaustion and, with a loud cheer, rose as one man and followed in close support of the horsemen: they enabled the capture of the village to be completed, and made it possible for the Canadian Cavalry Brigade to push forward west of the main road.

The 10th Hussars, following on in brigade reserve, sustained somewhat heavy losses from shell-fire and from the hostile

* “History of the 6th Cavalry Brigade,” by Lieutenant J. B. Bickersteth, M.C., page 114.

aircraft ; one troop being practically knocked out by a bomb from the latter. Throughout the action, the 6th Machine Gun Squadron did valuable work in support of the regiments, and also engaged the German aeroplanes. One Vickers gun received a direct hit from an enemy shell, Lieutenant H. N. Ellis* and three men being killed beside it.

The village of Honnechy and all positions held by the 6th Cavalry Brigade were now subjected to continuous shelling, and considerable forces of the enemy, with machine guns and field guns clearly visible, could be seen occupying the ridge which just hid Le Cateau from view.

At 3 p.m. most encouraging news came in to Cavalry Corps from the Fourth Army, to the effect that enemy guns and transport were retiring eastwards along the road from Inchy to Le Cateau. It seemed that, if it were possible to drive in the German rearguards and launch a fresh force of cavalry in pursuit, very important results might be obtained. But orders took longer to reach the brigades and regiments than was realized, and it appears to have been 4 o'clock before the 6th Cavalry Brigade received an order from Division to push on at once towards Le Cateau and block the roads running east from the town. The Brigade, moreover, was not at all well placed for an immediate move : most of its units were involved in a dismounted action against the line St. Souplet-Reumont, and the only troops in hand were one squadron of the 10th Hussars and half the 6th Machine Gun Squadron. At 5 p.m. verbal orders were given to Colonels Wormald and Whitmore to push on with their regiments as soon as possible, but a few minutes later these were cancelled and General Harman decided to send forward the 7th Cavalry Brigade instead, the 6th Brigade coming back into divisional reserve and returning the Inniskillings to their own brigade, the 7th. In the meantime a 4.5-in. howitzer battery had been ordered to fire on the Le Cateau-Inchy road on which a German column had been located.

* A sad interest attaches to this, as Lieutenant Ellis was the only officer out of seven in the squadron who had not been killed or wounded in the March battle.

Moving west and north of Maurois, the 7th Cavalry Brigade by 5.45 p.m. reached a position just north-east of Reumont, where it was in touch with the 6th Brigade on the right and the Canadian Brigade on the left, with one squadron 7th Dragoon Guards forward on the high ground overlooking Le Cateau: but the evening was now drawing in; it would soon be dark; and in view of the resistance still to be overcome, the commanders realized that the town of Le Cateau could hardly be taken in the short period of daylight that still remained.

We must now put the clock back to 9.30 in the morning and see what had happened to the Canadian Brigade which had been advancing on the other (left) side of the Roman road.

THE CANADIAN CAVALRY BRIGADE.

(Sketch 1).

On receiving orders to advance, Brigadier-General R. W. Paterson disposed his Brigade as follows: the Fort Garry Horse (Lieutenant-Colonel H. I. Stevenson) as advanced guard, with "A" Battery, Royal Canadian Horse Artillery,* and four Vickers guns from the Canadian Machine Gun Squadron. Lord Strathcona's Horse (Lieutenant-Colonel D. J. Macdonald), with four Vickers guns attached, to act as left flank guard and move inside the line Clary-Bertry-Troisvilles, with reconnaissances to the line Montigny-Inchy-Neuvilly. The remainder of the Brigade to advance parallel with and north of the main Le Cateau road.

9th Oct.
Sketch 1

On moving forward at 9.30 a.m. the Canadians found the infantry holding a line along the eastern edge of Maretz and through l'Epinette, and unable to get further owing to machine-gun fire from Gattigny Wood and Clary: at this hour the leading squadron of the Fort Garry Horse had reached l'Epinette, the rest of the regiment was some 1,000 yards in rear, and the battery came into action.

* Instead of having with it one 6-gun R.H.A. battery like all the other cavalry brigades, the Canadian Cavalry Brigade had two 4-gun batteries, "A" and "B," organized as a horse artillery brigade.

At 9.55 a.m. the Strathconas, on the left flank, reported that they were making for the high ground between Gattigny Wood and Clary, by which time Brigade Headquarters had made three moves and were now at a point 500 yards south of l'Epinette.

Shortly after 11 o'clock five troops of the Fort Garry Horse made a most dashing attack on the western and north-western edges of Gattigny Wood. Supported by the Vickers guns of the M.G. Squadron at a range of 800 yards, under Lieutenants Griffin and Tucker (both of whom were wounded), a combined mounted and dismounted attack was launched and driven home: a large number of Germans were killed by the sword and by bullets, whilst 200 prisoners were captured together with a 5.9-in. howitzer, a tank rifle, a trench mortar and about 40 machine guns. Some of the South African Infantry Brigade (66th Division) supported the cavalymen in this action.

In reporting the capture of Gattigny Wood, the Fort Garry Horse added that Mont-aux-Villes Wood had also been taken; but it turned out later that the latter wood was still held, and that the northern end of Gattigny Wood had been mistaken for Mont-aux-Villes Wood—a very natural mistake, as will be seen by referring to the sketch.

At 11.10 a.m. the Strathconas reported that they had driven 30 prisoners into the hands of the infantry; that their leading squadron had reached the high ground north-east of Clary; and that the enemy had retired to the northern edge of Mont-aux-Villes Wood. About half-an-hour later, news came in that the Fort Garry Horse had reached a small wood 1,500 yards south of Bertry; that this village was held only by a few machine guns; and that they were held up by heavy machine-gun fire from the Honnechy direction.

Lord Strathcona's Horse at 12.25 p.m. reported that they had got a squadron into Mont-aux-Villes Wood; that they were trying to outflank a factory and farm on the Clary-Bertry road about 1,000 yards east of Clary; and that Clary was clear and our infantry marching into it. Five minutes later it was learnt that the Fort Garry were held up in a railway cutting

south of Bertry, by machine-gun fire coming from the other side of the main Le Cateau road.

It was about midday that, as we have seen already, the Divisional Commander met the Brigadiers of the 6th and Canadian Cavalry Brigades to discuss the situation. The meeting took place in a farm on the Roman road some 500 yards north of Marez, which was heavily shelled while the conference was being held, inflicting a number of casualties on men and horses. Simultaneously with the 6th Cavalry Brigade's attack on Honnechy, which has already been described, the Canadians were ordered to push forward round the west and north of Maurois. This operation was successfully carried out by the Fort Garry Horse, one squadron under Major Mills charging a party of Germans and taking 40 prisoners and 3 machine guns.

Meanwhile, a mile and half further west, the Strathconas had captured the farm and factory on the Clary-Bertry road with 42 prisoners and 5 machine guns and had entered the western outskirts of Bertry. Brigadier-General Paterson now moved his report centre to a small wood 1,500 yards south of Bertry, the main body of the Brigade—which had been north-west of Marez—being ordered up to Gattigny Wood.

As heavy machine-gun fire was coming from Reumont and stopping the advance of two squadrons of the Fort Garry Horse north of Maurois, General Paterson about 1 p.m. ordered the third squadron to try and work round on their left and attack Reumont on the north-west, the other two squadrons (dismounted) to conform to this movement and endeavour to enter the village via the main road. At the same time, Major Newcomen's squadron of the Royal Canadian Dragoons (who had not yet been engaged) was to swing further to the left and, gaining touch with the Strathconas at Bertry, seize the high ground north of Reumont.

For this operation all the available artillery—the R.C.H.A. Brigade with a 4.5-in. howitzer battery attached, under Lieutenant-Colonel E. H. P. Elkins—was grouped in a valley 1,000 yards west of Maurois; and these guns, together with any machine guns that could be brought to bear, were put into

action to cover the advance. The manoeuvre was entirely successful, and a line was reached extending from Reumont to the eastern exit of Troisvilles: Major Newcomen and his Dragoons were in time to cut off a number of the enemy retiring from Reumont, and charged them with the sword, killing several and capturing an officer and 29 other ranks, with 3 machine guns. Two squadrons of the Fort Garry Horse entered Reumont dismounted under Majors Strachan and Mills (the latter being wounded), and Lord Strathcona's Horse passed through Troisvilles from west to east about 4 p.m.

The news that German guns and transport were retiring eastwards down the Inchy-Le Cateau road reached General R. W. Paterson at about 3.30 p.m., and 15 minutes later the Strathconas were ordered to get across that road as soon as possible (the road being in the meantime engaged by the artillery), and seize the line Rambourlieux Farm-Troisvilles, on the left portion of the final objective. The Royal Canadian Dragoons were to take up the line on the Strathconas' right from Montay to Rambourlieux Farm, whilst the Fort Garry Horse—who were somewhat scattered—were ordered to assemble in support in the valley at the northern edge of Reumont.

General Paterson now moved his report centre up the Roman road to a point on the high ground 500 yards north-east of Reumont, and went himself to see Lieutenant-Colonel C. T. van Straubenzee (commanding Royal Canadian Dragoons) in a valley about half-a-mile to the west. Colonel van Straubenzee, having received his orders, was riding back to rejoin his regiment when he was unfortunately killed by a shell, which also seriously wounded his adjutant, Lieutenant James. Major T. Newcomen was at once placed in command and instructed to get in touch with the Strathconas at Troisvilles, and reach his objective by an encircling movement via Rambourlieux Farm. Although by this time (6 p.m.) darkness had set in, the operation was admirably carried out: Major Newcomen established his headquarters 800 yards south-east of Rambourlieux Farm, whilst those of the Strathconas were in the farm itself. The two regiments took up an outpost line

with their right on the Roman road above Montay, round the north of Rambourlieux Farm and then down to Troisvilles, with standing patrols well forward. Patrols of the R.C. Dragoons entered Montay and reconnoitred the Montay-Neuvilly road, whilst those of Lord Strathcona's Horse entered Neuvilly and reported that place strongly held north of the River Selle. Inchy was also entered and reported clear.

Owing to the right flank being open, the Fort Garry Horse—less one squadron kept as brigade reserve—were sent forward later in the evening on the right of the Royal Canadian Dragoons. Regimental H.Q. were established on the Roman road south-west of Le Cateau with patrols in the town itself, and touch was gained with the 3rd Dragoon Guards on the right—some 2,000 yards north-east of Reumont—and with the R.C. Dragoons on the left near Montay. These various posts were held throughout the night under considerable shell-fire, which caused a number of casualties to men and horses, especially in the Fort Garry and Lord Strathcona's Horse.

* * * *

This was the last time the Canadian cavalrymen were destined to be in action in the Great War, and they had given a splendid display of what could be done by well-trained mounted troops. During the day they had, since passing through the infantry, advanced about 8 miles and had cleared for that distance a strip of country some 3 miles wide. So rapid had been the advance that the Germans had not time to destroy the villages as they had meant to do; and besides a large number of the enemy being killed—several with the sword—the Brigade had captured over 400 prisoners, including officers, two motor-cars, several guns and nearly 100 machine guns.

CLOSE OF THE FIGHTING ON 9TH OCTOBER, AND RESULTS.

The situation at 6 p.m. was that, although the town of Le Cateau itself had not yet been occupied, the 3rd Cavalry Division had got possession of all the important high ground

9th Oct.
Sketch 1

to the west and north-west. At this hour the 6th Cavalry Brigade was holding a line of posts, facing east, covering Honnechy and Reumont: this line was taken over at 6.15 by the XVIII Corps Cyclist Battalion, and the Brigade assembled for the night in the fields west of Reumont. The 7th Cavalry Brigade assembled similarly north of Reumont near the Le Cateau-Troisvilles road, and the Canadian Brigade was holding the long semi-circular outpost line around Rambourlieux Farm as already described. General Harman's report centre was fixed for the night at a point on the Roman road south-west of Maurois.

The ground on which the 3rd Cavalry Division spent the night was historic, for it was on these open slopes that Smith-Dorrien's II Corps had made their gallant stand in the First Battle of Le Cateau more than four years ago. It was good to feel that these villages had at last been freed from the hated Germans, and it was pathetic to witness the joy of the French people when they once more greeted British soldiers. Many of these unfortunate civilians had been accidentally killed or wounded during the day's fighting, and the Cavalry Field Ambulances did much devoted work not only in attending to casualties but in supplying food, for nearly all the inhabitants were hungry. For example, the 6th C.F.A. opened a large dressing station in Maretz during the afternoon, where both troops and civilians were treated.

The losses in the cavalry were confined to the two leading brigades of the 3rd Cavalry Division, as the 1st Cavalry Division was not engaged, and the 7th Cavalry Brigade suffered few casualties so far as can be ascertained. The figures are given below, and can only be regarded as extremely light in proportion to the results achieved, for the enemy rearguards put up a most stubborn resistance, and it was only after very vigorous action and hard fighting that the cavalry were able to advance. In fact, as we have seen, the resistance at Honnechy was such that the infantry were completely held up and said that they could not advance any further that day.

CAVALRY IN FRANCE, AUGUST-NOV., 1918 177

| | <i>Officers</i> | | <i>Other Ranks</i> | | | <i>Horse Casualties</i> |
|------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------|
| | <i>K.</i> | <i>W.</i> | <i>K.</i> | <i>W.</i> | <i>M.</i> | |
| 6TH CAVALRY BRIGADE : | | | | | | |
| 3rd Dragoon Guards .. | 2 | 3 | 2 | 27 | — | 90 |
| 1st Royal Dragoons .. | — | — | 4 | 29 | — | 34 |
| 10th Hussars .. | — | 5 | 7 | — | — | 106 |
| 6th M.G. Squadron .. | 1 | — | 3 | — | — | } 25 |
| "C" Battery, R.H.A. .. | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | — | |
| | 4 | 9 | 17 | 60 | — | 255 |

CANADIAN CAVALRY BRIGADE :

| | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---|----|----|-----|----|-----|
| Brigade H.Q. & Sig. Troop | — | — | 2 | 3 | — | |
| Royal Canadian Dragoons | 1 | 1 | 1 | 5 | 15 | |
| Lord Strathcona's Horse | 1 | 2 | 9 | 42 | — | |
| Fort Garry Horse .. | — | 4 | 14 | 34 | — | |
| Canadian M.G. Squadron | — | 2 | 2 | 13 | 2 | |
| R. Canadian Horse Arty. | — | 1 | — | 4 | — | |
| | 2 | 10 | 28 | 101 | 17 | 171 |

Mention should be made of the help given during the fighting by the 17th Armoured Car Battalion (Lieutenant-Colonel E. J. Carter) which was attached to the Cavalry Corps. This unit was manned by Tank Corps personnel, and on 9th October seven of its cars were allotted to the 3rd Cavalry Division, three going with the 6th Cavalry Brigade and four with the 7th. The cars accompanying the 6th Brigade were at 9 a.m. ordered to go forward and report on the situation in Mareth. One car broke its axle, but the other two proceeded to Mareth, where they got news of our infantry and cavalry being checked in front of Gattigny Wood. Running on up the Roman road, the cars engaged a party of some 30 Germans at the cross-roads immediately south of the wood; these they scattered, killing four, and capturing 10 machine guns. The cars then went on towards Honnechy, where—in conjunction with some South African infantry—they attacked the enemy in the railway

cutting and in the wood just west of where the railway crosses the main road. Next they pushed on to Maurois, but just after the leading car had crossed the bridge carrying the main road over the railway, this bridge was blown up. This car fired on parties of Germans in Maurois and Honnechy; near Honnechy church the car ran by mistake into a by-road and shot five Germans who came out of a house to see what was happening. (This incident was described with enthusiasm by a Frenchwoman, the owner of the house, to Colonel Carter next day). The car then ran on to another bridge near Honnechy Station and, taught by his previous experience, the car commander came quickly round a corner with his machine guns pointed in the direction where a demolition party would probably be. This action was successful, the demolition party being scattered by a burst of bullets before they could fire the charge and blow the bridge up. Then, after running down the road to Busigny and killing five more Germans, the car—having fired 2,500 rounds from its machine guns—rejoined its companion cars, who had been cut off by the destruction of the Maurois bridge, and returned to report. Apart from fighting, the cars were useful for reconnaissance work and for conveying staff officers forward to ascertain the situation.

* * * *

Cavalry Corps headquarters were established for the night at Serain, where orders were received from Fourth Army that the advance would be continued next day. The 3rd Cavalry Division would again be leading division, and it was to be ready to move at 6 a.m.

THE 10TH OCTOBER: THE ADVANCE HELD UP.

The 10th of October dawned in mist and rain, which prevented any aerial reconnaissance till about 12 noon, after which the day was fine and sunny. The mounted troops were astir early: at 6 a.m. Major-General Harman established his headquarters at the southern exit of Troisvilles, and Brigadier-General A. Burt's 7th Cavalry Brigade began its advance, passing through the Canadians' outpost line and sending patrols

10th Oct.
Sketch 1

to Le Cateau, Montay and Neuville, its objective being the high ground Forest—Amerval. The Canadian Cavalry Brigade now withdrew to a valley south of Troisvilles, the 6th Cavalry Brigade at the same time assembling north-west of Reumont.

The 7th Brigade advanced on a two-regiment front with the Inniskilling Dragoons (Lieutenant-Colonel C. R. Terrot) on the right and the 7th Dragoon Guards (Lieutenant-Colonel R. Sparrow) on the left, each having allotted to it a section (four guns) from the 7th Machine Gun Squadron.

At 7.30 a.m. the patrols reported heavy shell and machine-gun fire from the north-western corner of Le Cateau, from Montay, and from the heights north-east; also that Neuville was now strongly held by enemy machine-gunners. A quarter of an hour later the Inniskillings, who had got on to the open high ground overlooking the Le Cateau-Inchy road, had their leading squadron—which had gone further forward—driven back by heavy fire from north of the Selle valley. The cavalrymen did their best to push forward, the Vickers guns of the 7th Machine Gun Squadron engaging Germans in houses on the outskirts of Le Cateau, and also enemy transport on the far side of the Selle, but it was evident that the hostile resistance was very strong. On learning this, Cavalry Corps at 8.30 sent up three armoured cars and a brigade of artillery—borrowed from the 33rd Division—to help, but by 9 a.m. the machine-gun and shell fire was such that the 7th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to withdraw from its somewhat exposed position on the high ground and to send a reconnaissance to Briastre with a view to crossing the Selle at that point. It turned out that this was not possible, and another patrol working north of Neuville met with heavy machine-gun fire from the north-west corner of that village and also from Viesly.

In the course of its attempts to get on, the 7th Cavalry Brigade suffered the following casualties:—officers, 9 wounded; other ranks, 11 killed, 73 wounded; horse casualties, 131.*

In spite of a report that the enemy were retiring in large numbers up the Le Cateau—Maubeuge road, they continued to

* The 7th M.G. Squadron lost one gun by a direct hit from a shell, with two men killed and five (including an officer) wounded.

put up a formidable resistance to any attempts on our part to cross the Selle. It was not so much the river itself that barred our path—it was only three to four feet deep and some six yards wide—as the strength of the German position on the far side. The high spur running south-west from Forest to Montay gave the enemy excellent observation up the river valley, and enabled him to bring enfilade fire to bear on anyone attacking across it.* Further, the rolling slopes west of the river which we held were devoid of cover, whereas those to the east were more enclosed and gave the Germans better hidden positions for batteries and machine guns than we had.

Parties of infantry came up during the course of the morning, and it seems to have been about noon that the Fourth Army Commander decided to withdraw the Cavalry Corps—at any rate, the 3rd Cavalry Division received orders at 2.15 p.m. to billet and bivouac in the Montigny-Bertry area. The 1st Cavalry Division was told at 1.50 p.m. to billet similarly in the Marez-Clary area, but this was found to have no water for the horses, so the division moved back to its bivouac of the previous night south of Beaurevoir and Wiancourt. At 4.10 p.m. Cavalry Corps ordered one regiment to stay in the forward area to keep touch with the situation on the fronts of the 33rd and 66th Divisions; the 18th Hussars were selected for this duty, and spent the night between Maurois and Reumont.

* * * *

It was on this day that one of the most extraordinary episodes of the whole War occurred—the reappearance in Bertry of Trooper Patrick Fowler, 11th Hussars, who had been in hiding ever since August, 1914. He was recognized by his former troop officer, Major Drake, after having been at first taken for a spy. The story has already been fully told in a former number, so need not be repeated here.†

* * * *

* It was on this high ground that the Germans placed the artillery which inflicted such heavy losses on our gunners in the First Battle of Le Cateau, 26th August, 1914.

† "Four Years Inside the German Lines." Cavalry Journal, July, 1927.

CAVALRY IN FRANCE, AUGUST-NOV., 1918 181

During the operations of the 8th, 9th and 10th October it was estimated that the Cavalry Corps captured over 500 prisoners, 10 guns, and more than 60 machine guns.* Its total casualties were :—

| | | <i>Officers</i> | | | <i>Other Ranks</i> | | |
|------------------------|----|---|-----------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|
| | | <i>K.</i> | <i>W.</i> | <i>M.</i> | <i>K.</i> | <i>W.</i> | <i>M.</i> |
| 1st Cavalry Division.. | .. | 3 | 9 | 2 | 24 | 150 | 21 |
| 3rd Cavalry Division | .. | 4 | 30 | — | 53 | 308 | — |
| 4th Guards Brigade .. | .. | About 30 other ranks from hostile air bombing. | | | | | |
| Household M.G. Brigade | .. | | | | | | |

Horse casualties : Approximately 1,300.

It is only fair to the cavalry to note that not only they, but the whole of the Fourth Army, were held up by the Germans on the heights east and north of Le Cateau. In fact, a fresh attack had to be organized and a large force of artillery brought up, and not till a week later was it found possible to continue the advance.

On 12th October the Cavalry Corps ceased to be under the orders of the Fourth Army, and came again under G.H.Q. 12th Oct.

THE 5TH CAVALRY BRIGADE.

It will be remembered that at this period the 5th Cavalry Brigade was acting with the IX Corps—on the right of the Fourth Army where it joined the French—and not with the Cavalry Corps. The Brigade was unlucky in that, although the IX Corps did well on 9th October and captured Fresnoy-le-Grand and Bohain,† the situation never allowed of cavalry passing through, and all that the mounted men could do was to help the infantry divisions and brigades in local reconnaissance and other similar duties. The 5th Cavalry Brigade's casualties during the whole month of October, 1918, are given as :—

* The Canadian Brigade claims to have captured nearly 100 machine guns. The above figures are those of the Cavalry Corps.

† See Sketch I in January number.

| | <i>Officers</i> | | <i>Other Ranks</i> | | <i>Horses</i> |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| | <i>K.</i> | <i>W.</i> | <i>K.</i> | <i>W.</i> | <i>K. & W.</i> |
| Brigade H.Q. & Sig. Troop | — | — | — | 4 | 5 |
| Royal Scots Greys.. .. | — | 5 | 3 | 30 | 55 |
| 12th Lancers | 1 | 8 | 1 | 30 | 38 |
| 20th Hussars | 2 | 2 | — | 18 | 6 |
| 5th Machine Gun Squadron | — | 1 | 9 | 14 | 56 |
| " E " Battery, R.H.A. .. | — | 1 | — | 5 | 10 |
| 5th Cavalry Field Amb. .. | — | — | — | 2 | 2 |
| <hr/> | | | | | |
| Total | 3 | 17 | 13 | 103 | 172 |

The losses were mostly due to the various units being continually kept waiting about in shelled areas just behind the front line, which was doubtless unavoidable ; at the same time, it was very trying to suffer casualties without getting any chance to hit back.

12th Oct.

On 12th October when the Cavalry Corps left the Fourth Army, the 5th Cavalry Brigade was split up for the time being, the Royal Scots Greys remaining with the IX Corps whilst the 12th Lancers and 20th Hussars went to the XIII Corps and II American Corps respectively.

THE NORTHUMBERLAND HUSSARS WITH THE XIII CORPS.

10th-17th
Oct.
Sketch 1

Before leaving the Fourth Army we may take note of some excellent work done by patrols of the Northumberland Hussars, who from 1st October until 8th November acted as corps cavalry to the XIII Corps. Space does not admit of anything of a full account, but the following are typical examples of men who received decorations and awards for their skill and pluck :—

On 10th October Corporal T. F. Philipson commanded a patrol working on the flank of the 25th Division attacking towards Le Cateau, and managed to obtain most accurate information as to the situation, whilst three nights later he showed great gallantry with an officer's patrol which was reconnoitring the River Selle between St. Benin and St. Souplet.

Private R. Tailford was also on the latter patrol and materially helped in its success, staying out in No Man's Land for eight hours in face of severe enemy action.

2nd Lieutenant J. P. H. Simpson carried out a very difficult reconnaissance of the Selle, south of Le Cateau, on the night 13th-14th October. The Germans kept up a heavy shell and machine-gun fire from the railway and the eastern bank of the river, but Simpson remained out in front of the American infantry for eleven hours, brought back all his men safely, and obtained "most important and most accurate information."

On the 17th Lance-Corporal J. E. Bowden on two separate occasions led a patrol through St. Souplet to the railway under heavy fire, and each time brought back correct and important information. As the XIII Corps wrote later: "Such work, though lacking in spectacular effect, calls for the highest soldierly qualities of self-reliance, determination, and devotion to duty."

THE OXFORDSHIRE HUSSARS WITH THE VI CORPS.

(Sketch 2).

Mention was made in the last article* of the Oxfordshire Hussars who were working under the VI Corps in the Third Army, which was attacking on the Fourth Army's left. The Oxfords' regimental history states that on 8th October there were rumours of the Central Powers asking for an armistice, and that the corps issued a warning against attempts to fraternise. On this day the regiment again went through "the wearisome process of moving to Ribecourt at 7 a.m." in case it might be needed to pass through the infantry; but as had happened for several days past, it was ordered back to Hermies in the afternoon. 8th Oct.
Sketch 2

On 9th October came a welcome change: early in the morning "D" Squadron was ordered forward to Seranvillers, whence it sent two troops to Wambaix and two to Wambaix Copse to work under the Guards Division, mounted patrols being despatched towards Cattenières and Estourmel. Regimental headquarters and "C" Squadron followed on to 9th Oct.

* Cavalry Journal, January, 1935, page 12.

Seranvillers later, bivouacking there for the night—the first night for many weeks that they had spent in a village with “at least one house-roof on,” as an officer records.

10th Oct.

The advance was resumed next day (10th) south-east and east of Cambrai: “C” Squadron supplied two troops each to the 1st and 2nd Guards Brigades, patrols being sent towards Quiévy and St. Hilaire. One of these, under Lieutenant H. Hodgson, was ordered to find out (1) the line held by our infantry, and (2) whether St. Hilaire was held by the enemy. The patrol was admirably handled, and reported to the Guards brigadier concerned, within an hour, the exact position of his own infantry and the fact that St. Hilaire was clear. Another patrol did equally good work under Sergeant Peaker, although we are told that the pouring rain made map reading very difficult. Peaker was asked to find out whether the railway line south and south-east of St. Aubert was held by the Germans: his orders were to leave St. Vaast on his right and make straight for the railway. The patrol was fired on from St. Vaast, but making skilful use of the ground it got to within 400 or 500 yards of the railway, where it came under heavy fire from rifles and machine guns and saw about 50 Germans on the railway. This information was conveyed back to the G.O.C., 2nd Guards Brigade, the patrol returning without a single casualty.

On the same day a third patrol, consisting of Corporal Bird and five men, obtained “information of the utmost value to the 1st Guards Brigade.” This brigade was holding a north-and-south line with its right on Bevillers and its left at the cross-roads about a mile to the north, and the mission of the patrol was (1) to ascertain whether some enemy machine guns had retired, and if so (2) to push on to the Quiévy–St. Hilaire road, and if possible (3) to enter Quiévy from the north-east. Bird was back in 23 minutes to report that there was no opposition up to the road but that, on entering Quiévy, he was fired at by two machine guns from the first house. He and his men cantered back along a ridge overlooking the north-west of Quiévy, but failed to draw any more fire.

For the next fortnight, the Oxfordshire Hussars were located in and near Carnières, and they state that the VI Corps did everything possible to make the men comfortable in the way of baths, entertainments, etc.

THE CARABINIERS WITH THE XVII CORPS.
(Sketch 2).

Immediately to the north of the Oxford Hussars, the Carabiniers were acting in a similar capacity with the XVII Corps, and were in a position of readiness at Cantaing on 30th September and 1st October. No opportunity of cavalry action was, however, given to them until the 9th, when after a successful infantry attack on Niergnies the regiment was ordered forward, crossing the St. Quentin Canal at a lock north of Marcoing. One squadron was sent on as advanced guard by Niergnies and Awoingt to Cauroir, where it was held up by machine-gun fire from the ridge east of the village, being relieved by infantry about 5 p.m. and bivouacking in Niergnies for the night. 9th Oct.
Sketch 2

The Germans retreated so fast that our infantry lost touch with them, for at 6.35 a.m. on the 10th the Carabiniers marched off with orders to regain touch, moving via Awoingt, north of Carnières towards Avesnes-lez-Aubert. The regiment made good progress; the advanced guard, although fired on, getting into Avesnes and capturing a few prisoners. The ridge beyond was, however, held by the enemy, so the leading squadron dismounted for action (9.30 a.m.) at the eastern side of the village. This position they held until relieved by infantry about 4 p.m., when they withdrew to Cagnoncles for the night. Hostile shelling had increased during the day and the cavalrymen suffered a few casualties, including Lieutenant Jones and four men missing: these latter had galloped after some Germans and apparently run into a machine-gun nest. 10th Oct.

Next day it was pouring with rain, and patrols were again sent to work with different infantry divisions. The main body of the regiment moved at 7.30 a.m. to a valley a mile north-east of Cagnoncles, being now under the orders of the 24th 11th Oct.

Division. The Germans were, however, putting up a stiffer resistance, and at 3.30 p.m. the Carabiniers were told that they could withdraw.

12th Oct.

At 9 a.m. on the 12th came a message from 24th Division that the enemy was retreating and that our infantry were "walking on." The regiment at once saddled up and "C" Squadron started off at 9.25; it was found, however, that the infantry had got no further than the eastern edge of St. Aubert, so after consultations with the G.O's.C. 17th Brigade and 24th Division, the Commanding Officer returned to Cagnoncles leaving one squadron forward, this squadron also being withdrawn at 4 p.m.

13th Oct.

Next day all horses were put under cover, and the Carabiniers were not again actively employed until 8th November.

(To be continued)



SKETCH 1


Viesly

3. OBJECTIVE

e
s
h
g
it
r-
d

n
l,
d
y
h
e
r

e
d
t
s
k

g
r
g
n
t

1

1

1

6

12th Oct.

t

c

s

i

a

2

1

d

13th Oct.

v

POLO PONY BREEDING.

By LT.-COL. SIDNEY G. GOLDSCHMIDT.

ANYONE who studies the Polo pony classes at any Show or the playing ponies on any polo ground must be struck by the divergence in type. Visits to the various studs and a discussion with the owners will increase his perplexity, for there are among breeders two schools each producing polo ponies, but of different types. There is the Polo-bred and there is the Polo-thoroughbred. The question naturally arises: Which method should furnish the guiding principle in breeding the ideal polo pony?

We must assume that all the breeders have the same object in view—the breeding of fast, staunch polo ponies, easy to school, sound and durable. This means that they must have exceptional conformation and true action, that they must have been expertly and rationally handled from their earliest youth upwards, each according to his disposition, and that they must at no time have been the victims of anger or even of impatience. On the other hand, they must not have been petted or pampered.

Another, and perhaps a secondary, consideration is the time factor, for if they require an inordinate expenditure of time and trouble in their schooling, this also militates distinctly against their value. One hears of ponies playing good polo at five years and on the other hand a man may tell you that his best pony took him two or even three years to train.

If polo-pony breeding is to be a financial success, the young ponies emanating from any stud must have the reputation for coming easily to hand. This desirable point is reached (taking suitable conformation for granted) by a combination of an inherited calm nervous system and, more important still, expert handling and feeding from foalhood upwards.

Although, as we have shown, the objects of all breeders are the same, the process by which their object is attained requires close examination because there are undoubtedly two kinds of polo players for whom to cater. There is on the one hand a demand for the brilliant hard galloping pony that enables the high handicap man to improve, or at all events, to maintain his form, and on the other hand a demand for the confidential pony for the more modest player, and for the indifferent rider. Is it this that causes the divergence in the theory of mating amongst the two schools of breeders? Are they each in fact, catering for different markets?

There is no doubt that it is the considered opinion of many that the strong infusion of native pony blood so much favoured in some studs, makes for greater ease in schooling and favours the retention of playing form in spite of bad riding. In this way the type of pony is produced so often described when trained as "Fool-proof," "Confidential," "Patent Safety," or "Dobbin." The other type of pony has been brought into being by the polo contests with the U.S.A., Argentine, Australia and India, and is known as the International Pony.

So it will be seen that breeders must decide first which type provides, from their point of view, the better market; second, which takes the shorter time to school; and third, which shows the fewer failures. Consideration must also be given to subsidiary factors such as speed, weight-carrying power, courage, and if the owner's ambition runs that way, popularity among judges in the Show Ring.

All the above points require careful thought and it will be found on analysing them that although many cancel each other, the few that remain make an almost overwhelming case in favour of the thoroughbred. There are, it may be argued, many more players who can ride and enjoy themselves on the half-bred confidential type, but unfortunately many of these consider themselves capable of riding an International Pony until the experience of failure convinces them to the contrary. Then if they do not give up the game in disgust they will turn to the easier and probably less brilliant pony unless their riding has

in the meantime improved sufficiently to make the riding of a thoroughbred possible. On the whole, then, we must decide that while the easy, comfortable pony *ought* to be in greater demand, it is the thoroughbred that commands the higher price, notwithstanding that, points two and three—the easier and quicker schooling, and a low percentage of failures—theoretically weigh down the balance still further in favour of the polo-bred type.

We now come to a question which presented itself to me very prominently on my recent visits to the various studs and during my discussions with the owners. Considering only those of the progeny which prove successful, how nearly does the polo-bred approximate in type, appearance and action to the polo-thoroughbred type? Often only an experienced and discriminating eye can detect the difference, *until they are put to full gallop*, when the action and pace of the half-bred infallibly proves its origin. There is a reason for this similarity in outward appearance, for there has been a similarity in their evolution, the thoroughbred from native pony mares crossed with Eastern sires and the polo-bred from native pony mares crossed with the thoroughbred, also descended from the Eastern sires. There is, however, this important difference between the two—the thoroughbred is removed from the native pony by a great number of generations while the polo-bred is very much nearer to its pony ancestor.

It is the hope of the breeder who favours the Polo-bred that his young stock will take on the characteristics of the thoroughbred while retaining pony character. It is the hope of the breeder of the polo *thoroughbred* that his young stock will revert sufficiently to the native ancestors to exhibit this same all-important pony character.

If the breeder who pins his faith to the latter system will select his sires and dams from thoroughbreds that not only have pony character themselves but also belong to families exhibiting these characteristics, he will be taking the shorter road to success. The General Stud Book has been closed to outside entries since 1913, and even before that only horses whose per-

formances showed outstanding merit could be entered; so there is little tendency, and this constantly diminishing, for animals bred on General Stud Book lines to revert to undesirable ancestors.

The polo-bred strains on the contrary are constantly exposed to the infusion of the alien blood of mares of unknown pedigree allowed into the approved mare register by the process of inspection only. Most of these mares are mongrels from which it is not possible to breed anything but mongrels.

The situation can therefore be summed up as follows:—The main difficulty that breeders have to face is how are they to bridge the gap between the value of the young pony as it leaves their hands and its ultimate value after it has made its successful debut in a game of polo? At present the breeder considers his job finished when he has got his young pony to the point of tolerating a man on his back. There is a class for these young four-year-olds at the National Pony Society Spring Show, but the judges are not expected to do more than ride them sedately round the ring.

The pony's real polo education as a rule only begins after he leaves the breeder's hands, and some breeders in their desire to produce an animal more docile and forbearing than the highly-strung impetuous thoroughbred, infuse into their studs a good proportion of native pony blood. By this means they hope to shorten the time necessary to school the young ponies and to bring this schooling within the capacity of the indifferent riders who form the majority of their customers. It is a heart-breaking experience to see a promising thoroughbred deteriorating in the hands of a man whose riding and stable management is not up to the necessary standard, and it is sad to reflect that our horsemanship and horsemastership is so low compared to that of the U.S.A., the Argentine and India, that when their teams visit us they usually make a clean sweep of our Champion Cups. If the schooling of ponies in England were more scientific and the riding of our players more expert, I say without hesitation that we should hear no more of the polo-bred, and the thoroughbred would be

the only saleable animal. At present, although no more expensive to breed, the successful thoroughbred commands a far higher price than any other animal because there are far fewer of them—which is another way of saying that there is a high percentage of failures in schooling. This is a point that should be overcome by improved horsemanship and not by producing an inferior article which anything short of clean thoroughbred undoubtedly is.

Even if success in the Show Ring is the breeder's only goal, a reference to the prize lists will show that in the Open Classes where the thoroughbred and polo-bred meet, the premier award always goes to the thoroughbred.

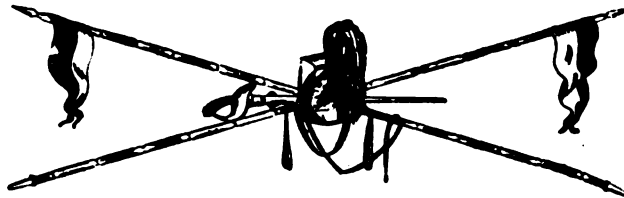
It is a point for Polo Pony breeders to consider whether it would not be a satisfactory solution of their main difficulty, even if it did not actually prove a paying proposition, to engage as stud manager a young ex-officer from a mounted branch of the Service, one skilled in schooling ponies. By this means the price of the young stock could be made more nearly to approximate to the price of the finished article.

NOTE BY MANAGING EDITOR.

It will interest our polo players to read Colonel Goldschmidt's views on the breeding of polo ponies.

The general opinion amongst cavalry officers is that although the polo stud bred ponies constantly win in the show ring they do not often prove themselves "winners" on the polo ground. The great majority of thoroughbred ponies which reach "international" form are those which have been bred for racing and have failed to grow big enough.

Col. Goldschmidt suggests that breeders should employ skilled trainers in order to approximate the price of young stock to that of the finished article. Our experience is that there must always be a very large gap between the two. The big jump in price comes after the pony has shown his capabilities in the inter-regimental tournament or other higher class matches.



"THE INDIAN CAVALRY OF TO-DAY."

By MAJOR-GENERAL E. D. GILES, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O.

IN the Cavalry Journal of July, 1934, an article on "The Silladar Cavalry of India" was contributed by a writer under the name of "Thistle."

The first part contains an interesting historical review of the development of the Silladar System, but at the end of the article Thistle paints a gloomy picture which is much resented by Indian Cavalrymen of to-day. Its effect must be to convey to readers of this Journal the impression that our Indian Cavalry has sadly deteriorated since the abolition of the Silladar System and is now but an arm which to quote Thistle has "lost many of the merits of the light cavalry of the East and has acquired many of the defects of the Cavalry of the West."

I do not know who Thistle is, but he is misinformed as regards conditions in our Indian Cavalry of to-day, and I feel that his mind would be eased, as might the minds of others of our retired veterans be, by learning the truth regarding those conditions.

My excuse for writing this article is that I have spent 20 years in Silladar Cavalry from 2nd Lieutenant to Commanding Officer, up till the time of their conversion to non-Silladar. Since then, some 14 years in the closest touch with our regiments, up to the present, when, for the last 4 years, I have been lucky enough to inspect critically and from every point of view every Cavalry regiment in India.

It is true that a great many of us thought, when the Silladar System was abolished, that the Government of India was making a grave mistake, that the old traditions and customs of our regiments were in jeopardy and that the spirit of an arm which had proved itself in the past might not survive the new re-organization which Government was about to create. We were sad to see the old system go. We were, however, to be proved wrong.

The fact remains that this system from the higher point of view of administration and supply was not suitable for modern war on a large scale. Although in peace time the cost of the maintenance of the Silladar System was a great deal less than is the cost of the upkeep of regular regiments, adequate maintenance in a war of any magnitude or duration was uneconomical and impracticable.

To deal now with Thistle's arguments :—

The Indian Cavalry is now, as he says, better equipped than was ever the case formerly.

Its personnel are better trained not only in technical duties but from every point of view than they were before the war. Modern war is more complicated than ever and our Indian Cavalryman has to deal with and be proficient in a number of subjects and to consider aspects of war which were never dreamt of in the Silladar days.

A certain amount of "panache" may have vanished. The modern soldier, of whatever arm he may be, has a full time job in learning to be an efficient fighting man.

What is it that Thistle finds detrimental in our regiments being what he calls "very creditable copies of British Cavalry?"

Personally, I hold that our best British Cavalry regiments towards the end of their period of service in India are exactly what cavalry regiments should be.

They are commanded by young, keen and efficient men. Their officers are as good as ever both at work and at play and the standard of their men in regard to education, intelligence, initiative and general efficiency is a long way in advance of the pre-war standard.

As a Brigadier, I always held that the British Cavalry Regiment in the Brigade should set the fashion in everything connected with soldiering and sport and should exemplify to the Indian Cavalry regiments the modern fighting machine.

The higher the standard of the British Cavalry, the better the Indian regiments who worked and played with them.

With two of Thistle's assertions I must definitely disagree.

He says "The social status of both the Indian officers and

men has decreased . . . the units are no longer particularly mobile."

The social status of our officers and men is as high as ever.

We retain the old connections with families in areas which have long supplied our cavalry. Improved means of travel and the motor car have facilitated the visiting of our recruiting areas and British officers do more touring through them than they ever did before.

There is no deterioration whatever in our men and the lists of "Umidwar" recruits maintained by regiments are full of the right stuff as ever they were.

The much regretted reduction in the number of our regiments from our pre-war strength to 21 has had the result that, while the magnificent material which we have been accustomed to recruit is always available, we cannot, alas, recruit the numbers that we used to do in the old days. In every regiment that I have seen (several a good many times during the last four years) it is remarkable what a lot of sons and nephews continue to come to the regiments in which their forbears served.

As regards our mobility, there is no place in modern war for the long train of baggage mules which carried our kit in the old days nor for the crowd of ill-disciplined, ragged syces which used to bestride those mules. All followers have been reduced to a minimum.

The advent of Mechanical Transport has resulted in the introduction of scales of equipment now classified as Light, Hard and Field Service Scales, in which a minimum scale of equipment is carried by M.T. to suit the particular kind of operation envisaged, while weight has been taken off both man and horse. We are definitely more mobile than we were before the war and our aim in training during the past three years has been to develop true light cavalry tactics and to improve our tactical mobility to suit conditions of warfare in those areas where we are most likely to fight.

Thistle goes on to say :—

"The old irregular cavalryman had a monetary stake in his regiment : he could not afford to be disloyal. The experiences of the Mutiny proved that the regular was not equally reliable.

There is nothing to indicate that any new factor affects this historic experience in a time of emergency."

Since the Mutiny we have had various small wars and finally the Great War in which regiments, ever becoming more regular, have earned fresh laurels under the worst conditions of modern warfare.

Thistle need not fear for their loyalty and devotion.

Men were never more sorely tried than during the Akali troubles in 1922 and during the recent Red Shirt movement in the North West Frontier Province.

During the troublesome year of 1930 when Congress were rampant, to the man in the street it might well have appeared that disorder and anarchy were stronger than law and order.

The ranks of all our regiments were made the target for the vilest forms of seditious propaganda during a long period, but remained staunch and loyal throughout.

As regards the monetary stake (which surely was not the only incentive to loyalty in the old days?) this has certainly disappeared, but it has been replaced by various expedients which are just as likely to hold the loyalty and good feeling of the men as was the former attraction of the rupee. The excellent administration of regimental funds has enabled Commanding Officers to use the interest in maintaining all, or some, of the following institutions for the benefit of the Indian ranks :—

(a) Co-operative thrift societies.

The men purchase shares in these societies, borrow money at low interest for the fulfilment of objects which previously entailed a loan from the bania at 24 per cent. per annum, put their savings in fixed deposit, and receive a dividend at the end of the year from the society's profits.

(b) Zenana Hospitals.

Nearly all units have a child welfare centre, which is assisted out of funds and which is greatly appreciated by the men and their families.

(c) Whilst serving, men are forced to accumulate "deferred pay." This in itself mounts up to a handsome bonus for the man when he leaves, but can be withheld if a man has a bad record of service.

Other amenities which are provided for the Indian Ranks and their families are N.C.O.s' Messes, regimental gardens, organized games, canteens, children's schools and scout troops.

As regards the last paragraph of Thistle's article, certainly more time is devoted to training than in the old days. There is so much more to learn and we demand so much higher a standard. Besides his own lately increased weapons, the Indian Cavalryman has, among other things, to develop a useful understanding of and co-operation with light tanks and aircraft, not to mention gas defence. These are matters with which the uneducated man cannot cope.

Let me assure him of the following facts :—

The administration of our Indian regiments nowadays is based on a sound system similar throughout our cavalry and is not based largely on the individual whims of "autocratic" Commanding Officers.

We work on one doctrine instead of on several and much time is gained thereby.

A far higher standard of initiative and intelligence is demanded from Indian Officers and N.C.Os. now than formerly and they are made to carry far more responsibility, thereby saving their British Officers from much petty and unnecessary detail.

Throughout the cavalry, with the possible exception of a few regiments which had well developed stud farms, regiments are very much better mounted than they were before the war on serviceable, level, good class Australians round about 15 or 15.1 hands with a good proportion of well-bred and ever improving Indian breds of a stamp generally unknown before the War. The standard of horsemastership throughout the Cavalry is unquestionably far higher than in the days of the Silladar System. It is, in fact, very high.

Modern war and the making of leaders necessitates certain standards of education.

Let Thistle read Brigadier Geoffrey Brooke's excellent article in the October 1934 number of the "Army Quarterly" on "How to train Non-Commissioned Officers to become leaders." That article applies to the making of N.C.Os.

Higher standards are essential for officers. Education and a high standard of horsemastership do not imply the "spoon feeding of officers and animals" as Thistle indicates.

Education on sound lines develops personality and the uneducated type of Indian Officer and N.C.O. is of little use in modern war. This type is dying out.

Education nowadays includes the understanding and speaking of English which is encouraged among those who wish to go higher and is becoming essential for them. This does not mean the cult of the babu and the failed B.A.

The best of the fighting classes if they aspire to commissions and lads from those classes, who hope to pass through the Indian Military Academy must be proficient in English.

I wish that Thistle could see for himself regiments of the Indian Cavalry as they are now.

The "Self reliant mind of the Silladar Officer" is still as effective as ever and improvisation is by no means a lost art when this is necessary. Sound method and wider knowledge lead, however, to better results.

Our regiments do not vary much in standard and that is a high one. The methods of one regiment are very like those of the next. Commanding officers seem younger and more active than they used to be. In a recent Indian Cavalry Polo Tournament, seven Commanding Officers played for their teams.

Squadron leaders are tried men with war experience, and the best type of young British Officer is as keen on the Indian Cavalry as ever.

There is no lack of the best material.

Indian officers are broader minded and better educated than they used to be and they and the men come from the same fine classes, the disappearance of which Thistle wrongly deploras.

Far more games of all kinds are played by the men than formerly, and this next Indian Cavalry "Week" will see the inauguration of football and hockey tournaments for the men as well as the old tentpegging and the polo for the officers.

Let Thistle and his contemporaries take heart.

The Indian Cavalry, as those of us who are proud to have served in it have always thought, is and shows every indication of remaining "Second to none."

NEW SOUTH WALES CAVALRY

By Captain L. RICHARDSON, Australian Staff Corps.

THE oldest Australian Colony—the state of New South Wales—was the first one to raise a Volunteer Cavalry unit. Accurate records have not been preserved, but, according to documents held in the Mitchell library, a number of citizens assembled on the afternoon of 12th September, 1854, at the Royal Hotel, George Street, Sydney, for the purpose of forming a volunteer Cavalry Corps. Thirty-five persons present enrolled themselves as members of the future Corps. Soon afterwards the detachment was formed with a strength of 40. The Inspector-General of Police (Captain J. McLerie) was Commanding Officer, and, with him, were Captain McDonald as Adjutant, Lieut. H. Halloran, and Cornet O. Perrier.

The Commissions, dated 15th March, 1855, appointing the Officers described the Governor of New South Wales as:—

“ His Excellency Sir William Thomas Denison, Knight, Governor-General in and over all Her Majesty’s Colonies of New South Wales, Van Dieman’s Land, Victoria, South Australia, and Western Australia, and Captain-General and Governor-in-Chief of the Territory of New South Wales and its Dependencies, and Vice-Admiral of the same.”*

The detachment wore a flat black cap, red garibaldi jacket, and black trousers. Each man provided his own charger, and the New South Wales Government supplied the weapons. The unit was known as the Yeomanry Cavalry Corps of New South Wales. It was disbanded in 1862.

Between 1862 and 1884 a number of mounted detachments were formed, but all were short lived.

In 1884 a fresh start was made, and the unit formed then has since maintained an unbroken record of service. A meeting was

* Queensland had not at this date been formed as a separate State.



**FULL DRESS UNIFORM, 1906
OFFICER, NEW SOUTH WALES LANCERS.**

TO MY
FRIENDS

held at the Oxford Hotel, Sydney, and a few days later, a mounted parade of volunteers was called in Moore Park. In January, 1885, 40 volunteers were enrolled, as the Sydney Light Horse. Captain McDonald, who had been Adjutant of the 1854 unit, was appointed to the command.

The Corps made its first public appearance on March 3rd, 1885, as escort to the Governor (Lord Augustus Loftus), at the parade which celebrated the departure of the New South Wales Soudan contingent. The uniform consisted of blue tunic, overalls, short boots, box spurs, white belt, and blue peaked cap with scarlet band. The men were armed with old swords which had been discarded by the Mounted Police. Horse furniture consisted of civilian pattern saddles and obsolete military bridles—the latter also Police cast-offs.

Soon afterwards Troops of Light Horse were formed in country districts at Illawarra, Mittagong, Robertson and Hunter River. These, with the Sydney Troop, were combined as the First New South Wales Regiment of Cavalry under the command of Major McDonald.

The next event of importance in this Unit's life was the conversion to Lancers. The new South Wales Soudan Contingent camped at Handoub alongside the 5th Royal Irish Lancers, and the two Units became very friendly. Major-General Richardson, who commanded the New South Wales Contingent, was also Commandant of New South Wales, and one of his first official acts on his return in 1885 was to convert the Sydney Light Horse into Lancers. Colonel Palmer of the 9th Bengal Lancers had presented the Australians with two lances as a memento of the campaign, but these were the only ones in New South Wales, so the troops had to improvise until others could be imported from England. The Sydney Troop used bamboo fishing rods with pennants attached, and were so equipped when they turned out to receive the new Governor—Lord Carrington. It is said that one country Troop, not having any fishing rods, substituted stockwhips when the escort duty fell to them.

Lord Carrington's arrival was a boon to the Lancers. He accepted the position of Honorary Colonel, and did much to assist the Unit.

As a compliment to the 5th Royal Irish Lancers, the Sydney Troop ordered from London uniforms similar to those of that regiment, except that silver braid was used instead of gold. The men bore the cost themselves. The Sydney Troop wore this uniform for several years, but, as the country Troops found it too costly, it was eventually abandoned. All New South Wales Lancer Troops then adopted a drab uniform with scarlet plastron and felt hat.

In 1891 the New South Wales Lancer Band was formed at West Maitland. The Officers of the Regiment and the townspeople of West Maitland supplied the horses (all white), and the instruments, and the Government of New South Wales gave a subsidy of £250 per annum. The Band was transferred to Lancer Barracks, Paramatta, in 1898.

The second New South Wales Unit with an unbroken record was formed in the Northern part of the State as the Upper Clarence River Light Horse. Major C. G. Chauvel* of 35th Madras Native Infantry had settled with his son (Mr. C. N. E. Chauvel) on a cattle station at Tabulam. Consequent on the Russian war scare of 1885 the Chauvels offered to raise a force for service on the North-West frontier of India. The offer was not accepted, but approval was given to raise a local unit. The first Troop, consisting of employees on the station, was sworn in on January 1st, 1886.

Later on Troops were raised at Drake, Tenterfield, Inverell, Cullendore, Acacia Creek, Casino and Lismore. These were then grouped into two Squadrons: No. 1 about Tabulam and Tenterfield, and No. 2 about Lismore and Casino. In 1889 No. 1 Squadron elected to become Mounted Infantry, while No. 2 became Lancers.

No. 1 Squadron moved its Headquarters to Tenterfield and expanded into the Upper Clarence Light Horse (known for a time as Tenterfield Mounted Rifles).

No. 2 Squadron joined the New South Wales Lancers and after the Boer War expanded into a separate regiment—the Richmond River Lancers.

* The grandfather of General Sir H. G. Chauvel, G.C.M.G., K.C.B.

Captain Sparrow, with the title of Adjutant of the Northern Reserves, administered these units.

In 1888 a Corps of Permanent Mounted Infantry, under command of Captain Sparrow, was formed in Sydney with an establishment of thirty-two all ranks. The Corps was intended to supply men and horses for instructional purposes to the Officers of the mounted arms, and to form the nucleus of a regiment to be distributed by companies throughout the Colony. In January, 1889, Captain Lassetter, 80th Foot, arrived to take command of the Corps and to perform, in addition, the duties of Adjutant of the New South Wales Lancers.

At Easter, 1899, the Upper Clarence River Light Horse, a Field Battery of Artillery raised at Bega, and Companies of "Reserves" from Queanbeyan, Picton, Campbelltown and Inverell, together with the Corps of Permanent Mounted Infantry from Sydney, were combined as an Administrative Regiment under the partially paid system. Captain Lassetter was promoted to Major and became Commanding Officer, and Captain Sparrow became Adjutant. The Unit was known as the Mounted Infantry Regiment, and the uniform consisted of drab tweed jacket with scarlet cloth shoulder straps, tight breeches of drab bedford cord, brown leather boots, side-laced leggings, and soft felt hat with plume of black cock's feathers, the brim on the left side being held back by the regimental badge. The badge was a Southern Cross surrounded with a wreath of waratahs with crown on top and a lion rampant in centre of cross. The permanent company wore buttons and mountings of brass, but the volunteers wore white metal.

In 1890 the permanent company was disbanded owing to the expense of maintaining the horses.

In January, 1891, a Regimental Band was raised at Camden.

In August, 1893, on the formation of the New South Wales Mounted Brigade (consisting of the two mounted regiments), the Mounted Infantry Regiment was renamed the New South Wales Mounted Rifles.

The next mounted Unit formed was the Australian Horse, gazetted in August, 1897. It consisted of volunteers from the outlying districts. Colonel J. H. K. Mackay, C.B., was the first

Commanding Officer and he raised his troops mainly in the Western and South-Western parts of the State, going as far North as Mudgee and Gunnedah. The establishment was fixed at 400, and the men were selected on their skill as horsemen and bushmen. The unit was a cavalry one and the personnel wore a Hussar pattern uniform of dark green with black embroidery, shoulder-belt and sabretache, and felt hat with plume of black clock's feathers.

The Governor of New South Wales, Earl Beauchamp, accepted the position of Honorary Colonel of the Australian Horse, and his Private Secretary, Captain Ferguson, 2nd Life Guards, accepted the appointment of Second-in-Command of the Regiment.

Although only formed in the latter half of 1897, the Australian Horse made a good impression at Easter, 1898, when they attended a camp with the two older Regiments.

There were several other items of interest prior to the Boer War:—

In 1893 the New South Wales Lancers sent a contingent to England to compete in the Army tournaments. The men performed creditably at Islington and Dublin.

In 1897 a further detachment of Lancers and one of Mounted Rifles visited England to take part in Queen Victoria's Diamond Jubilee celebrations, and to compete in Army tournaments.

In March, 1899, a squadron of 106 all ranks of the Lancers sailed for England for six months' training at Aldershot. Captain Cox (now Major-General C. F. Cox, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., V.D.) was in command.

The cost of all these journeys was borne by the troops themselves, assisted by public subscription—no Government grant being made. Over £1,000 was subscribed in England towards sending the Lancer Training Squadron home in 1899.

The first Australian troops to take part in the Boer War were the 1899 Lancer Training Squadron. War appeared inevitable but had not yet broken out, when the Squadron sailed from England *via* the Cape to return to Australia. Captain Cox volunteered that if war had commenced when the Squadron reached Cape Town they should disembark and take part. The offer was

accepted and some of the Squadron fought under Lord Methuen in the first engagements on the Modder River. The New South Wales Lancer Regiment sent three other detachments to maintain their Squadron at strength. The Squadron was attached to the Inniskillings (6th Dragoons) and fought alongside that regiment all through the war. It returned to Australia early in 1901.

The New South Wales Mounted Rifles also despatched to South Africa one Squadron, which arrived in December, 1899, and, shortly afterwards, they sent a draft to maintain full strength. The Mounted Rifles were not attached to any British Cavalry Regiment, but worked as a separate Australian unit throughout the war. As shown later, several contingents of Mounted Rifles were sent from New South Wales, but the first squadron was the only one which could claim to belong to the New South Wales Mounted Rifles Regiment.

The 1st Australian Horse also sent two contingents to provide and maintain one Squadron in the field. This Squadron was attached to the Royal Scots Greys (2nd Dragoons) for most of the campaign.

The three existing New South Wales mounted units thus each provided one Squadron for service in South Africa.

On account of the demand for mounted troops in the Boer War, the first Company of Infantry despatched from New South Wales was mounted in South Africa as E. Squadron New South Wales Mounted Rifles.

Further Mounted units were formed in New South Wales and despatched to South Africa. Although some of the officers and men of these units had served in one or other of the three New South Wales Regiments, most of the personnel were specially enlisted civilians or soldiers who had served in Infantry and technical arms. The units were known variously as New South Wales Mounted Rifles, New South Wales Citizen's Bushmen, New South Wales Imperial Bushmen, Australian Commonwealth Horse* and New South Wales Mounted Infantry.

In all, 231 officers and 5,213 other ranks of mounted units were sent from New South Wales to the Boer War. In addition, one Company of Infantry served as a mounted unit.

* Organized by the newly established Commonwealth Government.

In 1901 the Commonwealth Government was established, and it took over from the State Governments entire responsibility for defence.

The three existing New South Wales Mounted Regiments—Lancers, Mounted Rifles and Australian Horse were reorganised, and formed the nucleus of six Light Horse Regiments and three half Squadrons of Garrison Mounted Troops for Defended Ports. The six Regiments were grouped into two Brigades, 1st Light Horse Brigade in the southern half of the State and 2nd Light Horse Brigade in the northern half. The Regiments were :—

1st Australian Light Horse (New South Wales Lancers).

2nd Australian Light Horse (New South Wales Mounted Rifles).

3rd Australian Light Horse (Australian Horse).

4th Australian Light Horse (New South Wales Lancers).*

5th Australian Light Horse (New South Wales Mounted Rifles).

6th Australian Light Horse (Australian Horse).

As was inevitable, some mixing of tradition took place, particularly in 4th, 5th and 6th Regiments, but, as far as possible, the old territorial traditions were maintained.

Uniforms were standardised, and within a few years all Light Horse Regiments were wearing khaki jackets with white facings and white metal badges and buttons, khaki cord breeches, brown leather boots and leggings, and felt hats with seven-fold khaki puggarees, the centre fold being white.

When universal military training was introduced in Australia in 1911 there was a further reorganization. The Regiment raised in the portion of New South Wales known as the Northern Rivers passed to the Queensland command for convenience of administration, and its place was taken in New South Wales command by a new Regiment raised from the three half Squadrons of Garrison Mounted Troops.

All Regiments were re-numbered on an Australian plan starting with Queensland, and thus the old traditional numbers of the

* Also known for a time as Hunter River Lancers.



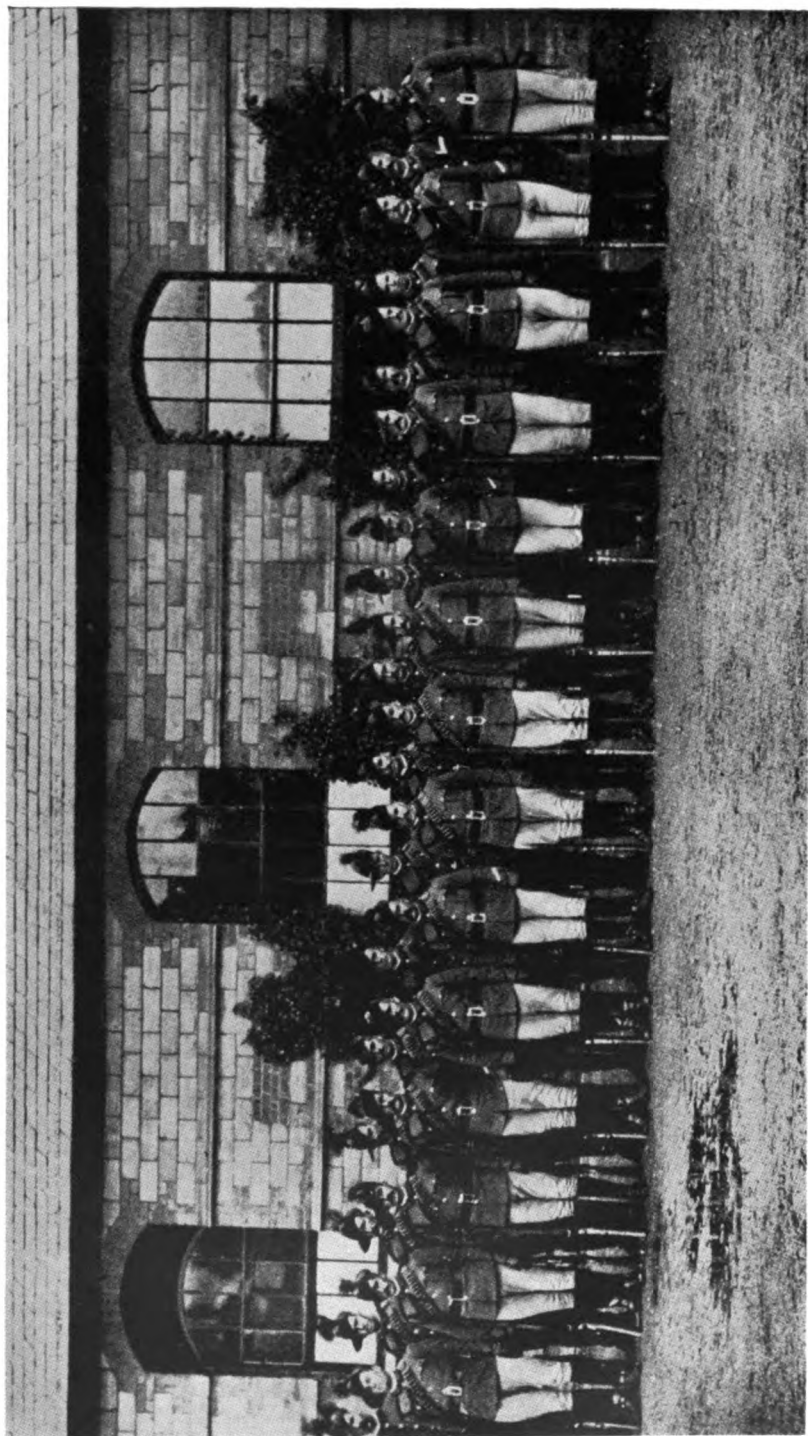
**Present day Trooper, Australian
Light Horse, in Marching Order.**



**Drummer N.S.W. Lancer Band
1904.**



**TROOPER MOUNTED, MARCHING ORDER, 1897
New South Wales Mounted Rifles**



JUBILEE CONTINGENT, 1897.
NEW SOUTH WALES MOUNTED RIFLES.

New South Wales Regiments were lost. The New South Wales Regiments became 5th, 6th, 7th, 9th, 11th and 28th.

The Commonwealth Government established a factory for the production of uniform, which it supplied free to the troops. Changes in the pattern were the substitution of a khaki shirt for the jacket, and a white hat band for the puggaree.

All Light Horse Regiments were given as their manual an official text book called *Yeomanry and Mounted Rifles Training*. Drill was single rank, and no shock tactics weapon was carried.

For the war 1914-18, Australia raised a special force known as the Australian Imperial Force. None of the peace-time Regiments were sent abroad, but officers and men of those Regiments joined the new units, often by almost complete sub-units. In general, however, there was much mixing of units. New South Wales sent abroad and maintained four complete mounted units—1st, 6th, 7th and 12th Australian Light Horse Regiments—all of which served in Gallipoli, Egypt, Sinai, Palestine and Syria. In addition, the 15th Australian Light Horse, formed in Palestine in 1918 from the Imperial Camel Corps, had a majority of troops from New South Wales.

The 1st, 6th and 7th Australian Light Horse Regiments belonged to Anzac Mounted Division and they finished the war, as they began it, as a type of Mounted Rifles. They carried no shock tactics weapon. The 12th and 15th Regiments belonged to Australian Mounted Division, which, in 1918, reorganized all its Light Horse as Cavalry Regiments, and armed them with the sword.

In the post-war reorganization of the Australian Military Forces, carried out in 1921, all Light Horse Regiments were equipped with the sword and they now use *Cavalry Training* as their text book. Their war organization training and equipment are similar to those of British cavalry, with the exception that they still retain the Hotchkiss machine gun on the scale of one per troop. That difference is probably due to finance—the Hotchkiss guns are available, and are, therefore, being used.

Efforts have been made to carry on the Australian Imperial Force tradition by naming the Regiments after their Australian Imperial Force predecessors. Each title has been allotted to the

district which provided most men to the unit from which the title is taken.

A Divisional organization has also been established, so that units are trained in peace by the formations which will control them in war. One of the effects of the Divisional organization is that the Northern Rivers Regiment has returned from the Queensland command to that of New South Wales.

The 1st Cavalry Division, with Headquarters in Sydney, has two Brigades in New South Wales organized as follows:—

2nd Cavalry Brigade—Headquarters, Armidale.

12th Light Horse (New England Light Horse).

Motto: "Virtutis Fortuna Comes."

Headquarters, Armidale.

Allied with The Royal Scots Greys (2nd Dragoons).

15th Light Horse (Northern Rivers Lancers).

Motto: "Nomina Desertis Inscriptus."

Headquarters, Lismore.

Allied with The 15th/19th The King's Royal Hussars.

16th Light Horse (Hunter River Lancers).

Motto: "Tenax et Fidelis."

Headquarters, West Maitland.

Allied with 16th/5th Lancers.

4th Cavalry Brigade Headquarters, Sydney.

1st/21st Light Horse (New South Wales Lancers).

Headquarters, Sydney.

Allied with 1st King's Dragoon Guards.

(1st and 21st Light Horse Regiments were combined in 1930.)

Motto: 1st Light Horse, "Tenax in Fide."

Motto: 21st Light Horse, "Virtus in Arduis."

6th Light Horse (New South Wales Mounted Rifles).

Motto: "Toujours Pret."

Headquarters, Orange.

7th Light Horse (Australian Horse).

Motto: "For Hearths and Homes."

Headquarters, Goulburn.

Allied with The Queen's Bays (2nd Dragoon Guards).

Light Horse Regiments have relinquished their white facings, and now use maroon. The present uniform consists of khaki cloth jacket with maroon facings, khaki cord breeches, brown boots and leggings, and felt hat with khaki puggaree of which the centre fold is maroon. Since the war 1914-18, all Light Horse Regiments have worn an emu plume in the hat. Each Regiment now has its own Regimental badge, which is worn on collar and left-side of hat. When not mounted, the men wear khaki trousers with two maroon stripes instead of breeches and leggings, and a khaki field service cap with maroon centre instead of the felt hat. Officers' Mess uniforms have maroon jacket and waistcoat with blue facings, and blue overalls with two yellow stripes.

Certain Regiments have applied for and been granted permission to wear buttons and badges of white metal instead of brass, thus maintaining the tradition of the old Lancer Regiment with its silver braid, and the old Mounted Rifles Regiment with its white metal buttons and furnishings.

The Lancer Band is still raised at Lancer Barracks, Parramatta. During the war 1914-18 the band became a dismounted unit and continues as such. The Bandmaster has been a member of the band for the whole forty years of its existence.

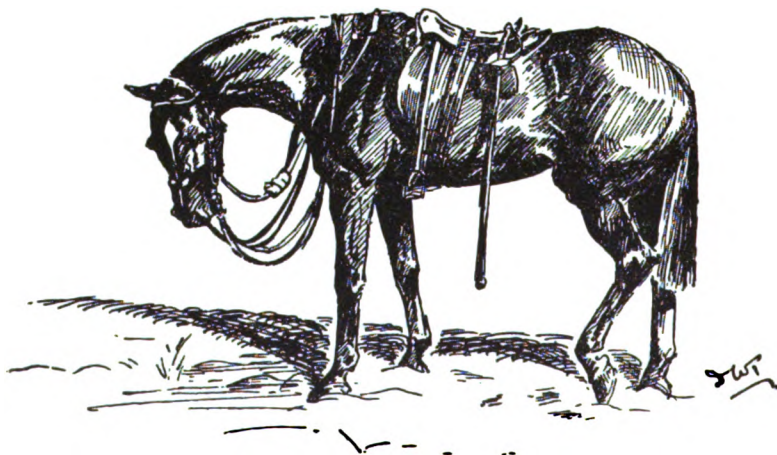
The Mounted Rifles Band formed at Camden in 1893 was short-lived, and, in 1900, a new Regimental Band was formed at Bathurst. This Band has also ceased to exist.

Some time after the Boer War, the Australian Horse had a Mounted Band, which, together with the Lancer Mounted Band, took part in the celebrations marking the visit of the American Fleet to Sydney in 1908. This Band afterwards became dismounted and eventually was disbanded. The 7th Light Horse have at their disposal in Goulburn an unofficial dismounted band wearing the green uniforms of the old Australian Horse. Presumably this is a successor to the Australian Horse Band.

The Defence Department allow one band for each Cavalry Brigade. The Lancer Band is now 4th Cavalry Brigade Band. The 2nd Cavalry Brigade have raised at Armidale a dismounted Band.

Conditions of service in the Light Horse, which are uniform throughout Australia, specify that a man must provide a suitable horse and enlist for three years. He does six days' home training and six days' camp annually. For those twelve days he is paid 4s. per day for his services and 5s. per day hire of his horse—a total of £5 8s. per year. His uniforms, saddlery, arms, equipment and training manuals are supplied by the Commonwealth Government. Man and horse are transported from the home town to camp, and are rationed and fed for the period of camp. Camps are usually Regimental, but when training funds permit it, Brigade camps are held.

The peace establishment of units is very much smaller than war establishment. Regiments have no difficulty in maintaining this reduced strength, and some keep fairly strong waiting lists.



GENERAL MAMONTOW'S CAVALRY RAID

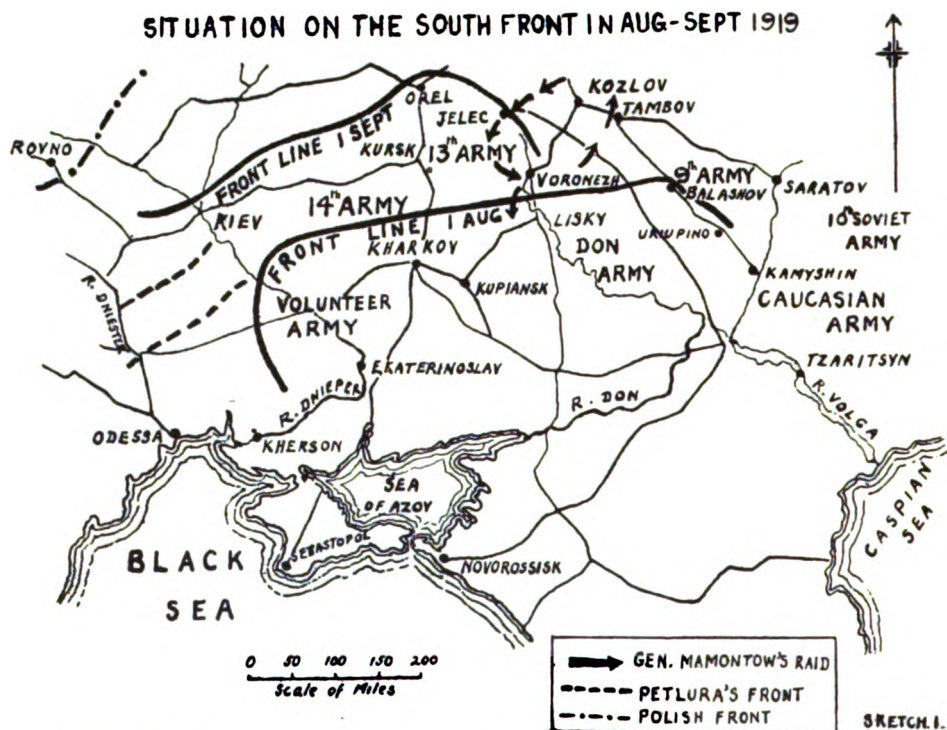
By BREVET-CAPTAIN HINTERHOFF, Polish Army.

THE Russian Civil Wars of 1918-20 between the Bolsheviki and the White armies of Denikin, Wrangel, Yudenitch and Koltchak afford a valuable and varied treasure of military lessons, and carried on as they were under varying conditions of terrain, equipment, and by forces differing in training and morale, offer ample matter for useful study. They exercised great influence on strategical and tactical methods and ideas in the Soviet Army, to be subsequently adapted and applied during the war with Poland in 1920. The Civil Wars in Russia were waged under conditions similar to those of the war between the Northern and Southern States of America and the campaign in Palestine during the World War, and from them we may draw many valuable deductions as to the development of the methods of war and the tactics of the Soviet Army.

Among the various episodes the operations against Denikin and Wrangel abound in interesting examples of cavalry action. The achievements of the Soviet cavalry and of its commanders such as Budienny, Gaj, and Kotowski, formed and tested during the Civil Wars, were a foretaste of their subsequent deeds in Poland in 1920.

Terrain and strategic conditions on the one hand and the trend of national character on the other, account for the fact that one of the normal forms of Russian cavalry action was a raid penetrating deeply into the rear of the enemy lines, led with great dash, and often meeting with considerable success. This *penchant* for raids is characteristic of modern Soviet doctrine on the use of cavalry, and much of their present day military literature concerns itself with this problem.

Of the many raids carried on by Soviet cavalry one is especially worthy of note—the famous raid of General Mamontow at the head of a force of four cavalry divisions during the campaign against Denikin at the end of July, 1919, and it is proposed to study this operation against the general strategic background in South Russia at the time when obstinate fighting between the Red army and that of General Denikin was in full swing.



The Soviet offensive in February, 1919, carried out by superior forces (some 130,000 as against 50,000 men of the Whites) was heavily pressed in the direction of the Don basin and the Northern Caucasus. General Denikin's army put up a stubborn resistance, and at the end of April launched a counter offensive which regained most of the territory previously lost.

The sudden retreat of the Red Army caused a decline of morale in their ranks, gave heart to the numerous partisan bands operating in their rear and brought about a series of risings

among the population, while on the other hand the advance of Denikin's Army opened up new sources of reinforcements and increased their effectives from 60,000 to 150,000 between May and September.

Towards the end of June Denikin's Army, which in February had been desperately fighting on the south-east edge of the Don basin and in the Northern Caucasus was established on the line Tzaritzyn — Balashov — Bielgorod — Ekaterinoslav, with its flanks secured by the Volga and the Dnieper.

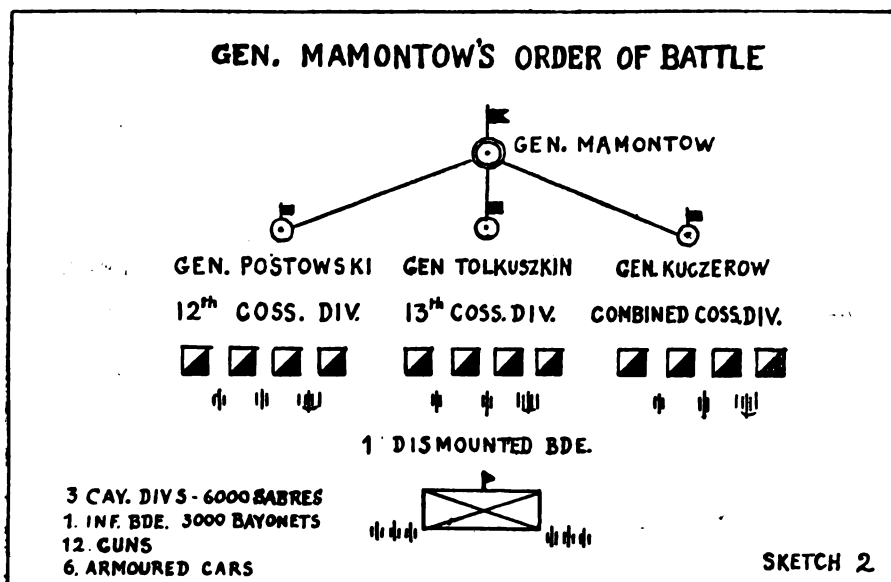
Towards the end of June new operation instructions were issued from Moscow for a new offensive. Under these conditions the Red War Minister, Trotsky, hastily set out in person to re-organise the Red Army in South Russia and important changes in the personnel of the higher command took place; the troops on this front were considerably reinforced by bringing down nine divisions from the Siberian and Polish fronts, and a new conscription was ordered throughout Red Russia. After this re-organisation had been completed, a plan for a new offensive was drawn up, to be carried out in two directions, the main direction from the area Balashov—Kamyshin towards the lower course of the River Don, and a secondary thrust from the sector Kursk—Voronezh towards Kharkov.

Both these attacks were to start at the beginning of August.

The main part of the Soviet offensive commanded by General Kluieff, an ex-officer of the Czarist Army, was to be carried out by the Xth Army and Budienny's Cavalry Corps. By the beginning of September it had been brought to a standstill by the stubborn resistance of General Wrangel's Caucasian Army. The Soviet advance in the direction of Kharkov was forestalled by General Kutieпов, who struck with one corps of the Volunteer Army against the junction of the 13th and 14th Soviet armies, breaking through between them and forcing them to withdraw northwards.

Now came the cavalry raid of General Mamontow. At the end of July a plan was worked out at the headquarters of General Denikin's Army whereby on the left wing of the Don Army in the Uriupino area a large cavalry group was to be formed composed of two corps, one under General Mamontow of

the Don Army and the second under General Konovalow of the Caucasian Army, brought in from the Volga area. These two cavalry corps were to execute an extensive raid due north in the direction of Kozlov, having as its mission the destruction of the railway lines behind the hostile front in that area. The action of this massed cavalry group was to be carried out in conjunction with a combined advance of the Volunteer and Don Armies along a wide front. But the sudden renewal of the Soviet offensive along the front of all the three armies made it necessary for Denikin to modify this plan. General Konovalow's Cavalry Corps, being heavily engaged in the region of Kamyshin—



Tzaritsyn, could not be withdrawn from the Caucasian Army, and the vigorous Soviet offensive on Kharkov excluded for the time being the possibility of a general offensive of the Volunteer Army as prelude to a deep raid into the enemy rear,

Under these altered conditions the first intentions of General Denikin had perforce to undergo certain changes, and General Mamontow's Corps alone, with its three divisions of cavalry, was now ordered to execute a shallow raid into the Red rear in the

region of Voronezh—Liski in direct co-operation with the action of General Kutiepow's Corps above mentioned.

In obedience to these instructions General Mamontow began to concentrate his corps in the region of Uriupino. The corps placed under him for this mission comprised three Cossack cavalry divisions, each of 2,000 sabres. Each division had with it one horse artillery battery, one section of armoured cars, and a detachment of 3,000 dismounted Cossacks on foot. Thus the total strength of the corps amounted to 9,000 bayonets and sabres, three four gun batteries and three sections each of two armoured cars. (See Sketch No. 2.)

Officers, ranks and men were specially selected, and the detachments of dismounted cavalry were largely comprised of the Cossacks from the northern borders of the Don district, who had lately suffered severely from Bolshevik violence. The personality of General Mamontow himself and his prestige among the Cossack population acquired in his recent successes against the Bolsheviks was considered as a sure guarantee of success.

The concentration of General Mamontow's Corps some distance behind the front appeared to occasion no alarm among the Reds, as misleading rumours had been intentionally spread that the White cavalry were exhausted by the hard fighting that had recently taken place. And so on the 10th of August, after a forced march of three days and fording the river Khoper, General Mamontow's Corps broke through at their chosen point on the enemy front 40 klm. long held by the VIII and IX Soviet Armies, part of the Shorin Group, and pushed forward towards Tambov. (See Sketch No. 3.)

The bulk of the forces was now thrown against the 40th Infantry Division at its junction with the 36th Soviet Division, which had been simultaneously engaged in front by feint attacks carried out by the rest of General Mamontow's force. These two divisions retreated with considerable loss, particularly the 40th Division, which had to bear the main brunt of the attack. Part of the Shorin Group withdrew towards the north-east and the remainder north-west, thus creating a wide gap through

detachments of the 56th Division were pushed forward north-east of Bratki.

The Soviet command, however, failed to co-ordinate the action of these different detachments, or to oppose effective resistance to the further advance of the Whites. Mamontow's advance on Tambov from the Bratki zone was continued in two columns, the right column acting as flankguard, the left column comprising the bulk of his force.

Towards evening on the 15th of August, Postowski's Cavalry Division encountered and defeated the cavalry brigade forming a part of the 36th Soviet Infantry Division. On the 18th his vanguard appeared under the walls of Tambov after having pushed back some detachments of the 56th Soviet Division north-eastwards, and after a short fight occupied Tambov, the main body entering the city two days later. In the course of this phase, from August 10th-20th, Mamontow's command covered about 110 miles only, this comparatively slow rate of progress being accounted for by the handicap of the dismounted troops attached to the corps and by the stiff hostile resistance met with.

Over the whole area traversed, the Cossacks took care to destroy railway lines, property and roads, eating up supplies and burning the Soviet depôts of all descriptions.

News of Mamontow's victorious entry into Tambov spread far and wide among the local population, and there began to pour in numerous former officers of the Czar's Army and middle class recruits; from these, volunteer fresh detachments were formed, which increased in number with every new success. At the same time Mamontow issued a series of proclamations to the people, urging them to join in the struggle against Bolshevism. The leading Soviet partisans in Tambov were tried by court-martial and summarily dealt with. It must be mentioned here that this easy capture of Tambov led to unfortunate excesses on the part of the Cossacks. Even on the day following the capture there was a considerable amount of plundering, and on leaving Tambov whole columns of carts loaded with booty were seen following in the rear of the army. This had no small demoralizing influence on the fighting value of the corps.

Second Phase.

On the 20th August the second phase of the raid began—a westward advance in the direction of Kozlov. Before this phase began, in order to protect his further advance and to mislead the enemy as to his real purpose, General Mamontow issued the following orders:—One regiment 500 sabres strong and a detachment of infantry on three hundred vehicles to move south-east parallel with the railway line Tambov—Balashov to deal with a detachment of the 36th Soviet Division about Balashov, and strong reconnaissance detachments were sent northwards in the direction of the railway line Tula—Penza. Mamontow with his main body, advancing towards Kozlov in two columns, on August 21st encountered near Nikiforowka a strong Soviet infantry detachment on its way to occupy Kozlov. In a brief fight this detachment was defeated, and towards evening Mamontow's advance guard occupied Kozlov, the main body entering the town the following day. The capture of Kozlov was a serious blow to the Reds and caused much alarm not only at the Headquarters of the Southern Front but also in Moscow itself. It is clear that up to now the Soviet High Command did not fully realise the importance of the raid or divine its real objective. At first it had considered it merely a daring minor enterprise and sent only a brigade of the 56th Division from Kirsanov to Tambov, the two remaining brigades being directed south-westwards to Borisoglebsk to attack Mamontow in flank or cut him off as he withdrew.

In pursuance of their erroneous hypothesis as to Mamontow's return route, the Red command somewhat belatedly called up Budienny's corps from Tzaritsyn and despatched it likewise in haste towards Borisoglebsk. Thus, fortunately for him, Mamontow never encountered Budienny, who had been sent off on a wild goose chase.

The Revolutionary Council at a special meeting held decided to deal once for all with Mamontow's raiders, and ordered that a line of strong points of resistance ahead of him should be formed to block his further advance, and that mobile partisan groups with armoured cars should be despatched to act on his flanks and rear. At the same time Moscow ordered the

despatch to the threatened area of the 21st Division (about 10,000 bayonets), a communist storm Brigade (about 8,000 bayonets), which had been brought from the Eastern front to Petrograd to combat Yudenitch, certain other Red Army detachments, about 70,000 bayonets strong in all, and Budienny's Cavalry Corps.

Although Mamontow for some two weeks had been well in rear of the VIII, IX and XIII Soviet Armies and had completely defeated and broken up the 40th and 36th Soviet Divisions, he had as yet not met with organised large scale resistance other than that of improvised and scattered Soviet detachments. Thus he was able to continue his advance unchecked. On August 25th his three columns set out westwards from Kozlov. On the 28th the leading troops captured Lebedian without resistance, the garrison of the town fleeing in panic at the sight of the approaching Cossacks. On the 30th the whole of the force was assembled there. The Soviet Command, deceived by clever feint demonstrations carried out by the White detachments, now assumed Mamontow to be about to advance on Tula, a town particularly important for the Soviets, because of the munition factories in its vicinity.

On this supposition it hastily issued instructions to make every endeavour to hold up any such Cossack advance. On the night of August 31st-September 1st, Mamontow directed General Postowski's Division westwards towards Jelec and Boborikino for the protection of his main body, and on the 1st Jelec fell into his hands without any resistance.

The few days' halt in the town of Jelec again had an adverse effect on the fighting value of the Corps; the Cossacks, unable to load their whole booty on their transport wagons, set up a regular auction sale, disposing of the articles they had seized to the peasants of the neighbourhood practically for nothing. Such disorderly actions, to which Mamontow failed to put a stop, brought about a serious decline of morale in the ranks.

Third Phase.

The few days' halt at Jelec clearly showed Mamontow how precarious was his situation, and he decided that he must begin

his withdrawal at once. Postowski's Division, again acting as flank guard on the right of the main force, on September 3rd advanced to the town of Ismailovo on the railway line Orel—Jelec, and at dawn of the 4th Mamontow set out in three columns in the direction of Voronezh, General Postowski moving by Ismailkovo, Nawenczuiya and Kastornaja. On the 6th, after an obstinate fight, Kastornaja, an important railway junction, was captured, and a reconnaissance was pushed towards Voronezh.

This rapid withdrawal was caused by the news of the recently ordered encircling movement of the newly arrived Bolshevik reinforcements and the gradually stiffening frontal resistance. The main column of Mamontow's Corps, advancing *via* Jelec and Usman, arrived before Voronezh on the 8th. The ensuing action was prolonged by reason of the garrison's strong resistance and not till the 11th was the town taken. In the capture of the town a new division recruited during the raid took a creditable part. It consisted mainly of volunteers drawn from former officers of the Czarist Army and numbered about 10,000 bayonets.

After the capture of Voronezh a regrouping was ordered for the last phase of the raid, the breaking through of the Soviet front line from the rear to clear a road for the return passage of the force.

The bulk of the forces were massed on the 12th in the area Rozestwienskaja—Chawa, while Postowski, whose position on the right flank was now too exposed, was drawn over to the left wing. In the meantime the Bolsheviks were pushing up more and more troops to Voronezh. To assure his freedom of action Mamontow sent back strong flank guards towards south-west and south-east to keep at arm's length the Soviet Division then in contact with Postowski. On the 15th the main force moved towards Olen—Kulodzier, the point of junction between the VIII and XIII Soviet Armies, Postowski's division preceding it in the direction of Liski. Mamontow now ordered him, while he himself was breaking through the hostile front line with the bulk of his corps to make a demonstration with his division towards the south and pin down the 16th Soviet Division at Liski, thus facilitating the escape of the main force.

The Soviet forces at the point of contact of their XIII and VIII Armies, and especially on the left flank of the XIII Army near Oskol, now began to feel the pressure of the Cavalry Corps under General Shkuro, who had been sent up by Denikin to assist Mamontow's passage back through the Red front.

Taking advantage of the opportunity afforded by the two enemy divisions being thus frontally engaged, Mamontow struck in upon them from the rear, inflicted heavy losses, and on the 17th forded the river Don with all his transport. Next day in the region of Osadcino his leading detachments got into touch with Shkuro's group, and in a few hours he found himself back in his own lines.

Comments on the Raid.

General Mamontow's raid was, as we have seen, carried out on a large scale, with the force of three cavalry divisions, dismounted detached units with necessary artillery support, and armoured cars. During a space of forty days he operated successfully in the rear of three Soviet armies, covering a distance of 450 miles. This feat is well worth examining for its operational and tactical lessons.

As mentioned above, Denikin's primary intention was to execute with the two corps of General Mamontow and Kononov a large scale raid towards Tambov, and by co-ordinating the action of this mass of cavalry on the enemy's rear with a vigorous attack along the front to advance his whole line further north. As the Soviet offensive by Klujew's 10th Army and the Corps of Budienny against the Caucasian Army towards Tzaritzyn had begun before this could be carried out, Mamontow's Corps had for its subsequent task to make a small raid in rear of the enemy in the sectors of the VIII and IX Soviet Armies about Liski—Voronezh and so take hostile pressure off the Don Army. Our study of the raid has shown us that Mamontow did not carry out these instructions but went far beyond the task given him.

Nevertheless the raid had important results. Four Soviet divisions sustained heavy losses during the break through during the Cossack advance and in the retreat back through hostile

ground, and by the pressure at their points of junction, the liaison between the VIII and IX, and the VIII and XIII Soviet Armies was effectively severed for a time. To deal with the raid all reserves from various sectors of the Red front had to be utilised, with detrimental results to the operations in progress in these sectors.

In an area of over 2,000 square miles considerable damage was done to railway rolling stock, communications, dépôts and stores. A widespread panic broke out and had a very demoralising influence on the fighting value of the Soviet troops.

Yet, despite all the above-mentioned gains, the raid from a strategic point of view was of little real importance. Even anti-Soviet writers admit that its influence on the course of operations was practically negligible, as it was not carefully co-ordinated in time and space with the action of the Don and Volunteer Armies, and owing to lack of adequate liaison these were unable to take advantage of the disorder caused by it. As Mamontow was acting so far behind the Bolshevik front, the Reds were not forced to withdraw units from the front line, and could utilise their reserves and incoming units to deal with him.

Instead of engaging the main strength of the enemy, which was his primary task, Mamontow carried out rather a series of diversions without strategic value. Moreover, by reason of the special character of civil war, where owing to lack of adequate supply organisation, the rival forces depend largely upon whatever supplies they can procure locally, the damage he inflicted in the rear of the Soviet armies, considerable as it was, was hardly felt by the front line troops.

We must further remark that the violence and acts of plunder committed by Mamontow's Cossacks brought about such a decline of morale in his ranks, that after its return back through the Soviet front the corps, originally numbering 10,000 swords and bayonets, had dwindled to about 4,000 only. This decline of fighting value was unhappily apparent in the subsequent action of the corps.

From the tactical point of view the raid affords interesting material for study. We may commend formally the energetic and rational manner in which the service of reconnaissance and

protection were carried out. Immediately on his first rupture of the hostile front Mamontow sent on a strong reconnoitring force—one complete division under General Postowski—to a distance 40 miles ahead of him, the main body was preceded by a covering detachment widely articulated and acting on the offensive. This mobility of Mamontow's detachments misled the Soviet Command as to the actual direction of his advance and caused the issue of erroneous instructions to the forces detailed to deal with him. Equally to be commended is the working of his protective system both on the move and at the halt.

As a rule Mamontow advanced in two or three columns, having as right flankguard the picked division of General Postowski. This flankguard, combined with active reconnaissance over a wide front of 35 miles, assured full security both to the commander and to the troops.

When in bivouac also strong protective detachments precluded all possibility of surprise.

When the retirement began strong flank and rearguards, acting on the offensive as chance offered, ensured the safe progress of the main body of the forces.

The normal distribution of the Corps in three fractions considerably shortened the length of the column and also made for elasticity and freedom of manœuvre.

The break through the front line on Mamontow's way back is also worthy of remark. The point of rupture had been chosen at the point of contact of two armies, and with the aid of the vigorous demonstration of General Postowski's division in the south, the Reds were once more misled as to the actual place of passage. The break through was carried out on a wide front of two divisions, which made it difficult to organise adequate resistance to it. The device adopted by Denikin in using General Shkuro's Corps to assist Mamontow's passage by a frontal attack was well thought out and effective.

On the debit side of the raid, account must be taken of the excessively slow advance of the force in the first phase and the overlong halts in towns. Had steps been taken to obtain re-mounts from local resources it would have been quite possible to

increase the speed of the advance, and with it the chances of success of the raid. Moreover, the cavalry divisions were encumbered by an infantry detachment 3,000 bayonets strong, which proved a fatal bar to rapid movement.

It must be admitted that the Red action taken to deal with the raid was unskilful. With the possibility of utilising the numerous regular units which at that time were within the sphere of action of the raid, the Bolsheviks resorted to half-measures and improvisation, fell back to the time-honoured method of forming loose partisan detachments to act after the manner of the campaign of 1812 on the rear of the corps. By such means they could not hope to attain decisive results.

In this respect the methods of the Soviet Command, disposing of considerable forces and railway facilities, compare ill with those adopted by Wrangel in dealing with the Red Cavalry Corps in 1920, assisted though this was by several infantry divisions and by aircraft, and the Polish success in encircling Budienny near Zamosc. The Bolshevik action was characterised by lack of decision and erroneous appreciation of the situation. Notwithstanding the work of their intelligence agents and aircraft and other special means peculiar to civil wars, the Soviet Command from the first was ill informed as to the real direction of the raid.

Similarly erroneous was the Soviet hypothesis as to the direction and point of rupture of the front at the time of Mamontow's withdrawal. Owing to this error Budienny's Corps, hurried on by forced marches from the Caucasian front, took an absolutely wrong direction and took no part whatever in the repulse of the raid.

The effect of Mamontow's raid, however, was not without influence on the tactics of the Soviet cavalry, which profited by the rich experience acquired in this raid, considerably raising its fighting worth during the further action on Denikin's and Wrangel's fronts, and also on the Polish front.



FELL FOXHOUNDS

By RICHARD CLAPHAM

In the great majority of English hunting countries the standard type of foxhound is used. We see this type exhibited annually at Peterborough show. For many generations it has been the aim of leading hound breeders to produce the perfect type, and the culmination of their efforts is to-day represented by the stamp of hound seen in the leading Midland packs.

No doubt the majority of Masters do their best to attain to this type, which does its work well in the field, provided that the character of the going is not too hilly and rough. There are countries, however, which differ from, say, Leicestershire, as does chalk from cheese. Such hunting countries are to be found amongst the high fells of Cumberland, Westmorland, and parts of Lancashire; and here the standard type of foxhound, with all due deference to his breeders, is entirely out of place.

In the Midlands the country consists for the most part of flat and undulating grass-lands, hedges, and conveniently placed coverts. The fell country is an absolute antithesis to this. Imagine if you can, a terrain which looks as if it had been thrown up on end, and then adorned with crags, screebeds, and a heterogeneous collection of rocks and stones. It contains peaks such as Helvellyn and Scawfell, that rise to a height of over 3,000 feet.

This rough and mountainous country is well stocked with stout hill-foxes that take some catching, and in order to be successful in the latter respect, you require hounds of a very different type to that met with in the Midlands.

Let us glance for a moment at a dog hound of standard type. As regards conformation he shows fine quality, with tremendous shoulders and forearms, and more or less heavy bone carried right down to his toes. He will stand nearer 25 inches than 24 inches, with plenty of heart and lung room, though without any great spring of ribs. He will have a certain amount of length behind, and will be inclined to stand forward at the knee, so that when viewed from the front his toes will be seen to turn in, the weight being placed on the centre and outer surfaces. If his forefeet be examined, the pad or heel will be found thick and deep, the entire foot being somewhat contracted, thus tending to bring the weight of the body upon the toes. Such a hound gives the impression of size, power, and weight, rather than activity and pace. His actual weight will be between 6 stone and 7 stone. Noticeable points about such a hound are his short, straight pasterns, which afford little or no spring in an oblique direction.

If you ask a hound of this type to go the pace in Lakeland, up and down precipitous slopes, across scree-beds, through dangerous crags, and over big and high stone walls, he will very soon knock himself up. While I do not deny that he will do his best, that best is not good enough to see him through season after season, doing his three, and sometimes more days per week.

Turning from the standard type to the fell hound, we find a very different sort. Such a hound is light-framed all round, 22½ inches or thereabouts in height, with hare feet as opposed to the round, club-like feet of the fashionable sort, particularly well let down and developed in the hindquarters, short coupled, with ribs carried well back, good shoulders, and long, sloping pasterns. Instead of tending to knuckle forward, he stands back at the knee, the sloping pasterns affording plenty of spring in the right direction. The general impression afforded by a fell hound is a complete antithesis of that provided by a hound of Peterborough type. Instead of size, weight, and power, we have lightness, activity, and pace, coupled with wonderful stamina; in fact exactly the type required to cope with the steep slopes—from 45 degrees to 70 degrees—and the



Photo—R. Clapham, Troutbeck, Windermere

Fox Hunting in the Snow



Photo—R. Clapham, Troutbeck, Windermere

Ullswater "Snowdon," a typical dog hound of the fell type



Photo—R. Clapham, Troutbeck, Windermere

After a kill, with the Ullswater Hounds



Photo—R. Clapham, Troutbeck, Windermere

A Lakeland fox earth, locally known as a Borran

TO WHOM
ALLSOT 180

dangerous crags and general rough going to be found on our Lakeland fells.

The fell hounds trace their origin back to the old Talbot tans, while later they acquired a certain infusion of pointer blood. In the fell type of hound white is the predominant colour, added to which we find lemon and white, black and white, badger pie, hare pie, and black and tan. The latter is a throw back to the rich tan of the original Talbots. Light coloured hounds are desirable on the fells, as they show up much better at a distance than those of darker colour. Owing to the character of the country, riding to hounds is, of course, out of the question, and both huntsman and field follow on foot. It can be easily understood that when descending steep gradients at speed, a hound must suffer from jar and concussion unless his conformation is such as to minimise the shock as far as possible. The heavier a hound is, the more will he knock himself about in such a country, and if, added to weight, he is the possessor of unsuitably made feet and pasterns, his life of usefulness will not be long.

Speaking of feet, some people imagine that a hare foot is a flat foot. As a matter of fact the real hare foot is possessed by the wolf, coyote, fox, and fell hound, as well as the fell shepherd's dog, and is of a type to withstand admirably the exigencies of any kind of going, from the plains to the mountains. The foot is of fair length, being neat and compact, the toes having little inclination to spread, while the pad is shallow, and becomes hard and wear resisting. Such a foot stands square on the ground, and gains spring in the direction designed by nature, *i.e.*, backwards, by means of the fairly long sloping pastern. Another point about the fell hound is that he has the dew-claw properly developed, and it is an aid in climbing as well as descending steep places. The ears of the fell hounds are never rounded, but are left in their natural state. Nothing, in our opinion, spoils the noble look of a foxhound's head more than rounding the ears. The late Sir Ian Amory, Bart., when Master of the Tiverton, once wrote in the "Field" regarding the rounding of hounds' ears, that "Years ago people used to cut the ears of their horses; such a practice

seems about as sensible—and about as foolish—as to cut the ears of hounds. If uniformity is what is wanted why not cut their tails too, they are not all the same length.” The rounding of hounds’ ears is ostensibly done to prevent them getting torn in thick cover, but as a matter of fact hounds do little or no damage to their ears in such cover. Well-hung ears add greatly to the beauty of a foxhound’s head.

The fells form a good scenting country, and at times the fell hounds run very fast indeed. I have heard more than one hunting man from the Shires express surprise at the pace they go. The hill-foxes lie for the most part far up the fells, either in the crags or amongst the rocks and juniper bushes. In order to find a fox, hounds pick up the drag and then work up to where their fox is lying. A good drag is often the prettiest part of a day’s hunting. Fell hounds have good noses, and throw their tongues freely. This is essential in order that they can be heard when they have far out-distanced their foot followers. They are good markers, too, giving plenty of tongue when they put a fox to ground. The latter quality is also desirable when their huntsman happens to be a long way off.

Although the fell hounds are great fox-catchers, they do not, as a rule, break their foxes up after killing them. As their huntsman is on foot, hounds get very little help from him, and they are thus extraordinarily self-reliant, making their casts quite unaided. The hill-foxes often run the wall-tops for long distances, and it is a pretty sight to watch hounds work out the line, some on the wall and others at each side.

Snow often lies deep on the fells, but unless there is hard frost that makes the ice-covered crags dangerous, it is no detriment to hunting. Soft snow often carries a good scent, and in it hounds have the advantage over the fox with his shorter legs. When more than one fox is on foot, it is nothing unusual for hounds to divide. Occasionally a hound gets away, and runs and kills his fox single-handed. In the Midlands this feat is regarded as something remarkable, but every season instances occur with the fell hounds.

During the winter months hounds do their three days a week, but in spring, when the hill-foxes take to lamb worrying, they

often do more. When lambs are missing the farmers send for their local pack to put paid to the vulpine marauders' account. In Spring meets are early, often soon after daybreak, but during the regular season 9.30 a.m. or 9 a.m. is the usual time of meeting.

John Peel, immortalised by the well-known song, hunted hounds of fell type, although, strictly speaking, his country did not include the fells proper. The same strain of hound blood is still to be found to-day in the West Cumberland and Blencathra kennels.

There are five packs which hunt the fell country in Cumberland, Westmorland and part of Lancashire, viz., the Blencathra, Coniston, Eskdale and Ennerdale, Melbreak and Ullswater.



***THE 10th AUSTRALIAN LIGHT HORSE ATTACK AT
MAGDHABA, 23rd DECEMBER, 1916***

By MAJOR H. C. H. ROBERTSON, D.S.O., *p.s.c.*, Australian
Staff Corps.

IN December, 1916, the Anzac Mounted Division was holding a former Turkish position about Bir-el-Mazar, covering the construction of the railway and pipe line across the Sinai Desert from Kantara. The 3rd Light Horse Brigade was on the right flank at Bir-el-Malha, some five or six miles south of Mazar. The Division consisted, at this time, of 1st and 3rd L.H. Brigades, New Zealand Mounted Rifles Brigade, and Imperial Camel Corps Brigade—the 2nd L.H. Brigade having been withdrawn to Bir-el-Abd to rest.

The Intelligence Branch, having reported that the Turks were evacuating El Arish, Anzac Mounted Division marched 23 miles during the night of December 20, and by dawn on December 21 had surrounded the town, but the Turks had left. The 52nd (Lowland) Division reached El Arish on December 22, and that evening Anzac Mounted Division concentrated in the Wadi el Arish, just upstream from the town.

The Wadi el Arish (the ancient River of Egypt) rises in the mountains of Sinai and flows north to the Mediterranean Sea at El Arish. For the last 30 odd miles its course is almost north-west, and it here passes through sparsely grassed sand-dune country, but the sand is not as heavy as it is in the heavy dune country of Sinai Desert. The channel of the river is from 40 to 100 yards wide and 20 to 30 feet deep, but, except after rain, it contains little or no water. The river is, however, old, and the channel has changed from time to time. Consequently the river bed is from one to three miles wide, and this flat area is covered

with a deposit of fine white clay. The deep channel generally follows one bank of the river bed, and at about Magdhaba it is near the south-west or left bank.

Anzac Mounted Division concentrated on the flat river bed, and, about midnight on December 22-23, it marched up the river towards Magdhaba, at which place, according to aerial reports, portion of the El Arish garrison was entrenched. That march of 25 miles proved to me that the drill books rather understate than overstate the need for march discipline. I have never had such an unpleasant march.

The pace varied from that of a snail to a hand gallop, and was punctuated by sudden checks—the rear of the column, where 3rd L.H. Brigade was, performing a continual concertina motion. The main trouble was caused by dust. Thousands of horses' hoofs pounded the fine clay of the Wadi bed, so that it rose in clouds, and obscured the units in front. This started those behind hurrying for fear of losing the column, and the haste multiplied towards the rear. Another factor was lack of sleep. No one had slept on the night of 20th, some had slept on night of 21st, but this was the third sleepless night for most of the division. Many fell asleep in the saddle, and I found myself dozing off more than once, in spite of my worries over the unsteady pace.

We halted about dawn, but could see nothing. Commanders were, I heard later, reconnoitring. Then the 3rd L.H. Brigade was moved out of the Wadi (which continued south-east) towards the east. After moving a couple of miles the brigade deployed facing south, with 10th L.H. in reserve. I realised then that the whole division had deployed to attack—1st L.H. Brigade and I.C.C. Brigade from north-west, N.Z.M.R. Brigade on their left from N.N.W., and 3rd L.H. Brigade on the extreme left, attacking from the north.

I was busy with many duties as Second in Command of the Regiment, and had to post a couple of troops near Katib-el-Teir to protect the left flank of the Brigade against a party of enemy seen advancing towards Magdhaba, from a point several miles upstream. I saw little of the main fight until about 11 a.m.; then, returning to Regimental Headquarters. I found that 10th

L.H. had been pushed into line on the left of the Brigade, that a Turkish post had been destroyed, and we were having casualties. About this time Major L. C. Timperley, commanding B Squadron, was seriously wounded. I also saw that some of the N.Z.M.R. Brigade (the Canterburys) had come up between the 10th L.H. and the rest of 3rd L.H. Brigade.

I found that our squadrons were deployed dismounted among the sand-dunes bordering the north-eastern side of the Wadi bed near Katib el Teir. Soon afterwards, and before I had really got a grip of the situation, Brigadier-General J. Royston, C.M.G., D.S.O., who commanded the Brigade, came riding across. He told me that the C.O. (Lieut.-Colonel T. J. Todd, D.S.O.) was a casualty, and I was in command. (I learned later that Lieut.-Colonel Todd's horse had fallen with him and injured him, but he came back to duty during the afternoon, and I met him at Brigade Headquarters after the fight.)

General Royston said the whole line was making a fresh push forward about 12.30 or 1 p.m. (I am not sure of this time, but it was, I remember, almost due when General Royston was speaking to me), and that I was to push forward whenever I got a chance, in co-operation with this advance. The Wadi bed was here about a mile wide, and I could see dust rising in the deep channel near the other bank.

The question was "Would I do as all the others appeared to be doing, i.e., make a dismounted advance, or would I take the risk of a mounted attack in spite of the fact that we were not armed with swords?"

During the fighting in Sinai the sand-dunes had been so heavy that horses could scarcely move out of a walk. Mounted action was, therefore, rarely considered and we used our horses merely as a means of transport to positions from which to launch dismounted attacks. There had been an attempt at a mounted attack by 5th Light Horse under Lieut.-Colonel (afterwards Brig.-General) L. C. Wilson at Katia, but the results were not altogether satisfactory. I had also taken my squadron mounted against a Turkish counter attack which was driving back 8th and 9th Light Horse Regiments at Bir el Abd, but had been forced to halt and dismount before coming to grips with the

Turks. Now, however, the time appeared to have arrived for some speed. The sand-dunes bordering the Wadi offered fair if heavy going, while the Wadi bed itself was firm, and, besides having no obstacles, gave a good surface for fast work. If I could get to the deep channel on the other side of the Wadi I would have plenty of cover to turn north-west and strike the Turkish defences in flank and rear.

I ordered the horses up, mounted the regiment, extended it, and led it over the sand dunes down into the river bed, riding with my trumpeter about one hundred yards ahead so that all could see my signals. We had not gone far before Turkish machine guns opened on us and kicked up the dust all round me. I realised then that we were far more conspicuous than the dismounted attacks and were consequently drawing the machine gun fire. I saw that the fire was coming from my right front (south-west) so I inclined further east to make my turning movement wider until I could reach the cover of the deep channel. (It was a fortunate manœuvre, for not only did we save casualties but we struck the channel higher up and by so doing cut off a large party of Turks who would otherwise have been outside our sweep.)

The Turkish machine gunners' observation must have been upset by the dust from our horses' hooves, but they depressed and traversed to their right as we advanced and most of their fire fell in front of the regiment, which had only a few casualties.

The pace was trot and canter until we approached the channel, when we increased to a gallop and swept into cover. We found ourselves among a veritable stream of men, horses and camels, and pandemonium broke loose. By the time the noise had died down we had collected well over 300 prisoners, including a very senior officer. This latter capture was not without interest. A trooper rode up to me with a message from an officer asking me to go to him. I found him confronting a distinguished looking Turkish officer on a chestnut Arab. I asked, "What do you want?" The Turk answered in good English, "I want the commanding officer." I said, "I am he." He looked at me for a few seconds, then reversed his sword and with a very correct bow presented the hilt to me. I was nonplussed for a

moment and then recovered my manners. I took the sword, reversed it, and handed it back, my bow being not nearly as finished as his. I then told my trumpeter to take charge of the officer and escort him to Brigade Headquarters.

There was a sequel. That evening my trumpeter gave me a large wallet containing papers. These showed that our prisoner was the chief engineer of the Turkish army, and included among the papers were plans and drawings of the whole of the water supply work in the Army area. I sent the wallet and its contents to the Intelligence Branch. It appeared that the officer had merely gone to Magdhaba to inspect water supply work and was unfortunate in making his visit coincide with our attack. The trumpeter also gave me the very neat sword and nickel scabbard, and I asked no questions—they now repose in my home as my most treasured trophy. He had secured a trumpet with a German coat of arms on it as his own trophy.

However, to get on with the story. I sent parties along the channel towards Aulad Ali to round up any Turks who had escaped, and then decided that, as I had this exit blocked, my best plan was to cross to the south side and encircle Magdhaba, thus cutting off all lines of escape. The troops were flushed with victory and pushed on very fast. My chief trouble was to restrain them and prevent attacks becoming disjointed. There was a fair amount of cover and we worked forward until we could see two Turkish redoubts. I put one Squadron against each and kept the rest of the Regiment watching the gap between the left redoubt and 1st L.H. Brigade. We met a lot of fire, some of which was "overs" from 1st L.H. Brigade and I.C.C. Brigade (who were directly opposite us on the other side of the Turkish position), and our casualties, particularly in horses, began to grow, but the troops pushed on.

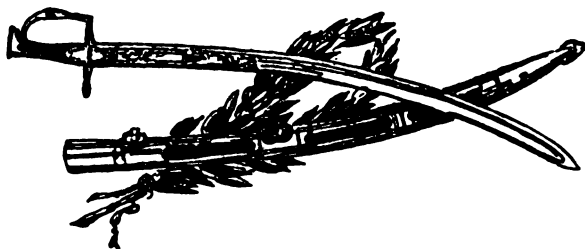
One half Squadron charged right across the redoubt they were attacking and joined up with 1st L.H. Brigade on the other side. It was here that one Troop Leader (Lieutenant A. Martin) had his horse shot, and the other Troop Leader (Lieutenant Fred Cox, M.C.) seeing the incident, caught a riderless horse and went back to help Lieutenant Martin. The led horse was then shot so Lieutenant Cox took Lieutenant Martin on his own horse,

Squadron Sergeant-Major S. Gwynne, D.C.M., who had also gone back, assisting Lieutenant Martin to mount. About one hundred prisoners were taken in this charge.

Soon afterwards the all-round pressure told and redoubt after redoubt surrendered, the Regiment collecting another 300 making over 700 prisoners to its credit for the day.

As there was not sufficient water at Magdhaba for the whole Division, some troops were left to clear the battlefield and assist the Field Ambulances, and the rest started off about dusk on the return march to El Arish. A camel convoy met us on the way and, during a halt of a couple of hours, men and horses were watered and fed. We arrived back at El Arish on the morning of December 24th, having had three night marches and fought a successful battle, all in three days and four nights.

Thus ended the first really successful mounted attack of the Australian Light Horse—an attack made without a shock action weapon. Brig.-General Wilson had made up for his lack of mounted weapons at Katia by ordering bayonets to be carried as swords. I had not been able to push my mounted attack home at Bir el Abd because we had no swords. We were lucky at Magdhaba since we succeeded without swords. The success here was, however, important since it opened up to us the great possibilities of mounted attacks. It needed only the next and larger attack (that of 4th L.H. Brigade at Beersheba under Brig.-General Grant, which took place nearly a year later) to prove finally to the Light Horse that they must become cavalry if they wished to reap the full harvest of mounted action.



*A FIRST SHOOTING TRIP IN EAST AFRICA
(TANGANYIKA TERRITORY)*

By MAJOR L. P. PAYNE-GALLWEY, O.B.E., M.C., 7th Hussars.

AFTER ELEPHANT.

ON getting back to Shinyanga I found a telegram from my friend "B," the Provincial Commissioner at Tabora, to say that the reports of elephant were good and advising me to come back to Tabora at once, so I bade farewell to "T" and motored back to Tabora with as much speed as the road would allow. I got back there about 2 p.m. and went straight to "B's" office where sure enough I found him. Splendid fellow that he was, he had everything cut and dried for us to leave Tabora by train at 6 o'clock that evening. Of the many shooting trips I did in East Africa, I can look back with the greatest pleasure to those when "B" came with me. In the first place he had a vast experience of big game shooting, and in the second place he spoke Swahili fluently, so essential if one is to have a successful shoot. It was a real pleasure to sit with him after dinner in our camp chairs listening to the gossip of the native hunters and porters as they sat round the fire roasting their meat, when he would interpret what they were talking about. His intimate knowledge of the language enabled him, when on one of his shooting trips, to clear up a murder which had baffled the authorities for some time. His porters were sitting round their camp fire discussing the murder when he overheard one say that he knew where the body of the murdered man was. "B" got hold of the man next day and made him take him to the place, where they found the body. This incident led to the unravelling of the whole case and resulted in the hanging of a well known native chief who had for some time

been suspected of being implicated in illicit ivory selling and who had had the man murdered because he knew too much. "B's" arrangements on "safari" were always first rate. He never lumbered himself up with a tent, but took instead a large canvas sheet and he always had a good safari cook. We were never uncomfortable, in fact, most comfortable, and as he used to say, it paid time and again to have good food when on "safari," especially after elephant, because of all big game hunting elephant hunting requires the greatest endurance. For days you may be trekking after them without getting up with them and generally through very dense jungle, hot and exhausting. I have seen fellows go out for a fortnight or three weeks after elephant and come back as thin as rails and quite worn out.

"B" always chose the time of the full moon to go after elephant because, as he said, if you do not get one by day you have a very good chance at night provided you know where their water holes are. I never met anyone more thorough over elephant hunting than "B" was. Of course he knew the Tabora Province well, and the natives knew him well, which enabled him to get very reliable information. If there were any big elephant about he generally got the information first. The native who brought the information or the message he received was always accompanied by a stick which gave the diameter of the elephant's foot. Anything about 20 inches or over was an elephant worth going after.

"B" always carried a tape measure in his pocket when hunting elephant, and when he came across the tracks of one always measured them most carefully.

6 p.m. that evening found "B" and myself comfortably installed in the brake van of a goods' train. We had 90 odd miles to go, due south of Tabora, and we were scheduled to arrive at our destination, Nyahua Station, at 3 a.m., not a very fast mode of progression, but as there was no road then, we could not go by motor car. On arrival at Nyahua Station we were met by a crowd of natives, among them three parched and grizzled old warriors, veteran elephant trackers. Each carried a muzzle-loading rifle as ancient as himself, but they knew their job and many an elephant had they seen killed by fair means or foul. On

several occasions afterwards I had these men and they never let me down. What they did not know about elephant hunting was not worth knowing, and they could track an elephant when the ground was so dry and hard that to the inexperienced eye not a trace of a foot mark could be seen. Tough old devils they were. They used to walk all day clad in an old British warm which they never discarded, however hot it was.

We were not long in getting settled down at Nyahua Station and our boys had breakfast ready before we had finished washing and shaving. During breakfast the three old warriors came up and discussed the plan of campaign. As soon as we had had breakfast, and before it was light, we were to set off for a water hole some three miles away in the hopes of finding fresh spoor. They said that there was one very large elephant which had been seen with "pembe mrefu sana (very long tusks). We did not waste any time over breakfast, cleaned our rifles, and were off. "B" carried three rifles: a double-barrelled .475, a .350 and a .256, while I had two: a double-barrelled .475 and a .318. As always, we each took a camp chair, two charguls of drinking water and some food, i.e., a cold chicken, some hard-boiled eggs, a kettle with tea, and a tin of condensed milk. We reached the water hole just as it was getting light, but were very disappointed to find no fresh spoor of elephant. We therefore decided to make for another water hole some five miles away. We had not gone very far before we ran into a small herd of hartebeeste and "B" insisted on shooting one, as we wanted meat for the porters. It is very unwise, in fact should be a golden rule never to shoot at other game when one is after elephant, as in very thick bush like we were getting into, one might at any moment come up with an elephant and once he is frightened it may be many hours if not days before one is able to come up with him again. It is prodigious the distances elephant will travel and they trek along at a great pace, except when they are feeding. We had gone a mile or more from where "B" had shot the hartebeeste, when great excitement, we came upon the fresh spoor of an elephant. It was so faint that I could hardly distinguish it, but out came "B's" tape measure and a good foot it was, measuring over 20 inches. It is and always will be a great thrill to me

to come on the fresh spoor of an elephant and to feel that one may get up to this magnificent beast at any moment. I have heard people say that elephant shooting is poor sport and that it gives them no thrill to shoot an elephant. I remember the first elephant I ever shot in Burma some years before this and I do not think I have ever been so frightened.

The change that came over our little party on finding this fresh spoor was electric. All were alert, the old warriors transformed into young men, and then a little further on we came on fresh droppings; this great beast evidently was not far away. A sudden halt, one of the old warriors had heard that unmistakable crack of a branch which an elephant makes when he is feeding. Out came the little bag of powdered wood ash. Where was the wind? Rather troublesome! So often the way in this very dense bush. Dense indeed, some of the time crawling on all fours and stifflingly hot, but the great thing was that we were near an elephant. Should we get up to him? We were now going very cautiously, continually testing the wind, as an elephant when he is feeding takes a very tortuous course: one moment he would be to our left, which was right for the wind, and then the next moment he would be on our right almost down wind of us. This elephant was more perverse than most, and our hunters seemed to think he was getting a little suspicious and advised us to rest for a short time and give him time to settle down. We therefore had our chairs brought up and had something to eat. The time was now about 11 o'clock and we had had a very early breakfast. We stayed where we were for about half an hour and we could still hear the elephant breaking down branches. Off we went full of hope that we should be able to get up with him, but he still continued to cruise about, and the wind almost as changeable as he was. We hoped that as it was now very hot he would stop feeding and rest under a tree, but not a bit of it, on he went and on we went. Then all was quiet and we hoped we should now come up with him, as he was probably resting. Very cautiously we went on when suddenly from behind us there was a loud trumpeting and off he crashed through the bush. He had circled round us and got our wind. Our disappointment was intense and especially so when one of our

porters who had lagged behind said that the elephant had passed him and that he had very long tusks. Our old warriors were also very disappointed, as their supply of meat for the next six months had slipped through their fingers. However, it could not be helped. We now got the kettle on the boil and made some tea over which we discussed what the next move was to be. Our old warriors said it was useless to go on after the frightened elephant as he would not stop until he got into the next jungle some twenty miles away, but that our best plan was to return to Nyahua Station seven or eight miles away, collect our valises and some food and sleep the night at the water hole which we had gone to that morning. That one of them with two or three porters would go to another water hole about four miles further on where they would light a fire and so drive away any elephant that might come to our water hole. We decided to do this and off we set for Nyahua Station. That march back to camp when one has been unsuccessful and those seven odd miles in the heat of the day seemed interminable. However, we got there about 4 p.m. and had a bath and our tea before starting off for the water hole. We reached the water hole about 6 o'clock, chose a secluded spot for our valises, and while our boys cooked us some food we got our rifles ready for night operations. "B" had a very good dodge for night sights. The ordinary night sight fitted on most rifles is very difficult to see, but by tying a piece of white paper about two inches wide round the muzzle and over the foresight, a most excellent night sight is provided. It was now about 6.30 p.m., and as it would be dark by 7 p.m. we made a hurried meal. On no account were there to be any fires or lights after dark. The moon was one day off full and would rise at 7.20. "B" and I were to take turns on look out and relieve each other every hour or hour and a half up to midnight, after which time it was unlikely that an elephant would come to drink. I used always to enjoy those hours of watching : seeing the different animals come down to drink, and often some of the smaller buck such as impala or oribi would come up quite close to where one sat and being suspicious stamp a foot and snort objecting to the presence of an intruder. It was an uneventful night, no elephant, not even a rhino, and so as soon as it was light, after a

cup of coffee and a biscuit, we started off to the other water hole in the hopes that they might have some news for us. After we had been going for about an hour we met the old warrior who had spent the night there. He was in a state of great excitement, as it appeared that the world's largest elephant had drunk there during the early morning. He had lighted a large fire, as he had been told to do, and about 11 o'clock he had heard an elephant approaching. The elephant came up to within two or three hundred yards of the fire and began circling round the water hole, very angry at not being able to drink there, and then went off. Our old friend then made up the fire and presumably went to sleep. At about 3 a.m. he was awakened by the sound of stamping and trumpeting and much alarmed he beheld the same elephant trampling on the fire, which had evidently almost burnt out. The elephant then walked into the water, drank his fill and made off. Yes! He had seen the elephant perfectly, and he had tusks much too long to measure, in fact, almost as long as one elephant I heard of, who had such long tusks that he always had to walk backwards. He said he knew the direction in which the elephant had gone and would bring us on to his tracks, so off we went amid a babble of conversation from our other two hunters who wanted to know all about this Loch Ness monster. We soon came on to his tracks. Out came "B's" tape measure, and his foot went 24 inches; certainly a large elephant. He took us through the most impenetrable bush and by his tracks he showed that he was going a great pace. None of the slow ambling stride of an elephant feeding. We followed him up until nearly mid-day when we called a halt and decided to have our lunch, having been on the go since 6 a.m. What a relief to sit down in a chair. Never be without a chair, it is the greatest comfort in the world. Sitting or lying on the hard ground is never so restful. While we were having lunch, the hunters came up and advised that we should return to the water hole where the elephant had drunk that morning as there seemed no hope of getting up with him. By 4 p.m. we were at the water hole, a small pond in the middle of a large plain; the Nyahua Plain, famous for lion, and where there are lion there are always game. "B" and I sat ourselves down rather weary, under the shade of a large tree and sent

word back to Nyahua Station to bring our valises. Game were already coming down to drink and the plain was dotted, as far as the eye could see, with herds of them. First to come were a herd of zebra, very suspicious, although we were well hidden and well back from the water. Then some roan antelope, eland, impala and hartebeeste. We watched them through our glasses, picking out what we thought were good heads. There was no question of shooting any, as it would have been fatal, if we hoped to get an elephant that night. Not that either of us had any inclination to shoot, it was too fascinating watching them come down to drink. About 6 p.m. our boys turned up with our valises and some food. It was not easy to find a concealed place for our valises, but there were a few low scrub bushes about 200 yards from the water, where we decided to put them. By this time dinner was ready and we were both very hungry. How good food tastes on "safari" when one has been on the move all day. "B" and I took our hourly turn of keeping watch. We quite expected to see lion come down to drink, as we had heard some, roaring in the distance, but none came, and what was most disappointing no sign of the monstrous elephant who had drunk there the night before. At midnight we turned in and slept soundly until we were called an hour before dawn. While we were having our morning cup of coffee, we called up the old warriors to discuss our plans. They advised moving camp and going on to another water hole some eighteen miles away, where they knew there were elephant. "B" knew the country well and strongly advised going, as he said it was really good elephant country. This we decided to do and sent word back to Nyahua Station for the porters to come on with the rest of our kit. While waiting for them "B" and I went off in opposite directions to see if we could shoot anything, as the porters would want meat. I soon spotted an old eland bull with a good head and went after him, but he never gave me the chance of a shot and after chasing him for some time I made my way back to our camp, where I found "B," who had shot a good sable antelope, 37-inch horns, which are good for Tanganyika. It was now 9 a.m. and we were both very hungry, and we could see our porters coming across the plain towards us. We both enjoyed our breakfast

that morning and made the most of it, knowing that we had a long, hot trek of eighteen miles in front of us. Well do I remember those eighteen miles. It was a particularly hot day with no breeze, and except for an hour's halt at mid-day for some lunch we were walking hard for six hours. The first part across the plain was less monotonous, as we were continually seeing game, but the last part was through low bush, dry and featureless, and poor old "B" had an awful blister on one of his feet. The last three miles we were on a rough road, which we both knew well and as one often does, we imagined we were much nearer our destination than we really were. Each bend in the road we said to each other, "Well! we are quite close now," only, on turning the bend to find a long stretch of hard, dusty road in front of us. However, we eventually got to our destination about 5 p.m., and we forgot all our weariness at the news we heard. An old native who had two huts there and a small shamba (farm) welcomed us. "Elephant!" Yes! They watered at the water hole about a quarter of a mile away, every night, and he and his women folk had been very frightened, especially as a rhino had been persistently in his garden.

We wasted no time in going to look at the water hole. Sure enough our old friend had not lied; there was ample evidence that elephant had been watering there regularly. The whole place was poached by their footmarks and their dung was everywhere. On two sides there were paths made by them. The water hole was very small, about five feet in diameter, under a steep bank and had been dug out by the elephants themselves. The elephant paths led, one down the bank and the other to the right of it, along the bank of a dry river bed. There was a good hiding place for us about 250 yards away. As you may imagine our spirits rose very high and we forgot our long tiring trek, and that we were very hungry and thirsty. If ever there was a chance of getting an elephant, surely it was here. The old hunters were delighted. We made our plan for the night and returned to our camp to get some dinner and a much needed drink. How we enjoyed a wash and our dinner; everything seemed most propitious, and how carefully we cleaned our rifles and tied the white paper round the foresight. By 7.30 p.m. we

were at the water hole and the moon rose at 8 p.m. We could not actually see the water hole from where we had put our valises and so we put our chairs where we could see it and sat up together. Shortly after 9 p.m. all were alert. Far away had been heard the unmistakable crack of an elephant breaking down branches. The direction from which he or they were coming was on the far side of the water hole, which meant that they would have to come down the steep bank to get to the water. It was difficult to find a position from which one could see the water hole and at the same time remain hidden from view. There was a clump of thorn bushes to the left of the water hole, where one would be well hidden, but one could see neither the water hole nor the approach down to it; it seemed, however, my best position and it was only about ten yards from the water hole. The difficulty was to judge the right moment to come out of the hide. Therefore in order to obviate this, we sent one of the hunters to our right flank where he could see both the approach to the water hole and the water hole itself. He was to signal when the elephant or elephants were at the water hole, and also the length of tusk showing. We took up our positions in breathless silence, and by now we could hear the elephants getting closer. Then they were quite close and we could hear them on the bank above the water hole. What a thrill! Would the tusks be good ones? My eyes were glued on the hunter on outpost; surely the elephants must be at the water hole, why had not he given the signal; and then a bellow and an almighty scramble. I dashed out of my hide, only to see the backsides of two enormous grey forms. "Curse all natives, why hadn't the hunter given the signal." "B," who was behind me, was livid with rage. "Had they got good tusks?" "Ndio bwana, mkubwa sana" (Yes, sir, very large tusks). "Then why didn't you give the signal?" "But I did give the signal." Our disappointment was intense. In the excitement of the moment the hunter had forgotten to give the signal, and I had lost the chance of a good elephant. We went and had a look at the footprints. There were two elephants and their feet measured over 20 inches, both good elephants. Well, there was nothing more to be done, but go to bed and get on to their tracks as soon as it became light. It

was not necessary to post a sentry in case another elephant came, as we knew that the old hunters would keep awake and talk, having incurred the wrath of the bwanas.

Next morning, as soon as it was light enough to see their tracks, we were off. For the first hour or so the tracking was easy and the bush fairly open, so we were able to keep up a good pace, but then we got into very thick bush and the tracking more difficult. About 9 a.m. we called a halt and had our breakfast, and by 10 a.m. we were off again. It was hot, the bush extremely dense and our progress slow, but it was likely country for elephant to lay up in during the heat of the day. Were we going to be lucky and come on them soon. Their tracks indicated that they had settled down to a slow amble. About noon we came on some fresh droppings and our hopes rose. On again for another hour and then a deep rumbling and a squeal. Where was it? To our right front. We approached cautiously with our rifles at the ready; pushed our way through a thick tangle of bush into a clearing and there about a hundred yards away under a tree were four massive grey forms with their trunks swinging like pendulums. They were deeply in the shade and even with field glasses it was difficult to see if there was a good tusker amongst them. We therefore crept closer to try and get a better view of them, but in doing so we ran into a cow elephant with a calf and had to beat a hasty retreat. It was now evident that we were amongst a herd of elephant and that they were resting. Our best plan was to wait until they began feeding again and hope to find a good tusker amongst them. It is never very pleasant being in the middle of a herd of elephant, and experience taught me that the big tuskers were generally by themselves. Also a cow elephant with a calf is always very suspicious, and so it was in this case. The first to come out of cover was a cow elephant with a very young calf, who sauntered along slowly towards us. This was not at all what we wanted and we had to change our position. Then at last the four elephants under the tree came out into the open but to our great disappointment, not one of them had tusks worth taking. The herd were moving straight across our front and there was still hope that there might be a good tusker on the outside of the herd. The jungle now seemed

to be alive with elephant, though there were not more than thirty of them and we were so intent on watching the ones passing in front of us that we never noticed an old cow elephant who had come up behind us until one of the hunters warned us, but it was too late. As we turned to move away she got our wind and gave the alarm. Pandemonium was let loose, elephant trumpeting, screaming and crashing through the bush. We stood quite still, facing in opposite directions in case we should be charged by one. Thank heaven such experiences are over very quickly and one is able to breathe again. Our old warriors were now talking hard. "No! there wasn't one elephant worth shooting in the herd." The two elephants we had started out after had given us the slip. It was now 4 p.m. and to get back to camp would take us a good three hours, and so very disheartened we turned for home. On our way back we crossed the fresh spoor of what were undoubtedly the two elephants we had followed up in the morning, and the position of the feet showed that they also had been alarmed and were travelling fast. During our trek back to camp our hunters twice lost their way and we had to halt while one of them climbed a tree to get the direction. I can never recollect this happening to me before or since, as natives generally have a wonderful sense of direction.

We reached camp a little after 7 p.m., by which time it was dark. In order to get to our water hole before the moon rose we had no time to waste, and we made a hurried meal in order not to miss an opportunity. We put our valises in the same place and sat up to watch. About 10 p.m. one of the old warriors came to say that there was an elephant coming to drink, and that the direction he was coming from was to our right, down the dry river bed. Luckily the wind was right and from where we were hidden the direction from which he was approaching would bring him in full view, before he got to the water hole. It seemed hours before he could be heard quite close. To get to the water hole he would have to cross two hundred yards of open ground and we should get a good view of him. Very quietly he came, with just the occasional snap as he broke off the branch of a tree. A touch on my shoulder and the most ancient of the old warriors whispered to me, "Karibu sana" (very near), and then out into

the open appeared a gigantic grey form. What luck! Gleaming white in the moonlight was a massive tusk. The same voice whispered to me, "Mkubwa sana! piga (very large! shoot), and then out into the open he came very slowly, but it was not time to shoot. I wanted to take the heart shot and I knew that to get to the water hole he would give me his broadside view, when within twenty yards of where I was standing. On he came, now his great head in line with me, then his forehead. The moon showed the line from his foreleg up to where his heart should be. I took my aim and fired two quick shots. He whirled round, made a mad rush back the way he had come, and then crash and he was down. What a commotion then took place, the old hunters dashed forward firing their muzzle-loading rifles as they went. "B" and I walked up from behind the elephant and although he appeared dead, "B" insisted on my putting two more shots into him behind the ear, and always afterwards I remembered to do this not only with elephant, but with all dangerous game. Carelessness or ignorance to do this cost one poor fellow I knew his life, as he brought an elephant down and proceeded to light a cigarette. The elephant which was only stunned got up and killed him. Having delivered the *coup de grâce* we proceeded to examine his tusks. Unfortunately he was a single tusker, but it was a fine tusk the one he had, 5 feet of ivory showing and very thick. "B" put the weight down at about 100 lbs., and he was not far wrong as it went 110 lbs. The old warriors were hugely delighted and by this time our porters and the old fellow and his family, who lived there, arrived on the scene, whereupon more handshakes and much chatter. The old hunters were already sharpening their knives preparatory to cutting up the elephant, so "B" and I left them to it and went back to our camp. It was nice to sleep on a camp bed again after three nights on the hard ground. We were in no hurry to get up next morning and had a hot bath and a good breakfast. After breakfast "B" went off down the dry river bed on the chance of getting a rhino, while I went to have a look at the dead elephant and see how they were cutting out the tusk. I was astonished, when I arrived on the scene of action, to find at least fifty natives there,

all busily engaged in cutting up the elephant. It is surprising how quickly news travels in Africa, as many of those natives had come at least twenty miles. They had already got their wooden grids built, with fires lighted underneath, on which the meat was slowly drying. The oldest hunter was directing operations and no one dared encroach on his preserves. One of the other old warriors was carefully hacking away the bone from the tusk. I left them to it and went off with my native orderly to try and shoot an impala, as we wanted some meat, not having much appetite for fried elephant trunk. I was unsuccessful and the bush seemed completely deserted, but on getting back to camp about 4 p.m. I found "B" had got his rhino and shot an impala as well. "B" had also made the discovery that there were two more water holes within a mile of our camp, at both of which there was spoor of elephant and rhino. We decided to split up and each sleep at a water hole. I got to my water hole about 6.30 p.m., chose a concealed place for my valise and had my dinner there. I sat up watching until nearly midnight and as neither elephant nor rhino had appeared I turned in. About 3 a.m. I was wakened by a hand on my shoulder and a startled whisper in my ear, "Kifaru" (rhino). I seized my heavy rifle, which I always had beside me, and there not twenty yards from me was an old rhino with his head down just about to charge. There was no time to waste, in manœuvring for the heart shot, I must take him in front through the chest. I let him have both barrels of my .475 rifle and as luck would have it I bowled him over where he stood. I measured the distance afterwards from my bed to where he stood and it was eighteen yards. It was most fortunate that he had hesitated those few seconds before charging, as the first object in his way would have been my valise and my slumbers would have been rudely disturbed. I turned in again until dawn, when I made my way back to our camp. There I found "B" who had had no excitements and seen nothing.

Out shoot was now at an end as we both had to be back in Tabora that night. So we collected our trophies and set off for the nearest railway station, twelve miles away. On our way back in the train "B" was not at all sure that we had made the most of our opportunities as we had been on the tracks of several

good elephant and only shot one; but from my point of view it had been most successful, as apart from the elephant and rhino I had learned a lot and gained some valuable experience.

That first shooting trip in East Africa will ever live in my memory. In ten shooting days I had shot fifteen head of game, ten different species:—1 elephant, 2 rhino, 2 buffalo, 3 wildebeeste, 2 Coke's hartebeeste, 1 impala, 1 reedbuck, 1 roan antelope, 1 Thompson's gazelle, 1 wart hog.



THE SCOTS GREYS' FIRST COLONEL

BY PERCY CROSS STANDING.

THOMAS DALYELL (Dalziel) of Binns, Linlithgowshire, was born there in 1599, and his first soldiering of which we have record was as an officer in the Scottish "auxiliaries" sent to Ireland by Charles I to suppress the rebellion led by Sir Phelin O'Neil. (At that period, 1642, "the pay of an English colonel was £3 a week, of a captain £2, of a private 3s. 6d."). In 1646, however, General Munro was defeated by the Irish with a loss of 3,400 killed and fifteen hundred baggage and cavalry horses captured.

As colonel commanding the fortress of Carrickfergus in 1648, Dalyell was surprised and taken prisoner by General Monk. Next year occurred the execution of Charles I, when "Tom" Dalyell registered a vow never to shave his beard until the King was avenged—"vow-beards" were in vogue at the time, and the comb wherewith Dalyell dressed his hair was long preserved at Binns, conveying "a vast idea of the extent of beard and of the majestic character of Dalyell—being no less than *twelve* inches broad and its teeth at least six inches deep."

He duly achieved his liberty—but only to lose it again at the sanguinary battle of Worcester, where Charles II's defeated host was composed of eleven regiments of horse, twenty battalions of infantry, and fourteen field-guns. This time the gallant Dalyell was imprisoned in the Tower, whence he escaped to appear in arms again, to seize Skelco Castle, and to proclaim Charles Stuart, who wrote to him while in exile :

"Tom Dalyell: Though I need say nothing to you by this honest bearer, Captain Mewes, yet I am willing to give

it to you under my own hand that I am very much pleased to hear how constant you are in your affection to me, and in your endeavours to advance my service. We have all a hard work to do; yet I doubt not God will carry us through it; and you can never fear that I will forget the good part you have acted which, trust me, shall be rewarded whenever it shall be in the power of your affectionate friend,
CHARLES R."

This flattering effusion produced for the versatile Dalyell (who was already aged fifty-four) the position of Lieutenant-General in the army of Russia, then governed by that Tsar who was the sire of Peter the Great. At this period, we are told, the Muscovite cavalry were "clad in steel morions and cuirasses and armed with bows, arrows, iron *mouls*, sabres, targets, and spears; and in the epoch of Dalyell their army had a great battle-drum, which was fastened to four horses abreast and had eight drummers to beat upon it."

Dalyell served the Tsar faithfully for a decade, waging war successfully against the Tartars, Turks, Poles, and others. After the Stuart Restoration of 1660, however, he returned to England, the Russian autocrat being "pleased to order that the said noble General, Thomas the son of Thomas Dalyell, should have leave to go to his own country."

But he found "his own country" sadly disturbed under the restored Stuart régime, and in 1666 he commanded the Royal troops at Edinburgh. Lieut.-Colonel Sir James Turner, author of a little treatise on the art of war, and of his own memoirs (from which we learn that he was a fierce and unscrupulous *sabreur*), was captured with his troops at Ayr by the Lairds of Corsack and Barscob. Another party of soldiers was routed by them at Dalry, and these insurgents began at once their march for Edinburgh in the autumn (1666). They reckoned, however, without the intrepid, if veteran, Dalyell, who "followed them closely from place to place with his cavalry, the flower of which were the high-spirited Scottish Life Guards." Moreover, in the northern capital "the College of Justice formed a corps of cavalry, and all gentlemen in the city who possessed horses were ordered to mount and appear in arms in

the Meal Market, under the young Marquis of Montrose, to await the orders of General Dalyell."

On November 28th, 1666, the latter's 3,000 horse and foot attacked 900 Covenanters near Rullion Green. "In this conflict," we are told, "Dalyell and the famous Captain John Paton of Meadowhead, met hand to hand on horseback and exchanged several blows before they were separated by the pressure of their soldiers." Paton then discharged his pistols at Dalyell, off whose person the balls were seen to *recoil*. On perceiving this (and knowing him to be shot-proof, according to a superstitious historian), the captain loaded his pistol with a *silver coin*, a manœuvre observed by Dalyell: he stepped behind a soldier, who fell pierced by the coin which was supposed to be proof to any spell; but the same legend is related of Claverhouse at Killiecrankie. Paton was among the last who left the field. Dalyell perceived him retiring, and sent three well-mounted troopers in pursuit, and these came to blows with him when he was urging his horse to leap a deep ditch. By a back-handed stroke he clove in two the head and helmet of his first assailant; the other two fell headlong into the ditch, where they lay struggling under their fallen chargers. 'Take my compliments to Dalyell, your master,' said Paton tauntingly as he rode off; 'tell him that I am not going home with him to-night!'"

Dalyell was rewarded with the rank of Privy Councillor, and he sat in Parliament for Linlithgowshire from 1678 to 1685, the King's flattering description of him being, "His Majesties' right trustie and weel-beloved General Thomas Dalyell of Binns, late Lieutenant-Generall of his Majesties' late forces within this ancient kingdome."

The Royal Life Guards had been enrolled in 1661, "to consist of noblemen and gentlemen's sons, and were to be 120 in number under command of the Lord Newburgh. The poor colonels, majors, and captains who expected great promotion at the Restoration were preferred to be troopers in the King's troop of Life Guards."* In 1674 they numbered four squadrons, under command of the Marquis of Athole. The "Royal Horse Guards of Scotland" were recruited at Edinburgh in 1702, the

*Kirkton.

Duke of Argyll being their first Colonel. Lord Polworth's Horse, afterwards the 7th Hussars, were raised in 1689. In the year of the formal union with England, 1707, it was decreed that "Scotland should have the first regiment of infantry and England the first regiment of dragoons."

For the campaign of Bothwell Brig, in 1679, old Dalyell flatly refused to serve under James, Duke of York, afterwards James II. It is on record, indeed, that Main's English dragoons behaved so barbarously towards the fugitives that the Scottish Life Guards turned upon them and slew many, "being grieved to see Englishmen delighting so much to shed their countrymen's blood."

But presently Dalyell came into his kingdom, so to speak, being commissioned Commander-in-Chief on the very day of Bothwell Brig. In July, 1680, he despatched Captain Creighton, with thirty of "Airlie's Horse" and fifty of "Strachan's Dragoons," to dispose of 150 Covenanters in Galloway. Of these unfortunates some sixty were killed including Richard Cameron the preacher, who fell exclaiming, "Lord, spare the green and take the ripe!"—and from whom, by the way, is derived the title "Cameronians" of the Scottish regiment of that designation.

Under date November 6th, 1679, we read that "at Privy Council there is a letter read from His Majesty nominating Lieutenant-General *Dalziel*, Commander-in-Chief of all the forces of Scotland, with power to act as he shall think fit, and only be liable and accountable and judgeable by His Majesty himself, for Dalziel would not accept of it otherways; only he promised and declared that in difficult exigents he should take the advice of His Majesty's Privy Council."

The Duke and Duchess of York went to Edinburgh in 1680—hence Dalyell's celebrated *mot* when the Duchess (a Princess of Modena) snobbishly objected to be seated at table with her inferior in rank. "Madam," quoth he, "I have dined at a table where *your* father must have stood at *my* back!"

On November 15th, 1681, Dalyell's personal exertions succeeded in recruiting the Scots Greys, so called "from the peculiar colour of their horses. They wore the old, heavy-skirted buff coat; and it is worthy of remark that the last time such a

garment was worn in the British service was by the colonel who commanded them at Minden seventy-four years after. In a muster-roll of Captain Murray's Scottish company at this time I find ' Corporall Sir David Livingstone.' ”*

Dalyell's own pay as a Scottish General was £400 a year. In 1684 the Life Guards numbered one hundred men and every officer possessed a couple of horses. A captain's pay was then fixed at £1 per day, a lieutenant's at 12s., a cornet's at 7s., and a trooper's at 2s. 6d. But “ a regiment of Dragoons (armed with sword, pistol, and musket, for service on horseback or foot), the *Scots Greys*, consisted of six companies of fifty-nine each, including officers. All troopers received 1s. per diem.”

When the death of Charles II took place on February 6th, 1685, Glasgow was being “ protected ” by Lord Ross' troop of cavalry and Captain Inglis' Dragoons; Ayr by the Scots Greys and a troop of Guards; Dumfries by Strachan's, Claverhouse's, and Drumlanrig's mounted men; and Dunse by Balcarris' Horse and Lord Charles Murray's Dragoons.

Dalyell quickly followed his royal friend and employer to the grave, and on August 7th ensuing, “ while the minute-guns boomed from the dark portholes of the ancient [Edinburgh] castle, his body, in a magnificent hearse drawn by plumed horses; and having six pieces of brass cannon, his led charger, his suit of armour and his many trophies, sword, spurs, helmet, gauntlets, and his General's bâton, all borne by officers of rank and escorted by all the standing forces in Edinburgh with drums muffled, standards crêped, and arms reversed, was slowly conveyed through the western gate of the city to Linlithgowshire, and interred in the family vault at Binns, in the parish of Abercorn. There the persecuting Cavalier rests in peace, though the superstitious peasantry still aver that his tall, thin, and venerable figure in buff coat and headpiece, with his vast white beard floating from his grim visage to his military girdle, is seen ‘ in glimpses of the moon,’ flitting like an unquiet spirit about the old manor-house or in the avenues and parks which were formed by himself around it. He died in his eighty-fifth

*James Grant.

year." He was succeeded in the command of the Scots Greys by Charles, Earl of Dunmore.

"Tom" Dalyell lived and wrought in a ruthless and ferocious age, and he is not to be judged by our twentieth-century standards. Such, in a word, was "the chequered career of the first Colonel of the Scots Greys—certainly one of the most remarkable personalities of a time replete with bloodshed and cruelty."



MODERN CAVALRY HEAD-DRESSES

By LIEUT.-COLONEL J. E. N. RYAN, T.D.

PART IV. HUSSARS—(*Continued*).

THE cavalry of the three other pre-War European Great Powers—Russia, Italy and, of course, Austria-Hungary—comprised a great number of hussar regiments. Those of the Dual Monarchy and of Russia wore the full kit, but the Italian Light Horse had adopted only the busby and that too minus the bag. Of the lesser Powers no fewer than nine had regiments of cavalry dressed as hussars. The Swedish hussars consisted of four regiments including the Life Hussars, now reduced to two regiments only, and their cousins the Danes had as a Royal Escort their still existing Guard Hussars. Both of the Low Countries were represented, Holland by four regiments—now reduced to an equal number of half-regiments—of Royal Dutch Hussars, and Belgium by two, now one, regiments of Guides. Spanish hussars included the white “Princess” and the red “Pavia” regiments. The remaining four countries with cavalry comprising hussars were in the Balkans. Rumanian hussars were then, as now, the most numerous, there being ten regiments of Roșiori (Red Hussars) and some nineteen of Yeomanry or Calarași (Black Hussars). Bulgaria and Serbia had each a regiment of Guard Cavalry dressed as hussars, which, in the case of the present kingdom of Yugoslavia, has recently been increased to two regiments. Lastly, the whole of the Greek cavalry, with a strength of three regiments, wore a hussar-pattern uniform.

The head-dresses of these hussars of different nationalities were nearly all variations of one of three forms worn at some period of their history by the Hungarian hussars. These latter had, as previously mentioned, changed the fur busby for a shako at the close of the eighteenth century. After various models of this had been used, a new type of head-dress, a lamb-skin cap or *kalpak* of Turkish origin called in Hungarian a “kuczma,”

was introduced for the hussars in 1865. The rest of the uniform had previously been much simplified, the dolmans of varied hue worn till the middle of the last century having been changed for tunics of light or dark blue only, with pelisses of the same colour. After a few years came a reversion to the shako, finally improved to the smart head-dress so well known before the War through the vogue of Viennese operetta.

This *czako* (see illustration, No. XIX, 1 and 3), worn by the sixteen Austro-Hungarian hussar regiments in 1914, is remarkable for its simple elegance. The form is high with one or more bands of gold or yellow lace round the top denoting the rank of the wearer, and encircling it are gold or yellow cords ending in tassels on the right side of the cap known as the "vitéz kötes" or "warriors' knot." The colour varies, three groups of four regiments each, having had shakos of madder-red, ash-grey and white, while in the others it was either light or dark blue. The plume of black horsehair—red for trumpeters—is inserted behind a gilt rose with the Imperial initials FJI, and the double-eagle badge bears the regimental number. The crown, peak and chin-strap are of black patent leather. The 9th Austro-Hungarian Hussars which, as previously mentioned, was the oldest hussar regiment in existence, wore a white shako with a dark blue tunic ("attila") and pelisse ("mente"), the latter bordered with black fur, red breeches braided on the thighs and hussar boots ("czismen").

The special pride of Hungary was the Honvéd or National Militia comprising both infantry and hussars, from which is derived the army of the present kingdom. Their shakos bore instead of the double-eagle a badge of the Hungarian Arms, and those of the cavalry added green and black to the colours worn by the regular hussars. The horsehair plume was white, and the "vitéz kötes" interwoven with red. The "attila" had also red instead of yellow braiding, and the "mente" white fur trimming. All officers of the present Hungarian Army wear in full dress the national braided jacket.

Two of the most striking costumes in the old Imperial Austrian army were those of Generals in the so-called "German" and Hungarian gala dress. The former consisted of the historic

white jacket with scarlet trousers and green-plumed hat in which the Emperor Francis Joseph was frequently portrayed. The latter was adapted from the ceremonial costume of the Magyar nobles at the commencement of the eighteenth century, the richly braided scarlet tunic and breeches being worn with a white sable-bordered pelisse hung not on the shoulder but over the back. The sable busby had a red bag, with hanging cords and tassels as on the cap originally worn by our hussars. The only other wearers of the old fur head-dress in the Imperial Austrian army were the Royal Hungarian Life Guards, a corps analogous to the Yeomen of the Guard, formed by Maria Theresa and stationed in Vienna. Their scarlet hussar Court "livery" was completed by a leopard skin hung over the back, the brown polecat-fur busby having a green bag.

It may be of interest to mention here the changes which the slung jacket or pelisse has undergone since its development from the original wild beast's skin, and to note in which armies its wear survives. At first intended as a garment for use when required, it became, following the introduction of the shell jacket or dolman by the XVIII Century hussars, shorter and more ornate, till in the following century it often ceased to have any real function and became almost purely ornamental. After the Crimean War it was abolished in the British cavalry when the hussar tunic superseded the dolman, but it was retained in several foreign regiments in a lengthened form worn in summer for parade over the shoulder and in winter as a over-jacket. Fur-lined it was so used throughout the Austrian cavalry before and during the War, and nine German hussar regiments possessed similar long pelisses of various colours. That of the Guard Hussars was dark blue trimmed with black astrakhan fur, while the two "Death's Head" regiments had a black pelisse edged with grey fur, and the 16th Prussian Hussars, whose chief was the Austrian Kaiser, one of light blue with white lamb-skin bordering; the officer's pelisse has like the tunic half-round pockets (see illustration, No. XXIII, 1, 2 and 3). Another German regiment, the 5th Blücher Hussars, of which the late King Edward* was "possessor," had a lace fringe down each

* Queen Mary succeeded as Colonel-in-Chief of this regiment till the War.



1

2

3

XIX.

Austria-Hungary—

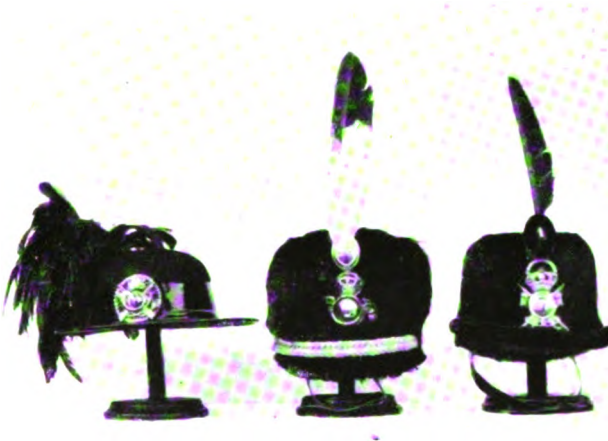
1—9th Hussars.

Spain—

2—"Ros"—Officers.

Austria-Hungary—

3—5th Hussars—
Officers.



2

3

XX.

Italy—

1—Bersaglieri.

2—Cavalleggeri—
Officers.

3—7th Lancieri.



1

2

XXI.

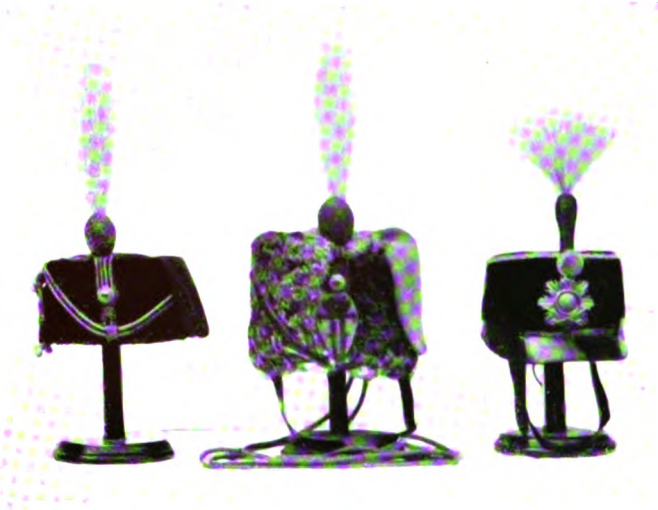
Holland—

1—Forage Cap.

2—Royal Dutch
Hussars.

Belgium—

3—Field Cap.



1

2
XXII.

3

Rumania—

1—3rd Rosiori—

2—Officers (old pattern Cap).

2—9th Rosiori (new pattern cap).

Sweden—

3—Life Hussars.



1

2
XXIII.

3

Germany—Pelisses—

1—Guard Hussars.

2—1st & 2nd "Death's Head" Hussars—Officers.

3—16th Hussars.



1

2 3
XXIV.

Germany—Hussar Officers—

1—Sabre.

2—Sabretache.

3—Shabraque.

side of the pelisse. At the present day the pelisse is still worn in the cavalry of the Austrian Bundesheer and by the Guard Cavalry of Denmark and Yugoslavia; two Spanish hussar regiments retained it until they were disbanded under the present Republic. It is also used, for wear only and not slung, by officers of the Belgian Gendarmerie, as was the case before the war amongst all Light Cavalry officers in the French and Belgian armies in which its use as an unofficial garment was permitted. A German hussar officer's sabre, sabretache and shabraque worn till 1914 are shown in illustration No. XXIV, 1, 2 and 3. The sabre is curved with a lion's head on the hilt. The wear of the sabretache—a corruption of the German *sabeltasche* or sword-pocket used for carrying small articles—was discontinued in our cavalry in 1902, and that of the shabraque, except for the Household Cavalry, between 1883 and 1887.

The first Russian hussars (Gussáry) dated from the mid-eighteenth century, those raised during the reign of Catherine the Great (1762-1796) being clothed on the Prussian model. After the Crimean War the "pickelhaube," then worn by the infantry, was abandoned, and forage caps were worn in full dress by hussars of the Line, only the two Guard Hussar regiments having busbies. The pan-Slav ideals of Tsar Alexander III caused the Line Hussars to be converted to dragoons in 1882, with a green uniform of loose Russian cut and the lamb-skin cap already described. The last change took place only seven years before the Great War, when after the Japanese War Nicholas II reconstituted eighteen hussar regiments whose full-dress was even more varied than that of their German model, tunics of several shades of blue, green and brown being worn with crimson breeches; one regiment—the 15th Hussars—had even a rose-pink jacket. The Emperor's Hussars of the Guard stationed at Tsarskoe-Selo possessed scarlet tunics and white pelisses worn over the back, so that in marching past they appeared to be a different regiment as viewed from front and rear; the other Guard Hussar regiment "Grodno" quartered in Warsaw, had a green tunic and pelisse ("mentik").

The head-dress was a black astrakhan-fur busby of the flat German type, the badge for the Guard regiments being the Saint

Andrew Star and for the Hussars of the Line the Russian double eagle with in many cases a scroll inscribed "For distinguished service." The bag ("schlyk") worn on the *right* side is pointed at the end and for senior officers braided to show the rank of the wearer, colonels-in-chief of regiments having also plaited lines on front as well as back of the busby. The white (for trumpeters red) plume, became in the case of general officers one of black, yellow and white swan feathers.

The Italian Light Horse (Cavalleggeri) wear to-day with service kit a busby ("colbacco") similar to that in which, as cavalry of the newly-raised national army, they charged the Austrians at Custozza in 1866. The hussar uniform was never fully adopted, the pre-War dress for both the Heavy and Light Cavalry being a plain dark blue jacket with a differently coloured collar. Eight regiments of Lancers (Lancieri) also wore a busby as well as the seventeen Cavalleggeri regiments; the Lancers have now been disbanded and the Light Horse consist of eight regiments.

The busby (see illustration, No. XX, 2 and 3) is of long black sealskin for both officers and men, the officers' cap being cylindrical while that of the troops projects at bottom in front and behind. A plaited line, of silver cord for officers and for the troops of the same colour as the tunic collar, is worn across the busby in full dress, ending in a tassel at the back. There is no bag, the top being of patent leather. The badge is, for the Cavalleggeri a bugle horn, and for the Lancieri crossed lances, each surmounted by a crown, with in the centre, for officers the Cross of Savoy, or for the troops the number of the regiment. Under the Crown is a cockade in the national colours, red, white and green, and above this an oval boss, of silver for officers, that for the rank and file having a numeral denoting the squadron. In review order officers wear also a large eagle's feather and men a cock's feather. The cloak or "mantellina" is replaced in the cavalry by a greatcoat ("pastrano"). The well-known hat of the Bersaglieri with drooping feathers is also shown in illustration No. XX, 1. They are now cyclists and form part of the Italian Light (Cavalry) Division.

The Swedish cavalry has traditions going back to the time of Gustavus Adolphus and to that period of her military greatness when her arm stretched deep into German territory. In recent years the elaborate uniforms of the four hussar regiments were simplified, the pelisse and sabretache being discarded and a closely-braided dark blue uniform adopted. The present shako (see illustration, No. XXII, 3) is covered with dark blue cloth, with a false peak at the back and in front a Sun badge with crossed swords and crowned national coat-of-arms. The cockade is blue and white and the plume socket of wood painted yellow. The Life Hussars wear in review order a white plume and the other existing hussar regiment a black one.

The Danish Guard Hussars, of whom King Edward was Colonel-in-Chief, have a somewhat similar shako with white cap lines. The feature of their uniform is a crimson pelisse, worn instead of the light blue jacket in winter and on great State occasions over the left shoulder. In undress, officers wear a flat peaked cap and troopers a fatigue cap tilted on the right side of the head.

The Belgian Guides whose origin is coeval with the foundation of the kingdom in 1830, wore almost from their beginning until they buried them when on active service in 1915, their large bearskin "colbacks" from the Napoleonic era (see illustration, No. XV, 2).^{*} The busby bag is crimson and worn on the left side, with gold or yellow braiding and a hanging tassel. The oval boss is corded and the plume is of crimson and white swan feathers in a gilt socket. The lines were worn from the back of the head-dress round the collar of a braided green dolman reaching to the waist only, the overalls being crimson. The field cap, which is now khaki, has a tassel (see illustration, No. XXI, 3). The Guides are the Sovereign's Body Guard regiment. The two regiments of Belgian Chasseurs à Cheval wore till the war blue and red shakos.

The Royal Dutch Hussars have also worn for a long time a busby ("kolbak") which in shape is a close model of the British one (see illustration, No. XXI, 2). It is of black sealskin for all ranks, with a scarlet bag on the *right* side, only the pointed

^{*} CAVALRY JOURNAL, January, 1935, page 126.

lower end of which is braided and has a tassel. The cap is encircled by silver or white cords going under the busby bag and looped on the right breast, and in front is the orange cockade of the Royal House. The white plume, for officers of ostrich feathers, has a "turk's head" in network as a socket, and a plaited hair ring. The chin-chain is attached on either side by lions' heads. Illustration No. XXI, 1, shows the high undress *képi*. The 3rd Hussars stationed at the Hague form the Royal Escort and were called "Red Hussars" on account of the red braiding on the tunic formerly worn; the other three regiments were for a similar reason known as "Blue Hussars."

The Spanish "ros," a flat shako with sloping crown still worn in full dress, was as typical of that army as the "pickelhaube" of the former German army (see illustration, No. XIX, 2). The two Spanish hussar regiments raised early in the last century, the "Húsares de la Princesa" and "de Pavia," had, till shortly before the Great War, white and red shakos of rather higher form. This head-dress was then changed for a black astrakhan fur busby resembling that of the Russian hussars (the colour of the busby bag being that of the former shako), which was worn till the regiments were disbanded under the present Republic. In full dress a light blue dolman and white pelisse was carried by the "Princess" and a red dolman with blue pelisse by the "Pavia" regiment. Another Spanish *Chasseur* regiment—the "Regimento de Lusitania"—had a "death's head" on the busby and sabretache; all four regiments of Mounted Rifles (Cazadores de Caballeria) wore astrakhan-fur "colbacs" like those of the hussars.

The Roumanian army remains relatively strong in cavalry, possessing to-day twenty-three regiments of this arm as compared with sixty-six of infantry. This is accounted for by the nature of the country, with a long frontier and bad roads, in the newly acquired territory of Transylvania. All cavalry are hussars, with the exception of the Royal Escort Regiment already referred to, the cavalry divisions being composed of two brigades each of *Rosiori* and one of *Calarasi*. The *Rosiori* (Red Hussars) are regulars and till the War wore red hussar tunics

and white breeches; the Calarasi (Black Hussars) correspond to our Yeomanry and had instead dark coloured jackets.

The head-dress of all Rumanian hussars was a small astrakhan-fur *kalpak* known as a "caciula," and copied from the contemporary Hungarian "kuczma" when the cavalry of the new principality was formed by Prince Carol in 1866 (see illustration, No. XXII, 1). In front is the Royal cypher—a "C" doubled and reversed—and above this a red, yellow and blue cockade with a gold loop and button. Surrounding the cap is the "vitéz kötes" and above it a gold or yellow boss and white plume. The various colours of the busby bags included green, brown and pink of the 3rd, 7th and 9th Rosiori; for the Calarasi regiments the busby bag was dark red and the boss and plume were of the same colour.

In 1923 the late King Ferdinand I by Royal Decree conferred on the Rumanian hussars a new parade head-dress which is at present worn by certain regiments with khaki dress, this being the only instance of the introduction of a new full dress for the cavalry of any nation since the war.* It is a grey hare-pelt busby (see illustration, No. XXII, 2), higher than the old model, with a loop of gold or yellow braid on one side of the cap and in the front the emblem of the King on a coloured field. The busby bag is of the same colour as formerly for each regiment; generals of cavalry have a busby with a white bag and in front a star. The folding fatigue-cap of the troops is cocked fore and aft like that of the Italian cavalry.

Both the Yugoslav and Bulgarian Guard Cavalry have at the present time striking parade uniforms. The Serbs wear a black lambskin *kalpak* with the Royal Initial and a festoon of braid on the front of the cap, and surmounting it a white plume of ospreys or horsehair. The scarlet busby bag is on the *right* side, and it may here be noted that our hussars, like those of Holland and the Slav States, have always worn it thus in what is probably the original Hungarian way, while the German hussars and those of the Latin countries adopted the eighteenth century hussar

* If one excepts that adopted for a Mounted Escort by the Government of the Irish Free State. This latter uniform resembles the full-dress of British hussars but with a jacket of the ancient Irish blue colour, and was first worn on a ceremonial occasion in 1932.

mode—worn to the *left*. The tunic and breeches are respectively green and red, and for parade a light blue pelisse without braiding (“doloma”) is hung on the left shoulder. The Bulgarian Life Guard Cavalry have a grey lambskin *kalpak* with an eagle feather, red cloth crown, and in front a silver star inscribed “God with us.” With it is worn a scarlet hussar jacket. The eight existing Serbian Line Cavalry regiments have the peculiar national shako with a furrow down the centre.

Greek hussars numbering now five regiments, were, like those of Belgium and Rumania, originally lancers, and wore till 1914 braided green uniforms, the head-dress being a French pattern *képi* with a drooping feather plume for officers and an erect horsehair one for the troops, both in the Greek national colours, blue and white. To-day there is for parade only the ubiquitous khaki.

* * * * *

Full-dress uniforms after many changes extending throughout the nineteenth century and after, had by 1914 been evolved into what was probably their final state and as near perfection as possible. As has happened many times in the history of things, having reached this stage they suffered an eclipse, from which the material problems of to-day have prevented their recovery. The full-dress of the British soldier was probably the smartest in the world combining best the decorative and practical. Two circumstances gave us a great advantage—the special conditions of our voluntary long service system then unique in Europe and the fact that service dress had not then been fully adopted for general purposes in Continental armies. To some minds any resumption of pre-War full-dress for ceremonial occasions would appear to be an anachronism, but so would doubtless also to a former generation the medieval iron helmet or “pott” which in one form or another is now the parade head-dress of most armies.

“Full circle goes the wheel” and it may happen that the distinctive facings, plumes and busby bags which were formerly considered of such importance for the maintenance of *esprit de corps* may again be seen in the not distant future. Such certainly is the desire and hope of many.

AEROPLANES versus CAVALRY

By MAJOR S. H. PERSSE, 15th Lancers

THE aeroplane, even yet, is a comparatively recent invention. What little knowledge we have of its value as a military weapon goes back to the Great War. Since then the machine itself has been greatly improved, and the science of aviation, especially pilotage, has made great progress. Our Great War knowledge is, therefore, out of date, and any enquiry into the probable effects of aircraft on the conduct of future wars must depend more on reasoning and imagination than on experience.

The primary duty of an air force contingent is to create and maintain an air situation such as will assist the army to achieve its object and will prevent undue interference from enemy air attack. It is also obvious that the gaining and maintenance of air superiority is of first importance.

All other factors being equal, superiority will go to the side which can put into the air the greatest number of machines and keep them there. By comparison with those of other first-class Powers, the quality of the personnel and machines of the Royal Air Force is probably unsurpassed in the world ; but the memorandum of the Secretary of State for Air (accompanying the estimates for 1934) shows plainly that the strength is so low that it appears doubtful if air superiority could be achieved and maintained.

Of the two roles of an air force—strategical and tactical—this article is only directly concerned with the latter. It is impossible, however, to avoid touching on the strategical role, as sustained bombing attacks by a numerically superior air force on our towns will inevitably result in the withdrawal, for home

defence, of machines from the contingent accompanying the army in the field ; otherwise the war would be lost, for it is unlikely that an army would continue to fight against the wish of its civil population.

Admittedly the Royal Air Force may attempt to carry out the same sort of offensive on enemy industrial areas, but such an offensive will remain an integral part of home defence measures only. On the other hand, an enemy possessed of an adequate air force will be able to carry out a strategical *and* tactical offensive simultaneously, and it is with this latter that the army is primarily concerned. Until, therefore, the number of machines is increased to an extent which makes the offensive action contemplated in Section 9 of "The Employment of Air Forces with the Army in the Field," a possibility, the army must reconcile itself to the fact that the Royal Air Force, through no fault of its own, will be unable, except perhaps for short periods, to prevent interference from enemy air attacks.

The oft-heard remarks that "aeroplanes will not bother much about troops" and "they will have other work to do" ring very hollow when examined in the light of air inferiority. Such inferiority means, in effect, that our aerodromes will be bombed, both by night and day, and our aeroplanes, on attempting to leave the ground, will be pounced on by hostile fighters waiting for them. The enemy will have the initiative and will be able at his leisure to detach fighter squadrons to carry out low-flying attacks as and when the ground situation demands.

The manual on "The Employment of Air Forces with the Army in the Field" deals, in Section 9, with this type of attack, but only, of course, when carried out by the Royal Air Force ; the principles laid down are not applicable to the action of hostile air forces which, by virtue of their greater numbers, will be able to acquire sufficient local air superiority to make low-flying attacks feasible. It is difficult to attach much weight to such general statements as "the material damage will be slight, whilst the hostile aircraft will suffer casualties." On the one hand nobody can yet say how effective anti-aircraft small arms fire will be, or what part the human factor will play ; on the

other hand, the aeroplane of to-day, both in armament and performance *is a vastly different machine from its predecessor of the Great War*. Only another conflict between two first-class Powers can decide whether the defence will beat the attack or not. The opening stages of the next war will doubtless witness an early trial of strength between low-flying aircraft of the side which has acquired air superiority and the opposing army. If the aeroplanes are fortunate enough at the first encounter to surprise and inflict heavy casualties on the troops, they will acquire an important moral superiority. If, on the other hand, the troops are lucky enough to bring down a few aeroplanes, the situation will be reversed and the advantage will rest with them.

It is not suggested that an enemy air force will harry the army from morning to night, but its ability to do so at short notice will confer on the commander a tactical weapon of surprise, against which protection must be arranged.

Confronted with this, the problem of the air defence of a cavalry regiment is one that will repay study.

THE VULNERABILITY OF CAVALRY.

The question is often asked: "Will hostile aircraft worry much about the few cavalry regiments which exist nowadays?"

Such military history on the subject as is available* gives little help, but one of the few recorded instances of low-flying attacks deserves to be quoted at length. In his book "The Palestine Campaigns," when dealing with the battle of Beer-sheba—on the winning of which all subsequent operations in that theatre depended—Maj.-Gen. Wavell writes as follows:—

"The vulnerability of mounted troops to the air was emphasized. A large proportion of the casualties of the Desert Mounted Column was due to air attack, and it was mainly because the squadrons had been scattered to

* Since writing the above, "The War in the Air," Vol. IV has been published. It appears that during the offensive by the Germans in March, 1918, low-flying attacks were carried out by the R.F.C. on a large scale. There is ample evidence from both sides of the moral and material effect of these attacks. Reference is made to the losses sustained by the R.F.C. but it is hardly fair to assume that these would be repeated under present conditions. Whereas great progress has been made in methods of ground attack, armament and performance of aeroplanes, the system and means of protection of troops has remained practically stationary.

escape from air attack that it took so long to collect Grant's brigade for the final charge."

Admittedly the Turkish air force was largely composed of German machines and pilots, but that in no way detracts from the importance of the fact that a few aeroplanes—antiquated when compared with those of to-day—were able to jeopardise the success of a vital battle.

If the study of the events of the past justifies the drawing of conclusions for the future, the answer to this question is simple. Hostile air forces *will* attack cavalry regiments, and whether they do it "much" or "little" is immaterial, since *once* may be sufficient to cause the loss of a decisive battle.

The Manuals and their Teaching.

Field Service Regulations* calls attention to the danger of air attack to cavalry. It states: "Owing to the difficulty of protecting its horses, cavalry employed in large masses is very vulnerable to attacks from the air." (It is not clear why only *large masses* should experience difficulty in protecting their horses). By comparison with infantry, the difficulty is certainly greater because the rifles available to defend an extremely large and vulnerable area will be few.

The same manual in Sections 58 and 59 lays down certain principles to be observed in air defence, which are applicable to all arms. The problem is only cursorily mentioned in "Cavalry Training," Vol. I;† it is, however, laid down in it that a regiment if attacked when on the move should halt, provided the hostile aircraft are within 600 yards.

In "Cavalry Training," Vol. II,‡ the above references from Field Service Regulations are repeated almost word for word; but as these refer to all arms, the particular issue of cavalry is not clarified.

"Small Arms Training"§ being written for all arms, naturally enough makes no particular mention of cavalry's problems and

* F.S.R., Vol. II (1929). Section 11 (6).

† "Cavalry Training," Vol. I, 1931. Section 178 (10).

‡ "Cavalry Training," Vol. II, 1929. Sections 38-39.

§ "Small Arms Training," Vol. II, 1931. Chapter III.

difficulties, whilst "Cavalry Section Leading (1930)"* merely refers the reader back to the two manuals last mentioned. With the exception, therefore, of Field Service Regulations, there is little to serve as a guide, and the object of this article is to examine the matter in some detail, on the basis of the principles and provisions laid down in that text book.

ANTI-AIRCRAFT DEFENCE.

In Section 58 of Field Service Regulations it is stated that there are two main methods of defence, viz., active and passive.

The Active Means of Defence.

As far as a cavalry regiment is concerned, the only active means of defence available is anti-aircraft small arms fire, which may be produced by either rifles or Vickers-Berthier light automatics.

The Rifle.—At a target travelling at anything over 200 miles per hour, the effectiveness of small arms fire must depend on the volume produced. "The few rounds that can be fired in the time, the difficulty of hitting the target and the smallness of its vital parts, all make it advisable that as great a volume of fire should be employed as possible. Normally, therefore, all available rifles will fire."† At the very outset, therefore, we are faced with one of cavalry's major difficulties, since the rifle fire power of the troop or even the squadron is very small. The strength of the troop under war conditions is not likely to be more than eighteen of all ranks. Moreover when confronted with the possibility of a stampede caused by bursting bombs, machine-gun fire and the terrifying scream of a super-charged aero engine, the commander will be wise if he has no man holding more than two horses. His fire strength will thus be reduced to nine or ten rifles. From this number *should* be deducted the troop and section commanders ;‡ necessity, however, knows no law, and in all probability in war all ranks armed with a rifle would fire. The effectiveness of such volume of fire as can be produced must be considered in terms of the

* "Cavalry Section Leading, 1930." Section 48.

† "Infantry Training," Vol. II, 1931. Section 34 (7).

‡ "Small Arms Training," Vol. II, 1931. Section 46 (4).

area to be defended. By comparison with the platoon, the former is small, whilst the latter, with particular reference to the horses, is unavoidably large.

The Vickers-Berthier light automatic.—In India this weapon has recently been issued to cavalry regiments. But this gun has not an A.A. mounting and it is understood it is not intended to provide one. In a war of considerable duration such mounting would probably be provided. At home a light mounting for the squadron gun is being considered—probably to some extent with a view to A.A. defence.

In connection with the employment of these weapons, it may be permissible to invite attention to a point which may have escaped general notice. In its defence against aircraft it is understood that the Royal Navy now pins its faith to batteries of machine guns, grouped together and fired by one man. During the combined naval and air force exercise, held off the east coast of Scotland in September, 1933, it was maintained by eye-witnesses that a number of machines engaged in diving bombing had been put out of action by this system of fire. The suitability of this method for use by troops is advocated in the “Manual of Anti-Aircraft Defence (Army Units)”* where, under the heading “Anti-aircraft Battery Lewis Guns” it is laid down that “The guns should be sited as far as possible *in groups of not less than four*”; and the suggestion is that they should be thus placed, not because they are a battery, but because some definite advantage accrues from this concentration.

The Passive Means of Defence.

These are concealment and protective dispositions.

Concealment.—If suitable cover can be found, this is probably the most satisfactory method of defence, but its employment is conditioned by certain obvious requirements.

Firstly.—The ability to make use of cover presupposes that the regiment is halted or that it is engaged in an operation in which time is of little importance. Advanced guard mounted troops, for instance, may not always be able to afford the time

* “Manual of Anti-Aircraft Defence (Army Units),” Vol. II—War Section 6 (14).

to take cover whilst hostile aeroplanes are in the vicinity. A regiment or squadron sent on a special mission to deny a certain position to the enemy, may never arrive in time if they break for cover at the sight of every formation of enemy aircraft. In any outflanking movement, the arrival of the cavalry at its pre-determined point half-an-hour late may have an adverse effect on the whole battle. The battle of Beersheba, referred to above, affords historical justification for the statement that cavalry when attacked by aircraft can only rely on concealment as a method of defence to the extent that the ground tactical situation permits.

Secondly.—Cover is useless unless it is sufficiently dense to conceal both the men *and the horses* completely.

Thirdly.—Good concealment can be obtained from shadows ; but these vary in position and area with the time of the day—a fact to be remembered if a regiment is to remain halted and concealed for several hours.

Fourthly—and this is perhaps the most important requirement—if cover is to be of any use, the troops must have reached it and concealed themselves *undetected by the hostile aircraft*. It is just as easy for a pilot to drop a bomb on, or fire his machine gun into a clump of trees which he knows hides troops, as to attack by the same means parties in the open ; but it is infinitely more difficult for the anti-aircraft rifle troops or light automatics to fire at a machine when their vision is obscured by high or thick trees. Cover carelessly entered may easily become a death-trap.

Protective dispositions.—This method of defence is defined in F.S.R.* as “ The distribution of personnel and material in such a way as to avoid offering objectives to air attack ” and is specially suitable to cavalry, since one of its principal advantages is its power of dispersion.

It may be difficult to produce a sufficient volume of rifle fire ; to invent a satisfactory mounting and sights for the Vickers-Berthier light automatic ; to find suitable cover and then to find time to get into it ; but there is one thing that cavalry in

* Field Service Regulations, Vol. II, 1929. Section 58 (1).

cavalry country should always be able to do, and that is, by sufficient dispersion, to deny suitable targets to hostile aircraft. In this respect cavalry has a great advantage over the other arms. A gun team on the move cannot disperse lower than a column of approximately 48 feet in length—almost an ideal target—whilst if infantry are constantly compelled to march off the road in small bodies its pace will suffer and its fatigue will be greatly increased.

THE PROBLEM FROM THE AIR.

In order to be able to form an impression of what constitutes a "suitable target," it is necessary to look at the matter from the aerial point of view. No details of foreign machines and methods of attack are available, and therefore the following remarks are based on the aircraft and training of the Royal Air Force.

The only types of aeroplanes with which troops are likely to have to deal are low-flying single-seater or two-seater fighters. Day bombers will usually operate from a height far beyond the range of small arms, and it is not part of the duty of Army Co-operation machines to engage in ground attack, nor are they designed for this purpose. It is only under abnormal conditions that both types would be encountered. It is indeed possible that light bomb and machine-gun attacks against objects on land may be carried out by any type of light aeroplane; but as there is no kind of machine known which is primarily intended for such work, it may be assumed that this role will be carried out by the ordinary fighter squadrons.

*Single-seater fighters.**—The latest single-seater fighters are believed to have a cruising speed of about 110 yards per second. After a comparatively short dive (with full engine) this rises to nearly 200 yards per second. The machine has great power of climb and manœuvre and its armament consists of two or more Vickers machine guns (air-cooled and capable of a considerably faster rate of fire than the ground gun) which fire forward through the propellor. In passing, it may be mentioned that

* Air speeds have risen so greatly that "Miles per hour" convey little meaning. All speeds therefore are given in "yards per second."

fighters have been designed which mount up to six machine guns firing forward. This number can scarcely be necessary to hit one hostile aeroplane, but they would undoubtedly produce a tremendous volume of fire against a ground target. Future development will undoubtedly tend to increase the fire-power of fighters.

The sights for all the guns are on the top of the engine, and to lay them on to a target necessitates pointing the whole machine. The aeroplane can also carry a small load of 20 lb. Cooper bombs. This type of machine is comparatively small, and being beautifully streamlined, offers no unsightly bumps to catch the eye. It is doubtful if it could be seen at anything over a mile, the time of flight for which is about 15 seconds. The advantage of surprise, therefore, rests with the pilot and not with the troops. On the other hand, the aeroplane has no defence to the rear, and when flying low is very vulnerable to air attacks from above.

Two-seater fighters.—The modern type is similar to the single-seater machine just described with the exception that, having an air gunner and a Lewis gun in the rear cockpit, the performance is not quite so high. On the other hand, it is not defenceless towards the rear, as the pilot by manœuvre can allow his gunner to use his weapon effectively, both offensively and as a means of protection: 20 lb. Cooper bombs will almost certainly be carried. There is a school of thought which favours the extension of the use of two-seater fighters.

METHOD OF ATTACK BY AIRCRAFT.

There seems to be a generally accepted idea that aeroplanes attack ground targets in a manner similar to that which is seen every year at the Royal Air Force display at Hendon. A flight of machines in close formation flies over the aerodrome at a height of about 3,000 feet. The leader suddenly sees the objective and fires a Verey light. The eyes of the spectators are thus attracted to the machines, the formation breaks up and individual aeroplanes dive on to the target, converging from different points of the compass.

"C'est magnifique, mais ce n'est pas la guerre."

A study of the problem leads to certain deductions, which must be taken into account in any consideration of anti-aircraft defence :—

- (a) During mobile warfare the danger of attack will always be present.
- (b) Machines will not fly about the skies looking for suitable targets to attack, but will be either :
 - (i) Directed into certain specified areas, where a suitable target is likely to be found ;
 - (ii) Directed on to a pin-point where a suitable target is known to be.*
- (c) As the enemy pilots will know either the area in which the target is situated, or its exact position, they will not advertise their impending arrival more than they can possibly help, and consequently little or no warning from "air sentries" may be expected.
- (d) Machines will approach at low or very low altitudes, thus increasing the difficulties of "spotting" them.
- (e) Individual machines will attack independently of each other, thus increasing the difficulties of the defence, which will not know from which direction it is likely to be attacked next.
- (f) The attack may take the form of medium altitude bombing, low bombing, or machine-gun fire, or a combination of all three.
- (g) Attacking aeroplanes, losing height in order to engage the target, will be travelling in the neighbourhood of 150 yards per second.

DETAILS OF THE INDIVIDUAL ATTACK.

The increased capabilities of the aeroplane, and the peculiarities of its offensive weapons make it necessary that its three methods of attack should be considered separately.

* One hostile A/C machine, flying at a considerable height, will be able—by means of the R/T or W/T—to give an enemy commander all the information which he requires to enable him to direct an attack on to a definite point. Hourly halts and halts on "bounds" seem to be occasions when attacks may be expected. In ten minutes, modern fighters are capable of flying between thirty and forty miles.

Medium altitude bombing.—This method of attack was invented by the United States Air Force, is used in nearly all countries, and is best described by the picturesque name of “Hell-diving.” The machine is flown over the target at a height of anything between 3,000 and 5,000 feet, and when immediately above it is dived as nearly vertically as possible on to it. The bomb is released in the normal way, during the dive, at about 2,500 feet; the aeroplane is eased out of the dive and withdrawn for the next attack *before it gets below 2,000 feet*. Those who advocate defence by anti-aircraft rifle fire will note that the attacking machine never comes within effective rifle range.* Taking into consideration improved design of bombs and sighting arrangements, there is no reason to suppose that this method of attack will produce results any less accurate than those obtained by a gun firing over open sights, at a range of about 1,000 yards.

Low bombing.—This is carried out in a similar fashion to medium altitude bombing. The machine is dived vertically on to the target in order to ensure that the trajectory of the descent of the bomb is as straight as possible. The pilot commences his dive from a height of something under 2,000 feet, the bomb is released at about 500–600 feet and the machine eased out of its dive at about 200–300 feet.

In both methods the bomb used has an instantaneous fuse, so that the lateral area covered by the “burst” is almost as large as the vertical. At the conclusion of the dive, the machine will be travelling at a speed of something in the neighbourhood of 200 yards per second.

Machine-gun attacks.—As explained previously, the pilot, in order to bring his front guns to bear, must align the nose of his machine on to the target; and at first sight it would seem that speed—so essential to air fighting—may become a positive hindrance when engaging stationary or nearly stationary targets.

Assume that the pilot starts a straight steep dive on to an objective at a distance of 1,000 yards. The speed of the machine will rise very rapidly, so that at most he will not

* S.A.T., Vol. II, 1931. Section 36 (1), top of page 178.

have more than six or seven seconds in which to align his sights, fire his burst and avoid the ground. As pilots are but human, either the accuracy of aim or the length of burst is bound to suffer. Although it is one of the cardinal rules of attack that speed must be controlled with very fast machines, it seems probable that the final dive will not be steep, and that the aeroplane will approach the target at as flat an angle as possible. This is a contentious statement, but its justification is to be found in the characteristics of the machine gun, whether fired from the ground or the air.

In aerial combat the object of the pilot is to put all his bullets into the very small area represented by the hostile airman's body. In engaging ground targets his object is to hit a number of bodies, spread over a comparatively large area. In the latter case he does not want to make certain of killing *one* man, but to kill or wound as many as possible. He therefore requires, not intense concentration, but distribution of his bullets. His capacity to alter his angle of dive enables him to vary the length of the beaten zone of his fire on the ground. Thus, if he dives vertically on to the target, he will have a short beaten zone, whilst if he approaches at a very flat angle it will be almost as long as that of a gun firing at ground level (see Diagram 1).

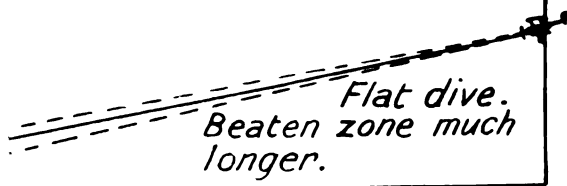
Accordingly, so that he may secure the maximum time to aim, the longest possible burst, the best possible results from his fire, and finally the least risk of his hitting the ground, it seems that his attack would probably follow a course similar to that shown in Diagram 2. Further, the flatter the concluding portion of the dive, the greater is the range at which the pilot can justifiably open fire ; for the increased dimensions of the beaten zone compensate for decreased accuracy of aim.*

SUITABLE TARGETS FOR AIR ATTACK.

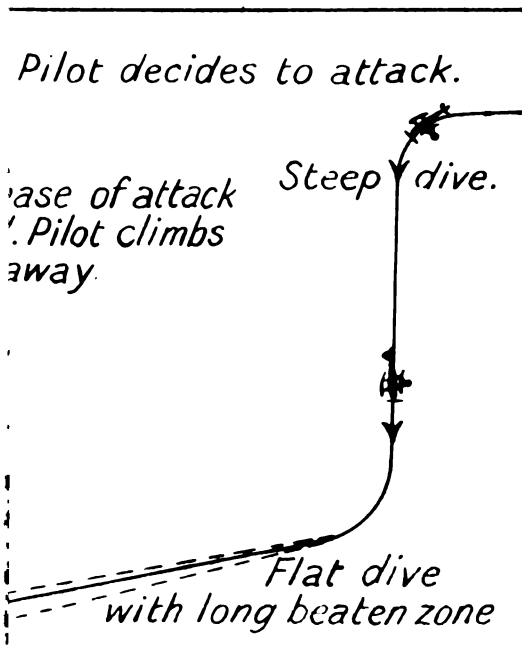
We can now consider the various types of marks which cavalry should, at all costs, avoid presenting to hostile aircraft.

* An R.A.F. Officer to whom this article was submitted for criticism remarks on the above "I agree, but lots of others might not." It would be interesting to hear what the foreign air forces do.

e.
very small.



AM 1.



M 2.

The importance of the horse to mobility, whether regarded from the point of view of the attacking aeroplane or the defending unit, cannot be over-emphasized ; and, let it be noted that, on a weight basis, one horse presents approximately *five* times the vulnerable area of one man ; so that a troop, in close formation, has a target value of about eighty to ninety men. Suitable targets are given below :—*

- (1) *Mass targets.*—Any formation of squadrons or troops in which the men and horses are so closely bunched together that they are all likely to be included in the spread of one bomb or in one burst of machine-gun fire.
- (2) *Long stationary lines.*—Attacking down the length of the line, the pilot can, by gradually easing the machine out of the dive, include the whole line in the zones of his front guns. This type is almost the perfect enfilade target.
- (3) *Men in small groups, which in one direction or another make straight lines.*—This is similar to (2) above, as the pilot can easily engage all the groups by laying his machine guns on the first and then gradually bringing the nose of the machine up in order to hit the second, the third, and so on. Further, it is possible that if very close, two or more groups may be included in one burst of machine-gun fire or in the spread of one bomb.
- (4) *Moving columns, whether of sections or single files.*—If, as will generally be the case, the pilot attacks from the rear, the length of the beaten zone will include a certain amount of the column ; the remainder will be engaged by the pilot gradually lifting the nose of the machine and by the fact that the column will be moving with the beaten zone.

The above are suitable targets for air attack, because they permit the pilot to make full use of the length of his beaten zone, and allow him, by easing the nose of his machine away

* Transport, undoubtedly the most suitable target for air attack has not been included, as its defence requires special study and it is beyond the scope of this article. Further, the weakness of the fire power of a cavalry regiment seems to make it necessary that the defence of its transport should be the subject of a special order. F.S.R., Vol. 11, 1929. Section 58 (9).

from the ground, to hit a portion of the target which is further away. If these targets are offered in war, they will certainly be accepted by any hostile aircraft, for the probability of inflicting heavy casualties will quite outweigh the possibility of machines being damaged or brought down.

Conversely, the targets which every body of mobile troops should attempt to present are those which do not offer such facilities to the pilot, and in engaging which he must rely on the *width* of the beaten zone, which is very narrow at the shorter ranges. Some of this type are enumerated below :—

- (1) *Small groups of men, widely dispersed, no three being in a straight line, in any direction.*—It will suffice if the groups are far enough apart to prevent any two being included in the maximum length of beaten zone which the pilot can produce. The effect of the angle of dive on the length of beaten zone introduces a mathematical problem, which when the increased initial velocity of the bullet and wind resistance are taken into consideration, seems incapable of exact solution. By graphic formula, however, it may be assumed that for angles of dive between 10 and 20 degrees to the horizontal, the beaten zone will extend over a distance of from 40 to 30 yards, decreasing as the angle increases. Allowing for further “spread,” caused by the number of machine guns and errors in aligning them, and by the vibration set up by the machine itself, it seems that a dispersion of 75 yards would be ample.

With regard to the second condition—that no three groups should be in a straight line in any direction—this may, at first sight, seem impossible to achieve. It must, however, be remembered that any reasonable deflection from the straight will give protection, for the relaying of a machine travelling at over 150 yards per second, on to a fresh target *at short range*, i.e., within an incredibly short period of time, is not an easy task.

- (2) *Extended lines of men moving forward to their front.**—

* “Cavalry Training,” Vol. II, 1929. Section 40 (6). The “bombing from the air” mentioned in line 3, would seem to be high altitude bombing, hence the advocacy of normal artillery formation.

The attack on such a target is considered :—

- (a) From front or rear.
 - (b) From angles up to 45 degrees from the line of movement.
 - (c) From the flank.
- (a) At 500 yards the width of the beaten zone is 2.3 yards, and therefore any extension over this should ensure that no more than one man and horse, or one pack horse leader and the pack horse, are included in one burst.
- (b) For attacks up to 45 degrees from the line of movement, it will suffice if each man were to incline so as to place himself on the direct line of flight of the machine, i.e., ride straight away from or straight towards it. The extension should be such that when each man has turned through 45 degrees there should still be sufficient gap to ensure that not more than one man and horse can be included in one burst. Theoretically, the width of the beaten zone at 600–700 yards (approximately 9 feet), plus half the horse's length (4 feet), plus his breadth (say 3 feet), should be sufficient. In practice, a 7 yard extension should satisfy the above condition.

Attacks at angles of over 45 degrees from the line of movement should be dealt with as if from a flank.

- (c) If, in order to secure the advantage of the length of his beaten zones, the pilot attacks from the flank, another factor is introduced, namely that the target *can* move laterally across the line of fire. This movement, though slight, can be turned to advantage. Assume the speed of the attacking machine to be 150 yards per second. The human brain being what it is, the pilot cannot delay more than four or five seconds of flight from the target before opening fire, and the time might easily be double this. This period represents a range of 600–700 yards, for which the time of flight of the bullet is 1–1.25 seconds. This ignores the added velocity, since this would be very largely offset by increased

wind resistance. During this time of 1-1.25 seconds, a horse trotting at 8 miles an hour covers 12-15 feet, and one galloping at 15 miles an hour 22-28 feet. There is still the width of the beaten zone to be allowed for, and as this at 600-700 yards is about 9 feet, it is clear that whilst the trot is too slow, the gallop will carry the horse and rider forward out of the danger area.

Admittedly, the pilot can make allowances for deflection, but this only adds to his other problems and must, therefore, be to the advantage of the troops.

As soon, therefore, as a sub-unit commander sees the nose of the hostile aircraft begin to come down on to a line with him, he should break into a smart gallop, continuing until the aeroplane has "flattened out," i.e., for about 10 or 12 seconds, or 70-100 yards. The line, of course, should be kept as straight as possible, in order to narrow the width of the target; otherwise a burst aimed at the foremost might, and probably would, hit those behind. Similarly, any attempt to adopt an arrow-head formation, thus broadening the vulnerable area, should be discouraged.

THE AIR DEFENCE OF THE REGIMENT.

In the light of the foregoing discussion, we can now examine the question of protection, which for this purpose is sub-divided under two broad headings, viz.: "At the halt" and "On the move." This division is necessary, since a cavalry regiment when mounted and on the move cannot dismount and become ready to protect itself in less than a minute, at a very conservative estimate; and, during this period modern aeroplanes will have time to (a) fly two miles, (b) attack the regiment in process of dismounting, and (c) reach a point a mile away from it. It follows, therefore, that if a regiment is attacked when on the move its best course is to remain so and to seek refuge (if it has not already done so) in protective dispositions. Anything is better than to be caught in a stage of transition—unable to move and unable to fire.*

* Compare F.S.R., Vol. II, 1929. Section 58 (9) (last sentence) C.T., Vol. 1, 1931. Section 178 (10), and C.T., Vol. II, 1929. Section 38 (5).

Although, for successful defence, all three methods of protection must be considered and each must be allotted its correct value according to the particular tactical situation, yet, in the remarks that follow prior place is given to protective dispositions, because (a) its adoption is in accordance with one of the chief characteristics of cavalry; and (b) it is obviously better to attempt to deny a suitable target to the enemy airman than to offer him one and then try to protect it by inadequate small arms fire.

At the halt.

Protective dispositions (see Diagrams 3, 4 and 5).—Nowadays the troop is, at the best, numerically a very small unit, and when all-round protection has been arranged there will seldom be more than 15 or 16 men and horses to be dealt with. So long as the country admits of it, nothing more is needed than a dispersion by troops, provided that the sections in each troop are separated so as to take advantage of any cover or shade that there may be in the troop area. In order to avoid more than one troop being included in the beaten zone, troops should be separated by not less than 150 yards. A further distance of 300 yards should be allowed between the inner flanks of squadrons. At first sight it may seem that these distances are too large to maintain control; but a few suitable additions to the "battle code" should overcome this difficulty; and, in any case, there would be less dispersion than in the case of the Desert Mounted Column at the battle of Beersheba, where, in the words of Wavell, "It was mainly because the squadrons had been scattered to escape from air attack that IT TOOK SO LONG TO COLLECT GRANT'S BRIGADE FOR THE FINAL CHARGE."

If the country does not admit of dispersion then the condition of the regiment which is forced to remain in close formation is desperate. Not only will it present a very suitable target for machine-gun, medium altitude and low bombing attacks, but also its very large vulnerable area will be a good objective for the heavier missiles of the day and heavy bomber

squadrons. Under these conditions it seems that the regiment will have to be air-protected or, at least, defended by anti-aircraft artillery.

Anti-aircraft small arms fire.—This method of defence is dealt with in "Small Arms Training," Vol. II; but tactically one extremely important point seems to have been overlooked, namely *the siting of the fire power.*

An aeroplane engaged in ground attack may present one of three types of target—"diving," "climbing," or "crossing." The first—diving—is the simplest to fire at from the ground for, as the pilot has to point the machine at the target in order to bring his front guns to bear, in two out of the three planes he will be relatively stationary to the target. The third is unimportant, as it is represented by a line along which the aeroplane is moving, and which, if produced sufficiently, would pass through the middle of the target. A direct diving aeroplane is, therefore, relatively a "sitting" shot. These favourable conditions are not to be found in either the "climbing" or "crossing" machine.

As regards the former, it must not be imagined that having finished his dive the pilot will climb straight away from the target. Realising his vulnerability, this is the last thing that he will do. He will make every effort to move his machine, as viewed from the target, through all three planes, thus reducing the chances of being hit. He may execute a simple climbing turn or one with too much rudder, thus causing the aeroplane, whilst still moving forwards, to slip upwards and outwards. He may climb vertically away from the target, and as he does so "roll" upwards—a corkscrew movement about the machine's longer axis—thus denying a good aiming mark, or he may carry out some other manœuvre with the express purpose of confusing the fire of the defence.

As regards the latter, the crossing machine—the aeroplane as viewed by the troops firing—is moving through at least two planes, and along one of them at a speed of about 170–190 yards per second. If a hit is scored on this type of target it will be due more to luck than to skill.

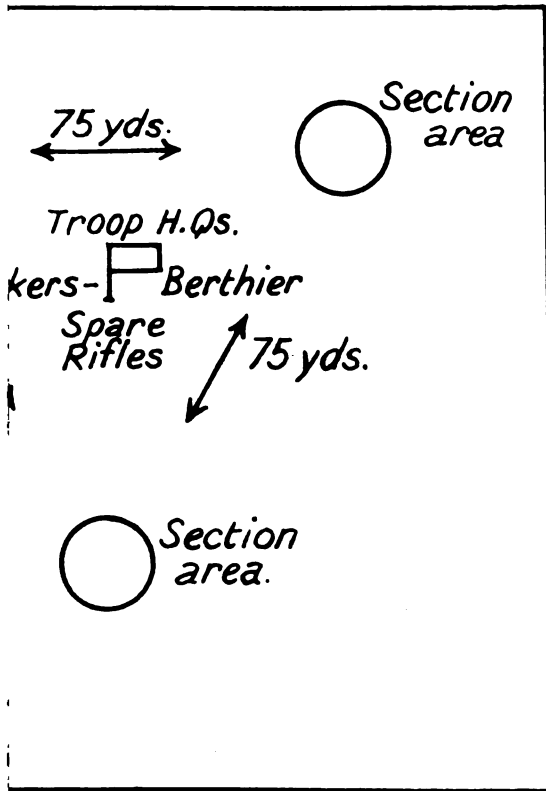


DIAGRAM 3.

Positions for one troop, when halted.

i
i
i
c
c
i
t
t
t
t
l
u
a
I
I
a
c
f
t
h
a
n
c
a
o
a
t
h
p
v
p
y
w

The question, therefore, arises: "In what position should the fire-power be placed so that an attacking aeroplane will always present itself as a direct, or nearly direct, diving target?"

The answer is simple—"Right in the middle of the troops to be defended"; for, if the pilot is going to attack them, he must first point his nose at the target, thus converting himself into a direct diver.

Whether, therefore, the defence relies for its protection on the rifle or the Vickers-Berthier, or a combination of both, is immaterial; the fire-power, whatever it is, should always be placed in the centre of the troops to be protected.

Concealment.—This method of defence has already been touched on and it remains to reiterate that cover to be of any use must be sufficiently dense or cast enough shadow to hide both men and horses completely; and that it must have been reached and entered without the pilot's knowledge.

If these two conditions can be fulfilled, concealment is probably the best method of defence; but it cannot be stated too strongly that the practice of "HIDING" 12 or 15 men and horses under an isolated tree, or of troops or squadrons dashing into small copses in full view of the aeroplane, will result in heavy casualties.

Diagrams 3, 4 and 5 illustrate suggested dispositions, when halted, for a troop, a squadron, and a regiment. No ground protective troops are shown, for if units or sub-units are detached for this purpose it will merely increase the suggested amount of dispersion, and therefore need not be considered. It will be noted that the Vickers-Berthier light automatic and available rifles are disposed for the protection of each troop separately, and that, except indirectly, no attempt is made to defend the regiment or squadron as a whole. The reason for this is to be found in the characteristics of the aeroplane's offensive weapons. Unlike its opposite number on the ground, fire from an aeroplane's machine guns cannot be traversed, nor can it be rapidly switched from one target to another. A bomb, like the shell from a gun, is only effective within the

“spread” of the burst. Unless, therefore, the objective is found in mass formation, the pilot will have to engage each small portion, individually, in a separate operation. If there is sufficient dispersion he cannot, by one bomb or by one burst of his guns, cause casualties to the whole regiment or squadron, although he can, and probably will, inflict losses on those separate portions which he has opportunity and sufficient ammunition to attack. The object of this dispersion of fire-power is to defend each separate and separated portion of the regiment or squadron, and by this means to protect the larger unit as a whole.

It may be argued that the absence of mutual support between sub-units may enable the pilot to engage each target at his leisure, and thus to destroy the whole piecemeal. There is, however, no force in such an argument, since troops are only separated by 150 yards, and as any hostile machine within 600 yards may be engaged by small arms fire,* the fire of all four troops can be concentrated on to a machine which is attacking one, or at the most, two of them.

A low-flying pilot is in constant danger of attack from, and at a tactical disadvantage when opposed to, any hostile formation flying above him. The number of rounds of machine-gun ammunition available to him is limited and cannot be replenished when in the air, whilst he must always retain some for possible aerial combat during the return journey. No pilot, therefore, is going to spend one moment longer at low altitudes, or fire one round more at ground objectives, than the value of the target demands. If troops are well dispersed and well protected by fire and aiming marks are small, the pilot, aware of his vulnerability to air attack when close to the ground, and the necessity for husbanding his ammunition, will not stay on the order of his going but will return to his best air-fighting height as soon as ever he can get there.

I do not suggest that the diagrams illustrate the only or even the best method of protection by dispersion and fire. But the dispositions shown *do* fulfil the two necessary conditions of

* Field Service Regulations, 1929, Vol. II. Section 58 (9).

(1) denying suitable targets to the enemy ; and (2) placing the fire-power in a position to which the attacking aeroplane will always present itself as the easiest of all air targets, namely the direct or nearly direct diver.

On the move.

Moves are considered under two main headings, viz., Marches and Tactical Operations.

Marches. (a) In enclosed country.—In many parts of the world the country does not permit dispersion at short notice. Cavalry caught by low-flying aeroplanes under such conditions is, indeed, at an overwhelming disadvantage. It offers ideal targets to the hostile aircraft, and has only very limited fire-power with which to retaliate.

As a word picture of what is likely to happen in such circumstances, the following extracts from a book which deals with the achievements of Baron von Richthofen (Germany's famous war pilot) is hard to better :—

“ A long column of Cossacks were riding four abreast over a single bridge* when Richthofen arrived above the spot, with a plane laden with bombs and machine-gun ammunition. Three times the air guerilla swooped low and each time another bomb landed among the massed horsemen, creating terrific havoc. Men and animals were rushing and dragging themselves away in all directions from the centre of the bomb burst. The disorder was complete, with officers urging their men to reform and proceed, but with every mind intent above anything else on the danger from the air.

With all bombs expended, the two flyers repeated their swoop manœuvre, spraying the column with machine-gun lead. Men toppled off their horses and were trampled beneath their comrades who were galloping behind them. Horses rolled on the ground and others fell over them. ‘We enjoyed it tremendously,’ wrote Richthofen, ‘and I imagined that I alone had caused the Russian attack to fail.’ ”

* Which is not vastly different from a road with barbed wire fences on either side.

It remains to be said that if hostile air action is threatened, or even is possible, a cavalry formation which by force of circumstances is compelled for any length of time to move along enclosed roads will have to be protected either by its own air force keeping the sky above it clear, or by anti-aircraft batteries. A system of piquetting by the Vickers-Berthier light automatics could, with advantage, be arranged, provided that light motor transport was available for the rapid conveyance of these weapons from the rear to the head of the column.

Marches. (b) In open country.—Provided that the country admits of dispersion, cavalry, by denying suitable targets, as explained above, becomes almost immune from air attack as long as it continues to move. There are, however, some who consider that the anti-aircraft rifle troops should halt and dismount, in order to bring fire to bear on hostile aircraft. To decide whether this opinion is correct no more is needed than to consider certain factors of time and space, as follows:—

- (1) As attacking machines are not likely to advertise their approach more than is absolutely necessary, it is improbable that the air sentries will identify them as hostile at a range of anything over one mile. The time of flight for this is 12–15 seconds.
- (2) The average times, ascertained by actual experiment, in which a troop in field service marching order can halt (from the trot), dismount, hand over their horses, double up to their troop leader and fire the first volley are as follows:—

Horseholder mounted, holding three horses, 28 seconds.

Horseholder mounted, holding one horse, 22 seconds.

With rifles previously drawn the timings were slightly lower, being respectively 26 and 20 seconds. In the case of the horseholder holding ONE horse the reins were not taken “over” but were passed straight to him. The strength of the troop on which the above timings were made was one officer and eighteen other ranks. Vickers-Berthier was not present. With one man holding three horses the firing strength was TEN and, in the other case, SIX rifles. The men of the troop who

carried out the above were fresh, had not done a long and possibly fatiguing march, and had been previously warned what they were required to do. It was noticed that the time for each successive "action" tended to get worse, and at the end of a long day's march the above results would in all probability not be achieved. "Action" to the rear—the probable direction of attack—took slightly longer than that to the front or flanks.

It seems, therefore, clear that the speed and invisibility of the modern fighter aeroplane are such that it is impossible to expect troops to get into action before the first phase of the attack is over.

If it is contended that even if they were not in time to fire at the machines during the first attack—they would at least be able to do so during the second and succeeding phases—there is still a reply. If the regiment continued to move at a trot (235 yards per minute) either the range would be great or the rifle troops, if required to move forward and keep fairly close to what they were protecting, could never be in action in one place for more than about a minute.

It may be suggested that as each squadron moves beyond the protection of its rifle troop another one should dismount and come into action. This would certainly produce at least a denial of suitable targets by increasing the dispersion, but it would also cause much galloping from rear to front, and almost inevitably would ultimately lead to the formation of a column down the length of which the pilot could, with advantage, attack. It must not be assumed that an aeroplane, when once apparently committed to an attack, must carry it through. The modern machine is very easy to manœuvre, and pilots are as likely as anyone else to make use of feints and ruses. Nothing could be simpler for the pilot than to make a show of attacking so as to make the rifle troops dismount, change its manœuvre to gain time, and then make his proper attack when the regiment or squadron has moved two or three hundred yards away from its protection.

In the ensuing paragraphs, therefore, no attempt is made to bring any anti-aircraft rifle troops into action, and it is

assumed that the regiment is engaged in an operation in which time is of sufficient importance to prevent it from halting and seeking protection in suitable cover. It is, of course, largely a matter of opinion whether this or some other similar formation should be maintained permanently when on the move or not. The factor of surprise, however, rests with the aircraft, and therefore until greater experience IN WAR is gained, it seems advisable that "air formation" should be the order for march rather than the exception. In Diagram 6 a regiment is shown which is providing its own advanced guard. It is obvious that protective troops will be more widely dispersed than those they are protecting, and as their primary role is not to defend themselves from air attack but others from ground attack, the advanced guard is shown in normal formation. The remainder of the regiment is shown in double echelon, with 300 yards between the inner flanks of squadrons. Each squadron is in irregular diamond formation with 200 yards between troops. Each troop is in line with men extended to 7 yards. The machine gun and signal troop are on the inner flank of the regiment.

Pilots are unlikely to waste ammunition on or remain long at low altitudes for a chance shot at a well-dispersed formation, and the result will probably be stalemate as far as air attack is concerned. In the meantime, however, the regiment will be fulfilling its ground role—a point not to be lost sight of.

In fairly open country control should not present any particular difficulties, and such a method of movement will be considerably less fatiguing—mentally for the man and physically for the horse—than marching along a road.

The disadvantages are that the country may be very broken and that flank squadrons may have to close in on the main axis of advance from time to time in order to pass various obstacles. These difficulties will, of course, be found in any open formation, and it remains to add that anything is better for cavalry than for it to allow itself to be caught on the move IN CLOSE FORMATION.

The question of closing on the main axis of advance is in every way similar to the passage of a defile, which is dealt with below.

Diagram 7 shows a suggested formation for a regiment not providing its own advanced guard. It is similar in many respects to Diagram 6 and requires no special comment.

Marches. (c) Passage of defiles.—Any natural or artificial feature which causes cavalry to contract its normal front during its passage through it will offer opportunities for air attack and will have to be negotiated in a separate operation. Since dispersion and concealment are denied to it, cavalry will be thrown back on small arms fire for its protection. Any normal system of piquetting should suffice, as long as the fire-power is placed in position before the regiment (as opposed to the advanced guard) enters the defile. As stated in the "Manual of Anti-aircraft Defence (Army Units)" the Vickers-Berthier of each squadron could, with advantage, be grouped in fours. According to the length of the defile, and in order to ensure constant protection, the light automatics of all squadrons must be employed, the fire-power keeping pace with the regiment by a system of leap-frogging from the rear. Particular attention must always be paid to the tail of the column as pilots the world over have an unpleasant habit of attacking from the blind side.

TACTICAL OPERATIONS.

The study of tactical operations requires a correct appreciation of the complementary role of cavalry towards the other arms. In reconnaissance and protective duties the amount of attention which can be paid to anti-aircraft defence measures must depend entirely on the ground situation, and the test of every action must be the extent to which it is calculated to contribute to the object in view. An enemy commander, possessed of air superiority and confronted by an unpleasantly inquisitive cavalry regiment, may well attempt to relieve himself of their unwelcome attentions by the delivery of a low-flying attack. In similar fashion he may try to disorganize,

temporarily, mobile troops covering an advance in order to effect a surprise attack on the columns in the rear.

When working on independent missions, and therefore having no direct responsibility towards the other arms, cavalry will naturally be able to move and fight with due regard to air defensive requirements.

In battle cavalry may even see the air arm taking an active part. The writer well remembers seeing two Bristol fighters assist in the neutralising of his own regiment's machine-gun covering fire during an inter-brigade mounted exercise at Hatti in November, 1925.

In pursuit or withdrawal the air force which has acquired superiority may well hear a repetition of Sir John Salmond's order to the corps scouting squadrons during the German break through in March, 1918. "These squadrons will bomb and shoot up everything they can see on the enemy side of the line. Very low flying is essential. All risks to be taken."

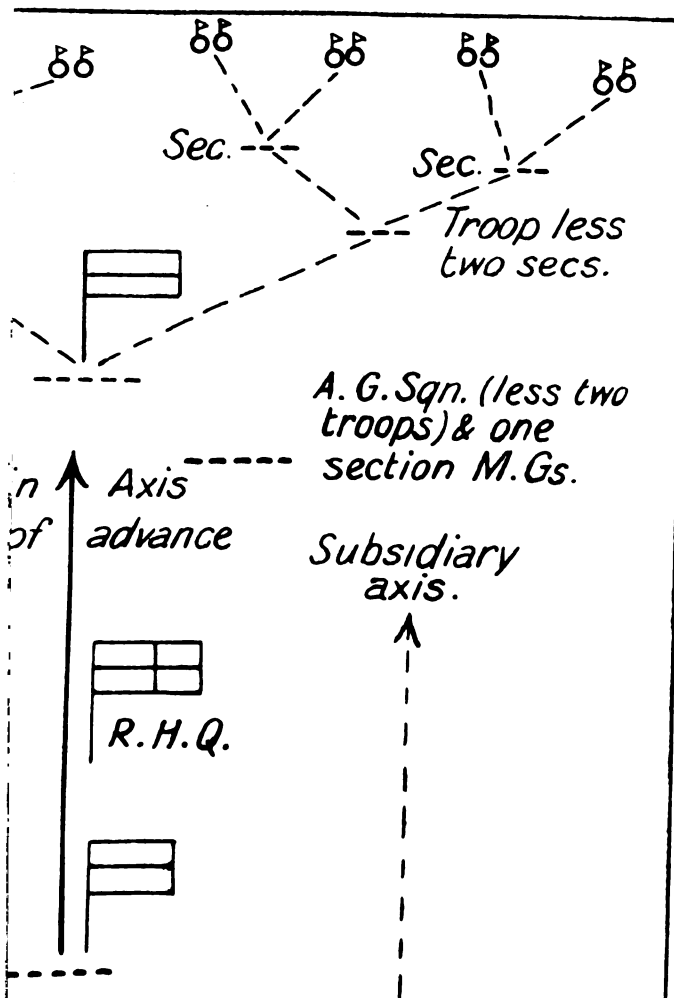
Unless its own air force has the superiority, cavalry engaged in the above operations may and probably will find its work seriously interfered with by hostile aircraft; it is inconceivable that an enemy commander, who has partial command of the sky, will not use every available machine to force or evade a particular issue.

When employed as a mobile reserve, cavalry having no duty to perform towards other arms and being, for the moment, only concerned with its own protection, will be able to move and halt, with every regard for all three of the air defensive measures.

Where the complementary role exists, the principle of co-operation demands that this shall be sustained; and if in the fulfilment of this casualties from the air result, cavalry must be prepared to accept these as an unavoidable corollary of the march of science.

CONCLUSION.

Although as an arm the aeroplane, in its strategical and tactical value, is neither fully appreciated nor as yet fully



ale.
yards.
formation as far as possible, no two troops
between neighbouring troops, and 300 yards between
be a trot, the particular target breaking into a
attack is over.

developed, its presence in the fighting Services of all first-class nations demands that attention be paid to its potentialities. Recent and future developments must have an effect on those who are compelled to fight on the ground, and the extent of that effect can only at present be imagined. Whether, in this article, the faculty of imagination has been over-indulged or sufficiently controlled to bring forecast within the range of possibility, is a question which can only be decided by the experience gained in a fresh war between two first-class Powers. In the meantime, however, it must be remembered that, whilst the vulnerability of cavalry (though it may be less than that of the other arms, to whom dispersion though possible is also inconvenient), and the methods of air defence have remained practically unaltered, the aeroplane, as a weapon of offence, has undergone improvement of which the importance cannot yet be assessed.

So long as the potential danger is recognized, however dimly, and adequate arrangements are made to meet it when it materialises, it will matter nothing should that danger, after all, prove to be a shadow. But should the menace prove to be real and one which in war cannot be ignored, then those who in peace have prepared themselves to combat it, will reap the benefit of their forethought.

Finally, let it be said that although the major role assigned to a foreign air force by its government may be the destruction of civil populations and industrial areas, the preponderance of numbers of machines of our potential enemies over our own will enable them more easily to carry out any or all of the minor roles which must be sustained by the contingent accompanying the army in the field.



*OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS***(October 17, 1917, to January 25, 1918)*

BEING EXTRACTS FROM THE DIARIES OF MAJOR A. J. R. LAMB,
D.S.O., THE QUEEN'S BAYS

AGABNA WAD ARANGA, chief of the Nuba tribes inhabiting the Nyima Gebels, had for many months been showing symptoms of open hostility to the Sudan Government. Friendly Arabs and other Nubas, moving about the country on their lawful occasions, were repeatedly attacked by his followers. All the roads amongst the *gebels* had thus become dangerous and even impassable. Finally a British official, sent to expostulate with Agabna and to warn him of the inevitable consequences of such an attitude, was attacked and murdered. Since no other action appeared likely to avail, Agabna was at length proclaimed an outlaw, whilst his followers—several thousand in number—were thenceforth to be regarded as public enemies.

The question of a punitive expedition was then mooted, and it was decided to send troops to exact retribution, and the subsequent operations became known as the "Nyima Gebel Patrol (Patrol 32)." But the assembly of the troops employed on the Patrol was preceded by the despatch of a small force which spent several weeks in harrying the recalcitrant Nubas, confining them to their *gebels* and burning their crops; the object was to destroy their food supplies so that, when the real operations began, the enemy would be less able to offer any prolonged resistance.

Wonderful accounts had come in concerning the work of this little force; of their dashes to the foot of the mountains under fire of the Nubas perched up above; of the *dura*† crops set ablaze; of the rush back to safety. Two British officers and several native soldiers were killed in the course of many skirmishes, which, as the event showed, had gone far to

* Gebel is a mountain or "tor" of granite composed chiefly of massive boulders, which is peculiar to this part of the world; the "g" is pronounced hard as in "gimlet."

† A species of millet.

Editor's Note.—Major Lamb had been sent to the Sudan by reason of illness contracted whilst on active service in France. The names of all other officers mentioned in this narrative are fictitious.

demoralizing the Nuba opposition. By October the advanced force had achieved its purpose. The rains had finished so that the main force was able to assemble at Dilling, a native village lying some 8 miles to the east of the hostile mountains.

On 17th October I left Shendi, situated about 100 miles North of Khartum, with my squadron, 2nd Sudanese Cavalry, by rail. At 5 a.m. on the 18th we reached Khartum, where No. 3 Battery and other details were entrained. At 7 p.m. we were off again, the horses closely packed in cattle trucks, ten abreast. Soon after leaving Khartum I found two of them suffering from severe colic, lying down in a most precarious position amongst the hoofs of the others. We took them out, walked them round, dosed them with "sim-sim" oil, a supply of which I had brought in ginger-beer bottles. It seemed to do them good. But further on one of them lay down again. Whilst I was dosing him, the train started again, so I had to travel the best part of an hour half-crushed among the animals.

Sennar was reached at 7 p.m. For 200 miles from Khartum the country had been perfectly flat, one vast plain covered with ripening *dura*, the staple grain of the Sudan. As the train crept along, mile after mile, it seemed to be a ship steaming through a sea of *dura*, above which an occasional if very rare tree appeared over the horizon like a steamer in the distance.

After Sennar the railway turns West and crosses the White Nile at Kosti, which we passed in the night. Next morning the scenery had changed; we were among long grass and bush, and in many parts there were ponds and swamps, surrounded by grass six foot high. Away to the south we saw a great mountain mass, misty and blue, very weird, rising quite sharply to over 2,000 feet from the plain: this was Gebel Daier, the highest point of South Kordofan. The native huts, or *tukls*, were all built of thatch or *dura* stalks, circular in shape, and much resembling a bell tent, though somewhat larger. They were mostly surrounded by thatched fences. At 2 p.m. we reached El Obeid the railway terminus, 600 miles from Khartum, where we spent four days preparing for the march to Dilling.

In the station mess I found 23 officers and officials preparing for the operations.

My command now consisted of one Egyptian and two Sudanese subalterns with 100 rank and file. These were mounted on 76 Syrian Arab stallions and 24 Abyssinian mules. In addition there were 50 Abyssinian mules carrying baggage, supplies and forage for four days. Provided we could find water we were thus a self-contained unit. Four mules carried my own kit and stores. My cook, Soliman, could not have ridden anything but a camel before, since he gave us a most comic exhibition at the start, nearly carrying away a tent on his mule's hind legs.

After sending off my heavy transport, consisting of 22 camel loads, two days' march ahead, I started late on 23rd October.

For four miles we rode along a prepared road up a long slope between crops of huge *dakhan* or millet ; this is chiefly used for feeding animals. My horses were now on a mixed ration of *dakhan* and *dura*. At 9.45 p.m., after covering 20 miles, we reached Fertingul, where there were military pumps supplying a 600-gallon trough. The transport mules arrived an hour later, so we did not finish settling down till midnight. I slept in my valise until 3.30 a.m. when we saddled up : the mosquitoes were bad.

As day broke we saw that we were traversing beautiful bush scenery : endless big trees in full foliage and long white grass over a foot high—it was like riding through some great park. Nineteen miles from Fertingul we reached Hammadi, where there was another water-trough. It was 10.45 a.m. I had intended to push on another 7 miles to Nabbaka, but as the transport was late and many of the horses had slight rubs and galls, I decided to stop and make for Aradeib, where there was water, next morning.

Apart from small birds, vultures, some guinea fowl and a few bustard, little animal or bird life was to be seen. The road was in reality a series of parallel donkey tracks, broad and unmistakable all the way. The mechanical transport, employed for the first time, had further marked the whole road to Dilling. Since

leaving El Obeid *heskenit* grass had become a new source of trouble: a short grass, with a head like a little burr, only harder and sharper. It clings and breaks into a sheaf of little spikes that can be most painful and need time to remove: it will pierce even Bedford cord breeches! Horses like to eat it, but it sticks to their legs and backs when they roll, so that it requires great care to remove its traces when saddling up—otherwise 'ware sore backs! So on to Hammadi, where we were forbidden to use the water-trough, presumably as the wells were running dry. Accordingly I sent the animals to a *fula* (pond) some two miles back.

Next morning I sent off the transport mules from Hammadi at 4.15 a.m., following at 5 a.m., so as to avoid having to wait for food at our first halt. It was a dull road, the trees becoming fewer and smaller, although we crossed one very beautiful *khor*. At 8.40 a.m. the squadron arrived at Aradeib, where we were lucky to find an unexpected *fula*. The transport arrived later. As the ponds were muddy with soft bottoms, we watered the animals in a row of canvas troughs, like hip-baths; these being filled by canvas buckets passed by a chain of men from out in the middle of the pond. After dark we seemed to be going downhill and reached country that resembled a dried swamp as far as Sungekai, but had to turn three miles eastwards to water at some *tumads* (a species of surface spring in the sand, banked up into basin-shaped rings in which the water collects). This country looked very attractive in the moonlight as we marched in single file along a narrow track crossing many deep *khors*, which can become raging torrents after rain; one of these *khors* was at least 20 feet deep and 100 yards wide; most of them are well wooded and are very beautiful.

Here I heard that two artillery mules which had camped on this ground two days earlier had died of *nigma*, or horse-sickness, a fatal and incurable ailment that can kill an animal in a few hours. As a precaution I decided not to water that night, and caused several fires of grass and dung to be lit in the horse lines, since it is believed that it is some form of fly that carries the disease. Mosquitoes were bad in the night: I found 20 in my helmet next morning!

In the afternoon we started again : on the way we found a dead mule belonging to our transport : unmistakable symptoms of *nigma*—froth at the mouth and blackish tongue—disappointing after the previous night's precautions. The going was bad : numerous small *khors*, the ground very cracked and bumpy : must have been rather a trial for motor transport. In bright moonlight we reached a thatched rest house between Sungekai and Dilling. At 4.30 a.m. we moved off on our last stage. Four miles from Dilling the *gebels* began to appear above the trees. Soon Fairley, an old friend from Shendi, commanding the M.I. in Dilling, rode up. Then Colonel Smithson with two Staff officers joined us, and so we reached Dilling together. There I was allotted some old M.I. lines, surrounded by a thorn fence, and spent the rest of the day making ready for the operations in view. Fairley and I worked at the maps, correcting them and filling in the sites of all known water. Fairley, having been there some time, had an excellent knowledge of the country and so proved invaluable.

Dilling is a fair-sized native village consisting of *tukls*, lying at the foot of Gebel Dilling. This *gebel* resembles all others in this region—a tumbled heap of black granite boulders, huge, smooth and rounded, layer on layer of them. The lower slopes of these *gebels* are clad with shrub and greenery and a sprinkling of stunted trees. The result of this formation is to make the *gebels* a sort of honeycomb through which the natives can pass from one side of the mountain to the other. These labyrinths are known as *karacours* or caves. They play a dominant role in Nuba warfare. The whole region is studded with them—high black granite *gebels* covered with *tebeldi** trees and bushes

* These trees are extensively used for storing water in Kordofan. When it is decided to bring a *tebeldi* tree into use for this purpose, the following system is adopted by the natives. A boy is slung up the tree and cuts a circular hole through the bark near the top of the main trunk. This done, he proceeds to burrow into the interior through the hole, so that eventually he is inside the trunk of the tree, excavating to the depths of two men's heights ; the diameter of the hollow depends on the diameter of the tree, but plenty of wood has to be left or the weight of the water with which the tree is subsequently filled might burst the containing wall.

During the rainy season a depression is dug round the base of the trunk, so that a small pond is formed. The water from this is raised by hand in water skins and tipped into the tree through the hole near the top until the tree is full up, after which the hole is closed up by a grass and mud plug. When the dry weather comes and no surface water remains, these cisterns are brought into use and water is drawn off as required in waterskins which are lowered by a rope to the ground, the water being tipped into earthenware pots, after which the hole is plugged up once again.



WATER HOLES



SUDANESE CAVALRYMAN ON THE SUMMIT OF A *GEBEL*.



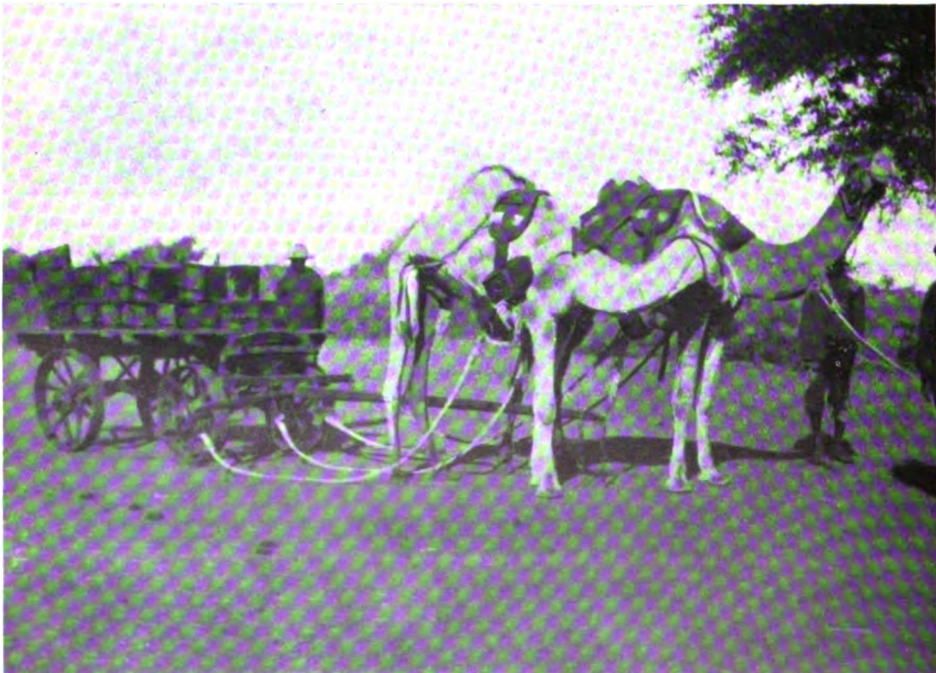
GEBEL TAGEGA



RIPENING "DURA"



FRIENDLY NUBAS



CAMEL WATERCART AT DILLING

up the sides. This gives the country a most picturesque appearance.

The time had now come to turn to the plan of operations. In the past *gebel* warfare had been a tough proposition. At various times since the reconquest of the Sudan operations had been undertaken against rebel tribes in *gebel* country, usually without any very definite result, apart from considerable casualties. This time the force was to be larger: on the other hand, the enemy were more numerous than had ever been known before.

The area of hostilities, known as the Nyima Gebels, could be described as a square with eight mile sides. It is a labyrinth of *gebels*, the largest some fifteen miles, the smaller ones from one mile to a few hundred yards, in perimeter. The Nubas live in *tukl* villages at the foot or near their *gebels*; in war they retire into their mountain caves, where there is more than sufficient room for their families and cattle, not to mention *shweibas* (grain stores made of baked earth).

The Nubas are a jet black race and quite uncivilized. The men wear no clothing except anklets and bracelets. Nearly all the *sabian* (fighting men), varying in age from 18 to 40 years, carry old Remington rifles; a few have more modern weapons. Ammunition is home-made or smuggled from Abyssinia; it consists of a sort of black powder with which old cartridge-cases are filled: the bullet is any odd bit of lead. Should it not fit tightly, it is jammed into the case with a bit of rag. If the cartridge is a loose fit in the rifle it is made tight with packing. These old rifles they will fire quite fearlessly, regardless of all risks.* The shooting is somewhat erratic; in fact most Nubas remove the back sights off the rifles as interfering with the line of sight!

The Nuba language is utterly different to Arabic, and unintelligible to most people. It varies from *gebel to gebel*, and even in one very large *gebel* various sub-tribes may be found who are unable to converse among themselves.

* These rifles were the spoils of Hicks Pasha's ill-fated expedition with which the relief of El Obeid was attempted in 1883.

As a rule their tactics are primitive in the extreme ; very rarely is there any cohesion among them. But when sniping in defence of their villages and caves they can become really dangerous, and inflict many casualties on attacking troops. They seldom come out into the open or leave their *gebels*, owing to their fear of being caught. On the latter no plainsman could ever hope to catch them, for they are agile as monkeys and most difficult to see. Their *tukl* villages are equally hard to locate. I have a great respect for the Nuba. Physically he is usually a fine man, with a good sense of humour and in many cases he is a "sportsman." He can make a first-class soldier, who, with training, will often make quite a good shot. Judging by the resistance he put up during these operations, though half-starved and terribly thirsty, it must be admitted that there is "a lot in him."

The plan of operations now adopted was simple, and is best understood with reference to the attached map. The country is all difficult, the hardest parts being round Gebel Nyima, Gebel Salara and the Kelara group. It had been arranged that the friendly chief Nimera, of the Tendia Gebels, should evacuate his village and move to Gebel Funda as soon as the troops arrived at Tendia. Similarly, the inhabitants of Geben Nitl were to move to Gebel Abu Seiba.

The object of the operations was threefold :—

- (a) The killing or capture of Agabna Wad Aranga ;
- (b) The seizure of all enemy arms, ammunition and cattle ; the destruction of enemy crops ;
- (c) The capture of all young men and headmen of recalcitrant tribes.

The numbers of the enemy could only be roughly estimated. In the Salara *gebels* alone there might be 400-500 riflemen.

About 150 friendly Baggara Arab horsemen had been enlisted. These were divided into three groups, each reinforced by 10 mounted policemen. One of each of these groups was to block the tracks leading away north, west and south of the Nyima area respectively. These Arabs are the hereditary enemies of the Nubas.

OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS 297

Three columns, working from bases east, south and north, were to converge on to the enemy area and reduce the hostile *gebels* step by step. These columns and their bases were as follows :—

- (i) *Nitl column*.—Maxim Section No. 4 Battery ; Sudanese Battery ; 4th Battalion less half company ; Detachments of other arms.
- (ii) *Kelama column*.—Arab Maxim Battery ; 11th Sudanese Battalion ; one company 12th Sudanese ; one (double) company Eastern Arab Corps ; one company Nuba Territorials ; detachments of other arms.
- (iii) *Ullal column*.—No. 3 Company, M.I. ; H.Q. and three companies Camel Corps ; No. 4 Battery (less Maxim Section) ; half company 4th Battalion ; Detachments of other arms.

The headquarters of the force were with the Nitl column.

The Cavalry, No. 2 Squadron (Sudanese), was based on Kelama and attached to H.Q. In absence of orders to the contrary from Headquarters the cavalry was to be at the disposal of the O.C. Kelama column ; in addition, there were a certain number of patrols, and cossack posts to be furnished, daily and nightly, with a view to checking the movements of the Nubas.

At 5 a.m. on 29th October I sent the squadron mule transport off from Dilling with the 11th Sudanese for Kelama Post. Half-an-hour later the squadron marched as escort to a Staff officer ordered to find a supply of water near the Nitl hills sufficient for the force headquarters.

The first thing that struck me, on reaching the *gebels*, was the wonderful neatness of everything ; trim little trees, splendid crops of ripening *dura*. The women only wore little grass ropes round their heads, necks, wrists and ankles and a narrow band of grass dyed a bright blue round their loins. Many were smoking highly ornamental pipes, the mouthpiece being made of a .303 bullet pierced down the centre. Both men and women were remarkably clean, positively glistening from the oil with which they massage their bodies.

By this time we had reached the *gebels*, which towered abruptly from the plain, immense and beautiful to look at: Kermutti, black and bare of all vegetation, lay before us. Half-way along the Nitl Hills Gwynn wished my advanced guard to turn left up the *jahab* (re-entrant or watercourse penetrating a *gebel*) between Kermutti and Nitl. These *jahabs* are usually very beautiful ravines, rocky and wooded, and along them often run the paths leading to water, villages, caves and *gebel* summits.

On the eastern slopes of Kermutti, 400 yards distant, there was not a sign of life; not a shot was fired.

"Where can they have got to?" I remarked to Fairley. "Oh! you won't see many of them, unless they are attacked!" he replied. "They'll all be inside the *gebel* by now, for they have a wholesome respect for us now! You wait till you attack, then you'll find plenty of them all right!"

It was all rather remarkable.

We poked about in the *jahab* but found only a few inadequate wells. We then turned back through *dura* crops, which swished and crackled as the thick stalks snapped short at our advance. The effect of a hundred animals pushing through it was that of a miniature battle.

Next we rode through the ravine running between Gebel Nitl and the Nitl Hills, and at length found water. By scraping away the sand to a depth of six inches there was an abundance of it, good and clear. Such springs can be found even at the tops of the *gebels*; they are known as *mushesshas*. Their existence undoubtedly prolonged the operations, as the Nubas would find them when all other known water-holes were held under artillery or machine-gun fire.

Fairley then returned to Dilling with the other British officers, leaving me two guides.

"Don't let them take you outside Fassu," he said; "it may be safer but it's much longer. Go between Fassu and Tungera. The *sabian* sometimes snipe from Tungera in the day-time, but it's not inhabited, so there's often nobody there."

OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS 299

The guides were useful. Reading a map, especially one that is inaccurate in parts, is a queer game in *gebel* country, which is like a maze—the various rocks and ravines being most difficult to identify. Hugging the side of Fassu so as to avoid the dubious slope of Tungera, we continued without drawing a shot, generally riding in “line of troop columns,” the best formation for this bush country. Occasionally we had to adopt single file, though this is a bad formation for such work; so we moved south-west past the small friendly Gebel Tetibu to Gebel Zungor, a huge crag, the southern face of which is sheer smooth rock about 400 feet high: thence through huge *dura* and *dakhan* crops, 9 or 10 feet high. At noon we reached Kelama Post, a small isolated *gebel*, 2,600 feet above sea level, and 800 feet above the plain. Round it a stout double thorn *zariba* in which the animals were kept. Crichton-Saunders, commanding some Nuba Territorials, had been here with the advanced force and had prepared everything; his own abode of *dura* stalks was perched above a sheer face of rock like an eagle’s eyrie. We shortly began to make a road to allow the Mechanical Transport to reach us direct from Dilling.

Next morning at 6 a.m. a road-making party, 200 strong (including 40 men of my squadron), began clearing the road and burning the grass across the black “cotton soil.” The latter is quite hard in dry weather, and will then carry mechanical transport. They reached Gebel Zungor and went on clearing the way for another three miles between Tungera and Fassu. As they burnt the grass the fire seemed to spread in among the *gebels*, which was lucky as the *dura* was ripe and badly needed by the Nubas to make good the devastation achieved by the advanced force. The Nuba Territorials were wonderfully good workers—all young men and full of life. They *ran* to obey orders. “They are like obedient children,” said Crichton-Saunders, “and do what they’re told without worrying their heads about the rights and wrongs of the case. . . . We sometimes play a sort of war game. A few of them sit on a *gebel* as though an enemy; then we have to capture them and one of them plays Agabna and is hanged. They love it and think

it a great joke. As for Agabna himself, they don't care what happens to him." These Nubas are indeed strange people ; if ordered to do so they will not even scruple to fire into their own villages !

The country south of Kelama reminded me of Surrey except for the distant *gebels*. The evenings were wonderfully cool, while the day-time temperature was nothing like so high as further north. At night bush and grass fires could be seen in the distance, those in the south being the handiwork of our Baggara Arabs.

By the end of the next day the road was only $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles short of Nitl. That evening two of my Syrian horses were off colour. As their temperature was 105° I feared *nigma*. I was right. From that moment till the close of the operations my poor old "hairies" went down with it—sometimes as many as three and four a day, until only five remained out of the seventy-six that had come from Shendi. It was heartbreaking to watch them go, and to feel the only kind act was to put a revolver bullet into their heads. Meticulous precautions were enforced to protect the animals, but they were not successful in saving my Syrians or the Cyprian mules of the batteries. Sudanese country-bred horses and Abyssinian mules resisted the disease and few of them died, although living in close proximity to the animals that died.

On 1st November I interviewed the nominally friendly Sheikh Ali of the village on Gebel Zungor. After endless quibbling he disclosed where abundant water-holes were situated.

"I thought you said you had no more water," said I.

"Oh ! yes. No more."

"But this is more !"

"Oh ! no. This is only our water."

"Why did you not show it me first ?"

"I have brought you straight to it !"

He was undefeatable.

The following day we began to move the column to Kadilibong Wells under Gebel Doma, where henceforward the column headquarters were to be. Meanwhile, I had started at 4.30 a.m.

with only 40 of all ranks, the rest owing to piquets and sick horses having to be left. We rode past Nidl to a point west of Samabda Hill. Gebel Kermutti was now to be attacked. It looked a pretty tough proposition. The 4th (Egyptian) Battalion was to carry out the operation, part from the South, the remainder with a mountain battery and my squadron from where we stood.

Not a sign of life on Kermutti : it stood up, silent, grim and formidable in the half-light of dawn towering up to a height of two or three thousand feet above the plain. Crash ! Bang ! The guns roared ; white puffs dotted the rocks where suspicious holes could be seen. At the same instant there was heard a distant crackle of musketry from the far side of the *gebel*. We mounted, and left the guns with an infantry escort ; past the northern side of Gebel Brand, spraying the rocks from a machine-gun to drive off any snipers, we continued until my scouts came in reporting two hostile *tukl* villages on the northern slope of Gebel Kushi. As a chain of fortified posts was to be set along this ground, Wilson-West decided to clear these villages of Nubas before constructing his posts. Fire was opened at a range of 600 yards, but I could see it was inaccurate and ineffective. Forty men, with my No. 3 Troop on their right, advanced on the western end of the village where Gebels Kushi and Sagan meet. On getting close in the Nubas began firing from the rocks above. Each rifle shot showed a faint cloud of smoke and sounded like a giant cork being drawn from a giant champagne bottle. This fire grew heavier and heavier until the Egyptians began to retire. This was a poor exhibition on the part of the Egyptian troops, whose morale—or lack of it—showed up in striking contrast to that of the gallant old Sudanese. My troop had reached the end of the village and set fire to it coming under heavy fire as they did so. But, owing to the Egyptians going back, they were recalled. The Nubas, thinking they had driven them off, began a weird sort of “luluing” noise and returned to their village, and even came out on the plain. The machine-guns soon made them think better of it.

It was 9 a.m. : so, according to my orders, I started to ride down " Regent Street " to locate *fulas*. Not knowing the Nubas we went along with a strong advanced guard. Many is the time that the Nubas could with the greatest of ease have come off their *gebels* and wiped out small parties of our men. But no ! nothing would induce them to go further from the *gebels* than was absolutely necessary. If they as much as caught sight of a white man, they would be off like a streak of lightning. But we did not realize all this, so I expected every moment they would make a dash for us. After all, we were but a handful, and there were thousands of them in the *gebels* around.

We found the *fula* which was drying up : there were no means of draining it, so we watered our horses under full observation of the Nubas, who could be seen through field-glasses like tiny black specks silhouetted against the sky—most curious warfare ! We then returned to Wilson-West, who was laying out a fortified post one mile north of Gebel Kushi. Leaving one officer and 20 men in the post, we returned to Nitl. I then led my squadron back to Kelama, reaching the Post at 3.30 p.m. The new base at Kadilibong Wells was being occupied. Meanwhile I had to supply several cossack posts, yet living in hopes that the completion of the chain of fortified posts would relieve me of such duties.

At 4.30 a.m. I left Kelama (the squadron only 37 strong) for Kadilibong Wells, having to move in single file owing to the height and density of the vegetation ; it stood higher than the horses' heads ! Soon after 5.30 a.m. the whole column marched westwards towards the isolated *gebels* round Gebel Toto and Gebel Nyima, which we found unoccupied.

Before approaching a *gebel* we used to dismount, form a firing line, and then pour rapid fire into the chinks of the rocks for a minute or two. It was then necessary to climb up to the top of the *gebel*—no easy matter even on the smallest of them. With leather-soled boots it was impossible to get a grip on the granite boulders. It took me some time to get accustomed to this form of vertiginous acrobatics, for I had no good head for heights in those days. The last small *gebel* we tackled nearly

Looking NORTHWARDS from KELAMA POST

INGOR



NITL GROUP



FASSU GROUP

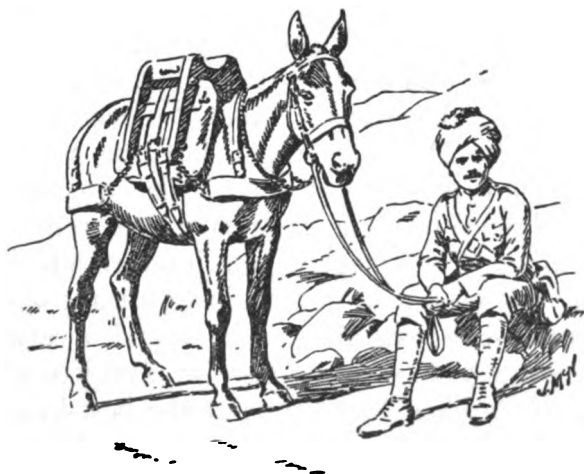


OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS 303

defeated us all, for there was only one way up, and that was choked with thorn-bushes covered with huge white thorns an inch-and-a-half long. Nearly torn to ribbons in our upward struggle, we finished by pulling and pushing each other up by arms and legs. It is not often that the Sudanese is authorized to take such liberties with the persons of his British officers !

On each little *gebel* an observation post, with a flag signaller, was left. On reaching the summit of the last *gebel* we saw on the summit of the next one to the north a group of men whom we identified as belonging to a detachment of the Eastern Arab Corps from Ullal Post. Thus was contact established between the two columns.

(To be continued)



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

The "Army Quarterly" for January contains a topical article on the Saar problem by Mr. Headlam Morley, who correctly forecasts the return of the district to Germany by an overwhelming majority in the plebiscite. There is also a plea by Mr. Nickerson, author of one of the best books yet published on the limitation of war, for a more intensive study of the deeper causes of conflict, in conjunction with purely military history of war, and the causes of success or failure therein. Lieut.-Colonel Hudson advocates the incorporation of a light tank force as an integral part of the division to assist the infantry, by close co-operation, in the rapid overcoming of opposition to movement. The historical articles are, as usual, numerous, varied and interesting.

"Fighting Forces" for December commences two new series of articles. The first deals with the campaigns set for the Promotion examinations, and opens with a most vivid and valuable sketch by that admirable writer, Lieut.-Colonel Burne, on the passage of the Petit Morin by the B.E.F. on September 8th, 1914. He regards it as in every sense a lost opportunity—lost because of the absence of dash, initiative, and resolute decided action, which allowed our largely superior forces to be imposed on and held up for long hours by an insignificant obstacle, and a mere screen of hostile resistance. The second, a series of interviews with officers who have made good in civil life after retirement, deals with Captain North, one of the best known Society portrait photographers in London to-day. General Fuller roundly condemns the strategical and tactical methods employed by us in the battle of Passchendaele—"a great national and imperial warning" of the need for a new order of generalship

which will think more of the future and be less hidebound by the maxims and methods of the past. There is a thoughtful sketch of the state of the peace problem as it stands to-day, and a number of lighter articles of interest.

“The Royal Artillery Journal” has as its principal items one of the commended essays for the Duncan prize—the subject being the modifications in the armament and employment of artillery demanded by modern aerial and mechanical warfare. Major Pemberton, the author, considers that the only changes required are the addition of an anti-tank machine gun battery to the divisional artillery, and the conversion of light artillery into close support batteries for co-operation with armoured forces. There are several good accounts of personal experiences—a gunner subaltern with the B.E.F. in August, 1914; five days on board ship with the Navy in the year of grace 1934; a motor-ing holiday in Spain; and with a French artillery regiment at Toulouse. The extracts from Marshal Foch’s account of the war of 1870 are concluded in this number.

“The Royal Engineers Journal” for December, 1934, has as its leading item an account of the uniforms of the corps up to 1914, and there are some useful hints on a ski-ing holiday in Austria, besides several more technical items, of interest principally to the sapper.

“The R.A.S.C. Quarterly” is of less general interest than usual this quarter, the pick of its contents from the point of view being the sketch of the working of a Motor Ambulance Convoy, and the discussion of the supply problem during the retirement of a division.

“The Canadian Defence Quarterly” for October has a good list of currently topical articles on such subjects as the Saar question, the abolition of war, and the relations of Japan with the Western Powers. There is a good narrative, too, of the Japanese campaign in Jehol, and a paper on the relations between Canada and the Mother Country as regards co-operation in

Imperial defence. As is usual with this periodical, this issue is well worth reading from end to end, if only for the purpose of appreciating the natural differences between our own and the Dominion's points of view and lines of thought on the topics of the day.

There has also been passed to us for review a brief history of the 17th Duke of York's Royal Canadian Horse by Major Steele. This is one of the oldest mounted permanent militia units in Canada, and in tracing its story against the background of general Canadian history from 1812 to the present day the author pays special attention to the chief campaigns in which it served—the war of 1812, the rebellions of 1837, 1866 and 1870, the South African War and the Great War. Some mention is also made to the various British and Dominion units in co-operation with which the regiment served during these campaigns. Altogether it is an attractive and well-written little pamphlet, which those not connected directly with the regiment can peruse with interest.

“The Royal Air Force Quarterly” contains an interesting account by Major Pemberton of Palestine and Trans-Jordania under the British mandate and the various crises that have occurred during our fifteen years' administration of these countries. He believes that when the present strife-embittered generation of Jews and Arabs has passed away there will pass with them much of the racial bitterness which has hitherto hindered the peaceful development of these lands. There is an entertaining little anonymous article on discipline, and a good show of lighter fare.

There have also been received the “Royal Signals Quarterly,” “The Wasp” (Journal of the Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire regiment), and the “Royal Tank Corps Journal,” in which there is nothing of sufficient general interest to call for extended notice.

FOREIGN MAGAZINES

THE "Cavalry Journal" of the United States continues its examination of the book, "Modern Cavalry," by Lieut.-General G. Brandt, late Inspector-General of Cavalry in Germany. This section deals with "Missions of Army Cavalry." As regards frontier protection General Brandt does not consider it advisable to use cavalry more than can be helped; it should be relieved of such work as soon as possible. Neither must it be employed nowadays to break through the enemy's frontier protection at the outset; it should be husbanded for more important tasks. Then in distant reconnaissance, after hostilities have opened, air and cavalry must be combined; units of cavalry as large as a division should not be employed on distant reconnaissance. Modern cavalry can be employed for screening, but only if it can take up a strong defensive line which will impose upon the enemy. Again, cavalry can be employed to occupy areas; but in this case it will need to attack any enemy advance. Consequently it needs support with some long-range artillery; demolitions can be freely used. For pursuit cavalry must be employed in large masses. In the case of a break-through the cavalry will, on passing through its own infantry, throw out a dense screen of sufficient weight for aggressive action, to be closely followed by detachments including heavy weapons. Following these the main body will march in several columns in depth formation. The commander will always be ready to concentrate his forces for attack at any point where resistance begins to stiffen. But should the break-through succeed, it will need large forces of cavalry, at least one corps, to convert the operation into a pursuit properly speaking. Raids, the author contends, are essentially secondary missions; the chances of successful raids, except in undeveloped country, is diminishing to-day in view of the increasing speed and number of means of communication.

"[In European warfare] the raid is, and will remain, an instrument presupposing situations, on the side of friend and foe alike, such as will seldom be encountered in practice." A raid in friendly territory will be easier, and will yield greater results than one staged in hostile country.

Captain G. H. Shea contributes a very slender but sympathetic article on our "Indian Cavalry." There is an anonymous description of a march of the First Squadron, 3rd Cavalry, carried out on the first fourteen days of September, 1934, during which it covered 280 miles, the last 75 of which were covered in 24 hours. "During the last two phases of this march, which were made on a dark night and involved a movement of 46 miles, fifteen of which were paved with concrete and asphalt, not a shoe was lost, not a man fell out, and but one animal showed such signs of exhaustion as to be left by the wayside."

During these marches most satisfactory experiments were tried : firstly in the matter of carrying part of the animals' packs in motor transport; secondly, in respect of conveying half the men of the squadron by motor and then causing the remaining men to ride and lead two horses each. The man would ride one horse and then change over. Further tests of this nature are recommended.

The French "Revue de Cavalerie" contains an article which attempts to summarise the use to be made of communications in the French cavalry. The Regulations contain various disjointed references to that subject; these need consolidation. Communications will vary as they are employed :—

- (1) In the Cavalry Division on the move;
- (2) In the offensive use of the Division;
- (3) On the defensive;
- (4) By reconnoitring detachments.

The characteristics of various means of communication are :—

(1) *Despatch Riders and Motor Cyclists*.—The former are best employed in wooded or very broken ground, also within the cavalry regiment. The motor cyclist should be used where noise is of no account; side-cars permitting the use of an armed observer are advantageous.

(2) *Aeroplanes*.—These are likely to be used between divisional headquarters and the rear, where aerodromes are available. They can, of course, be used for other purposes if suitable arrangements are made; or for dropping messages.

(3) *Radio-Telegraphy*.—This must be used most sparingly; a system of 3 or 4 stations should not send more than 150 to 200 groups of 5 letters per hour. Brevity is encouraged by the use of cyphers which are imperative.

(4) *Telephony*.—Laying lines is not a rapid process; telephony, so long as cavalry is on the move, is virtually restricted to the use of existing lines.

(5) *Messages Dropped from Aircraft*.—These will be employed when cavalry is on the move and W/T cannot be relied upon. It is not always a practicable method of communication, and can be a source of danger to the aeroplane, which must come down to a height of 600-1,000 feet for the purpose.

In the Cavalry Division on the move, communication with the rear should preferably be by telephone, although W/T is authorised as the standard method. Within the division liaison officers are attached to units, and these will communicate—by despatch riders or cyclists—by W/T for very brief messages—by telephone, sometimes. On the march the maintenance of these communications needs the greatest care. Pigeons and aeroplanes can sometimes be used.

The greatest importance must be paid to communications connecting cavalry divisional headquarters with all its centres of aerial intelligence; the methods employed must always be doubled; there must always be a W/T listening post on duty. Similarly great attention must be paid to communication with forward reconnoitring detachments; this leads to the need for maintaining two systems of communication—one for reconnoitring units, the other for purposes of internal command. The author then examines in detail the use of W/T and concludes that this must be organised with considerable care by the divisional command.

Rather than use W/T the author prefers line telephony; but probably this can only be employed where lines already exist.

Nevertheless he urges the allocation of line-laying units well forward.

The article continues with some practical hints as to the use of carrier pigeons with cavalry. The use of these birds is regarded as valuable under certain conditions. By the employment of mobile lofts, which are used in a series of "leap-frog" bounds, great elasticity is possible with the pigeon service. Finally, the author mentions visual signalling, but holds out little hope of its giving consistently good results except under special conditions.

A remarkable summary of Eiffmannsberger's new book on tank warfare ("Der Kampfwagenkrieg") is supplied by General Ratzenhofer in the November number of the Austrian "Militärwissenschaftliche Mitteilungen." There are three great problems confronting the conduct of a great war to-day: Tanks, Aviation, Industrial Mobilisation. Tanks, he asserts, are the problem which concerns the soldier most acutely. Aviation alone, he believes, cannot decide a war by attacking an enemy at the outbreak of war. On the other hand, the rapid growth of the motor shows no sign of abatement, and this will compel every army to adopt motor propulsion or traction yet more widely. The armoured fighting vehicle will be developed yet further.

Here the author considers the problem historically. It was at Cambrai in 1918 that the first great tank battle was fought. The Germans emerged successful, thanks to their infantry which in the end was superior in numbers, whilst it prevailed by its tactics over the defence. It was in a sense a misfortune for the Germans that this should have been the case, since it induced them to underrate the menace of the tank. So in July, 1918, they could not cope with Foch's counterstroke which was largely dependent on its tanks for its success. A third time, on the "black day" of the German Army, on the 8th August, they were surprised by tanks and collapsed. Still the German High Command seems to have continued setting its faith on 13 mm. anti-tank guns and aircraft to defeat the tank. Yet experience had shown that the correct antidote to the tank was light artillery. "It remains the tragic fault of the German artillery that it never recognised

this fact; still more was it the tragic fault of the High Command that it never ordered such a use of its guns."

Even so tactics are developing so fast that, in the future, new methods are needed. It may be deduced that the future infantry battalion will need six guns to go with it, with a reserve of eighteen such weapons per division. These pieces must be mounted on automobile armoured carriages.

Nevertheless this answer does not yet satisfy the conditions of future war. Four questions arise :—

(1) Shall infantry once more advance after the bombardment of a hostile position by its artillery?

(2) Shall it follow the tanks as in 1918?

(3) Shall the armoured fighting vehicles act independently, adopting new methods of war?

(4) Shall aircraft be entrusted with the task of smashing an enemy before he can complete his strategic concentration?

The future organisation, equipment and training of armed forces depend on the answer that is made to these four questions; it also must supply the answer to the problem as to how a nation's industrial mobilisation is to be carried out and what it shall supply. The answer, indeed, seems everywhere to be still in suspense.



RECENT PUBLICATIONS

“Prince Rupert.” By James Cleugh. (Bles.) 10s. 6d.

The student of the Great Civil War has been well catered for lately, in that authors have taken to publishing simultaneously or in quick succession two books on the same hero. In the Spring there appeared a whole series of lives of Charles I: a few weeks ago two famous writers gave him, almost on the same day, a pair of admirable lives of Cromwell; and now Mr. Cleugh and Mr. Clennell Wilkinson have each issued a study of Prince Rupert, Cromwell's greatest adversary in the field. The volume under review is the slighter, and from the military point of view, the less satisfactory of the two, if only by reason of its lack of maps; but it is a fine sympathetic study of the man, who, quite apart from his deeds in arms, won no inconsiderable place as a naval commander and gave evidence of considerable parts as scientist, artist, architect and philosopher. In his narrative of Rupert's part in the Civil War, on which rests, when all is said and done, his chief claim to a place in history, Mr. Cleugh vindicates his hero's sound strategical sense and genius for cavalry leadership, and shows clearly that whatever his defects as a commander of horse—defects which might have passed unnoticed had he not been opposed by a still greater in Cromwell—the Royal cause must almost certainly have triumphed had his wisdom in counsel and his wise strategy not been hampered by the interference of amateurs whose voices had greater weight with the King. Mr. Cleugh gives us a vivid picture of the Prince and of his chequered and not very happy career, and anyone interested in the Civil War will learn much from his pages.

“A History of the Great War.” By C. R. M. F. Cruttwell. (Oxford University Press.) 15s.

This large but most lucid and readable book is the best general history of the War in all its manifold phases that has

yet been given us in English. Mr. Cruttwell, who is Principal of Hertford College, Oxford, and who in the now distant past taught the reviewer all he knows about history, went through the war himself, and is besides a trained historian whose wide knowledge, attractive and sometimes pungent style, and ripe independence of judgment are evidenced in every chapter. All sides of the great world conflict, diplomatic, military, naval and economic, are adequately yet concisely covered—though for some reason the campaigns in the German colonies seem to have escaped the author's notice; the maps are adequate without being elaborate; and though Mr. Cruttwell has of set purpose refrained from giving a bibliography, the number of authorities referred to in the notes is full evidence of the width of his reading. In his new edition he might consider giving some notes for further reading as a help to the student who desires to pursue any particular subject in greater detail than is allowed by the book's necessary limits of space. It is to be hoped and believed that Mr. Cruttwell's work will commend itself to a wide circle of readers, who could not fail to enjoy his gifts of exposition and profit by the store of knowledge here laid before them.

“In the Wake of the Tank.” By Lt.-Col. G. le Q. Martel.
(Sifton Praed.) 12s. 6d.

Since 1929, when the first edition of this book appeared, the developments of mechanisation in the Army have been so extensive as to compel the author to a considerable revision and enlargement of his original work; and the result is the complete remodelling and rewriting of five chapters to keep pace with progress to date. In the first of his new chapters Lt.-Col. Martel describes the new model tanks, armoured cars, and transport vehicles that have been devised in the last five years, and shows how far they have superseded or improved on those in use in 1929; then comes a description of the organisation and probable use in the field of the new independent tank brigades, based on the official doctrine laid down in the “Mauve Manual.” There then follow the author's ideas as to how tanks may be employed in direct co-operation with infantry in

the main battle, and the use of unarmoured vehicles to increase the general mobility of the Army as a whole. It would be impossible without doing the book an injustice to attempt to summarise or comment on these; those readers who know the book in its first edition will need only to be told that it still displays the same qualities of clarity, broadmindedness and practicability that then made it noteworthy. No soldier who desires really to be abreast of the times can dispense with a study of it.

E.W.S.

“Big Game.” By H. Frank Wallace. (Eyre & Spottiswood.)
8s. 6d.

Mr. Wallace appears to have spent most of his life in shooting big game in all parts of the world, and this is a collection of essays with reminiscences of stalks and drives in many countries, mixed with instructive talk on, what one might call, the philosophy of big game shooting. They all make pleasant reading but many of the reminiscences are concerned with big game in European countries and other places not accessible to soldiers; perhaps that is why, with some notable exceptions, I found them less interesting than the philosophy. Mr. Wallace, of course, condemns utterly shooting from either motor-cars or aeroplanes, but he recognises the value of the former as a time saver in bringing one within reasonable reach of game. Unfortunately, however, this has brought into the field many who formerly could neither spare the time nor were capable of standing the exertion required for a shooting expedition under the old conditions. It also eliminates many of the bye-product attractions associated with animal and carrier transport. The multiplication of shooting parties of course necessitates strict measures for the preservation of game which should be accepted in the spirit as well as the letter. Mr. Wallace has no use for those who shoot up to the numerical limits of their licences irrespective of the quality of the trophies obtainable. He deplores the increased cost of shooting expeditions, but I think this applies to visitors rather than to soldiers who take shooting leave in the countries where they are stationed, and the motor has made shooting leave easier to arrange.

"Sport and Travel in East Africa." By P. R. Chalmers.
(Philip Alan & Co.) 12s. 6d.

This is a record of the Prince of Wales' two visits to East Africa. H.R.H.'s object was to see and photograph game rather than to shoot it; but, when a tempting trophy presented itself, he spared himself no exertion to secure it. Needless to say, photographing game is quite, if not more, risky than shooting it. On more than one occasion the Prince had an opportunity of seeing at close quarters what an annoyed elephant or rhino looks like, and those responsible for the photographer's safety had to do some quick shooting to save the situation.

The Prince's first visit in 1928 was, of course, unfortunately cut short by the King's illness, and there were many official or semi-official duties as well as sport. The account of this visit, while it gives an interesting picture of modern conditions in Kenya and Uganda, is less concerned with sport, though there were more exciting incidents, than that of the second in 1930. The latter is full of suggestive information for anyone planning an expedition, and it shows that though new roads and motors enable one to get through much more in a limited time, the pursuit of game still provides plenty of chances of strenuous exertion and exciting encounters. It is not a business to be undertaken by those whom the motor-car has deprived of the use of their legs. A number of excellent photos taken by the Prince and others add to the attractions of the book.

C. W. G.

"High Command in the World War." Puleston. (Scribner's.)

The author of this book is a captain in the United States Navy, and it is of considerable interest to get an outside opinion on the various leaders and types of leadership of the war. Unfortunately, the author has, perhaps, attempted too much. In some 300 pages he has dealt with every main campaign or battle on all fronts and with all naval operations. The result is that, in many cases, the account and analysis are so brief that his conclusions do not carry weight. He is a whole-hearted supporter of the Western school and is strongly critical of what he considers the dispersion on sideshows, particularly Salonika.

He stresses the inherent dangers of political interference with actual operations, and is somewhat scathing both of French politicians in their dealings with Joffre and Sarraill and of Mr. Lloyd George in his lack of support to Haig in March, 1918.

It is interesting to note that he is very impressed with the ability of Falkenhayn and of Joffre. The former he seems to rank considerably above Hindenburg, who could only see the Eastern front: the latter he portrays as a quiet, efficient leader, never rattled, but always waiting for the moment to strike back. Falkenhayn, Joffre and Haig are the three men who stand out in his narrative as against the more usual Foch, Hindenburg and Ludendorff.

In view of recent public controversies, it may be of value to quote from this unbiassed foreign source:—

“It is easy for bright young critics with a smattering of military terminology to ransack complicated casualty returns, turn them to prove almost any thesis, and thereby demonstrate the unfitness of such leaders as Haig. It is a necessity for certain civilian Cabinet officers, who during the World War repeatedly interfered with the British Military leaders in their control of the British Army, to attack the record of Haig, whose technical advice they would not heed. Otherwise they cannot wash from their dripping hands the blood of thousands of their countrymen. But it is a safe prediction that despite these attacks, as time goes on, the great qualities of Haig will become increasingly appreciated by his countrymen . . . In time, the soundness of Haig’s decisions and the persistent courage with which he pursued them will appeal to his countrymen. Oblivion will overtake the unfair attacks of young writers seeking to qualify as military experts and the venomous abuse of interested participants who have succeeded in temporarily clouding the fame of Field-Marshal Earl Haig.”

“The Map Reading Instructor.” By Major C. A. Wilson, A.E.C. Second Edition. (Sifton Praed & Co.) 5s. 6d.

It is not surprising that a second edition of Major C. A. Wilson’s most useful book should have appeared.

The objects of the book as set out in the Foreword are :—(1) To deal with the subject in such a way that it can be grasped by the soldier of average intelligence working either with or without an instructor. (2) To suggest to the officer or N.C.O. instructor a method of teaching the subject in a simple and logical form. (3) To omit from part 1 at any rate, all that which does not come within the scope of practical every-day map reading, where rapidity is more essential than meticulous accuracy.

There is no doubt that in the attainment of these objects, Major Wilson has been singularly successful. The subject is handled throughout in a simple and straightforward manner. Theoretical explanation is cut down to a minimum, and practical work in the country is encouraged. Relief, the bugbear of the average soldier, is admirably explained.

The book is arranged in 3 parts: *Part 1* contains everything that is required for everyday practical Map reading. *Part 2* contains the more difficult points which might arise in special circumstances. These two parts together cover the requirements of all the Army Map reading examinations. *Part 3* is devoted to Field Sketching.

This division of the book enables a comprehensive syllabus to be made out with very little trouble, to fit in with whatever time is available for instruction.

Each bit of instruction is followed by a set of exercises, and at the end of Parts 1 and 2 there are specimen examination papers. Answers to examination papers are at the end of the book. All exercises and references are framed with reference to the map supplied with the book, but these can easily be amended to suit the map in use at the place of instruction.

The author has inserted an Appendix on examination technique, which should be marked, learned and inwardly digested by all students of map reading or any other subject.

The book should be in possession of every map-reading instructor. It is equally suitable for instruction within the unit at Army schools of instruction or at other schools where map reading is taught. It should also appeal strongly to young officers and N.C.O.'s of the Territorial Army.

SPORTING NEWS

ALDERSHOT MEETING, 1st MARCH

QUEEN'S BAYS LIGHT-WEIGHT CHALLENGE CUP.

| | | |
|---------------------------------|-------|---|
| Mr. P. T. W. Syke's Bayleaf II. | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. E. O. Vaux's French Prince | Owner | 2 |
| Major A. J. R. Lamb's Horby | Owner | 3 |

Won by four lengths ; six lengths separated second and third. Ten ran.

ALDERSHOT COMMAND HEAVY-WEIGHT RACE.

| | | |
|--|-------|---|
| Major H. Lumsden's (12th Lancers) More Magic | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. W. R. Holman's (R.A.) North Pole | Owner | 2 |
| Major J. Scott's (R.A.) Man or Boy | Owner | 3 |

Won by a distance ; six lengths separated second and third. Nine ran.

TWESELDOWN OPEN CUP.

| | | |
|---|-------|---|
| Major H. Lumsden's (12th Lancers) Silver Gill | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. P. T. W. Syke's (The Bays) Journey's End | Owner | 2 |
| Mr. G. W. Goschen's (R.A.) Roshane | Owner | 3 |

Won by ten lengths ; twelve lengths separated second and third. Eleven ran.

SMITH DORRIEN RACE.

| | | |
|---|-----------------|---|
| Mr. V. W. Street's (Devon Regt.) Gallant Peg | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. R. C. R. Clarke's (G. G'ds) Ursae Majoris | Mr. A. W. Smith | 2 |
| Captain G. K. Stobart's (D.L.I.) Jimmy | Mr. A. Leather | 3 |

Won by a length and a half ; twenty lengths separated second and third. Eight ran.

ALDERSHOT COMMAND CHARGERS' CUP.

| | | |
|---|----------------|---|
| Mr. A. H. Osborne's (The Bays) Perfecter | Owner | 1 |
| Captain G. A. Cattley's (3rd D.G.) First Chance | Owner | 2 |
| Mr. G. Dollar's (3rd D.G.) Sea Shore | Mr. P. Herbert | 3 |

Won by twenty lengths ; a short head separated second and third. Seven ran.

ROYAL ARTILLERY MAIDEN RACE.

| | | |
|---|-----------------------|---|
| Captain J. F. Paterson's Aloma III. | Captain G. Colchester | 1 |
| Mr. G. W. Goschen's Cottage Fairy | Owner | 2 |
| Captain J. A. E. Hirst's Lucky Strike II. | Owner | 3 |

Won by twelve lengths ; three lengths separated second and third. Nine ran.

ALDERSHOT MEETING, 2ND MARCH

3RD CARABINIERS' DAKIN CHALLENGE CUP.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|---|
| Captain P. L. Vincent's Talawa | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. D. C. N. Baring's Doss | Owner | 2 |
| Captain G. A. Cattley's First Chance | Owner | 3 |

Won by a distance ; a bad third. Eight ran.

GRAND MILITARY HUNTERS' CUP.

| | | |
|--|-------------------|---|
| Captain J. P. A. Graham's (Oxford & Bucks L.I.) Lady Forum | Mr. G. P. Gregson | 1 |
| Mr. W. Kevill-Davies's (7th Hussars) Lilford II. | Owner | 2 |
| Mr. E. D. Howard-Vyse's (R.H.A.) Best Seller | Owner | 3 |

Won by a neck ; five lengths separated second and third. Thirteen ran.

SERVICES' OPEN CUP.

| | | |
|--|-------|---|
| Captain J. A. Akroyd-Hunt's (R.H.A.) Spick and Span III. | Owner | 1 |
| Captain F. W. Byass's (7th Hussars) Foxglove IV. | Owner | 2 |
| Mr. R. H. Courage's (R.N.) Tufty | Owner | 3 |

Won by a length and a half; half a length separated second and third.
Seven ran.

GRAND MILITARY CHARGERS' RACE.

| | | |
|---|-------|---|
| Mr. W. M. Ponsonby's (Royal Signals) Kissing Time IV. | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. V. D. G. Campbell's (Cameron Highlanders) May Queen II. | Owner | 2 |
| Mr. H. M. Fisher's (Cameronians) Miss Vanity | | 3 |

Won by twenty lengths; ten lengths separated second and third. Four ran.

MAIDEN RACE.

| | | |
|--|--------------|---|
| Mr. C. J. W. Bampfylde's (Royal Horse Guards) Coillerie | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. R. Blunt's (4th/7th Dragoon Guards) Kindle | Owner | 2 |
| Lieutenant-Colonel C. Nicholson (16th/5th Lancers) Cushendun | Captain Bols | 3 |

Won by a distance; a length separated second and third. Twenty ran.

4TH QUEEN'S OWN HUSSARS' CHALLENGE CUP.

| | | |
|--|-------|---|
| Lieutenant-Colonel M. F. Radclyffe's Adarene | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. J. de Moraville's King's Cross II. | Owner | 2 |
| Mr. S. T. Eve's Some Birthday | Owner | 3 |

Won by three lengths; a length separated second and third. Eight ran.

TEDWORTH HUNT STEEPLECHASES, 2ND MARCH

The Tedworth Hunt *Bona Fide* meeting was held at Windmill Hill, Salisbury Plain, on Saturday, when the results were:—

ROYAL ARTILLERY (SALISBURY PLAIN) CHARGERS' RACE.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|---|
| Captain W. E. Pearson's Rascal III. | Owner | 1 |
| Captain A. O. McCarthy's The Captain | Owner | 2 |
| Captain G. P. Chapman's Nicotine II. | Mr. R. G. Hooper | 3 |

Won by four lengths; three lengths separated second and third. Four ran.

CHARGERS' RACE.

| | | |
|--|-------|---|
| Mr. J. E. T. Leigh's Lady Wendeleen | Owner | 1 |
| Major D. F. Aikenhead's Bess II. | Owner | 2 |
| Lieutenant-Colonel R. R. de C. Grubb's Kingscliffe | Owner | 3 |

Won by ten lengths; twenty lengths separated second and third. Seven ran.

TEDWORTH HUNT NOMINATION RACE.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|---|
| Mr. E. W. W. Bailey's Pucka Belle | Major Phipps Hornby | 1 |
| Mr. O. M. T. Raymont's Towcester | Owner | 2 |
| Captain E. Wadham's Never Blue | Mr. M. G. Gregson | 3 |

Won by three lengths; two lengths separated second and third. Twenty-three ran.

9TH LANCERS SUBALTERN'S RACE.

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|---|
| Mr. H. H. Sykes's Peter's Fair | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. G. H. Grosvenor's Martin Gore | Owner | 2 |
| The Hon. A. F. Phillimore's Trillion | Owner | 3 |

Won by four lengths; six lengths separated second and third. Eight ran.

TEDWORTH AND ADJACENT HUNTS FARMERS' RACE.

| | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|---|
| Mr. J. E. Waters's Tor | Mr. G. Russell | 1 |
| Mr. T. Baker's Honour III. | Mr. G. Cunard | 2 |
| Mr. D. Phillips's Chrysler | Mr. R. Petre | 3 |

Won by twenty lengths ; ten lengths separated second and third. Six ran.

3RD HUSSARS SUBALTERN'S RACE.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Mr. C. J. F. Platt's Firelock | Owner | 1 |
| Mr. A. B. Dawes's Impertinence | Mr. R. Bertram | 2 |

Won by a distance ; only two finished. Five ran.

CAVALRY FOOTBALL ASSOCIATION

RESULT OF FIRST ROUND

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|----|------------------------|
| 7th Hussars (2) | v. | 15th/19th Hussars (1) |
| 3rd Hussars (2) | v. | Royal Horse Guards (1) |
| 4th/7th Dragoon Guards (3) | v. | 12th Lancers (1) |
| 9th Lancers (2) | v. | Life Guards (1) |
| 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards (6) | v. | Queen's Bays (2) |
| 3rd Carabiniers (3) | v. | 4th Hussars (1) |

RESULT OF SECOND ROUND

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|----|----------------------------|
| Royal Scots Greys (2) | v. | 16th/5th Lancers (1) |
| 3rd Carabiniers (6) | v. | 3rd Hussars (3)* |
| 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards (4) | v. | 9th Lancers (0) |
| 7th Hussars (2) | v. | 4th/7th Dragoon Guards (1) |

* After extra time.

SEMI-FINALS

Royal Scots Greys v. 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards
To be played at Edinburgh not later than 13th April, 1935.

3rd Carabiniers v. 7th Hussars

To be played on the Aldershot Command Central Ground, on Tuesday, 2nd April.
Kick-off at 3.0 p.m.

FINAL

The Final will be played on Fulham Football Ground, on Saturday, 27th April, 1935. Kick-off at 11.0 a.m. Prices of Admission :—Ground 7d. ; 1/- and 2/-.

INDIA

INTER-REGIMENTAL TOURNAMENT

PLAYED AT MEERUT ON MARCH 4TH, 6TH, 8TH AND 11TH, 1935

Owing to an outbreak of equine influenza in Meerut and other places the Tournament had to be postponed for a week, and eventually started on Monday, 4th March, with the grounds in excellent condition. Most teams were below their full pony strength, owing to the epidemic, and in some cases another casualty might have necessitated scratching.

In the opening game of the Tournament the 14th/20th Hussars, for whom de Wend Fenton played a sound game, signalised their first visit to Meerut by defeating the 3rd Cavalry by six goals to nothing. The 13th/18th Hussars gained a decisive victory over the 15th Lancers, whose team included Atkinson and Pert. The result surprised a good many people, but there is no doubt that the better team won that day. Butler and Critchley were very sound all through, Hirsch had some brilliant patches, and Harrap was always working hard. In the last game on the first day, between Skinner's and the Central India Horse, the score had reached 7-3 in favour of Skinner's Horse with only three minutes of the last chukker to go when a collision occurred between Fulton of Skinner's and Cox and Crawford of the Central India Horse, in which Fulton's pony dropped like a stone, and it was impossible to get it up again. The C.I.H. then decided that there was nothing to be gained by moving on to another ground to finish the game, and therefore withdrew. Fulton's pony was shot that evening, having fractured the base of its skull. The C.I.H. were without George, Dalrymple-Hay and Alexander.

The second round produced a good game between the P.A.V.O. and the 19th Lancers, a game on which considerable interest was centred. These two sides had met last year in the semi-final of this tournament, and a very fine game had resulted in a win for the P.A.V.O. (winners of the tournament) by one goal. Sanger of the P.A.V.O., who dominated the whole tournament last year, had broken his thumb at Christmas in Calcutta, and could only just use his stick. His hitting was not, therefore, up to its usual high standard, but he was always a powerful factor in the game. Dening played well for the losers, and Critchley proved himself to be a much better player at back than he is up in the game. Chaplin is a very promising young player who works very hard.

The 10th Hussars started the fourth chukker in their game against the Royals with the score 5-1 against them, but by the time the whistle blew they had brought the scores level. The Royals then pulled themselves together and won by a couple of goals. The 10th are without Gairdner and Dawnay, and with the exception of Harvey are playing a Subalterns' side. For them Archer-Shee was very sound. Scott, playing back for the Royals, played a good game. This position seems to suit him better than No. 3. The 13th/18th beat the 14th/20th quite comfortably, and Skinner's Horse had no difficulty in disposing of the 8th Cavalry.

The first game in the semi-finals, between the Royals and the 13th/18th, was a real good open galloping game, in which interest was intense up to the very last second, when the 13th/18th Hussars scored the winning goal after about five minutes of widened goals. Apart from the first chukker, each period ended with the scores level. It would be difficult to find two more equal sides. For the winners Butler played a very fine game, and Critchley was a tower of strength at back. For the Royals, Scott was brilliant, and Fitzgerald and Calvert got through a great deal of work. The latter is a most promising young player, whose Polo career will be interesting to watch. In the second semi-final the P.A.V.O. gave an exhibition of good Polo for the

first three chukkers, and with the score 4-0 in their favour at half-time it looked as if they would win by a long margin. Skinner's Horse were, however, by no means finished, and gave a very good account of themselves for the remainder of the game, Broadfoot being always prominent.

The result of the final was more or less a foregone conclusion, though it was felt that the 13th/18th would give a very good account of themselves. The P.A.V.O. did a lot of missing in front of goal in the early part of the game, otherwise their score would have been much bigger. Two of the 13th/18th goals came from 40-yard hits in the last chukker. Nevertheless, the 13th/18th put up a very gallant struggle against a much more experienced team. Butler has the makings and temperament of a great player. He is most unobtrusive, but he gets through a great deal of work, and always manages to be in the right place. The P.A.V.O. team is well known—they have a great striker in Hanmer at back. Sanger could not produce his real form owing to his injury, but nevertheless he played well all through.

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1. | Royals | | | | | | | | |
| 2. | 10th Hussars | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| 3. | 13th/18th Hussars | | | | | | | | |
| 4. | 15th Lancers | | | | | | | | |
| 5. | 14th/20th Hussars | | | | | | | | |
| 6. | 3rd Cavalry | | | | | | | | |
| 7. | Skinner's Horse | | | | | | | | |
| 8. | Central India Hrse. | | | | | | | | |
| 9. | 8th Cavalry | | | | | | | | |
| 10. | 19th Lancers | | | | | | | | |
| 11. | P.A.V.O. Cavalry | | | | | | | | |

TEAMS: P.A.V.O. Cavalry—

No. 1 Capt. P. R. Tatham
 No. 2 Major G. Carr-White
 No. 3 Capt. P. B. Sanger
 Back Capt. R. G. Hanmer

13th/18th Hussars—

No. 1 Major J. H. Hirsch
 No. 2 Mr. R. T. Harrap
 No. 3 Mr. W. F. Butler
 Back Mr. R. A. Critchley

THE SUBALTERN'S TOURNAMENT

PLAYED AT MEERUT ON MARCH 8TH, 11TH, 13TH AND 15TH, 1935

In order to ensure that the Tournament was concluded within a reasonable time, the Tournament Committee exercised their powers and so arranged the draw that the Regiments who met in the final of the Inter-Regimental did not come into the Subalterns until the semi-final. It was then possible to

draw after the second round of the Inter-Regimental, and play off two games on the 8th. In these the 19th Lancers beat the Guides after a good hard game, and the 14th/20th defeated a weak side of the C.I.H.

Two more games were decided on the day of the Inter-Regimental final, in the first of which the 10th Hussars beat the 14th/20th by one goal, having had a long lead until comparatively late in the game, when the 14th/20th rallied and put on several goals. The second game, between the Royals and the 19th Lancers, was not the complete rout it would appear to have been from the score. In point of fact it was a good open galloping game, in which the Royals made the most of their chances. In the fifth chukker the 19th Lancers had seven shots at goal without scoring. But there is no doubt the better team won. The 19th Lancers' side lacks balance. For them Chaplin did a great deal of work and Keighley showed much improved form, while the Royals all played well though Hamilton-Russell made some air shots, a fault of which he is not usually guilty.

In the semi-finals the issue of the game between the 10th Hussars and the P.A.V.O. was never in doubt, the 10th being quite definitely the better team. Hanmer hit some colossal shots for the P.A.V.O., and Archer-Shee some very long ones for the 10th. The second game, between the Royals and the 13th/18th Hussars, was, as was expected, well contested throughout, though the Royals had a bad patch when several fouls and consequent 40-yard hits were given against them. Had it not been for this, the margin in their favour would have been greater. It was a fast open game for the most part, with a lot of hard riding and good hitting. Scott and Calvert played very well for the Royals; Hamilton-Russell was much steadier than in the previous game and Cooper marked Critchley closely. Butler held the 13th/18th side together well. Cooper and Harrap both sustained falls, neither of which, fortunately, was serious.

The final opened with the odds on the Royals, a 12 handicap side, as against the 10th Hussars 7. Up till half-time, however, the 10th had the better of the game, the score being 2-1 in their favour. The Royals then rallied and scored three goals in the fourth chukker, which was a desperately contested period, and one which might well have been conducted with a great deal less talking on both sides. In the fifth chukker, however, the 10th came again, and when the whistle blew they led 6-4. The Royals made desperate efforts in the final period and managed to put on one more goal, but the bugle left the 10th Hussars winners by 6 goals to 5.

For the 10th, Archer-Shee was the mainstay of the side, but he was very well backed up by the other three. Malet is a much improved young player, with plenty of dash and a good eye. Scott and Hamilton-Russell played well for the Royals, the latter having some brilliant patches. Cooper worked hard, but Calvert did not produce his true form. He is usually very quick on the ball, but in this case he too often allowed an opponent to get there first. One left the ground with the impression that the 10th Hussars won because they played better than the Royals.

| | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|---|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|---|------------------|
| | 10th Hussars | } | P.A.V.O. Cavalry | } | 10th Hussars | } | 10th Hussars 8—5 |
| Central India Horse | } 14th/20th Hussars 9—4 | | } | | 10th Hussars 7—6 | | |
| 14th/20th Hussars | | | | | | | |
| 19th Lancers | } | } | | } | | | |
| Guides Cavalry | | | 19th Lancers 5—4 | | | | |
| | | } | Royals 9—1 | } | Royals | | |
| | | | 13th/18th Hussars | | 7—5 | | |
| TEAMS: 10th Hussars— | | | Royals— | | | | |
| No. 1 | Mr. J. W. Malet | | No. 1 | Mr. C. E. D. Cooper | | | |
| No. 2 | Mr. M. N. E. Macmullen | | No. 2 | Mr. E. A. Calvert | | | |
| No. 3 | Mr. J. P. Archer-Shee | | No. 3 | Mr. H. B. Scott | | | |
| Back | Mr. H. S. E. Mainwaring | | Back | The Hon. J. Hamilton-Russell | | | |



“WAWEEATHA”

By “SABREUR”

*Dedicated to His Excellency The High Commissioner
Sir Arthur Grenfell Wauchope, G.C.M.G., K.C.B., C.I.E., D.S.O.,
as a slight token of gratitude for his interest in the Ramle Vale Hunt.*

Should you question, should you ask me
Whence this song of Waweeatha
Who on earth is Waweeatha
I should answer I should tell you
He was what we called a jackal
Sleek of coat and very tawny
You could see him any morning
On the hill beside Ben Shemen,
If you got up very early.
And just watched him as he passed you.
Never speaking, hardly breathing,
Sleek of coat and rather graceful
With a cunning look about him
And his middle somewhat swollen
Like a small boy at his prep. school
After secret feasts at midnight.
He has supped on juicy chicken
He is full and very happy,
Licks his chops in canine comfort
Goes to rest in cool Ben Shemen
There to laze until the nightfall
Then to rob another hen roost
This, my friend, is Waweeatha.

He had spent a lovely summer
In the depths of cool Ben Shemen
Making love and fighting rivals
Like our old friend Douglas Fairbanks
And had won his lovely lady
He had wooed and he had won her
She was not so loth to follow.
Near a jagged rock they burrowed
Burrowed deep and well and truly,
Brought some leaves and fur and braken
Made it all soft, warm and cosy.
In the twilight came a squeaking
Very soft and very plaintive
Waweeatha did not like it
Stood outside with bristling hackles
Flews drawn back, his teeth all gleaming.
Stood on guard against intruders
Like a sentry in the front line
Peering out into the darkness
For the others in the dugout.
Never left his post but waited
Till there came a ghostlike figure
Very tired and very thirsty,
Who said she must have some water
Went away to get some water
Leaving on guard Waweeatha.

He felt strange and very foolish
Didn't understand about it,
What could he do for the mewling
What did man do in such cases,
Felt, as men do, very foolish.
Still he stayed there as she told him
Felt a little bucked about it
Thought he was a spendid fellow
Better far than all his rivals
Then she crept back looking stronger
Treated him with little deference
Brushed straight past him to the burrow
Rather crushed was Waweeatha.

Then there came a life of hunting
Stalking, catching, larks and leverets
Roving far and roving often
Solid work for this proud father
Never finished, always hungry
Were these six young bright-eyed devils
Very healthy, rather lovely
That is true, for I have seen them,
And have watched them at their gambols
Tumbling, racing, snapping, snarling
Near the burrow where I'll leave them
Vixen, cubs and Waweeatha.
Leave them there to play and frolic
Leave them there until December
Till the vixen leaves her lover
Till the cubs have reached their manhood
And the earth is cold and sodden.

II.

When the earth was cold and sodden
Life grew grim for Waweeatha
Grim because the vixen left him
Left him just to go her own way
Had no need for Waweeatha
Would he see her in the Spring time?
Women are so very fickle
She might find another lover,
That would mean another wooing
And the fighting of more rivals.
Then the cubs had grown to manhood
Passed him by quite unrespecting
Took their own road very perky
Foraged too in his pet hen roost
Said he was a foolish old man
Who had served his time and purpose

Rather like a modern flapper
 Or the fledgling down from Oxford
 Knows the whole world and its working
 Doesn't want advice about it,
 Told the old man so quite plainly
 Till he got quite philosophic
 Pondered on the fifth commandment,
 Thought they'd live to be regretful.
 Arched his back and went a'roving
 Saw a comely younger vixen
 Who looked back as if to whisper.
 Where will you be in the Spring time ?
 Hereabouts, said Waweeatha.

Then he found a slab of coal stone
 Here established his headquarters
 Where the shade was kind at midday
 Set just right for his siestas.
 Then a wisdom born of cunning
 And the memories of old battles
 Made him prospect round Ben Shemen
 Find a cave, another burrow,
 And a path which led to high land.
 These he marked and sat back sagely
 While the cubs just scoffed all laughing,
 At the old man's ways of living
 They just raced and played and gambolled
 Little reeking of the future
 Like some others as we know them.

Then one morning ere the sun rose
 Came a sound of human voices
 With the noise of walking horses
 And a strange smell, rather dog-like,
 And a motor's head lights shining.
 Waweeatha pricked his grey ears
 Cocked his head to listen better
 Took one dive into the bushes
 Slid away towards the high lands
 By the path of careful choosing,
 Cut right through into the open
 Made his way across the valley
 Dropped into a friendly wadi
 Ran up to the further hilltop
 Then he stopped and looked behind him
 Saw Charles James the fox beside him
 Both looked back towards the covert
 Where they saw a last year's picture
 Of a pink coat on a grey horse,
 Many horsemen around Ben Shemen
 Heard a horn and heard a holloa
 Heard a cry of fifteen couple
 Saw the vixen leave the covert
 Rather scared but running strongly
 Heard more holloas in Ben Shemen
 Heard a horn sound very quickly
 Viewed a tattered rag all beaten
 Saw the fifteen couple racing,
 In a moment all was over
 And the pink coat stood beside them
 Whoo-o-ooop was what he holloaed.

Then the huntsman left the woodlands
 Went away beyond the hillside
 All was still around the valley.

Much relieved was Waweeatha
 Much relieved was breathless vixen
 Who said, Oh those silly children
 Always playing, never thinking
 Were just foolish when the hounds came
 And did nothing wise about it,
 So they just ran round in circles
 While the hounds were getting closer
 Till that deep voiced badger-pied one
 Caught the weakest of our litter.
 Now he's gone, perhaps the others
 Soon will learn a little wisdom
 And not scoff at both their betters
 Who have tried to teach and warn them.
 One cub less thought Waweeatha
 One cub less to share my hen roosts
 And the others will go likewise
 If they do not heed my teaching.

All this world and life is cruel
 For the man as well as jackal
 Men are always scheming, striving
 To win, to kill, and be master
 As the world is for the menfolk
 So was life for Waweeatha.
 I would rather die he murmured,
 For my cunning gives me chances,
 Being hunted in the open
 Than to writhe in death from poison
 Or of wounds from someone's shooting
 Very human, not surprising
 Were these thoughts of Waweeatha.

III.

Cubbing over, this wise jackal
 Settled down in thick Ben Shemen
 Seeking shelter from the cold wind
 And the snow and blinding rainstorms
 Never heard the hounds or holloas
 Got all rough and lean and ugly
 Found it hard to earn his living
 Longed for Spring and other comforts
 When in March the early Spring came
 And the nights grew much less bitter
 When the sun's warmth cheered the
 woodland
 And the barley was a span high
 And the orange trees all yellow
 Like the toy trees bought at Hamleys
 Waweeatha turned quite restless
 Felt the voice of Spring a-calling
 Felt a call borne on the night wind
 From away down in the valley
 Left his home in thick Ben Shemen
 Made a journey to a strange land
 By the wadi Kefir Ana
 Found the vixen that had called him
 Courted her and found her comely.
 Had to stay there in the strange land
 Jealousy will have its drawbacks
 Here there was no cave or burrow
 All this land was flat and open
 Where thy wisdom, Waweeatha ?
 Many folk have lived to rue it

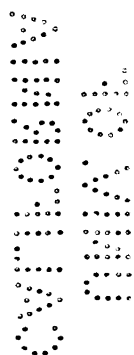
When their hearts have won the battle
Over heads stuffed full of logic
Lying out amid the barley
Was our lovesick Waweeatha.

Then one morning in that barley
He was very rudely woken
There about a fathom from him
Were a lot of men on horses
And a pink coat on a grey horse
With a lot of hounds beside him
Who were coming straight towards him.
I must fly said Waweeatha
Quickly jumped up from the barley
As he did so all the hounds spoke
And the pink coat cheered them loudly
Blew his horn and quickly followed,
Where shall I go now he wondered
I don't know this Kefir Ana
I must get to my Ben Shemen
Where there are so many jackal,
I must get there very quickly
Or I'll meet the fate my cub did,
Waweeatha made a detour
With the hounds in cry behind him
Set his mask for his Ben Shemen
He could see it on the hilltop,
Green and thick and most inviting.
But it was a longish journey
Down the wadi past the olives
Where he broke into the open
Reached the cactus and that helped him
For the hounds dislike their sharp thorns

And the cry stopped for a moment.
Then he heard the pink coat speaking
Saying e-leu try and wind him
I must go said Waweeatha
I had better not remain here
With his second breath he cantered
Down the slope towards Ben Shemen
Heard the cry of hounds reviving
Heard the cry swell up to chorus
Hard he ran up to the hilltop
Still far off he saw Ben Shemen
Then the cry grew close and louder
I must hasten said the warrior
But his breath began to shorten
And the earth seemed very heavy
While his feet seemed clogged and leaden
Could not make the journey faster.
Would he ever reach Ben Shemen
There it was across one valley
Where his friends were in their numbers
But the hounds came all together
Racing, striving for their quarry.
Bold Buccleuch and Tedworth ladies
Strove in turn when now they viewed him
And that deep voiced badger-pied one
Raced in front of all the others
Now they're on him, its capevi.
In despair he turns to face them
But they have him and its over.
Waweeatha's made his last point
No more roving from Ben Shemen
Lived and died a gallant jackal
We salute you, Waweeatha.









Published by the kind permission of Messrs. Pawsey & Payne.

MAJOR CHARLES PHILLIP AINSLIE
4th Queen's Own Dragoons, 1808.

FROM THE PAINTING BY REINAGLE.

Digitized by Google

The frontispiece is reproduced from a painting by Reinagle, being a portrait of Major Charles Phillips Ainslie, in the full dress uniform of the 4th Queen's Own Dragoons, 1708. Major Ainslie joined the regiment as Lieutenant, 1703, and became Brevet Lieutenant Colonel, 1812.

The 4th Queen's Own Dragoons (now 4th Queen's Own Hussars) were raised in 1685, so this year celebrates their 250th Anniversary; up to 1818 it had been a heavy cavalry corps, with scarlet uniform, green facings and silver lace, but on being constituted Light Dragoons the uniform was changed to blue with pale yellow or straw coloured facings.

This picture is reproduced by courtesy of Messrs. Lawes & Paine, 1, Bury Street, St. James's, London.

The frontispiece is reproduced from a painting by Reinagle, being a portrait of Major Charles Phillip Ainslie, in the full dress uniform of the 4th Queen's Own Dragoons, 1808. Major Ainslie joined the regiment as Lieutenant, 1793, and became Brevet Lieut.-Colonel, 1812.

The 4th Queen's Own Dragoons (now 4th Queen's Own Hussars) were raised in 1685, so this year celebrate their 250th Anniversary; up to 1818 it had been a heavy cavalry corps, with scarlet uniform, green facings and silver lace, but on being constituted Light Dragoons the uniform was changed to blue with pale yellow or straw coloured facings.

This picture is reproduced by courtesy of Messrs. Pawsey & Payne, 1, Bury Street, St. James's, London.

MAJOR
CHARLES PHILLIP AINSLIE
4th Dragoons, 1808

CH. REINAGLE

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

JULY, 1935

EDITORIAL

His Majesty the King has conferred the following honours on the occasion of the completion of the Duke of Gloucester's tour in Australia and New Zealand :—

K.C.M.G. : Major-General R. G. H. Howard-Vyse,
C.M.G., D.S.O.

K.C.V.O. : Captain A. R. W. Curtis, C.M.G., C.V.O.,
M.C.

C.M.G. : Captain L. W. H. Kerr, M.V.O., O.B.E.

M.V.O. : Lieutenant D. S. Shreiber.

The following officers received honours in the King's Birthday List :—

G.C.V.O. : The Marquess of Cambridge, K.C.V.O.

C.V.O. : Lieut.-Colonel Lord A. R. Innes-Ker, D.S.O.

M.V.O. : Lieut.-Colonel R. Denning, M.C.

C.B. : Colonel F. D. H. C. Whitmore, C.M.G., D.S.O.,
T.D., D.L.

His Majesty the King has approved that the following regiments shall in future enjoy the distinction of "Royal" :—

5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards.

2nd Lancers (Gardner's Horse).

Australia :

1st Light Horse, and will in future be designated as
"The Royal New South Wales Lancers."

South Africa:

Natal Carabineers (two regiments), and will in future be designated as "The Royal Natal Carabineers (First)" and "The Royal Natal Carabineers (Second)."

His Majesty has further approved that the 5th Royal Inniskilling Dragoon Guards be permitted to change their facings from primrose to royal-blue.

* * * *

Lieut.-Colonel Z. G. Burmester, O.B.E., will take over the Editorship from July 1st.

* * * *

The Army review at Aldershot will be held on Saturday, July 13th, at 11.30 a.m. in the Rushmoor Arena. The price of the tickets will be, for stands and enclosures from 6d. to 5s. each, for boxes seating six, £1 10s. and £2 2s. Tickets and bookings may now be made on application to the Hon. Sec., Reception Committee, Royal Review, Tattoo Office, Aldershot, or through the leading London agencies. About 11,000 troops will be taking part in the Review.

* * * *

The Campaigns on which the Military History papers will be set in the near future have recently been revised and are now as shown below—

EXAMINATION OF ARMY OFFICERS FOR PROMOTION—CAMPAIGNS ON WHICH THE MILITARY HISTORY PAPERS WILL BE SET.

| <i>Date of Examination</i> | <i>Campaign set for first time.</i> | <i>Campaign set for second time.</i> | <i>Campaign set for last time.</i> |
|----------------------------|--|--|--|
| October, 1935 | Gallipoli—Inception of the campaign to May, 1915. | — | Mesopotamia, up to and including the capture of Kut-al-Amara, October, 1915. |
| March, 1936 | Mesopotamia, from October, 1915, to the occupation of Baghdad, 11th March, 1917. | Gallipoli—Inception of the campaign to May, 1915. | — |
| October, 1936 | — | Mesopotamia, from October, 1915, to the occupation of Baghdad, 11th March, 1917. | Gallipoli—Inception of the campaign to May, 1915. |

* * * *

The undermentioned have become subscribers for 1935 :—

Brigadier A. L. I. Friend, O.B.E., M.C., Commander
Cavalry Brigade, Egypt.

Lieut.-Colonel H. S. Laverton, O.B.E., late 3rd
Hussars.

Major S. H. Persse, 15th Lancers, I.A.

2nd Lieutenant D. R. H. Blunt, 4/7th Dragoon Guards.

* * * *



THE CAVALRY IN FRANCE, AUGUST-NOVEMBER, 1918

By LIEUTENANT-COLONEL T. PRESTON, M.C., T.D.,
Yorkshire Hussars

PART VI

THE BATTLES OF THE SELLE AND SAMBRE

After its work in the Second Battle of Le Cateau described in the last article, the Cavalry Corps was not used again until the last two days of the War, 10th and 11th November.

It will be remembered, however, that since the first week in September the 2nd Cavalry Division had been split up for corps and divisional cavalry work, and its brigades and regiments were constantly used during the two final British attacks on the Western Front, namely the Battle of the Selle (17th—25th October) and the Battle of the Sambre (4th—11th November).

The cavalry operations will be easier to understand if we first explain that the Selle and Sambre battles were fought by the three southernmost British Armies, namely the Fourth, Third and First from right to left, on a total front of about 35 miles ; and that each of these Armies had a cavalry brigade allotted to it, as under :—

Fourth Army .. 5th Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General N. W. Haig) : Royal Scots Greys, 12th Lancers, 20th Hussars.

Third Army .. 4th Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General C. H. Rankin) : Carabiniers, 3rd Hussars, Oxfordshire Hussars.

First Army .. 3rd Cavalry Brigade (Brigadier-General J. A. Bell-Smyth) : 4th Hussars, 5th Lancers, 16th Lancers.

As in the earlier operations however, the three brigades seldom worked as complete formations ; far oftener they were used by regiments among different corps, who in turn frequently split up the regiments and sent squadrons to different divisions.

Consequently an account of the cavalry's doings at this period of the War must largely be a series of narratives dealing with various individual regiments in turn. It must also be borne in mind, although the fact is not always mentioned, that a regiment sometimes had attached to it a subsection or section (i.e., two or four Vickers guns) from the 3rd, 4th or 5th Machine Gun Squadron as the case might be. D, J and E Batteries, R.H.A., also occasionally sent guns with the regiments, besides being attached to infantry formations.

THE 5TH CAVALRY BRIGADE WITH THE FOURTH ARMY

(See sketch at end of article)

We saw in a former article that from the 1st October the 5th Cavalry Brigade had been attached to the IX Corps* of Sir Henry Rawlinson's Fourth Army. This brigade remained in the Fourth Army till the end of the War, two of its regiments (Scots Greys and 20th Hussars) acting with the IX Corps on the right, whilst the 12th Lancers during the final week worked with the XIII Corps† on the left. This latter formation also had the Northumberland Hussars as corps cavalry until 8th November.

A reference to the sketch map will show that the Fourth Army's final advance was on a front of some 10 to 15 miles and that, after passing Le Cateau, it—so to speak—brought up its left shoulder and changed direction from north-east almost to due east. Mention must also be made of the nature of the country. In contrast to the open, gently undulating fields west of the Selle, those east of it were generally enclosed by thick hedges and the slopes were more abrupt. The Selle river and the Sambre and Oise Canal, though narrow, were unfordable, whilst other smaller streams such as the Rivierette, the Petite

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----|----|---|
| * IXth Corps Commander | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir W. P. Braithwaite. |
| 1st Division | .. | .. | Major-General E. P. Strickland. |
| 6th Division | .. | .. | Major-General T. O. Marden. |
| 32nd Division | .. | .. | Major-General T. S. Lambert. |
| 46th Division | .. | .. | Major-General G. F. Boyd. |
| † XIIIth Corps Commander | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir T. L. N. Morland. |
| 18th Division | .. | .. | Major-General R. P. Lee. |
| 25th Division | .. | .. | Major-General J. R. E. Charles. |
| 50th Division | .. | .. | Major-General H. C. Jackson. |
| 66th Division | .. | .. | Major-General H. K. Bethell. |

Helpe and the Grande Helpe, crossed the front further east, with steep ridges on the higher ground between them. Beyond Avesnes the country was thickly wooded.

THE ROYAL SCOTS GREYS WITH THE IX CORPS,
17TH OCTOBER—1ST NOVEMBER

16th Oct. Although it was not anticipated that cavalry could be employed in the Selle operations save in small bodies for reconnaissance, the Royal Scots Greys (Major S. J. Hardy)* were allotted on the 16th October to the 1st Division, less one troop of C Squadron with the 46th Division.

The IX Corps plan of attack for the 17th October was to employ the 46th Division on the right and the 6th on the left, the 1st Division being in rear of the 6th and ready to pass through it after the first objective had been captured. The commanders hoped to gain possession of the high ground between the Selle and the Sambre, and the hope was fully realized.

17th Oct. The attack on the 17th started in a thick mist, and the right of the 1st Division had to pass through the village of Vaux Andigny; mounted patrols of the Greys were considerably used during the day and lost some men, two other ranks being killed and three officers and seven other ranks wounded.

18th Oct. An advance of about two miles was made, and the attack was renewed next day, which resulted in a further gain of ground. On this second day of the battle, B Squadron of the Greys was ordered to seize the high ground east of Wassigny, but heavy machine-gun fire made this impossible. Patrols sent on to report on the crossings of the Sambre and Oise Canal found these destroyed. It may be noted that on this date General Strickland allotted B Squadron to the 1st Infantry Brigade and the remainder of the regiment to the 3rd Brigade.

19th—31st Oct. During the rest of October the Greys were, unfortunately, visited by a severe "go" of influenza, which virtually put them out of action for a time (except for Lieutenant M. Petherick's troop with the 46th Division, which for some reason escaped).

* Died 12th December, 1934.

Indeed, for the rest of the campaign the regiment could only find one strong squadron for active operations.

On the 1st November Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Little, 20th Hussars, assumed temporary command of the 5th Cavalry Brigade, and on the same date the IX Corps chief medical officer examined the Scots Greys in their bivouac south of Le Verguier. The result was that 178 men were found fit for duty and the IX Corps was asked whether these should be organized as one strong squadron or two weak ones. The answer was that the former arrangement was preferred, and the squadron was placed under the command of Captain C. H. Gaisford-St. Lawrence and sent to the 1st Division at Vaux Andigny—except that, as before, one troop went to the 46th Division. 1st Nov.

THE LAST WEEK : THE SCOTS GREYS AND 20TH HUSSARS WITH THE IX CORPS

In the early morning of Monday, 4th November, began the final British attack on the Western Front, known as the Battle of the Sambre. It was delivered by the British Armies on a 30-mile front from the Sambre and Oise Canal, just north of Oisy, to Valenciennes, and was extended for another 20 miles southwards from Oisy by the French. The general line of advance of the Fourth Army, on a 15-mile frontage, was due east. This Army had at the outset to cross the canal—six to eight feet deep and thirty-five to forty feet wide at water level—with, in addition, low flooded land alongside it between Catillon and Ors. 4th Nov.

East of the canal and south of the Sambre river, the country consists generally of a series of parallel valleys through which run the tributaries of the Sambre, separated by ridges which made excellent positions for rearguard action. The whole area was very like a dairy-farming county at home, with grass meadows intersected by wire and hedges which made infantry and cavalry movement very slow, except on the roads. The villages, mostly situated in the valleys, were much better built than those one knew in the Somme district, and there were many scattered farms.

Sir Henry Rawlinson laid down two objectives for his Army : the *First* (or Red Line) from east of Fesmy to east of Landrecies and thence northwards through the Mormal Forest ; and the *Second* (or line of exploitation) from east of Cartignies to Dompierre and thence northwards.

On the right of the Fourth Army, General Braithwaite (IX Corps) had the 1st Division on his right and the 32nd Division on his left, the Scots Greys being lent to the former and the 20th Hussars to the latter.

The Greys' composite squadron was split up amongst the infantry brigades of the 1st Division, Lieutenant M. Oliver's troop going to the 2nd Brigade (Brigadier-General G. C. Kelly) and Lieutenant Earl of Altamont's troop to the 1st Brigade (Brigadier-General L. L. Wheatley).

Zero hour on the 4th was at 5.45 a.m., and the morning was very foggy. The leading infantry of the 1st Division soon succeeded in crossing the Sambre and Oise Canal at and south of Catillon, and Altamont's troop pushed forward towards the line La Justice—Viéville. One of his patrols came under heavy fire from Viéville, but he brought his Hotchkiss gun into action and managed to withdraw his men without loss. On the left, Oliver's troop performed valuable service in keeping touch between the left flank of the 1st Brigade and the right of the 32nd Division near Catillon. The other two troops were not engaged, and during the evening the squadron was transferred to the 46th Division, where Lieutenant M. Petherick's troop, already with that division, joined up. The Greys were now 206 strong.

The 20th Hussars do not appear to have been actively employed on the 4th ; they were kept with the reserve brigade (the 97th) of the 32nd Division, being located till midday at St. Souplet and afterwards at Bazuel. In the afternoon they were ordered to send one squadron to the 46th Division at l'Arbrede Guise, this squadron not rejoining until the Armistice.

THE 12TH LANCERS WITH THE XIII CORPS

4th Nov.

The 12th Lancers (commanded by Major H. V. S. Charrington owing to Lieutenant-Colonel Cecil Fane being on leave) were

placed under the orders of the XIII Corps for the Sambre operations, and moved during the 4th November to Bois d'Eoil-lers Farm, about a mile north-east of Le Cateau. The Corps ordered one squadron to be attached to the 66th Division, and B Squadron (Captain J. R. C. Rawnsley) was selected for this duty.

At 1 p.m. came the news that Landrecies had fallen and that our infantry were crossing the Sambre and Oise Canal, and the 12th Lancers—less one squadron—were ordered to

“Cross the canal at Landrecies and move forward on Dompierre—Monceau—Leval, endeavouring to get in touch with V Corps right.”*

On receipt of these orders Major Charrington, accompanied by Captain F. F. Spicer and a patrol under Lieutenant H. M. B. Chester, rode forward to La Blanchisserie, where they met Brigadier-General Frizell, commanding the 75th Infantry Brigade. Lieutenant Chester's patrol then pushed on to Rue des Juifs, followed by the rest of A Squadron under Captain Spicer; but after a discussion with the C.O. of the 11th Sherwood Foresters, who explained the situation, they returned to the regiment in Landrecies for the night.

THE FOURTH ARMY'S ADVANCE CONTINUES

The dawn of the 5th November, 1918, found the enemy ^{5th Nov.} falling back all along the line, and on the Fourth Army front the IX and XIII Corps resumed the advance. There was a heavy drizzling rain which made observation difficult, and as this continued for the next few days, the roads and tracks were churned into mud and slush by the continuous traffic, thus increasing transport difficulties enormously.

The overnight orders for the Greys were to cross the Sambre and Oise Canal, pass through the infantry outposts at daybreak, and seize the high ground north-east of the line Beaurepaire—Prisches. Two patrols were sent off first, that on the right, under Lieutenant Earl of Altamont, being held up by machine-gun fire at Le Sart. The left-hand patrol under Lieutenant

* This was the right Corps of the Third Army which was advancing on the left of the Fourth Army.

N. D. McCorquodale was luckier and managed to penetrate as far as Prisches before being stopped at the eastern exit of that village ; the rest of the Greys then rode up and, although they could not take the high ground as ordered, managed to hold a line along the Prisches—Maroilles road until relieved by the infantry at dusk, when they withdrew to billets at Mézières.

5th Nov.

Meanwhile on the left of the IX Corps, the 32nd Division had resumed its advance, the 97th Infantry Brigade (Brigadier-General Sir G. Armytage) passing through the outpost line at 7.30 a.m. With this brigade were C Squadron, 20th Hussars, and eight guns of the 5th Machine Gun Squadron (Major E. S. D. Martin); General Armytage sent half this mounted force to the 5th Border Regiment who were leading the advance of his brigade on the right, and half to the 10th Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders on the left. The Borders' C.O. ordered his cavalry under Lieutenant J. C. Bland to cover his front which they did most effectively, advancing at 7.40 a.m. and capturing the village of Favril with 49 prisoners and two 8-inch guns, at the same time gaining touch with the Scots Greys on their right. Then they pushed on to a point some two miles east of Favril, when they were stopped by a strong line of machine-gun posts ; they therefore halted and held their ground until the infantry came up later. Immediately to the north, the 10th Argyll and Sutherlands used their half-squadron of 20th Hussars (Captain R. W. Sparrow) to protect their left flank, and this task too was successfully accomplished, the Hussars taking three prisoners but being compelled to stop on reaching La Basse Maroilles on account of machine-gun opposition. The 20th Hussars (less A Squadron) spent the night at Favril, having lost during the day two other ranks killed, 2nd Lieutenant T. F. Denchfield and two other ranks wounded, and 17 horses killed and wounded.

Turning to the 12th Lancers on the XIII Corps front, two troops did some useful patrolling work with the 25th Division, the regiment moving at 2.30 p.m. to Maroilles where it billeted for the night.

THE NORTHUMBERLAND HUSSARS AT THE OLD MILL DES PRES

Mention should also be made of "C" Squadron, Northumber-^{5th Nov.}land Hussars, under Captain Hon. C. F. M. Ramsay, who received orders from the G.O.C. 50th Division to reconnoitre the Old Mill des Pres (north-west of Maroilles) and if possible to seize and hold the crossing of the Petite Helpe river ; this would cover the right flank of the division, which had become unavoidably exposed by the 25th Division on its right having advanced further than the 50th. A patrol consisting of Lieutenant Hawley and nine men was despatched at 7 a.m. and half-an-hour later reached a lock on the River Sambre which was held by the 2nd Munster Fusiliers, nearly a mile west of the Mill. As the ground was swampy and intersected by ditches, the horses were left here and a message sent back ; Hawley went to borrow a Lewis gun from the Fusiliers, whilst Captain Ramsay with six men advanced—dismounted—on the Mill from the north.

Whilst this little party was moving forward, some infantry who turned out to be the 11th Sherwood Foresters (25th Division) were seen advancing on the right, and a messenger was therefore sent to tell them that the cavalrymen were co-operating.

As the Northumberlands drew near to the Mill, the Germans were seen to be holding a position some eighty yards east of the Petite Helpe river. Ramsay therefore halted his men and told each one where to go, adding that no one was to open fire (unless attacked) until he himself gave the signal.

The men then ran to their pre-arranged positions and Ramsay, with a corporal, searched some buildings and a hedge west of the Mill, which were unoccupied. The order to fire was then given, taking the Germans completely by surprise ; two fell dead, and the answering fire of the remainder was most inaccurate.

Captain Ramsay then proceeded to wade across the river and cut some wire entanglements on the far side ; it was now 8 a.m., and ten minutes later the Sherwood Foresters came up. Ramsay, accompanied only by one man, went along the road

leading towards Rue de Lieutenant, drove off a German machine-gun which was firing on the infantry, and—with Lieutenant Hawley and another man—took some identifications from dead Germans in a trench. The enemy's defensive positions west of Rue de Lieutenant were also located and reported to the leading infantry.

* * * * *

6th Nov.

Next morning found the Greys (less Altamont's troop in divisional reserve) covering the advance of Brigadier-General J. V. Campbell's 137th Infantry Brigade, whose objective was the high ground north of Cartignies, some three miles ahead of our then front line. The cavalry were given various tasks in the way of collecting information, all of which were carried out. On the extreme right, a patrol under Lieutenant T. Holland-Hibbert got in touch with the French at Les Reteaux. On his left, Lieutenant M. Oliver's patrol rode by Pont d'Hasard to the bridge over the Chevireuil stream near Rouge Croix, where he came under artillery and rifle fire, losing a man and two horses killed; he remained for some time in observation and sent in a report. Another patrol led by Lieutenant M. Petherick was fired on east of Le Conroy and had one man wounded; Petherick then thought it best to reconnoitre the enemy's position, dismounted and sent back important information. A fourth patrol under Lieutenant McCorquodale rode through Malgarni—where French troops were met with—and saw no enemy until reaching Beaurepaire, when several of them hastily retired leaving one to be taken prisoner. Being shot at from the east side of this village, the patrol dismounted for action and, engaging the Germans with rifle-fire, got on as far as La Hayettes. McCorquodale had handed over his horse to a civilian who happened to be there, and was astonished to see the Frenchman bring up the led horses at a trot, in approved cavalry style, as soon as the Germans fell back! It may be noted that whenever a horse was killed, the civilians took any risks to obtain some of the flesh, so great had been the shortage of food—and meat especially—during the enemy occupation.

The Scots Greys had during the day been working on a front of just over three miles, the direction of the advance being about east-north-east. By the time they got into billets at Le Sart, it was reckoned that the horses of some patrols had done forty miles on empty stomachs, for it had not been possible to bring up any oats either for early morning feeding or to put in the nosebags. This was due to unavoidable transport difficulties, the Germans having blown up so many bridges and cross-roads, and this also affected the evacuation of the wounded. S.Q.M.S. Frier of the Greys, we are told, made tireless efforts to get up rations, frequently in advance of the infantry front line.

Lord Altamont's troop, which had been in 46th Divisional reserve, was sent on a special mission to report on the high ground south-west of Avesnes; he was held up by machine-gun fire on the railway between Boulogne-sur-Helpe and Cartignies, and reported that the bridge over the Helpe at Cartignies was destroyed. This troop was the only one employed next day (7th), the rest of the Greys' composite squadron remaining in billets at Prisches. Altamont was ordered to report on the enemy positions towards Avesnes; he had to wait until the R.E. had repaired Cartignies bridge, after which he pushed on two miles to Le Cheval Blanc. Here he came under rifle-fire, but managed to get on another half-mile to Haut Lieu, slightly over a mile south-west of Avesnes, the Germans still holding the high ground south of the town. Altamont sent in a full report, and found the church tower at Haut Lieu very useful as an observation post. 7th Nov.

We must now return to the 20th Hussars who were working with the 97th Infantry Brigade (32nd Division) just north of the Greys. The regiment passed through the infantry outpost line, on the Prisches—Maroilles road, at 9 a.m. and rode on to the Petite Helpe river, the far bank of which was found to be held by the Germans. The river was unfordable and all bridges on the divisional front were destroyed, but the Hussars found that they could get across at Maroilles in the XIII Corps area, one squadron being left at Grand Fayt so as not to leave the 97th Brigade front uncovered. The remainder of the regiment 8th Nov.

having crossed the stream, came up against a strong line of enemy posts along the Grand Fayt—Taisnières road, which barred any further progress that day, and they spent the night in farms south of the Maroilles—Marbaix road, some $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles east of the former place.

During the night, the infantry of the 97th Brigade managed to advance without opposition to the Cartignies—Dompierre road, this movement bringing them level with the 25th Division on their left.

7th Nov.

Next morning (7th) patrols of the 20th Hussars passed through the infantry at 7.15 a.m. and covered about a mile of country unopposed. It seemed as if they would reach Avesnes, but this was not to be, for they came up against the usual line of German machine-guns a mile west of the town. The cavalrymen handed over the front line to the infantry at 10.30 a.m., leaving out patrols to keep touch with the enemy; one of these was under Squadron-Sergeant-Major Adams who, riding too far ahead of his men, was taken prisoner. The 20th Hussars withdrew to Autreppe for the night; during the day they unfortunately lost their medical officer killed (Captain R. D. Clark, R.A.M.C.), whilst one other rank and ten horses were killed and seven other ranks wounded.

During these two days (6th and 7th November) the 12th Lancers had two troops operating with the 7th and 74th Infantry Brigades (25th Division) north of the Grande Helpe river, but the situation did not permit the remainder of the regiment to pass through the infantry. The 12th Lancers moved on the 7th November first to Taisnières and then to Dompierre where it remained next day, sending two troops to work with the 25th Division and two more with the 66th.

THE BRITISH CAPTURE AVESNES, 8TH NOVEMBER

8th Nov.

At dawn on Friday, 8th November, the cavalry tried as usual to pass through the infantry outpost line, but found the enemy holding the same line as the previous night, west of Avesnes. The 32nd Division therefore attacked the town at 11 a.m. and gradually forced their way into it; by the evening

our troops were in full possession, with an outpost line some 1,000 yards to the east. Two 20th Hussars officers' patrols under 2nd Lieutenants C. J. Michell and L. P. Ralli which had been out since daybreak, immediately pushed round south and north of the town and met at Flaumont more than a mile east of it. On their way back and when crossing the railway line, they had to pass a truck full of ammunition which was on fire; the truck exploded, 2nd Lieutenant Ralli being mortally wounded, one of his men also being killed and two wounded.

The 97th Infantry Brigade having passed through Avesnes, took up a line to the east and dug itself in; at first its right flank was in the air, so the 20th Hussars were used to form a defensive flank facing south. Later, however, some of the 46th Division came up and continued the line to the south; this released the Hussars who withdrew to Belle Fontaine for the night.

ADVANCE OF THE CAVALRY ON 9TH NOVEMBER

When daylight broke on the 9th November the infantry ^{9th Nov.} outposts of the Fourth Army found that the Germans had completely disappeared, and it was urgently necessary to send out cavalry to regain touch with them.

On the right, the Scots Greys' composite squadron under Captain C. H. Gaisford-St. Lawrence was directed first on Sains-du-Nord, moving with three patrols in front on parallel roads. On reaching Sains the Greys were given a great reception by the inhabitants, who were all in their best clothes and waving Allied flags; but except for two Germans who had been hiding in the village and were captured, there was no sign of the enemy. Captain St. Lawrence was considerably handicapped by the fact that he had reached the eastern edge of the maps in his possession, which was particularly awkward seeing that the huge Forest of Trelon lay just ahead. Some French cavalry, met with later in the day, either could not or would not lend any maps, but all the same some Greys' patrols managed to penetrate some two miles into the forest and one reached Pont du Riez à Groisette on the Trelon—Liessies road. Another patrol picked

up a message dropped by an aeroplane which read :

“ Enemy in great quantity and confusion trying to cross bridge 3 miles on. Impossible to drop bombs owing to large number of civilians waving flags.”

On learning this, the squadron leader was at first inclined to push on : but he had reached the limit of the area over which he had been ordered to advance, so he put an outpost line along the railway west and south-west of Liessies and fell back later to Sains. He found that this village, owing to some misunderstanding, had been bombed by our own aircraft some four hours after he had ridden through it in the morning !

About a mile and a half north of the Greys, the 20th Hussars had also been pushing forward, having passed through the infantry at 7.45 a.m., and ridden unopposed through Flaumont, Semeries and Ramousies to Pont de la Ville, where they too reached the eastern edge of their maps. Patrols rode on a further two miles and gained touch with the enemy at Touvent on the Belgian frontier. The 20th spent the night at Pont de la Ville—a novel experience, as they were five miles ahead of the nearest infantry at Flaumont. No orders arrived for the regiment during the night, presumably because all the roads and bridges had been destroyed. Doubtless a horseman could have got through, but evidently the higher commanders in rear had none available.

* * * * *

9th Nov.

We left the 12th Lancers at Dompierre. In the early hours of the 9th they had three troops forward with the infantry—one troop under Lieutenant R. L. McCreery being with the 50th Division and two under Lieutenants C. A. Morris and F. T. Baines with the 66th Division ; the infantry outpost line was east of, and roughly parallel with, the main Avesnes—Maubeuge road. All three troops were out at daybreak and found the Germans gone. McCreery and his men, pushing eastwards, met with a hostile machine-gun post near Lez Fontaines ; this was captured together with six prisoners, and patrols were sent on towards Solre-le-Chateau. In the meantime the O.C. 12th Lancers (Major Charrington) had been told at 50th Divisional

headquarters of the enemy's withdrawal and of McCreery's progress. He immediately ordered Captain F. F. Spicer with two troops of A Squadron to advance straight down the main road to Solre-le-Chateau, occupy it, and send on patrols to Clairfayts and l'Ecrevisse. Spicer and his half-squadron started off as quickly as possible, and—thanks no doubt to McCreery's capture of the enemy machine-gun earlier—they got a clear run through Sars-Poteries and on to Solre-le-Chateau. This was a small country town of some 3,000 inhabitants who greeted the Lancers with the utmost enthusiasm; the Germans had evidently retired in a hurry, as they left behind them a field gun, a machine-gun, a large shell dump, a fully loaded ammunition train on the railway, three motor cars, two lorries and some hundreds of transport wagons.

Riding quickly through Solre, Spicer and his men occupied the villages of Beaurieux and l'Ecrevisse, with patrols well forward to Clairfayts and Hestrud. There was a good deal of machine-gun fire from the woods away to the north, doubtless because the Third Army on the left had not yet come up.

Major Charrington's next step was to move the remainder of the 12th Lancers up to 198th Infantry Brigade headquarters (Brigadier-General A. J. Hunter) on the Avesnes—Maubeuge main road, where he learnt from Lieutenants Morris and Baines that the enemy had disappeared on the front of the 66th Division. Charrington therefore ordered half of B Squadron under Lieutenant C. C. L. Williams to proceed to Solre-le-Chateau, occupy it if A Squadron had not already done so, and then go on till the enemy rearguards were definitely located. He himself would follow on with the rest of the regiment.

Williams and his two troops, riding with stripped saddles to save weight, pushed on quickly and joined Captain Spicer's half squadron just east of Solre. Riding on through Spicer's advanced posts, Williams sent patrols through Clairfayts and Hestrud and found the enemy holding a defensive position along the east bank of the little river Thure; he reconnoitred this position very thoroughly and sent back a report accordingly. Shortly afterwards, Major Charrington and the remainder of

the 12th Lancers reached Solre, and later on, touch was gained with the 20th Hussars near Clairfayts.

The 12th Lancers had, despite both flanks being in the air, made an advance of over eight miles since passing through the infantry, and had definitely found out where the enemy intended to make his next stand. After a personal reconnaissance by Captain J. R. C. Rawnsley, the regiment was brought back into billets in Solre-le-Chateau, an outpost line east of the town being taken up by infantry of the 50th Division. The various troops which had been attached to infantry divisions and brigades joined up, and the C.O. was personally thanked for their valuable services by the generals concerned.

FORMATION OF BETHELL'S FORCE, 9TH NOVEMBER

9th Nov.

We must notice here the general situation on the Fourth Army front. Owing to the explosion of delay-action mines on the St. Quentin and Busigny railway, it had been necessary to use railheads much further back, which meant very long runs for the motor transport. There were cases of lorries being on the road for seventy-two consecutive hours, and the strain thrown on them was increased by the bad condition of the roads. In the forward area where the roads had been destroyed by mine craters, the infantry had outstripped the limit of the lorries, and additional horse transport had to be taken from the ammunition columns to supply the troops. In short, it was clear that if the army continued to advance there would be a complete breakdown in the supply organization.

Therefore on 9th November General Rawlinson decided to halt his Army in depth on and west of the main road running south and north through Avesnes, and to keep touch with the Germans—who were in full retreat and unable to put up a strong resistance any longer—by means of a comparatively small mobile force. This force was placed under the command of Major-General H. K. Bethell* (G.O.C. 66th Division) and included the 5th Cavalry Brigade, the South African Infantry Brigade, an

* General Bethell was a cavalryman, who three years previously had been a 7th Hussar captain employed as brigade-major to the 8th Cavalry Brigade.

armoured car battalion, a cyclist and a pioneer battalion, two squadrons of R.A.F., and a proportion of artillery and engineers.*

During the afternoon Brigadier-General Neil Haig—who had returned from leave and resumed command of the 5th Cavalry Brigade—was asked to report to Major-General Bethell at Taisnières as soon as he could, as the brigade would be needed to function next day; he (Bethell) said he wanted as much cavalry as possible.

THE 5TH CAVALRY BRIGADE WITH BETHELL'S FORCE,
10TH—11TH NOVEMBER

Owing to its units being somewhat scattered, the 5th Cavalry ^{10th Nov.} Brigade could not be concentrated as soon as General Bethell had hoped; however, at 5 a.m. on Sunday, 10th November, General Neil Haig and his brigade-major went to Grand Fayt and saw Major-General Lambert commanding the 32nd Division. He then sent orders to the 20th Hussars to push on and form a bridgehead position across the Beaumont stream† from Fourbechies (exclusive) to Renlies (inclusive), their right boundary being the Army boundary with the French and their left boundary the line Clairfayts—Sivry—Renlies. According to the 20th Hussars, this order does not seem to have reached them till 10.30 a.m., by which hour their patrols had already located a continuous line of hostile machine-gun posts from a point half-a-mile west of Eppe-Sauvage, along the southern and western edges of Nostrimont Wood, and thence roughly northwards along the Frontier line. On receipt of the new orders a fresh advanced guard was sent out, but this in turn came up against the line of machine-guns and no progress was possible; the regiment (less one squadron away with the 46th Division) therefore billeted at dusk in a farm south-east of Clairfayts.

The 12th Lancers had meanwhile been ordered to cover the advance of the South African Infantry Brigade (Brigadier-General W. E. C. Tanner) which was to move north-east from Solre-le-Chateau towards Beaumont. C Squadron under

* Another infantry brigade, the 199th, was added next day.

† Not shown on sketch map. It lies roughly parallel with, and about three miles beyond, the Armistice line.

Captain R. S. W. R. Wyndham-Quin acted as advanced guard, with Sergeant L. M. Lawrence's troop leading along the main road towards Hestrud. Lieutenant J. N. M. Fraser's troop (with two platoons XIII Corps cyclists attached) acted as right flank guard and was directed on Frasies, whilst 2nd Lieutenant D. I. Morgan's troop rode on the left, with orders to go through Eccles and Berelles and then turn east again.

Very soon after the advance had begun, all these troops came in contact with the enemy, who was holding much the same line as the previous day, along the Thure river. On the right, Fraser and his men got a footing over the frontier at Millard for a time, but heavy machine-gun and shell-fire compelled them to withdraw to a sunken road further back, whence they kept the enemy under observation and sent in excellent reports. Sergeant Lawrence in the centre got as far as Hestrud, where he stayed most of the day under intense shell-fire and gave valuable information to the infantry; whilst Lieutenant Morgan on the left caught six Germans in Berelles and pushed patrols well out towards the east and north. He, too, was heavily shelled throughout the day, and his position in a very wooded country with no troops at all on his left, was full of anxiety. The Lancers pushed well up to the German line and remained out all day, locating machine-guns and continually attempting to get forward in the hope that the hostile resistance was only temporary. Full information was sent to Brigadier-General Tanner whose leading battalion also tried to push forward, but very little headway was made, the Germans directing very heavy shell-fire on Solre-le-Chateau and all the roads leading east and north from it; this was largely due to the fact that the Fourth Army's leading troops had got further ahead than those of the Armies on its flanks, with the result that the enemy could concentrate all his artillery in this area, on to the very narrow front which we were attacking.

For most of the morning and early afternoon the 12th Lancers—less the three leading troops mentioned above—were halted on the western edge of Beaurieux Wood, where they had a most uncomfortable time with shell-fire and low-flying hostile

aeroplanes; they were, however, extremely lucky in only sustaining three casualties. At 3 p.m., as it was clear that there was no prospect of advancing further that day, Major Charrington arranged with Brigadier-General Tanner to leave B Squadron for the night in a farm near by—ready to push patrols out at dawn—and withdraw the rest of the regiment to billets in Solre. This move was completed by about 5 p.m. but the 12th Lancers were not to have a quiet evening by any means, for the Germans were shelling the station at the west end of the town, evidently trying to hit the ammunition train we had captured the day before. One shell landed in C Squadron lines, killing Sergeant Smith and three horses. About 6.30 p.m. an ammunition dump was struck by a shell and blew up with a terrific explosion which knocked everyone down, though fortunately with little harm done; all men were then got into cellars, and explosions continued to occur every few minutes till nearly midnight. Considerable damage was done to the houses but except for a few men and horses cut by flying splinters of metal, there were no further casualties. As one 12th Lancer officer put it, the last night of the war was certainly a memorable one for the inhabitants and troops billeted in Solre-le-Chateau.

* * * *

We have already noted that, owing to influenza, the Scots Greys had only one strong composite squadron actively employed at this period, the rest of the regiment being at Mons-en-Chaussée, five miles south-east of Péronne. This latter party, which included a new draft some 60 strong, made a somewhat remarkable forced march on the 9th and 10th November. Leaving Mons-en-Chaussée at 12.30 p.m. on the 9th, they rode to Sequehart (24 miles) where they halted till after midnight. Starting off in the very early hours of the 10th, they marched on to Catillon (27 miles) and thence, after another halt, to Avesnes (23 miles), arriving in the evening at the French infantry barracks, having covered about 74 miles in a day and a half. Needless to say, the new men were very weary!

* * * *

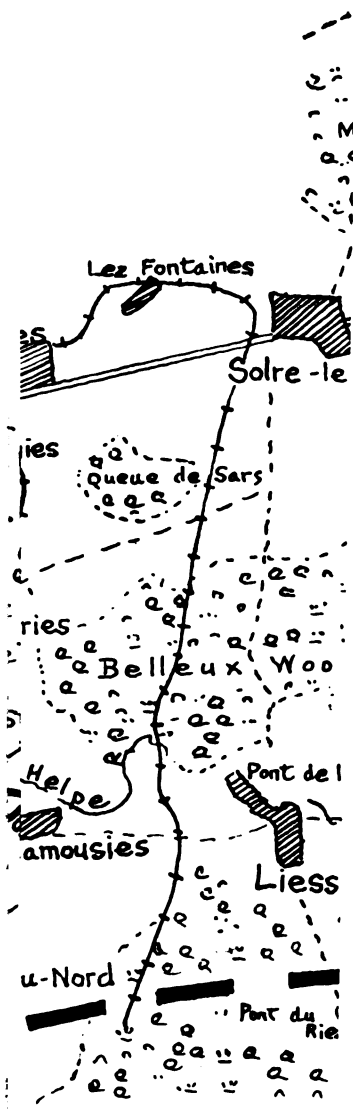
11th Nov.

Monday, the 11th of November, dawned clear and frosty, and the cavalymen were again astir early. The 20th Hussars were placed under the 199th Infantry Brigade (Brigadier-General G. C. Williams) who sent a troop each to the 18th King's (Liverpool Regiment) and the 9th Manchesters, with orders to regain touch with the enemy if it had been lost. Another troop also worked through Touvent Wood to Sivry and then on towards Sivry station, being held up at the cross-roads on the edge of Martinsart Wood about a mile beyond Sivry. The other two troops similarly came in contact with the enemy, whilst on their left, the patrols of "B" Squadron 12th Lancers found the Germans in very much the same positions as the day before; there was considerable shell and machine-gun fire all along the Army front.

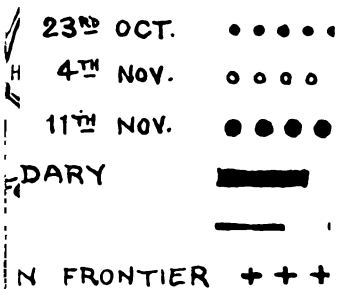
Major-General Bethell, whose headquarters were at Solre-le-Chateau, had learnt at 7 a.m. that hostilities were to cease at 11 a.m., and orders were at once sent out to the troops, some of whom, however, did not receive them until 10.30. The firing which had been heavy all the morning, stopped a few minutes before 11 o'clock, when it broke out in a final crash followed by complete silence. Combatants from both sides emerged from cover and walked about in full view, but in accordance with orders there was no attempt at fraternization. The line reached by Bethell's Force at the time of the Armistice is shown on the sketch map, and it is interesting to note that the right-hand portion near Montbliart was the most easterly point reached by any troops in the British Army on this day.

The Scots Greys' composite squadron was not engaged on the 11th. Captain Gaisford-St. Lawrence received orders at an early hour to proceed from Sains-du-Nord to Solre-le-Chateau, and duly started off; but the squadron was much delayed by the damage done to roads and bridges, and the fighting had ceased by the time it reached Solre.

(To be continued)



ANCE OF TH



SCALE



11th N

REFLECTIONS ON THE USE OF MODERN CAVALRY

Reviewed by **LIEUT.-COLONEL B. G. BAKER, D.S.O.**

UNDER this title a distinguished German Cavalry leader, General von Poseck, reviews the question of cavalry to-day in relation to that of twenty years ago. He gives many instructive instances on the use and misuse of cavalry but does not give us a clear definition of what is meant by modern cavalry. It is doubtful whether any man could do this, even the most confident and assertive expert, for if he be truly modern his mounted troops being conveyed about by any means other than horses, may no longer be described as cavalry, whereas if he still be in favour of the horse as conveyance, even when the horse's food is carried about for him by motor transport, then is his cavalry no longer modern. There should be some middle way, and by taking thought we may be able to strike it.

General von Poseck helps us in this by giving us the benefit of his great experience and his extensive studies. Yet even his experience did not go far enough for him to demonstrate the fullest use of the large bodies of cavalry that were at the disposal of Germany's military leaders in the Great War. "Experience is gained in war time, that means by practice," and of all the European armies the British was about the only one that had had any recent experience of active warfare, and very unpleasant experience it was at the time, in course of the last war in South Africa. Yet even the British military experts had not adequately appreciated the effect of modern small-arms fire, witness the inadequate provision of machine-guns. For the Germans without even our South African experience, this could only be worked out as an academic problem. Then again there comes into consideration what Bernhardt calls "the elements of friction and of chance, and the moral influences." Like ourselves, the German soldiers of all arms, suffered the shock of surprise in many forms, and ascribed it rightly to lack of war-experience. Such shock is likely to be repeated in the course of every war,

simply because it has never been possible to gauge with anything like accuracy the likely effect of modern armaments. It is this, probably, that prompts outside critics of military matters to assert that soldiers are always training for the last war, not the next. The only direction in which some degree of certainty may be recorded is in the matter of communications, yet here again the element of unpleasant surprise can never be entirely eliminated. It would be a painful situation for a commander to find that his mechanical communications have broken down in the sullen, obstinate way they have, and that there are no horsemen about to go and find out those things that lie hidden by clouds from aerial observation. General von Poseck still, and emphatically, puts his trust in a horse's legs and deprecates the too extensive use of machinery, which, he declares is imposing increasingly strict limitations on the technical aptitude of man in industry as in agriculture.

The author passes lightly over tactical experience in the Great War, telling us how the cavalry marched to war still hopeful of beating down resistance from horse-back with the primitive *arme blanche*, instead of searching his flanks and rear with firearms as both Bernhardt and Schlieffen recommend. The consequences of this chivalric ardour brought about a rapid change of ideas, and eventually the German cavalryman in spite of his somewhat inadequate equipment for the purpose, was able to use his firearm most effectively, in attack as well as defence, and thanks to his horse's legs.

From the tactical question the transition to the strategic is easy and evident, especially where the latter deals with large bodies of cavalry and how to make use of them to best advantage. It sounds almost too obvious to mention that the Supreme Command of an Army should be well acquainted with the possibilities of cavalry in order to set its tasks so as to make fullest use thereof. Nevertheless, as is made sufficiently clear, the requisite knowledge was conspicuously absent; of this General von Poseck gives interesting illustrations. He premises that fundamentally there has been little change, and harks back to the elder Moltke's suggestion of 1868 for the formation of Army Cavalry Corps [Heeres Kavalerie Korps = H.K.K.] staffs under the direct

control of the Supreme Army Command. Despite his advice, separate cavalry divisions were distributed equally along the whole front in 1870, and placed under order of Army or even Corps commanders. Again at the beginning of the Great War, the 40 cavalry divisions on the western front were equally dispersed with this difference, that two or three of them were grouped together in cavalry corps. No dispositions were made either on mobilisation or forward concentration, to bring the whole weight of the massed cavalry on to the German right, the flank from which a decision was expected. Bernhardt and Schlichting preached this doctrine, and Schlieffen himself had insisted on the decisive importance of the right, the projecting flank, echeloned in depth on the right, and flanked by masses of cavalry. As Bernhardt has it, here was the place for several cavalry corps in one formation. This was also the opinion of other experienced cavalry leaders, Bissing and Pelet Narbonne. But as happens in all armies, the voice of the practical soldier is that of one crying in the wilderness as against the opinion of the Olympians who reign above the brass-bound clouds. It was, so it appears, no different in the pre-war German army. Minister of War and Chief of General Staff set aside the opinions expressed by the Inspector-Generals of Cavalry, men obviously selected for their professional capacity to advise in cavalry matters. To give an instance, the above two major lights decided that a whole regiment was required for divisional cavalry. The result was that even the most lavish disperser of cavalry in command of a division could not make full use of the cavalry allotted to him, and that 16 regiments were returned by Infantry divisions in the autumn of 1914. These regiments would have meant a useful accession of strength to the Cavalry of the Army in the beginning. But even as things were at the time, the massing of two cavalry corps, of six divisions, on the right wing of the Armies, would have been feasible and could have been directed as follows:—2nd Army Cavalry Corps (Marwitz' 2nd, 4th, and 9th Cavalry Division) advancing North of Liège, Richthofen's 1st Army Cavalry Corps, crossing the Meuse between Liège and Namur at Hermalle, Huy and Andenne, with Guards, 3rd and 5th Cavalry Divisions, where in fact three Cavalry Divisions

actually did cross. The line north of Liège was taken by 2nd and 4th Cavalry Divisions. Under the Supreme Army Command these six Divisions could then have advanced westward over 40 miles of ground, and reached Tournay on the 22nd or 23rd of August, whereas Marwitz by reason of his excursion to the Schelt *viâ* Escanaffles, did not arrive till the 24th. The 4th Army Cavalry Corps, Hollen, with 6th and 8th Cavalry Divisions, would have taken over the reconnaissance to Dinant, meanwhile the 3rd, Frommel, South of Metz, had collected the 7th and the Bavarian Cavalry Division and aggravated a situation in which the Supreme Command seemed anyway at a loss how to employ three cavalry divisions. Through an equal distribution of cavalry along a front of some 200 miles, a situation had arisen that recalls a criticism made by Frederick the Great, "a disposition strong enough to defeat the enemy in one or other quarter, but not strong enough to draw any benefit from such success."

As soon as the German advance began, it became evident that the fortified French front, Montmédy-Epinal, was no place for cavalry, which belongs on the flanks not the front when close up to the enemy under such conditions. The movement of so many cavalry divisions to their appropriate place on the right of the Armies, their detachment from one command, their temporary attachment to others, in some instances leaving the higher cavalry commanders without a command, led to a purposeless and exhausting abuse of an arm that should have been kept fit and intact for important functions, such as pursuit. It is debatable even, whether Army Cavalry should be used as frontier protection for which mixed bodies of troops are really much better suited. Large bodies of cavalry do require considerate treatment, and the lack of it accounts for the fact that the divisions of the 3rd Army Cavalry Corps were quite unfit to exploit the advantages gained by 22nd August, 1914; their energies had been dissipated by a number of little side-shows.

The addition of motorised units to the cavalry, undoubtedly welcome, would not have altered the experience gained without them. They would have got no further than the unmixed cavalry divisions against the defensive line of Eastern France, they also would have served best as a strong, united body of cavalry on

the right flank. In this connection General von Poseck further gives his opinion, based on personal experience, of mechanized units in the field. On the German army's western front with its excellent roads, mechanized units of all descriptions would have rendered valuable service. On the eastern front, however, they would have been practically useless in spring, in autumn and in winter too, the poor roads and the ground alongside of them being impassible for motor traffic at those seasons and none too good at the best of times. Then again, as a tactical consideration, the obstacle of felled trees and similar time-honoured devices, would surely waste more of a mechanized unit's time than of well-horsed and trained cavalry. Then again reconnaissance. We all subscribe to the doctrine though we may have failed to carry it out in practice, that when once you have got into touch with your enemy, you never leave go. Now it is true that aerial observation, given fair weather conditions, is of incalculable value and that light motor vehicles are able to establish and maintain touch much faster than cavalry, yet darkness puts both out of action for reconnaissance purposes. But it is by night that movement of large bodies of troops will take place, and watch over them must be kept by cavalry which alone can do it with any hope of success. But there is yet another point upon which General von Poseck dwells with the insistence it deserves, namely, the supply of fuel for the many machines required to feed a mechanised force even when a considerable percentage of it is horsed. If for instance the German Army Cavalry Corps of 1914, reinforced by mechanized units available at the present day, massed on the right flank of the Armies, had carried out the great Moltke's ideal of cavalry in war, and swung round on a left wheel until it had enveloped the French left flank and was harassing its rear, its usefulness would still have been liable to sudden eclipse by a break in the communications, by even a temporary cessation of the flow of petrol. Cavalry pure and simple, might have lived on the country, not so its mechanized associates. In relation to this, however, the General states that the chief cause of exhaustion in the Cavalry Corps, Marwitz, was the complete failure of reserve supplies of oats to reach the troops; it is also curious to note that the

German War Office had thrown out a demand for cavalry field-kitchens, sent in by its Cavalry Section. The French Cavalry Corps, Sordet and Conneau, were also handicapped by unsatisfactory supply arrangements, as we know. It was perchance for this reason that Conneau's cavalry was so slow in arriving at the Marne and effecting a complete breach in the German front, on 9th September, 1914. It is only reasonable to suppose that the Allies assisted by mechanized units would not have allowed the German Army Cavalry Corps, Marwitz and Richthofen, three days grace in which to carry out their mission of covering the German retreat. On this occasion General von Poseck notes, the British cavalry were as hesitant as that of Conneau. And as General von Poseck puts this case, memories rise of long ago wars in that much disputed country between the North Sea and the Carpathians, wars from which the soldier is expected to draw valuable lessons. They sound picturesque and far off, those days when Attila's hordes of horsemen met their fate at Chalons-sur-Marne, Magyars on the Lechfeld, and Turks outside the walls of Vienna. In each of these historic instances masses of extremely mobile cavalry had had their own way with the heavily armoured troops that opposed them, until the latter had arrived at the conclusion that the protection afforded by the advance of science in their day, was dearly bought at the price of mobility. There does seem to be a fear of their curious situation arising again; continental armies that can provide themselves with means of locomotion promising astounding mobility yet seem to be in danger of immobilising themselves by protective armament until they allow themselves to be hopelessly outpaced, as were the armoured levies of the Holy Roman Empire when the Magyars were at large.

The war of position having put an end to cavalry enterprise, the lack of mounted troops was keenly felt at the time of the great German offensive in 1918, especially in front of Amiens. Against this the Allies hastened to fill up the gaps in the fighting line with cavalry held ready as mobile army reserve, and thus prevented a complete break through by the German forces, indeed, as Pétain declared, they saved the French Army. In this instance the success was largely due to

mechanized transport moving on suitable ground in comparative safety behind the front and faster than cavalry could have done. But such conditions are not always to be expected, and in a theatre of war that offers less perfect road communications mounted troops will come into their own again. They may not cover the ground so quickly, but they can cover any ground and dispersing with ease, can better avoid the attentions of the enemy's fliers and gunners. One needs no reminder of the scene described in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of 1934 to realise the shortcomings of motorized units even under conditions regarded as favourable. A British mixed force of cavalry, trench mortars on motor-transport and armoured cars, came under heavy artillery fire on the Arras-Cambrai road. The country on either side of the road being unsuited to motor traffic, all but the horsed troops had to "sit it out." There is no getting away from the fact that the mounted man gets about better than the motorist in any and every country that is not as flat as a barrack square, and so presumably it always will be. There General von Poseck is under no delusions about the horse as a factor in warfare. He advocates Army Cavalry composed of horsed divisions and armoured units, and subordinate directly to a Supreme Army Command understanding enough to allow its Army Cavalry leaders to carry out their instructions in their own way. Incidentally, a body of Army Cavalry of this description approximates more nearly to what appears to be the British solution of making the most of the meagre allowance on which the Treasury tries to support our inadequate land forces, *en miniature* of course; on this subject General von Poseck cannot be expected to offer an opinion. But of one thing he is absolutely certain, and here all those who know the possibilities of cavalry are with him. "The cavalry of a modern army will only give full value if it has been trained in adequate numbers during peace time. Some countries have much reduced their horsed troops. They will learn to regret this when trouble comes, for the formation and training of modern cavalry takes longer than those of motorized units. Let us therefore beware of following their example, especially as we still have an ample supply of suitable remounts."

"DESERT STRATAGEMS."

By H. C. MAYDON.

I.

SABAH EL KHEIR ADAM was the oldest man in the Company; so old in fact, that he was reputed to have served against us under the Khalifa at Omdurman. He now seldom appeared on parades, although his particular job in life was no sinecure, for he was Military policeman in charge of the Harimat lines (married quarters).

As B.O. in charge of the Company I did not make Sabah el Kheir's acquaintance until a month or two after my arrival. My knowledge of Arabic was less than limited and I still felt very strange in my compulsory handling of unaccustomed cases, which daily occur in the office routine of an Arab irregular unit.

The actual military side of the business could generally be completed in an hour or so, the delay always occurred by reason of the Civil side and nine times out of ten came from the Harimat lines. For I soon learnt that part of my job was to settle disputes between the wives and families of the men.

Now if a man possesses one wife it is difficult enough to keep the peace, but when he is allowed by law to keep any number up to four, it requires the tact and judgment of a Solomon to steer an easy course.

Squabbles there were too futile to mention, but each must be heard to its bitter and long postponed conclusion. Once they had all had their say the disputants—if males—were willing enough to accept the decision of their "kommandan," but, like an ulcer, the root of the trouble must be opened up by the surgeon's knife of talk.

Then, one day, Sabah el Kheir appeared before me. He wished my permission to sue for a divorce.

"But, Wallahi" I cried "is this my affair?"

“Naturally, Genabak” purred the Sagh, my Egyptian Company-adjutant, “no man in the Company may register his petition for divorce to the Kadi without your leave.”

I tore my hair but I gave in. “Tell me more, Oh, Hadret el Sagh.”

“The custom is, Genabak, that a man must register his petition to the Kadi three times at fortnightly intervals. It must be no sooner and no later. The third petition is final and the divorce absolute.”

“How many wives has Sabah el Kheir ? I asked.

“Two, Genabak” answered the Sagh with a smirk “one old and the other, she whom he would divorce, very young.”

“Oh, well, bring them in,” I grunted.

A long procession filed into the room. There was Sabah el Kheir and his youngest wife, the two Sheikha or head women of the Harimat lines and several witnesses.

I was too embarrassed to ask many questions even through an interpreter. Was Sabah el Kheir adamant in his resolution ? “Yes.”

“Why ?” I asked.

“Because his youngest wife was very lazy and indolent. She never did what she was bid. All she cared for was making eyes at other men. She had been warned without result. She was a bad bargain.”

The young wife, a good looking Arab girl, had nothing to say for herself. It appeared that in the presence of the Kommandan she was shy and tongue tied.

Sabah el Kheir had his way and I suppose in due course his first petition to the Kadi was registered.

Punctually on the same day a fortnight later Sabah el Kheir appeared before me again. The same formalities were gone through. As before Sabah el Kheir was deaf to my admonitions and the party filed out.

Then I forgot all about it.

Perhaps a month or two later my duties carried me on a tour of inspection of the Harimat lines. Sabah el Kheir in his rôle of Harimat policeman met me and I suddenly remembered the case.

"Why, Sabah el Kheir " I asked " what about your divorce ? You never came before me the third and final time."

"El hamdu lillah, Genabak, it was unnecessary " the old man replied.

"Why, what do you mean ? "

"My young wife needed a lesson, Genabak. She would not listen to me. But when she saw the fatal day of the third petition growing nearer and nearer, her spirit broke. Suddenly she changed and she has been a perfect wife ever since."

"I am very glad for your sake, Sabah el Kheir, I hope that she will remain perfect."

"Inshallah " then I am sure that the old man almost winked, "but I can always come to you again."

II.

Sabah el Kheir told me the yarn; it had happened when he was several years younger.

There had been trouble in the Sudan and several of the greater tribes in the West were up in arms. There had been a disaster to the Hakuma (Government) and although an avenging force was on its way out into the desert all news of it had been swallowed up "like the dust of a sandstorm."

Rumours were rife. The Government army had been eaten up. A new fiki had arisen, another Mahdi. Other great Arab tribes, nearer to hand, were sitting on the fence, ready to rise.

Now it so chanced that at this season of the year two great Arab horse shows were due to take place within a hundred and two hundred miles of El Obeid, one of our furthest out-posts; and at Muglad, the furthest of these rendezvous, was nothing but a weak Arab police post and an Egyptian Mamur. Moreover, at Muglad was gathering, under the cloak of the authorised horse show, one of the most truculent of the Arab tribes, not only sitting on the fence but all itching to jump over it. From this far away neighbourhood came many of the rumours of disaster to the Hakuma.

At Abu Zabad, the site of the nearer of the two horse shows, was a more loyal and reliable tribe, jealous, maybe, of their

cousins of Muglad and closer to the suspicious eye of an all-seeing Government.

Meantime the Government troops were scattered. The punitive force that had marched away to the West had sucked the out stations dry.

A cadre of re-inforcements had arrived, but they were an improvised force, where Nile bred and L. of C. men assumed the harness of their brethren of the desert and carried it exceedingly well, as is ever the way of the men who fill the out-posts.

Nevertheless those who were responsible may have felt anxious with rumours afloat, El Obeid bare of troops and two weak improvised M.I. companies patrolling in the “blue.”

Such is the outline of facts that Sabah el Kheir set forth for me in his queer, halting fashion.

“It chanced” he continued, “that Genab el Mufettish (the D.C.) was then on his tour out Muglad way and part of his duty was to prepare for the coming horse show. He had with him, his camp, and his servants and two Arab policemen. The three nearest armed posts to him were Nahud, Talodi and El Obeid, two, three, four days’ journey by his only means of communication, his fastest camel.

He camped one night a short march from Muglad and to him there came an urgent message from the Mamur in Muglad.

I do not know what was written in the Mamur’s letter, but I do know that it meant to say—“do not come. The Arabs are here in force and they are sharpening their swords and eyeing the rifles of my few policemen. They say that the Hakuma is tottering and they expect hourly to hear that the Government army of the West has been wiped out. Wait, lest you set a spark to the powder.”

But this Mufettish was not of those who wait. That same night he sent a swift camel rider with a message for El Obeid to the telegraph at Nahud.

Next morning he rode into Muglad with his two policemen.

Sabah el Kheir paused and leant forward to thrust a log of wood into the embers of the camp fire. For I often summoned him for a yarn when in a shooting camp, as I digested my dinner at my tent door.

In my mind I could colour the picture that he was painting for me. I could imagine the D.C. in his lonely camp in the desert, miles from anywhere, the air charged with rumours, the Arabs openly hostile, not even too certain within himself that the army of the West had succeeded.

I could picture him working it out in his own mind which way his duty lay. To go on to Muglad, one Englishman to face a thousand Arabs and there to try to restrain them. If bad news came it was almost certain death and nothing gained. But in case there were no news or if the news were good, as it assuredly would be, then he might cajole them, hold them neutral and gain time. For if they went, the whole of the West went too, and the flames of War would scorch the land from Darfur to Kordofan, if they went no further.

He must decide single handed and he decided.

Salute, oh, Mufettish !

Sabah el Kheir continued his story.

"Now the Mamuria at Muglad used to be a small house with a compound, surrounded by a weak stockade. Close by was the native village and beyond was a flat and open plain hemmed in by thin bush.

The Mufettish noted that the bush was thick with Arabs and their horses, camped insolently, without law and order. Inside the Mamuria the Mamur sat on the verandah and around him stalked and squatted a dozen of the sheikhs, high and mighty in their insolent confidence. They smiled and sneered at the Mufettish, whose advent had only been heralded a short half hour.

The Mufettish was of those men who always laugh with a joke close behind their lips. His eyes saw everything and said nothing, save of the jest of life.

"How are you, Hadret el Mamur," said he, "well and content as usual, I hope ? And you, oh sheikhs, peace be upon you. I am pleased that you are here to welcome me."

Silence reigned, save where, here and there, a sheikh, weaker than the rest, or less assured, murmured the response to the salutation. For the others they waited and watched arrogantly. They had no plan at present but the Hakuma was tottering.

Meantime the eyes of the Mufettish roved here and there. Then he spoke again.

“ By the way, Hadret el Mamur, you got my message ? Let me see, three, no, four days ago ? And yet I see no sacks of durra grain.” His glance searched the verandah and compound.

“ Message, Genabak ? ” stammered the Mamur, “ What message ? ”

“ What ? ” thundered the Mufettish, “ you have not received it ? You have collected no durra ? All this time is wasted and no durra ready.”

His anger was splendid. The Mamur shivered. The sheikhs leant forward, ears open, brains alert for some clue.

“ But, your excellency, what durra ? ” gasped the Mamur. “ I have no orders for durra.”

“ What durra, you fool,” stormed the Mufettish, “ for the army of course, what else ? . Don’t you know that they will arrive to-morrow or the next day at latest and we must be ready to feed them. I wrote to you to order a thousand sacks of durra to be collected and you say you have received no order ? I will see to that later. Now there is no time. You must work, and you must make others work as never before in your life. Durra. Let all work cease and let all men bring durra. And you, oh sheikhs, it is lucky you are here for you must help too. A thousand Government troops arrive to-morrow and nothing is ready. You must have durra here for your own horses, bring all you have and you shall be paid at highest price. Go now and speed, speed, that you may win credit from the Hakuma.”

And they went, but they went in a different spirit. The cloak of arrogance had slipped and in its place was humility and the assumed cheerful obedience of the man who is beaten.”

“ And did the troops come, oh Sabah el Kheir ? ” I asked. Sabah el Kheir laughed.

“ Genab el Mufettish was a good bluffer. Troops came three days later, a mere handful, but they were enough. The camel message to Nahud was telegraphed to El Obeid and Saat el Mudir wasted no time. Troops came on camels and mules, in

merchants' motor cars, any way they could. They were very few and they were a mixed lot, recruits and even Harimat policemen, but they were soldiers and the Hakuma was alive. It was enough. The Arabs became "zai akhwan." They fed from our hands. The horse show was held in style.

A week later came news that the revolt in the West was crushed and the new fiki had been killed."

III.

One day I asked Sabah el Kheir what he knew of the disaster in the West.

"Of Nyala, you ask, oh, Genabak ?" No, I was not there of course, but I have a young nephew in the Darfur M.I. and I have heard him tell of it, though these young men often babble empty words.

It was a pity that, a great pity. Two English officers—the only two—gave their lives and for what? For nothing. Because those dogs of Darfuris, those darawish whom we beat so soundly in 1916, believed that they had found a new Mahdi.

Nyala was a lonely post in the desert some four or five days' marches from El Fasher. Here there was a company of Sudanese Infantry, a section of M.I. and a few Arab police. There was a British Bimbashi in charge.

Things were not right in the District, there was madness in the air and the Arabs in the neighbourhood were swarming like angry bees. There was talk of a new fiki, a holy man who was preaching a Jihad. The Bimbashi reported to El Fasher and was told to hold on and to watch.

About this time another English Bimbashi of the Veterinary Department was marching slowly along the road from El Fasher to Nyala to inspect animals. One evening he received news from Nyala. We do not know what was written, but the Veterinary Bimbashi gave orders to pack up at once and to continue the march all night to Nyala, although he had been trekking all that day.

They reached Nyala at dawn. The place was peaceful. Goats and camels were just being driven out from their zareebas

to the morning grazing. A line of women with burmahs on their heads were streaming out to the wells for water.

At the gate of the stockade of the Mamuria a sentry was on duty; the rest of the soldiers were in their barrack huts, hard by the village a quarter mile away.

The two bimbashia were seated at breakfast when the alarm was given. From the neighbouring hills, which enclosed the village, came the noise of the beating of drums. A frightened goat-herd boy dashed up to the sentry at the gate and babbled of a crowd of armed men in the hills, who were advancing on the post.

Hard on his heels came a burly Yuzbashi, a Sudanese officer of the Orta, steady and undismayed, but craving to share his responsibility.

“The Darawish are up and attacking,” he reported. “The men are parading now. I have issued ten rounds of ball per man, all the cartridges I have got. The rest are locked in the magazine and you, Genabak, have the key. What are my orders?”

“Open the magazine at once and issue more ammunition,” said his C.O. “Then line the ridge between here and the village and await orders from me.”

The Yuzbashi departed in haste, but, Wallahi, there was no time. Already the crowd of spear and riflemen of the Darawish were issuing from the hills. Banners flying and drums beating, they were rushing to the attack, at long rifle range already.

It is uncertain what happened next. The soldiers had no time to line the ridge, nor even to send help to their English officers. The main body of the Darawish rushed the Mamuria. The two Bimbashia sold their lives dearly and the few with them gave blow for blow and died like men.

Then the Darawish turned on the soldiers, many thousands against five or six score. But while the men had cartridges and held together, the Darawish had no stomach for the fight. Unfortunately the Yuzbashi had had no chance to reach the ammunition magazine and before he could do so another wing

of the Darawish swept through the village and over the barracks and cut him off.

His men soon ran short of ammunition and fighting stubbornly fell back to a small hill half a mile away from the village. There they fixed bayonets and waited.

But the Darawish had had enough of fighting for the nonce. There was the Mamuria to be looted and had they not killed the two zobat Inglezi and proved that their fiki was all powerful? The Black soldiers would soon come in and join them, if they were left alone.

So the Yuzbashi was left undisturbed with the last of his men on his bare hill top, without food or water or ammunition and his C.O. still unavenged.

Now a rash man would have said "forward with the bayonet alone and retake the magazine at all costs." But the Yuzbashi was a cunning one, and he thought, "without cartridges I shall lose many men, moreover I shall arouse a hornets' nest and perhaps fail, while my Bimbashi's blood is yet hot on the ground and my honour is for ever stained. To die is nothing but I must never fail."

So he beat his head for a plan to get more ammunition from the magazine.

Then he saw a woman from the village approaching bearing a burmah of water on her head. For the Darawish wished to propitiate the Black soldiers and thus to gain their rifles without fighting for them. But the Yuzbashi knew the woman and that she was trustworthy, and then he saw his plan ready made.

As his men shared the water from the burmah, a mouthful each, the Yuzbashi spoke to the woman privily. Then she went back to the village.

Half an hour later a long string of women from the village approached the hill, each bearing a burmah of water on her head.

By the Yuzbashi's order they were all led into the cover of a small ravine, and here he ordered his mulazimeen to collect the burmahs that he might share out the water equally. But under the water in every third burmah—each borne by a loyal and trustworthy woman, the people of the soldiers—was a pile of many cartridges. For the magazine was built underground and

had not been noticed by the Darawish and the Yuzbashi had sent back the key to his old wife.

In ten minutes the soldiers were armed again. But still the Yuzbashi waited until the sun grew hot and the Darawish were heavy with marissa (beer).

Then the Yuzbashi gave the order and his men spread out and approached the village and ruined Mamuria in disorderly knots and without discipline as if coming in to join the Darawish. A few of the enemy looked up idly and went on with their sleeping, drinking and looting. At 300 yards the disorderly knots of soldiers rushed into line, fixing bayonets as they ran. Then the fighting line advanced, ready for business.

Now the Darawish woke up. But they did not understand. They had no plan. Where was the fiki ? They massed together.

At 200 yards the line of soldiers halted, knelt and fired a volley at the mob. It was a good volley. Not the excited volley of men just beginning an action, but where each man is coldly angry and picks his mark and shoots to kill.

They killed many, very many, and the Yuzbashi, knowing his men and the enemy, sounded the charge. I hope the spirit of the Bimbashi was near to see, for it was a charge worthy of his teaching. My nephew, who is of the M.I. and who used to sneer at the foot soldiers, admits that he wished to transfer to the Infantry after that fight.

The Darawish, what was left of that section, fled to the hills behind them and the other sections, not sure of who were attacking them, fled too. In the hills they recovered themselves and puffed up with their first victory, they advanced to the counter attack.

But the soldiers were ready this time and a hot fire met them. One of the first of the Darawish to fall was the fiki. The Darawish attack wilted, melted and faded away into the hills.

Nyala was lost and won.

“ And was that the end of the war, Sabah el Kheir ? ” I asked.

"Oh, no, Genabak, only the beginning. A new fiki arose from the ashes of the first and the revolt took months to quell but the soldiers of Nyala had polished their honour."

"Quite so, Sabah el Kheir. But did all the countryside remain loyal to the Hakuma? The local Arabs for example, enlisted in the army, were they staunch?"

Sabah el Kheir drew himself up.

"Genabak," said he stiffly, "we Arabs are of many tribes and conditions, but we all are of one stock. When we have eaten the salt and sworn the oath by the Hakuma, we keep faith."

"Listen, after this same fight at Nyala a relief force was quickly sent from El Fasher. On the lonely road the relief force overtook a solitary nafar of the Darfur M.I.—an Arab of my nephew's company—who was marching along on foot, driving a rabble of a dozen men before him. On one shoulder he carried his slung rifle, over the other he balanced a bundle of spears."

"How now," called the O.C. of the Advanced Guard, "who are you and where go you?"

"I am Zehn el Abdin, nafar in the 3rd Company of M.I. I am returning to Nyala from leave to join my section."

"And who are these men?" questioned the officer.

"These," the man answered, "are lying dogs who say that the country has risen and that they have wiped out Nyala. They begged of me to join them that we might raise El Fasher against the Hakuma. I arrested them and take them to my Kommandan for punishment."

"But how do you know that they have not spoken the truth?" the officer persisted.

"If Nyala be fallen, still I must join my section."

"And if your section fell with Nyala?"

"Even so, there may still be room in Paradise for another and in Jehannum for these sons of dogs before I go."

I knew that Sabah el Kheir was drawing on his imagination now, but the spirit was the right one. I had heard how the Arabs charged home at Omdurman and more recently at the gates of Fasher. Fanaticism we call it of our enemies, patriotism of our own, but in either case the Arab is worthy of his salt.

THE YEOMANRY AT RAFA

9th January, 1917.

By MAJOR OSKAR TEICHMAN, D.S.O., M.C., T.D.

Late M.O. Queen's Own Worcestershire Hussars.

AFTER the Gallipoli Campaign the 14 Yeomanry Regiments of the 2nd Mounted Division,* together with the newly arrived 1st North Midland Mounted Brigade (Lincoln, Stafford and East Riding Yeomanries), returned to their horses at Mena Camp under the Pyramids. The other 17 Yeomanry Regiments, which had fought on Gallipoli, remained dismounted on arrival in Egypt and after being attached to the 42nd, 52nd, 53rd and 54th Divisions finally formed the famous 74th or "Broken Spur" Infantry Division: a number of Yeomen from these Regiments also formed the 2nd Battalion of the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade.

In January, 1916, the Mounted Regiments, mentioned above, were dispersed in various directions—to the Senussi Campaign on the Western Frontier—to the Western Oases—to Salonika—to Suez—and to Kantara.

It was to the last named that the 1st South Midland Mounted Brigade (Worcester, Gloucester and Warwick Yeomanries), known as the 5th Mounted Brigade from now onwards, proceeded towards the end of the month in order to patrol East of the Canal for No. 3 Canal Defences.

This was the only Mounted Yeomanry Brigade which took an active part in the Sinai Desert Campaign of 1916; and also the first mounted troops to be seriously engaged by the Turks in that year (the actions of Katia and Oghratina in April when the Brigade sustained heavy losses), before the Anzac Mounted Division had crossed the Suez Canal, a fact sometimes obscured by Australian writers.

* See *The Yeomanry on Gallipoli* (Cavalry Journal, October, 1934) by the writer.

In August the 5th Mounted Brigade played an important part in the Battle of Romani, and subsequently it was engaged in various skirmishes with the enemy which culminated in the evacuation of El Arish by the Turks in December, 1916.

At this date the other Mounted Yeomanry Brigades were still away "on their various occasions," although they arrived in time for the Gaza Battles a few months later; and so it came about that the 5th Mounted Brigade was the only Yeomanry formation present at the Battle of Rafa* in January, 1917.

After the evacuation of El Arish the Brigade spent a peaceful fortnight (except for daily bombing by enemy aeroplanes) bivouacked—tents were only allowed for General Officers—on the Eastern side of the River of Egypt,† amongst the fig groves some two miles from the town.

On January 5th it became common knowledge that a Cavalry raid on the isolated Turkish position at Magruntein just South of Rafa, some 30 miles away to the East, was about to take place. It was known, from aeroplane observation and from native agents, that here the enemy had established a heavily entrenched position which he was holding with about 2,500 Infantry, two Krupp Mountain Batteries and a Machine Gun Company. It appeared that the Mounted troops of Desert Column would proceed to Sheikh Zowaid (22 miles) arriving at midnight, attack the enemy at Rafa (30 miles) at dawn and, if successful, return to El Arish with the prisoners the same night. It was to be a "mopping up" expedition on a large scale and it was evident that the affair must be carried out expeditiously before large enemy reinforcements from Shellal and Beersheba should arrive.

Aeroplane reconnaissance had even reported a considerable enemy concentration at Khan Yunus only eight miles from Rafa. The problem was whether a force of 5,000 men could first cut off the retreat of 2,500 and then carry a strongly entrenched position held by the enemy, backed up by a force of unknown strength within 10 miles. If the position was not captured in

* So spelt on the maps issued in 1916.

† The Wadi El Arish.

time, there was some doubt if the whole of Desert Column would ever get away.

On January 7th maps of the Turkish position at Rafa, drawn from photographs taken by the R.F.C., were issued to the Brigade. These showed three strong series of works (each series consisting of three lines of trenches), one (A) facing West, one (B) facing South-West and one (C) South and South-East. Below these, isolated rifle and machine gun pits could be identified. The whole was dominated by a central redoubt about 2,000 yards South-West of Rafa. The ground in front of these works was entirely open and devoid of cover, and in their immediate neighbourhood it was reported to be almost a glacis. We gathered that the Yeomanry were to attack from the West, the Camel Brigade from the South, while the two Australian Light Horse Brigades and the New Zealand Mounted Rifles attacked from the South-East and East.

While discussing our maps, two "aviatiks" paid their daily visit, killing twenty and wounding thirty of our Egyptian Labour Corps, who were engaged in preparing the ground for the Desert railway which was being built in our rear as we advanced. These natives refused to spread out and lie down when bombed, they always collected in one large group and formed a beautiful target on the white sand. After such an experience they often applied for leave. The following is a copy of a letter received by a Labour Corps officer on this occasion :—

"Honoured Sir,

My leave is impossible, some man hath uprooted my wife, My God I am annoyed, Yours sincerely, Abdul."

Anti-aircraft guns were unknown at this time in Sinai; but the Hong-Kong and Singapore Mountain Battery were always very active on these occasions, producing a certain amount of moral effect but no damage to the enemy.

During the morning of January 8th the following orders,* which are of some interest in view of after events, were issued :—

* During the Great War the writer kept a diary (published in 1921) which included copies of all orders received by him.

From A.D.M.S Desert Column.

"At 3.30 p.m. (to-day) the Desert Mounted Column will proceed to Sheikh Zowaid, where the Main Divisional Dressing Station will be established, to which slightly wounded will ride direct. Any casualties during the afternoon on the line of march will be left with one man and picked up by the following Field Ambulances. On the morning of the 9th the 5th Mounted Brigade Field Ambulance will arrive at the "Magruntein-Darb" fork roads at 5.30 a.m. and will proceed along the Rafa (Jerusalem) telegraph track. The Tent Subdivision will halt at the "T" in Sultanie, and the Bearer Subdivision (with sand-carts* and sledgest) will report to the Worcester Yeomanry Squadron at a given point on the Magruntein road at dawn. If successful the pursuit of the enemy will not be carried out beyond Khan Yunus. If there is a standing fight at the enemy's trenches each R.M.O. will keep his Field Ambulance informed of his position, and maintain constant communication with it when an advance occurs.

From Field Ambulances, Camel Cacolets will evacuate to the Divisional Dressing Station at Sheikh Zowaid, and thence wounded will be conveyed by sand-carts to El Arish. When the action is over R.M.O.s will let the O.'s.C. Field Ambulances know at once when all wounded have been collected.

R.M.O.s are especially warned that the wounded must be collected as quickly as possible when night comes on, as there is a hostile native tribe in the neighbourhood which are known to have the reputation of mutilating their enemies."

and :

From G.O.C. 5th Mounted Brigade.

- "(1) The enemy are in an entrenched position between El-Magruntein and Rafa.
- (2) The Desert Mounted Column will attack Rafa at dawn on January 9th from Sheikh Zowaid.

* Two wheeled, hooded carts, carrying two stretchers, drawn by 4 horses, with special sand tyres and blocked drum wheels for traversing heavy sand.

† To carry one stretcher drawn by one horse abolished after Gaza II, owing to interference with field telephones.

- (3) The 5th Mounted Brigade, less one rearguard squadron, leaves Sheikh Zowaid at 1 a.m. and proceeds to point 210 by the Southern road.
- (4) Order of March :—5th Mounted Brigade, Desert Column H.Q., 1st Australian Light Horse Brigade, 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade, New Zealand Mounted Rifle Brigade, Camel Corps, H.A.C. Battery, Somersetshire R.H.A., Leicestershire R.H.A., Inverness-shire R.H.A., and Hong-Kong and Singapore Mountain Battery.

The whole will move off from El Arish at 4 p.m., January 8th. Signal troops will march with Brigades, and R.E. troops will remain at Sheikh Zowaid.

A rear-guard squadron of Worcester Yeomanry will leave Sheikh Zowaid at dawn, and move as a feint along the bifurcation of the Rafa road (some way North of 210); they will observe the roads and report any enemy in the sandhills. The rest of the force proceeds at 1 a.m. to 210 as above."

On reading the Medical and Brigade Orders, the Second-in-Command of the Worcestershire Yeomanry (Major the Hon. J. C. Lyttelton) remarked to the writer: "The Bearer Sub-division of our Field Ambulance with its sandcarts and sledges will arrive at its destination before the Worcester Squadron, and the Field Ambulance will be the first unit in the Column to get in touch with the enemy"—a proceeding which actually occurred, as will be seen later on. A reference to the sketch map appended, the geographical details of which have been copied from the map issued to us, will show how this was rendered possible.

It should be noted that the Field Ambulance was to *arrive* at the "Magruntein-Darb" fork roads at 5.30 a.m., about 5 miles East of Sheikh Zowaid, and that the rear-guard Worcester Squadron was to *leave* Sheikh Zowaid at dawn and proceed along the same road as a feint.

The use of the word "dawn" was unfortunate, and on January 9th, 1917, it occurred after 5.30 a.m.*

* Vide Official History—Vol. I, p. 264.

5th Mounted Brigade. Order of Battle, January 8th, 1917.

G.O.C.—Brigadier-General E. A. Wiggin, D.S.O.

Brigade Major.—Major Sir Lionel Darell, Bt. (1st Life Guards).

Staff Captain.—Captain Lord Hampton (Worcester Yeomanry).

1/1 Warwickshire Yeomanry.—Lieut.-Colonel H. A. Gray-Cheape, D.S.O.

1/1 R. Gloucestershire Hussars.—Lieut.-Colonel A. J. Palmer.

1/1 Q.O. Worcestershire Hussars.—Lieut.-Colonel H. J. Williams (K.D.G.s.).

At midday two aviatiks appeared, evidently to reconnoitre, and found Desert Column still bivouacked. At 4 p.m. it was on the march accompanied by two R.F.C. scouts ready to drive away any inquisitive hostile aeroplanes.

It was a picturesque sight as this heterogenous collection of mounted troops left the banks of the Wadi El Arish and slowly wended its way Eastwards through the heavy sand. First the Yeoman, well turned out, bits and irons glistening in the afternoon sun, horses fit and well groomed; regiments marching in column of squadrons, each squadron in troop column. Then, by way of contrast, the 1st and 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigades, the men somewhat *négligé* in their attire, some wearing tunics, others in their shirt sleeves; some in breeches and some riding in shorts. Picturesque emu plumes adorned their hats; rifles slung across their backs, and the additional articles of horse furniture such as buckets, picketing gear, extra water bottles, firewood, and cooking utensils disposed according to taste. Bits and irons quite innocent of polish, but horses looking fit.

Next followed the New Zealand Mounted Rifle Brigade (Auckland, Canterbury and Wellington Regiments), also carrying their rifles slung across their backs, but distinguishable from the Australians by their be-ribboned hats, general smartness and uniformity of appearance. The New Zealanders insisted on the "spit and polish" of British Cavalry.

Following the N.Z.s rode the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade, the 1st and 3rd Battalions of which were recruited from Australian and New Zealand units, while the 2nd consisted of men from English, Scottish and Welsh dismounted Yeomanry Regiments. Tough, determined looking men, they were said to be the "hard cases" of their units; but they possessed some of the stoutest hearts in Desert Column. These "Fighting Cameliers" thoroughly lived up to their name, although occasionally out of hand during quiescent periods, as the Turks knew to their cost.

Next came the four spick and span County R.H.A. Batteries with their grotesque-looking blocked sand-tyre wheels. Then followed the Hong-Kong and Singapore Mountain Battery, swarthy Sikhs with their guns carried on huge Indian camels. Known as the "Bing Boys," they were attached to the Camel Brigade, and were on extremely good terms with the "Cameliers."

Behind the "Bing Boys" came the four Cavalry and one Camel Field Ambulance, with their light ambulance waggon, sand carts, sledges and cacolet camels; and lastly followed long streams of laden camels led by natives of the Camel Transport Corp in their picturesque blue smocks, accompanied by mounted officers of the R.A.S.C.

The first part of the march was over heavy sand dunes, but as the sun went down, the "oldest road in the world," from Egypt to Palestine, appeared faintly defined and hardened by the feet of countless generations. Mile after mile in the moonlight the Column surged slowly eastwards, and the great silence of the desert was only broken occasionally by the snort of a horse or the rattling of a chain.

"D" Squadron (Major Ian Straker, 9th Lancers), Worcester Yeomanry, carried out the advanced guard and performed this duty so well as to receive the special commendation of the G.O.C. Desert Column, Lieut.-General Sir Philip Chetwode.

At 10 p.m. Sheikh Zowaid was reached, 22 miles from El Arish, and the whole Column halted to feed and off-saddle the horses; these had been watered in the early afternoon and it was expected that they would be watered again on the following evening, after the battle, by which time our R.E. would have

developed the water at Sheikh Zowaid. "A" Squadron Worcester Yeomanry formed a cordon round the little cactus-fringed village to prevent the inhabitants leaving it to give warning to the Turks, eight miles away, of the approach march of the cavalry; while Captain Wilson, of the same regiment, with a few men searched the mud houses for any Turks who might be there—he found none, only one of our Brigadiers taking coffee with some native women!

Meanwhile "D" Squadron, Worcester Yeomanry, had found the outpost line and had thrown out one troop, as an advanced guard, on the Southern road towards point 210.

Everyone was in good heart at the prospect of a scrap with the enemy again. The Yeomanry had been halted for an hour when the leading files of the Camel Brigade arrived and marched past their lines. One Yeoman was heard to exclaim to his neighbour: "Wake up, Bill, here comes the blooming Circus!"—and addressing the nearest Camel Corps man he inquired: "Can you tell me at what time the elephant will be passing?" With withering sarcasm the Camelier retorted: "And how would *you* like to be soldiers!"

While we were resting on the ground, with our bridles on our arms, our horses actually nibbling grass, which they had not done for nearly two years—for the desert had given way to patches of light soil—we became aware of our immediate surroundings. These were most picturesque in the brilliant moonlight. In the foreground was a long straggling lake, here and there dotted with little islands of white salt looking like snow, and surrounded by patches of green cultivation and giant palm trees which stood out boldly against the moonlit sky. At the Eastern end of the glistening water nestled the sleepy little village around which our cordon had been drawn, and at the other end rose the great dome-shaped tomb from which the place takes its name. Not a sound was heard except the munching of the horses and occasionally the croaking of a frog down by the lakeside. The silence was uncanny; a few miles away to the East lay a Turkish force of unknown strength. There was something romantic about this cavalry raid, something to stir one's imagination. The 5th Mounted Brigade had first gone

into action on foot, at Suvla Bay when the whole battle field was already alight; at the Battle of Romani it had galloped into action to the sound of the guns—but here it was different, the long silent approach march, an unknown country and a hidden foe.

Of additional interest was the fact that next day we should be fighting on the Turco-Egyptian Frontier, crossing from Africa into Asia, for the Boundary Line ran its pillared course from Rafa to Akaba.

In whispers we discussed the prospects of success, we had studied our maps with the greatest interest for the last few days; and we all felt that we were born strategists!

Were the enemy's outposts aware of our advance? Should we on the morrow be able to defeat and capture his outlying force and return to El Arish before he was able to call up his large reserves from Khan Yunus and Shellal? One "strategist" remarked that the Turk was hard to shift from a well entrenched position, citing Gallipoli and—Plevna. We were relying entirely on our mobility, and it was a big undertaking to advance 30 miles, fight all day and return again the same way we had come on the evening after the battle. The Writer was worried as to the feasibility of collecting his wounded in the case of a hurried retreat, especially in view of the A.D.M.S.'s warning *re* mutilation, but this matter he did not discuss.

We had been issued with two days' rations for man and horse, and at midnight we were again warned that no water would be obtainable until we returned through Sheikh Zowaid, *en route* for El Arish, after the engagement.

At 1 a.m. (January 9th) the advance was resumed. This time the 1st Australian Light Horse Brigade leading (all wheeled vehicles except sandcarts and guns remaining at Sheikh Zowaid), followed by the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade, the New Zealand Mounted Rifle Brigade and the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade. These troops together with their three Royal Horse Artillery Batteries and the Hong-Kong and Singapore Mountain Battery, with their respective Field Ambulances, were directed on point 330 (the Karm Ibn Musleh of later maps),

just South of Shokh El Sufi and close to the frontier, with orders to drop the Camel Brigade at point 250.

As this account deals with the Yeomanry primarily, the subsequent actions of other troops will only be briefly referred to.

At 2 a.m. the 5th Mounted Brigade (less two troops Worcester Yeomanry left as baggage guard, and "D" Squadron of the same regiment which had orders to proceed at dawn along the main Rafa road) with "B" Battery Honourable Artillery Company attached, left by the same route and rode through the cold hours of the early morning to point 210; where Desert Column H.Q. were established an hour later. At about 3.20 a.m. we saw flares to the Eastward, put up as a warning by some Turks just before being captured in the open by an Australian Light Horse Regiment. An hour later the long drawn Arab cry of warning "Lu-lu-lu" was heard from the direction of Shokh El Sufi, where the New Zealanders were rounding up the inhabitants of the village; and as dawn appeared we saw smoke signals go up from one Bedouin encampment after another in the vicinity. As far as our offensive was concerned the element of surprise had ceased to exist. Meanwhile the 5th Mounted Brigade had proceeded $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles N.E. from point 210 (where it remained in reserve) and at this spot Brigade Headquarters were established.

Although the enemy were now aware of our approach, perfect silence prevailed while the landscape slowly unfolded itself as the sun arose. Instead of the eternal sand, which the Brigade had been riding through for the last year, we saw rolling turf-covered downs, green from the winter rains, here and there flecked with early spring flowers. Away to the North lay a belt of sand-dunes, and beyond them the blue Mediterranean. To the North-East we had a good view of the Turkish position; the ground devoid of cover sloping gently upwards to a grassy knoll (255), in which we were told was the central redoubt. To the South of this and about 3,000 yards from our position some of the "B" system of trenches could be identified by the newly thrown up light coloured soil on the green turf.

Suddenly the ominous silence of the early morning was rudely disturbed by the crackle of musketry, an-

nouncing that the 5th Mounted Brigade Field Ambulance had opened the battle! Only a mile away to our left we could see a procession of white hooded sand-carts and mounted orderlies proceeding solemnly along the Rafa road, from the "Magruntein-Darb" fork. They had bumped into the enemy entrenchments as predicted. With the utmost *sang-froid* the column of Aesculapians about turned and retired at a walk from the unequal contest. While this little comedy was being enacted (there were no casualties to the personnel of the Field Ambulance), "D" Squadron Worcester Yeomanry had withdrawn its outpost line round Sheikh Zowaid at dawn, as ordered, and was feeling its way cautiously Eastwards along the main (telegraph line) Rafa road, unaware of the Medical advanced guard some four miles ahead of it. In due course the Squadron met the retreating Red Cross heroes and, relieving them of their combatant rôle, proceeded to watch our left flank in the sand hills.

By 9.30 a.m. the New Zealand Mounted Rifle Brigade accompanied by the Inverness-shire R.H.A. had captured the Police Barracks at Rafa and were advancing on the Turkish main position from the East; the two Australian Light Horse Brigades with their Somerset and Leicester R.H.A. Batteries were advancing towards the "C" trenches, while the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade with their "Bing Boys" were closing in on the "B" system. Meanwhile the 5th Mounted Brigade was still in reserve $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles North-East of 210, but "C" Squadron (Major W. H. Wiggin, D.S.O.) Worcester Yeomanry had been detached to act as escort to our Battery, "B" Honourable Artillery Company, which was firing over open sights at the "B" trenches.

At 10 a.m. the Brigade was ordered to attack the enemy's works from the West. The order to mount was given and, with the Warwicks leading followed by the Gloucesters and the Worcesters (less "C" and "D" Squadrons), the Brigade, each Regiment in column of half Squadrons extended, galloped over the springy turf towards the enemy's entrenchments. After covering about two miles the Warwicks were held up by machine gun fire. They dismounted, in a fold of the ground about 2,000

yards from the enemy, and developed a steady attack on the "B" trenches co-operating with the Camel Corps on their right, "C" Squadron (Captain Pemberton) forming the connecting link. Mr. Frank Reid, in his recently published "Fighting Cameliers," writes:—

"The Yeomanry had dismounted and, linking up with us on the left, were advancing as confidently as if they were walking up a village street. A shell burst in the centre of their line; they halted for a few seconds and then went on again."

When the Warwicks halted, the Gloucesters and Worcesters inclined further North and galloped on for another mile and a half, then dismounted, and came into action, the Gloucesters North of the Rafa road* along the edge of the sand-hills, and the Worcesters South of the road, against the enemy's "A" system of works. During this exhilarating gallop across the front of the enemy's Western position the Brigade sustained only a few casualties and a certain amount of amusement was caused by the action of the M.O. and F.Q.M.S. of the Worcester Yeomanry whose horses, stimulated by the enemy's shells, took charge, jumped the sunken road (as if it had been a brook) and finished amongst the sand dunes after the regiment had halted.

The Gloucesters and the Worcesters found themselves in a very exposed position without any protection from the enemy's machine gun fire; both men and the horses in their rear became casualties and no progress could be made. Brigadier-General Wiggin accordingly reinforced the Gloucesters with "C" Squadron Warwick Yeomanry, and ordered them together with the Brigade machine guns further North into the sand-hills to develop an attack on the Turkish main position in conjunction with the New Zealanders, who were attacking the Northern entrenchments of 255.

By this time the Worcesters had also moved further North and had fallen in with "D" Squadron, which had found its way into the sand dunes after the Field Ambulance affair.

A long range fight, with few casualties, ensued with the "A" system as objective. It was strenuous work getting sand-carts up into almost inaccessible places in the dunes overlooking the

* Here sunken as it passed through a ridge.

Turkish trenches. There was every chance of single mounted men being wounded in the sand hills and never being found. Especially in the neighbourhood of 183 Turkish snipers were very active; one was found buried up to the arm pits in the sand behind an aloes plant. Here he had been voluntarily "buried" after being supplied with 200 rounds, a bag of dates and a bottle of water. These men continued to fire at close quarters until their ammunition was exhausted and then surrendered, knowing full well that there could be but one end. We met them again later on in the campaign, left behind during a retreat to hamper our advance—true patriots prepared to die for their country.

In front and below the "A" system were isolated rifle pits, and we could see Turks walking from one to another with the utmost nonchalance, occasionally succumbing to our long range fire. But until our Battery, which was bursting shrapnel over the trenches, could subdue the enemy's intense machine gun fire the positions of the Gloucesters and the Worcesters were impossible to attack from. The Warwicks however, further South, were making considerable progress towards the "B" trenches.

Orders were received for the 5th Mounted Brigade to keep the enemy as fully employed as possible in the Western trenches in order to prevent him reinforcing his Northern and Eastern defences from them.

If a battle can be described as picturesque, Rafa certainly was, and it more resembled a 19th Century action than one with modern weapons in 1917. Batteries galloping into action and firing over open sights in full view of the enemy; Squadrons advancing, dismounting in some slight depression and then advancing on foot. Occasionally one could see the Turks running from one rifle pit to another; and the gentle slopes to the enemy's position occupied by an extended line of Yeoman or Cameliers lying prone, who every now and then rose, doubled a hundred yards or so and then lay down again. Close behind our firing line could be seen our number three's with the horses, and the little white-hooded sand carts (which owing to the firm nature of the ground were now drawn by two instead of four horses) of the Field Ambulance Bearer Sub-divisions galloping back with the wounded. To add to the picture Bedouin women

were grazing their flocks within two miles of the trenches, quite undisturbed by the shrieking of the enemy's shells which were bursting actually in their rear. The grass brought up by the winter rains had just matured, and the good feed was not to be missed, for on the morrow the Bedouins knew that they might be rounded up and driven into the desert scrub for their flocks' subsistence; also they knew that all battles must end—with consequent prospect of loot from the dead and wounded. All this we could see from the sand dunes, for the whole of the Western field of battle lay spread like a map before us and owing to the clear atmosphere of the winter's day visibility was remarkably good.

So far our losses had been light but, apart from human casualties, here and there a horse or a camel lay stretched on the fresh green grass which they had been longing for during the past twelve months' campaign on the sandy wastes of Sinai.

The Writer has often wondered how much a camel does feel. He has seen native vets. carve large pieces of meat off their suppurating withers in the camel lines, the animals looking supercilious and bored during the proceeding. At the Battle of Romani he was lying near a camel which was hit at least half a dozen times (each time with a sickening thud), and merely scratched the places with one of his hind legs, before finally receiving the *coup de grace* in the head.

By 12.15 p.m. "B" Squadron Gloucester Yeomanry (Major C. E. Turner, D.S.O., who was wounded at this moment) found touch with the New Zealanders—and the cordon of troops round the enemy was complete.

Steadily Desert Column closed in round its prey and the circle of mounted troops contracted; but our advance became slower and slower.

Our Battery ("B" H.A.C.) moved forward North-West and, at 1,400 yards from the Turks, shelled the "A" and "B" trenches very accurately in order to support the Brigade's attack. A little later some cars of the 7th Light Car Patrol (machine guns mounted on Ford box cars), which had been placed at the disposal of Brig.-General Wiggin, moved up the main Rafa road and from a slight depression where the road

was sunken engaged the "A" system in flank. This considerably eased the pressure on the Gloucesters, who had just had their second in command, Major H. F. Clifford, killed, to the great sorrow of all ranks.

It was now 3.30 p.m.; the Turkish main positions had not been carried, there were rumours that two New Zealand Squadrons (pushed out Eastwards) had come in contact with the vanguard of a Turkish relief force from Khan Yunus and Shellal, and there were only about two hours of daylight left. The sands were running out. A supreme effort was necessary in order to capture the position before sunset, and before the enemy reinforcements should arrive. Energetic attacks were organised all round the circle, and Brig.-General Wiggin ordered the Gloucesters and the Worcesters to carry out a dismounted attack, the Gloucesters North and the Worcesters South of the Rafa road, with the Redoubt as final objective. Lieut.-Colonel Williams accordingly led the Worcesters from the protecting sand dunes on to the open plain and a short gallop under machine gun and shrapnel fire (which caused only a few casualties to men and horses) brought them to the main road where, owing to its passing through a low ridge, it was slightly sunken. Here "C" Squadron, somewhat depleted by casualties after its detachment to "B" Battery H.A.C., joined up.

Meanwhile Lieut.-Colonel Gray-Cheape had led his two remaining Squadrons of Warwicks to within a few hundred yards of the Northern end of the "B" system, on the left of the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade which had now put in its reserve Battalion. The Warwicks worked their way to within assaulting distance by crawling, and did not know exactly where the enemy's front line was. Luckily when the Yeomen were within 200 yards of the trenches the Turks fixed bayonets, which were seen above the parapets, thus marking their position for the attackers. The last 50 yards were covered at the double, the Yeomen cheering loudly. Just before reaching the Turkish front line white flags (actually empty canvas sand-bags) appeared. A few of the enemy put up a short fight but by 4.50 p.m. the Warwicks had captured their objective, the Northern end of the "B" system; while the Camel Corps after

some very sharp hand-to-hand fighting, partly with German machine gunners, were capturing the more strongly held central works of the "B" system and the Southern portion. By this time the Worcesters, who had left their horses in the sunken road, were advancing at the double over ground devoid of cover but occasionally protected from view by slight depressions in which they took a breather now and then. The Warwicks, having fulfilled their mission, were now switched across from "B" to "A" system by Brig.-General Wiggin to support the Worcesters' right flank.

The Gloucesters under Lieut.-Colonel Palmer pressed the attack home manfully from the North. "A," "D" and "B" Squadrons, in the order named, advanced by rushes supported by the Brigade Machine Guns which moved into the firing line to within 400 yards of the Turks, and "C" Squadron Warwickshire Yeomanry, who had remained on our left flank. The whole of the 5th Mounted Brigade was now concentrated on the "A" system, every available man from the horse-holders being brought into the attack. Fortunately the setting sun shone full on the backs of the Warwicks and Worcesters as they advanced, and in the faces of the Turks, otherwise casualties would have been more severe.

As the Yeomen approached within 100 yards of the enemy's front line the fire died down, and on arrival the Turks were found to be hastily evacuating their trenches, those who tried to escape being caught by the Australians who had come through the "C" system. The Yeomen swept on towards the Redoubt and at that moment the Writer saw the most welcome sight of the whole day—the bayonets of the New Zealand Mounted Rifle Brigade, lit up by the last rays of a setting sun, as the stalwart Colonials swept over the crest of the hill with a sudden irresistible rush and captured the Turkish strong point from the rear. It was New Zealand's day.

The battle was over; it was nearly dark, and all that remained was to collect the wounded who lay about in the tracks of the advance, and to round up the prisoners. By shooting high the enemy had also caused several casualties amongst our number threes and led horses—but it is probable that all the casualties

were not caused by the Turks. When a hill is surrounded by a circle of 5,000 rifles and machine guns all directed on its summit, not only those on the hill top but also those composing the circle are likely to suffer.*

It was now 6 p.m. and urgently necessary for the whole force to withdraw at once, for it was still a race against time, and no one knew when the Turkish relieving force from Shellal and Khan Yunus might arrive on the scene. The whole of Desert Column with the exception of Field Ambulances, R.M.O.s and the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade, was therefore ordered to march back to Sheikh Zowaid, where water was now available, together with about 1,500 prisoners, captured guns, etc.

During the engagement our wounded Yeomen had been carried on short cavalry stretchers by the regimental stretcher bearers to the dressing stations of the three units: whence sand-carts conveyed them to our Field Ambulance at point 210. The next part of the journey was by Camel cacolet, a painful proceeding for the badly wounded, to the Corps Collecting Station at Sheikh Zowaid; which in due course evacuated all wounded to El Arish.

The moon rose as the 5th Mounted Brigade rode off the battle-field *en route* for Sheikh Zowaid, leaving its three R.M.O.s and Field Ambulance to complete their work, but soon afterwards it was partially obscured by rain clouds. Shadowy forms flitted about the battle field, the Bedouin ghouls, prowling Arabs of the Sufi tribe ready to plunder and mutilate the dead and wounded, of whom we R.M.O.s had been warned. This was the only occasion during the Great War when the Writer collected his wounded with a loaded revolver, which he had perforce to discharge several times in the execution of his duty (in accordance with Para. 1, Article 8, Geneva Convention, 1906). This was the only argument which the ghouls understood, they would risk their lives for loot or for the revenge for which they lusted. Slowly the collection of wounded proceeded and there was considerable delay in bringing in the Gloucester and "C" Squadron Warwick Yeomen who had been

* This happened at the Battle of Gumbinnen (before Tannenberg), *vide* Hoffmann's War Diaries I.39, and doubtless on many other occasions in the Great War.

hit in the sand dunes. Although the battle had now been over for three hours, the stillness of the night was occasionally interrupted by rifle shots—more ghouls learning their lesson. A few surrendered to the patrols of six Yeomen which accompanied each R.M.O., but most of them were lost again in the darkness.

Luckily our Field Ambulance had lit a beacon fire to which our sand-carts converged. The casualties of Desert Column had been very light, only 490, of which the 5th Mounted Brigade had suffered 109.

At 10 p.m., with some riding wounded, the Writer left the battle field and following the telegraph line reached Sheikh Zowaid at midnight. Here there was plenty of water for the horses (who had had none for over 30 hours) as the Field Troop R.E. attached to the Brigade had been at work all day.

At 1 a.m. (January 10th) the three Yeomanry Regiments started on their 22 mile ride to El Arish in the rain. As we had been without sleep for two nights, all ranks were very drowsy, and were continually falling asleep in their saddles. This long night ride seemed endless. In our tired state the shadows on the desert, when the moon peeped out from behind the clouds, caused the most extraordinary hallucinations of vision, which differed according to the individual concerned; fortunately not shared by the horses. Some of us seemed to be riding through forests, others through rows and rows of tents, up steep mountain sides or over precipices. One of our Regimental Commanders said afterwards that he rode in his imagination past an endless succession of public houses, the contents of which lay in the roadway; he called them "cafés," but his meaning was understood, and he received a full measure of sympathy.

On reaching El Arish about 7 a.m., horses were watered and fed, after which the whole of the 5th Mounted Brigade, almost to a man, fell asleep and slept the sleep of the just—for they had contributed in no small measure to the victory of Rafa.

ffa

ler.

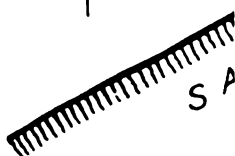
N E

JAZ

Positions of Ye

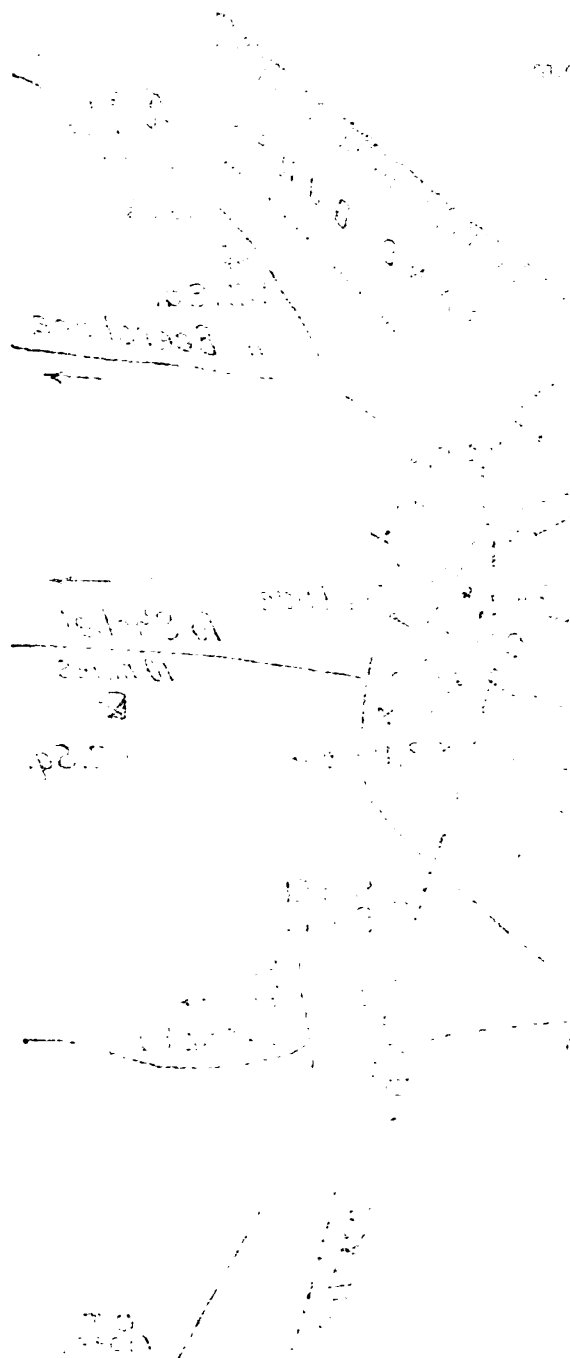
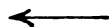
A,

0 1
Sc



Je
SH: Zowai

El Arish
22 Miles



GUDAR-LOGUE

By COLONEL F. A. HAMILTON, late 3rd Cavalry, I.A.

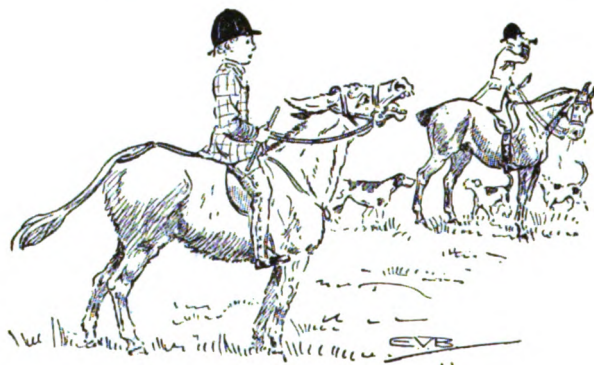
“What sulky old man. Your underlip falls,
 You think I too ready to rail am.
 Your kinship remote to that duffer at walls,
 The talkative roadster of Balaam.”

—*Lindsay Gordon.*

THE Laureate of the centaurs thus addressed his horse, who, very rightly was not ashamed of his remote relationship to Balaam's ass or any other of that species. When the Almighty created the earth there were, presumably, no donkeys, but we may take it that this most useful quadruped was one of the first that was made available for the benefit of man; otherwise how could the rubbish and debris have been dumped into that portion of the globe now known as Baluchistan and Eastern Persia, and sometimes referred to as “The rubbish heap of the world.” Where'er you may travel o'er land and sea you will find this patient, hardworking and loveable little beast of burden. We say loveable for what is more attractive than a young donkey, and few animals are more affectionate and faithful when kindly treated. Some of our first and best friends of the animal world have been donkeys on which we rode and which we were allowed to drive in the governess-cart, one of our greatest pleasures in those days was to smuggle some sugar from the bowl for the Neddie of the period. Our first riding lessons were on a little brown donkey, and how well we remember being taken out on the leading rein by an ancient Irish retainer. We soon became tired of moving at a walk and suggested a trot. The old man was horror-stricken as he replied, “Is it trottin' you'd like to be Master F, take care would you be trottin' out of the saddle!” Nevertheless in due course we had our first hunt with the

harriers on this same donkey, and often saw as much of the sport as some of those on horses, for where a hound could go and creep through, an Irish donkey could do likewise. How keen these donkeys were on the hounds and hunting. Every now and again they would give voice to their enthusiasm by attempting to imitate the horn.

On our way out to the East, at Port Said, we saw donkeys, prosperous animals which were offered to us with a view to our taking a ride on the sands. They rejoiced in the name of Lilly Langtry and other Edwardian beauties; a ride on Lilly Langtry was held out as a great luxury. In the East donkeys are worked in droves, and in this way work well. The average donk. hates



"... To imitate the Horn! ..."

to be alone for long and will frequently register his disapproval in the orthodox manner. Possibly the reason that Balaam's ass was so recalcitrant at jumping walls was that he was alone. Had he been given a lead he would doubtless have taken the prophet safely over the obstacle! We have seen much of donkeys while soldiering in India, Persia, Palestine, Burma and South Africa. They have always excited our admiration by their cheery disposition and patience under adversity.

In India, the Gudar-logue, or donkeys, are looked upon as an animal of inferior caste, and are mainly used by native washermen (Dhobies), who grossly overload them. It is not considered *de rigueur* for a white man or a high caste Indian to be seen mounted on a donkey. The most attractive donkeys we

ever saw in India were the wild donkeys on the Rann of Cutch in Kathiawar, not unlike zebras except for their colour which is fawn with bay legs, a bay line down the back, and a mane and tail of the same colour. They are said to be quite untamable.

In Persia, as a staff officer, it was one of my duties to organise transport for a large column of British, Indian and Persian troops. In that almost roadless country the available beasts of burden were camels, mules and donkeys. The camel-men were



"Would have taken the shepherd safety over the donkey."

difficult to deal with, and let you down on occasions. Their animals were sometimes very poor specimens and would go sick and drop their loads from sheer weakness. How often, during our 450 miles march from Bandarabbas on the Persian Gulf to Shiraz, did the camel men come up with the plaintive wail, "Shuttar bimar, shuttar bimar" (my camel is sick). They would then fall out and return to their homes and leave the load to look after itself. We were often glad to fall back on the

staunch little donkeys, dividing up the loads to suit their capabilities. The mules were first class transport animals and the Muleteers splendid men, willing, cheery and fearless. Mules were, however, expensive to hire, and not too easy to obtain, but the gallant little donkeys never failed us. They had the time of their lives. We fed them on grain and chaff and any grazing which was available, and made their owners groom them and attend to their minor injuries, until they became glossy, sleek, and hard in condition. It was quite a treat to see them moving in droves at a good $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour, and still more so to witness their delight when turned loose at the end of a long march. Off they would gallop to the nearest grazing grounds, braying with pleasure, nipping pieces out of one another from pure *joie de vivre*.

During the whole march to Shiraz we never lost a donkey, and all turned up hail and hearty at the end, with the addition of several young donks. born on the march. On the arrival of one of these attractive little people the mother's load was greatly decreased and the baby donk was carried on her back for the first few days. The donkey men, mostly cheery lads, walked along with their droves, singing weird songs and giving forth strange but effective cries of encouragement. How well we can remember riding or walking along the desert tracks, through the mountain passes, up and down steep gradients, sometimes as many as 30 miles a day. The column always started in the dark at about 3 a.m., so as to do the greater part of the march in the cool of the early hours of the morning. One of our most interesting night marches was through the Tangi-Zagh, a natural cutting some five miles in length, very narrow in places, and with high cliffs on either side which were almost unsurmountable from the inside of the Tangi. From the top of these cliffs this narrow pass could be commanded by rifle fire. The attitude of the Arab tribesmen being very doubtful and probably hostile, it behoved us to leave nothing to chance. The Column Commander accordingly sent a squadron of the Burmah Mounted Rifles in advance, with a demolition party to help improve the passage of the Tangi-Zagh, parts of which were so

strewn with boulders as to render it well-nigh impossible. A narrow stream of water flowed down the centre of the Tangi, which at that time of year was reduced to a mere trickle. The water being brackish the ground on either side of it was white with salt. The sides of the Tangi were of a very peculiar appearance. There were layers or stratas of different coloured sandstone, red, yellow, dark brown and grey, with patches of white from the saline deposits here and there. The sandstone had in process of time adopted the most grotesque formations, columns and quaint figures not unlike the stalactite columns to be found in some caves. At the time of our march it was the full of the moon, a few fleecy white clouds were about, which, when they swept across the moon, caused the columns and figures to appear to change shape and behave in the most fantastic manner. Through these strange surroundings marched the column of men, horses, camels, mules and donkeys. The heights on either side were picketed by the mounted rifles whose tiny ponies could climb like goats.

During this march there were strange noises; the iron-shod hoofs of the mules and donkeys on the stones and bare rock sounded like rifle shots, and were multiplied again and again by the echo, until the whole effect was not unlike a prolonged fire fight, which, as we expected to be attacked at any moment, did not tend to alleviate our difficulties; for Persian camel-men are not famous for their steadiness under fire! During the first part of the march all went well, until we reached a very narrow part of the Tangi, between two colossal rocks. At this point the animals could only pass in single file, the actual pathway was solid rock worn smooth by the traffic of ages. The water ran over it, making it very slippery and difficult for pack animals. The mules who always forged ahead, made nothing of it; the camels, however, were not so good! Their soft, spongy feet slipped on the wet stone, their legs splayed out in different directions. The leader did splits and broke his leg, had to be unloaded and moved to one side, where the poor beast made horrible gurgling noises. The second and third slipped and fell. The result can be imagined, a complete "Shemozzle!" Some

sniping and desultory firing broke out and continued at intervals. The noise of the hoofs of the mules in advance added to the pandemonium. To cut a long story short, the donkeys came up and saved the situation. They made nothing of the passage through the rocks, and helped to evacuate the fallen loads. This happened several times during the passage of the Tangi. Why had it never occurred to the Persians, ancient and modern, to improve the road? They presumably hoped that in the process of time the camels, mules and donkeys (which are the only road engineers in Persia) would widen the narrower parts by fair wear and tear. "Inshallah!" It was an eventful night, which left behind it the impression of a nightmare's dream. Sergeant Carr, our office head clerk, who prided himself on being a well read man, remarked next day, "That there pass, why Dante's *hinfermary* wasn't in it! When the old oon't (camel) slipped and broke 'is blinkin' leg, bang went my new Roneo; next time I'll put it on one o' them little donks.!" By dawn we were clear of the pass. "Allah-ho-Akbar!" (God is great), said the muleteers and donkey men. "Thank God, that's over," said the Transport Officer.

But what a dawn it was; like many of the wonderful dawns which we saw on the march in Persia, marching "when dawn's left hand was in the sky," we can well remember the rosy tints on the hill-tops and the marvellous bluish green of the sky as "morning in the bowl of night flung the stone that set the stars to flight," as old Sol, "the great hunter of the East," rose in all his magnificence. These dawns constituted half of the fascination of our treks through the land of Iran. At about this hour the O.C. Column would call a halt and there "Along some strip of herbage strown," where sometimes a stream flowed rapidly between grassy banks, "whose tender green fledges the river's lip, on which we lean," we would sit down and smoke a pipe, or drink tea from small Persian tea glasses, supplied by the Charvaders (muleteers). "Then pity Sultan Mahmood on his throne!"

Where are they now those cheery companions with whom we rode, laughed and chaffed and told stories during the precious moments of the halt.

Perhaps we have already bored the reader long enough, but we venture to crave his patience for a few more minutes, while we tell him of a somewhat remarkable white donkey. When the Cavalry Regiment which the writer commanded in Palestine arrived at Jenin, in the Plain of Esdraelon, we took over with the horses of another regiment, whom we were relieving, a pure white Egyptian riding donkey. It was handed over to us by one of the officers, who explained that it had been the property of a Turkish General who had been captured, that it was a racing donkey and had won races to the value of some hundreds of pounds, and that he was a most comfortable ride. This donkey certainly turned out to be a character. He stood 14 hands, was very handsome, and had a strong sense of humour. Many stories are told of his escapades at one of which we were present. His new owner, whom we will call Julian, some other lads of the Cavalry Brigade and the writer, were asked to dine at Brigade Head Quarters. The Brigadier, as usual, entertained us well and sent us home in a happy and contented frame of mind. On our return journey we had to pass down a narrow street in the town from a side door of which issued strains of weird music, thick clouds of native tobacco, reeking fumes of humanity and strong coffee. We ventured to look in at the doorway. The scene which met our eyes was interesting.

On a stage a young and plump Armenian lady was dancing to the strains of a native orchestra. The room was filled as thick as it would hold with a nondescript crowd consisting mainly of Arab warriors from the Jordan Valley, Levantine Greeks, Armenian Jews and others. The artiste, having put up a good show, met with loud applause from the audience. The Arabs were highly delighted and vied with one another to pin pound notes on the front of the lady's garment, as is their custom when abnormally pleased with a performance of this kind. In this case the notes must have amounted to at least £20. One of our party, who was known as Count Rudolf, cast a critical eye on the assembly and drawled, "There seems to be no room for us, this room simply must be cleared!" Being the senior member of the party the writer urged forbearance from

an action which he considered would be the reverse of *politique*. "It is all right, Sir," said the Count, "there will be no violence." Thinking no more of his threat and not taking it seriously we watched the performance.

The prolonged applause having at last died down the performer was about to show gratitude to her admirers and benefactors. The band was tuned up and all was ready for the encore. On the first twang of the zither, the primary throbbing beat of the sack-but, a hideous braying, prolonged and persistent, rent the thickly clouded atmosphere, as a long, hairy white head and neck with the large ears well cocked forward, appeared through the open doorway and penetrated right into the room. The result was a hectic stampede as the terrified audience, performer and band evacuated the building with feverish haste. With the help of Julian's donkey, which he called by the somewhat crude synonym "Mr. Guts," the Count had completely effected the clearance of the local Alhambra. As it was the final item on the programme no great loss was sustained by the audience. The temporary loss of dignity by some of the Arab Sheiks ensured that the matter went no further.



TWO CAVALRY RAIDS OF THE GREAT WAR

By CAPTAIN E. W. SHEPPARD, O.B.E., M.C., Royal Tank Corps.

Introductory.

FOR many years now official British cavalry doctrine has spoken with a somewhat disparaging voice on the subject of the cavalry raid. The lessons of history, deduced for the most part from the events of the American Civil War, are admittedly somewhat ambiguous as to their value. The questions to be discussed in considering the true doctrine on the point are :—

(1) Are the results of a cavalry raid normally worth its always considerable cost in men and horse casualties?

(2) Does a raid necessarily involve the neglect of other and more necessary cavalry duties?

Should the answers to these questions not prove the cavalry raid to be always an injudicious operation of war, one can then go on to discuss the method of execution of such an operation in the light of the most recent history.

During the Great War there took place at least two famous cavalry raids on a large scale, which should throw some light on the problem under discussion. First comes the well known operation conducted by the French 5th Cavalry Division against the rear of Von Kluck's First German Army at the crisis of the battle of the Marne; and second, the great German cavalry attack against the rear of the Tenth Russian Army in September, 1915. It is proposed in this and the following article, to give some account of both these interesting and instructive operations.

I.

The Raid of the 5th French Cavalry Division at the Battle of the Marne.

On September 5th, 1914, Maunoury's Sixth French Army opened the battle of the Marne by striking North East from the Paris fortified area to attack the flank of Von Kluck's First German Army moving south east across its front, and succeeded in pressing back towards the Ourcq valley the single German corps guarding that exposed flank. As neither the British nor the Fifth French Army in Von Kluck's front were yet in a position to co-operate effectively in Maunoury's attack, Von Kluck was able to turn his remaining corps about and hurry them northwards to deal with the immediate danger; and during the following days the whole of his army, four additional corps, came into action west of the Ourcq, where the French, held fast in front, and vigorously attacked by gradually increasing hostile forces on their northern wing, were by the evening of September 7th experiencing no little difficulty in maintaining the positions they had gained in the earlier stages of the battle.

Covering this threatened northern flank of Maunoury's army was the 1st French Cavalry Corps, under General Sordet, seriously reduced in numbers and much exhausted by its unremitting exertions since the opening of the campaign. On the morning of September 8th it was in the vicinity of Nanteuil le Haudouin, under orders to move forward, in conjunction with the infantry on its right, in the direction Bargny-Levignen, and either co-operate in their attack or cover their flank in defence, according to circumstances. At about 10 a.m., however, when the corps had reached the extreme edge of the woods west of Levignen and had pushed forward its advanced brigade on to the Bargny plateau, fresh orders were received from Sixth Army headquarters. These were to the effect that General Bridoux (G.O.C. 5th Cavalry Division) was to take over command of the corps from General Sordet and while continuing with his main body to carry out the mission already assigned, was to send as strong force as possible to raid the rear of the enemy, who,

having been reinforced in the night, seemed about to renew his offensive efforts against the French left.

Bridoux, who at the time of receiving these orders was on the edge of the woods near Levignen with the main body of his division, at the head of the corps column, called up to him his senior brigadier, General Cornulier Lucinière, and spoke to him as follows :—

“General Sordet has just left us—and I am sorry we are to lose him. I am to take his place in command of the Corps and you will relieve me for the time being in command of the 5th Division, pending the confirmation I shall at once ask for.

“Now I have got to send you on a risky job. Your orders are that whatever the state of your horses or the difficulties you may meet, it is at all costs necessary for you to reach the enemy’s rear, on the east bank of the Ourcq about La Ferté Milon, and make your guns heard there, so as to help bring about his retreat.”

The two generals after a study of the map decided that in order to make sure of getting round to the north of the hostile front, believed to run from Gondreville south-eastwards to Autheuil, with supporting detachments at Villers-Cotterets, Boursonne and La Ferté Milon, it would be best to make a wide sweep round by Crépy-en-Valois and move under shelter of the great Villers-Cotterets forest. The new divisional commander assembled his officers, informed them of their mission and his general plan, and ordered them to move off at once. The men and horses had already fed and watered. No transport was to accompany the force except the artillery ammunition wagons, the light ambulances, and two light lorries, all regimental and supply vehicles being left behind.

The omens for success were hardly propitious. One regiment had been detached for duty as divisional cavalry with the left flank division of Maunoury’s army, and was not available; this and the losses suffered since the opening of the campaign reduced the raiding force to some 1,450 sabres, 350 cyclists, and 3 batteries (10 guns). There was no wireless equipment and no air co-operation had been arranged for, so that the raid once launched would be entirely cut off from news or touch of any sort

with the outside world and with the forces the operations of which it was intended to assist, and of the exact position and projected movements of which information, even at the moment of starting, was of the scantiest. The necessity for speed and lightness forbade the carrying of any rations other than those on the saddle, and living on the country seemed likely to be difficult, in view of the fact that all inhabited localities of any importance would presumably be occupied by the enemy. Fortunately one of the divisional staff officers knew the country and the forest paths well from having hunted and shot over them in peace time, and so was able to serve as guide during the first stage of the advance.

The two main points of direction selected by General Cornulier Lucinière were first Crepy-en-Valois, so as to clear the hostile flank and get under cover of the forest unobserved, and second the bridge of Troesnes, where he planned to cross the Ourcq as close as possible to La Ferté Milon, the northern-most locality known to be held by the enemy. His main objectives were the two high roads from Soissons southwards by La Ferté Milon and Oulchy Le Chateau respectively, which were assumed to be the main routes of supply and communication for the First German Army.

The division, once under cover of the Forest, was ordered to march with one brigade forward as advanced guard and the other two well closed up behind. The advanced guard, the 5th Light Brigade (Colonel Robillot), threw out half the 15th Chasseur Regiment and the cyclists as vanguard. In case strong resistance should be encountered it was to be at once turned by a swing to the north, the main body moving off to its left without allowing itself to be delayed, the advanced guard breaking off the action and following as soon as possible. Protection on the flanks was to be confined to the minimum necessary to prevent actual surprise of the column, so as to avoid a premature alarm being given to the hostile detachments to the south of the line of march; everything else was to be sacrificed to speed and secrecy.

Moving off from its assembly position near Levignen about mid-day, the division reached the cover of the forest safely.

The only untoward incident was the appearance of an enemy aeroplane overhead, which, however, owing to engine trouble landed in a field nearby; a patrol from the advance guard made for it, and compelled the occupants to set fire to it, but failed to catch them. The column then moving off eastward, progressed uninterrupted for some hours, until, just beyond Boursonne, on the southern edge of the woods, the leading squadron collided with a party of German motor machine guns, and succeeded after a brisk little skirmish in capturing them, apparently without giving any wider alarm. Shortly before 5 p.m. the point of the vanguard came out on to the open slopes leading down from the eastern edge of the forest to Troesnes and its bridge over the Ourcq, and saw before them on the plateau beyond the stream an aircraft park, troops of all arms, and transport in movement southwards.

The time factor and the local situation alike called for instant and decisive action. The 15th Chasseurs galloped down to the stream and over the bridge and set themselves to rush the plateau; barbed wire and infantry fire checked their advance, but the main body of the leading brigade, wheeling off to the east to find an easier line of approach, succeeded in gaining the high ground and bringing its leading battery into action against heavy hostile infantry bodies deploying for a counter attack. The French, however, at once came under hostile gunfire, which caused a certain number of casualties, and the squadrons which had established themselves on the crestline were soon compelled by enemy pressure to fall back under cover of the carbines of the main body, dismounted on the north bank of the river to assist their withdrawal. The coming of darkness facilitated the movement, and by 11 p.m. the whole of the division was extricated and safely established in bivouac some miles to the north near Faverolles, where it fed, watered, and rested for a few hours.

At 4 a.m. the next day, the 9th, the main body, well covered by patrols, moved to establish itself on the plateau east of Noroy, where it would have view and command of the main roads leading southwards from Soissons to the First German

Army sector. One squadron was detached to observe the exits from this town, another to reconnoitre Villers Cotterets; and half a regiment, with a machine gun section, was sent east to deal with hostile traffic along the Soissons-Oulchy Le Chateau road. All these parties were given a rendezvous to rejoin at Nanteuil-le-Haudouin on completion of their tasks.

Meanwhile for two hours, while men and horses were feeding and watering, the batteries established on the Noroy plateau were able to bring effective fire to bear on a number of targets, such as troop detachments, and transport columns in movement or halted, and to repulse a hostile force moving up from La Ferté Milon in an attempt to dislodge them. A number of prisoners fell into the hands of the various patrols; but by mid-day it became evident that a further move was advisable, and the division went northwards to the hill above Villers Helon, where it remained sufficiently long to capture the greater part of the wagons of a long transport column on the Soissons-Villers Cotterets road, before withdrawing westwards under cover of the forest.

It now appeared to General Cornulier Lucinière that his raid had served its main purpose, and that in view of the exhaustion of men and horses, and the growing shortage of ammunition and supplies, the time had come to retrace his steps, doing as much damage as possible to the hostile lines of communication as he crossed them on his way back to Nanteuil le-Haudouin. Accordingly, after blowing up the ammunition wagons in the captured convoy, the raiders took the westward road by Longpont towards Emieville. German cavalry and cyclists hung about their rear and southern flank, but were held at arms length with little difficulty. On arrival at Emieville, however, it was learnt that the direct route back to Nanteuil was barred by the enemy, who was in occupation of Villers Cotterets and had extended the right wing of his battle front as far north as Feigneux. The division therefore continued its westward march along the Authonne valley to Orrouy and thence turned south westward to the high ground about Verrines, where it went into bivouac late at night; its progress was observed by

enemy aircraft, but was otherwise undisturbed. None of its various detachments had yet succeeded in rejoining; the squadron sent towards Soissons, after completing its task, was beaten off and almost destroyed in an attack on an aircraft park some miles to the west; the half regiment which had cut the Soissons—Oulchy road had after a successful attack on an enemy convoy returned to bivouac in the forest, only to be surprised by the enemy at dawn next morning; they beat off the attack after considerable loss on both sides, and the survivors eventually made their way back to rejoin the division at La Croix St. Ouen.

The early hours of September 10th showed the situation of the main body of the raiders to be an unpleasant one. Enemy infantry established north of the Senlis-Crepy road checked all attempts to break back across it to the south in the area Huleux-Trumilly, and the hostile line was reported to extend to the west as far as the Oise, the bridges over which were also said to be held. The division drew off to the north again towards Orrouy, where it had a brisk skirmish with a party of German cyclists, and a little further on encountered another hostile convoy and a strong escort moving south on the Compiègne-Crepy road. No sooner had it engaged its guns against this promising target than it came itself under fire of much superior artillery, which put one of the pieces out of action, and hostile infantry skirmishing forward inflicted considerable casualties on the battery personnel as they withdrew. The division fell back under shelter of the forest once more and headed for Pierrefonds, only to find that route also barred; but just when the situation appeared desperate, and the raiders hemmed in on all sides and almost at the end of their tether, information came in that the Oise bridge at La Croix St. Ouen was still standing and was only weakly guarded. The commander thereupon decided to cut his way through by this last bolt-hole, even at the cost of leaving all his guns and vehicles behind him; he about turned his command, destroying some of the ammunition wagons, the horses of which were too exhausted to drag them further, and made for the bridge. By good fortune it was

found not only intact but unoccupied; the reduced regiments filed over it with all possible rapidity, and thus escaped from the closing jaws of the trap in which they had been almost caught.

Only sporadic attempts were now made to interfere with them; the enemy had more important matters to occupy his attention, and the fortunate capture of a German despatch rider with a message ordering the commandant at Compiègne to head them off from Clermont allowed them a free passage westward to that place. A hostile party sent by lorry from Compiègne to harass their rearguard was beaten off with loss; and they halted for the night about Fournival, six miles north of Clermont, where they fed and watered. Nothing more was seen of the enemy, and by mid-day on September 11th the 5th Cavalry Division had reached Beauvais, where it enjoyed forty-eight hours well deserved rest after its many exertions and anxieties, before rejoining the Cavalry Corps on the 13th at St. Just. Its casualties amounted to over 400 men and more than 500 horses; in addition 1 gun and 11 ammunition wagons had been destroyed or abandoned from lack of teams to draw them.

Results of the Raid.

What now were the results of this bold enterprise, in the course of which the 1,800 men of the 5th Cavalry Division had spent three days in the heart of the German back areas, had traversed over 120 miles of country, and had inflicted losses on the enemy fully equal to, if not exceeding, their own severe casualties in men and horses, apart from the guns and vehicles destroyed or abandoned?

We know from German accounts that these results were from the moral point of view even more important than from the material. These latter were considerable enough. The German lines of communication were for the time being completely disorganised; the despatch of supplies and ammunition from Soissons to the First German Army, fighting for its life against the threatened envelopment by the French Sixth Army and the B.E.F., was at a critical moment interrupted; and troops

which were sorely needed in the battle line had to be diverted to deal with the raiders, or to ensure the safety of the essential convoys. Most important perhaps of all, the detached brigade under General Lepel, which Von Kluck had called up from Verberie on the morning of September 9th to strike into the flank and rear of Maunoury's line about Nanteuil, was so delayed by the alarming activities of the French cavalry in its area of advance that it did not reach the field till late in the evening—too late to render the service on which the army commander built his hopes—and found nothing left to do but join in the general retirement begun some hours before.

The moral results were, however, of primary importance. On the evening of September 8th Von Kluck himself and his staff, motoring forward to Ancienville, his new headquarters, were nearly caught by the raiding cavalry, and had to descend from their cars, take rifles from some nearby infantry, and line the roadside ditches in readiness to sell their lives dearly. They were in fact unmolested, but the effect on their nerves can be readily guessed at, and this unpleasant surprise can hardly have been without influence on the Army commander's action next day. On that morning he knew himself to be fighting a losing battle in his front and his left to be threatened by the advance of the B.E.F. into the gap between himself and the neighbouring Second German Army; the peril and disorder of his rear services, of which he had himself had such recent and striking evidence, must have been an important contributory cause of his sudden decision, given effect to as early as 11 a.m., to break off the battle, and escape, while there was yet time, from the net about to close round him.

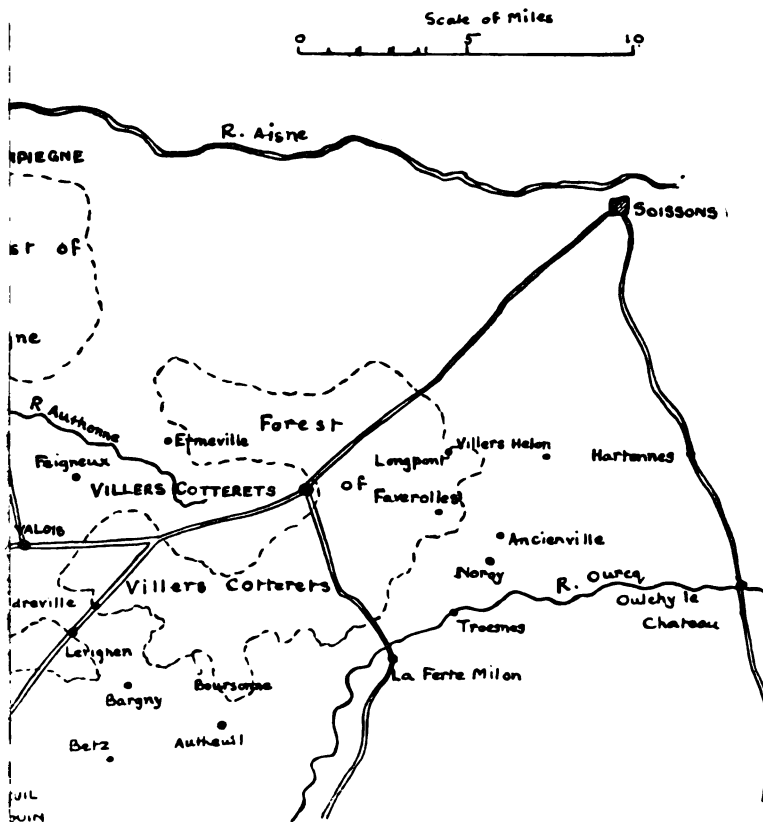
Yet another protagonist in this crisis of the drama was also to come under the moral influence of the French cavalry raid at this juncture. On the morning of the 9th Colonel Hentsch, the emissary of German G.H.Q., fresh from the discouraging atmosphere of Second Army headquarters where Bulow, the Army commander, had just ordered a withdrawal to the north of the Marne, was a witness of the wild confusion caused in the lines of communication of the First Army by the activities

of the 5th Cavalry Division. So widespread was the panic and so inextricable the confusion on the roads that he had to make a wide detour, and only arrived at First Army Headquarters after the first order for retirement had been given. It is hardly to be wondered at that under the influence of what he had seen, and of what he now found, he should have thought the battle irretrievably lost, and should have decided to initiate, as representative of the German High Command, that general co-ordinated retirement he had been authorised to order, should he deem it necessary in the situation as he found it.

Thus, no doubt largely by good fortune, the 5th Cavalry Division's raid was powerfully instrumental in inducing in the minds of the high commanders, on whom rested at this moment the fate of German arms, the feeling that victory was no longer within their grasp, and that only hurried retreat could avert disaster. The "blow at the enemy brain" succeeded beyond even the rosiest hopes either of the commander responsible for ordering the raids, or of the gallant officers and men who so dashingly and gallantly fulfilled the mission entrusted to them, and played no small part in securing the Allied victory at the Marne, the turning point, as the Germans themselves recognised, of the Great War.

(To be continued.)





A SHOOTING TRIP TO LAKE RUKWA.

By MAJOR L. P. PAYNE-GALLWEY, O.B.E., M.C., 7th Hussars.

LAKE RUKWA lies in the south west corner of Tanganyika Territory some eighty miles from Mbeya, one of the ports of call on the Imperial Airway's South African route. Owing to the recent development of the Lupa Goldfields, and the improved road conditions, it is now easy of access, but when I visited the lake in 1928 the road was very rough and the wooden bridges not built for motor transport, in fact, another officer in the K.A.R. and myself were the first to complete the whole journey from Masoko, an outstation of the K.A.R., to the lake shore by motor car. In those days Lake Rukwa was a paradise for game of all sorts and was, in fact, little known to the average big game hunter. Its inaccessibility made it a sanctuary against the sportsmen who prefer to get to their shooting ground with the minimum amount of discomfort and exertion. Part of the country is now a game reserve. I cannot claim to have been the first to get to Lake Rukwa by motor car, as one of my stable companions did so a fortnight before I went there and was able to give me valuable information about the state of the road and the difficulties I should have to contend with; to say nothing of the fact that he had carried out minor repairs to the bridges. It took both of us two days to get there, some ninety odd miles, a matter of considerable importance when, in both cases, our leave was limited to ten days. To have marched there on foot would have taken eight days there and back, a large slice out of ten days' leave.

I chose the middle of September to take my leave, this being towards the end of the dry season and game would therefore be concentrated near the water. On that September day, 1928, I started off from Masoko about 8 a.m. My motor car was a box-

body. Dodge. I took two spare wheels, two spare inner tubes, two spades, a pick axe, a felling axe and a good rope. Servants : my orderly (a good hunter), my head boy and a cook.

The first forty miles took about three hours and were comparatively good going. I was beginning to congratulate myself that I should reach the lake the same evening, but it was not to be. The first delay was a very steep hill where the rains, early in the year, had cut a series of deep channels, and the car had to be unloaded. Having negotiated this obstacle and having crossed two very unsafe looking bridges, there came another delay; a bridge more dilapidated than the others. I got out and tested it; the more I looked at it the less I liked it. The only chance was to unload the car and make a dash over it before it broke under me. Very nearly successful; I got the front wheels over, but the back wheels went through and the car sank on the running boards. However it might have been worse and I had many times experienced such a predicament. Motoring in Tanganyika had taught one never to be dismayed. My orderly and boys knew what to do. The felling axe soon produced some good poles and as luck would have it, a party of natives came along on their way to the French Mission, some fifteen miles ahead of us. With their help we were able to lever up the back wheels and strengthen the roadway with the poles which we had cut. I then harnessed them to the rope and we got the car across. The whole thing hadn't taken more than two hours. It was now about 3 p.m. and with any luck we should reach the French Mission by 4 p.m.; but should we get across the Songwe River, if so we might reach the lake that evening. On we went, our progress perhaps 15 m.p.h., and as we topped a rise the Mission buildings gladdened our sight, standing well up on a hill, but on the far side of the river. We were soon at the river, a formidable obstacle, but the wooden bridge, some 75 yards in length, looked pretty strong. I got out and examined it, and while I was doing so one of the Fathers from the Mission came along and reassured me that the bridge would hold my car. The trusses were strong enough, but unfortunately the poles which formed the roadway were not tied to the mainstays. The inevitable happened. As the car went across the front wheels piled

the poles up in front of them and the back wheels sank down through the roadway, the car sinking down on the running boards. The Mission Father was very perturbed that this should have happened, but said he would soon have plenty of natives to help get the car across. This meant a further delay of at least an hour, and so my chances of getting to the lake that evening had vanished. However, I could not complain as I was lucky to have got so far. In about half an hour the worthy Father returned with fifty or more natives and we soon got the car across. In the meantime my boys had unloaded the car and got my camp ready on the river bank. I declined the hospitality of the Mission Fathers as I wanted to be free to get off at the first streak of dawn. They were kindness itself and supplied me with eggs, milk, and most acceptable of all, an ample supply of vegetables. I gleaned a good deal of information from them: That there was no proper road to the lake, only a rough track, but that there were no serious obstacles to negotiate. As to the prospects of game, there were every sort and kind of game there at the moment. This was encouraging, and having thanked them for all they had done for me I took leave of them and repaired to my camp.

Next day we were off soon after dawn and found the road very rough. The grass had been burned and the surface of the road was a carpet of stubble, very hard and penetrating. We hadn't gone more than a couple of miles before we had a puncture; we soon had one of the spare wheels on, but it was only the first of many punctures, in all, we had five punctures, and it took us from 7 a.m. until 12 noon before we got to the lake, a distance of only 20 miles from the Mission. The first 15 miles was through light bush and there were herds of game everywhere, feeding on the young grass which had started to come up where the long grass had been burned. The last five miles was across an open plain leading to the lake, which was alive with game. The last mile or so was over delightful short grass, very much like English turf, until finally we were on the very shores of the lake. Water is always attractive, but when it is alive with multitudes of birds, and its shores dotted with all kinds of buck, its attraction is hard to describe. It was indeed fascinating.

Puku and reedbuck were feeding all over the plain and were not in the least disturbed by the approach of the motor car. On the lake were hundreds of duck and teal, flamingoes, pelican and other water birds far too numerous to enumerate, and then farther out in the lake were hippo lying on the top of the water. I knew that my first glimpse of Lake Rukwa would remain for ever in my memory. And what a delightful place to make a camp. I chose a spot for my tent under a large thorn tree, and told my boys to place it so that I could see the lake and the plain.

While my boys were getting the camp ready I went off to shoot a puku, a species of game which I had not seen before and which are not to be found in Northern Tanganyika. Beautiful beasts, very much resembling in size and conformation the Scottish red deer. It seemed rather like murder to shoot one as they were so tame, but I hardened my heart, as I wanted a good head and also we wanted meat. I picked out what I thought was a good head and shot him. Such is the luck of the game, my first puku and only half an inch short of the record. I thought that my shot would frighten the other buck that were feeding all round, but they seemed to take no notice. As my tent was not yet pitched and lunch not ready I took a walk along the lake shore. The bird life was truly wonderful. A little bay, about 500 yards from where my tent was being pitched, was a sea of white, where the pelican, hundreds of them, were resting. They did resent my approach and were not afraid to tell me so and then, like great aeroplanes, up they got, formed arrowhead and made off to another bay a little further up. There was so much to fascinate one. The lake was dotted with hundreds of black blobs, some of which would be suddenly submerged and a large snout and gaping cavity would prove that they were really alive and were hippopotami, enjoying their mid-day nap.

It all seemed rather like a dream until my orderly came to say that lunch was ready. From the verandah of my tent I had a good view of all this animal and bird life. Our little camp did not alarm them and puku and reed buck were feeding quite close to my tent. After lunch I decided to walk along the lake shore, taking my orderly with me. Not that I particularly wanted to shoot anything, what I really wanted was to find a village and

get hold of some reliable native who knew the country and could tell me where I should be likely to find elephant and greater kudu. On the way I couldn't resist shooting another puku, which had a fine head and was almost white in colour. We luckily came across some natives who directed us to their village, some three miles from our camp. There I found a particularly stupid lot of natives, who pretended to know nothing about game, but the headman was away and I left a message for him to come and see me when he returned. Anyway, I got some eggs and milk. It was now about 4 p.m., and as game would be coming down to drink I was curious to see how many different species there would be. We certainly saw plenty of game, but all the common sort: herds of zebra, roan antelope, topi, impala, etc. We were back at the camp about 5 p.m. where we found a rival camp, consisting of a dozen or more native fishermen, whom I was pleased to see as H had told me the fish in the lake were excellent.

I watched them getting their nets ready, which were like large landing nets with two long handles, and which they pushed out in front of them. I asked if they were not afraid of the numerous crocodile I had seen in the lake, but they said they were harmless. While my boy was getting tea ready I watched them fishing. They walked about a hundred yards into the water which was quite shallow, pushing the nets in front of them and gradually forming a circle when up would come the nets, and to my surprise there were always two or three fish in each net; a sort of bream, a pound or two pounds in weight, in beautiful condition. They soon had a hundred fish or more, some of which they presented me with in return for the meat I had shot. They slit the fish open and dry them in the sun, and when they have as many as they can carry they return to Mbeya and Tukuyu selling them on the way. After tea I took my shot gun and shot some duck. Being encouraged by what the fishermen had told me about the crocodiles I waded into the water and getting behind some reeds had some nice shots. The old pelican resented my shooting and created the devil of a fuss. What were really lovely were the flamingoes with the setting sun showing off so vividly the pink of their plumage. Had there been any means of disposing of the duck I could have had a nice evening shoot,

as there were hundreds of them flying backwards and forwards. Anyway, I could look forward to a good dinner of fresh fish and roast teal in the most perfect surroundings. What could be more pleasant! While I was collecting the duck my orderly came to say that the headman of the village had arrived. He seemed more intelligent than the natives I had spoken to in his village, and he assured me that if I went five hour's march up the lake I should certainly find elephant and greater kudu. I asked him about lion, but he said that he hadn't heard one lately. He promised to send me a reliable native in the morning who knew the country. His last request before leaving was that I should shoot him a zebra as they were very fond of zebra meat. I said he could take some of the puku meat with him, but, no! he wanted zebra, which surprised me as zebra meat is not considered very high class. I know my orderly wouldn't have eaten it, and also he was the first native I had met to refuse meat. However I promised to shoot a zebra for him in the morning.

It was now sundown and time for a whisky and soda, and as I sat in my camp chair drinking it I watched the sun set over the lake and wondered if I should ever again find such a perfect spot for a camp. After dinner as the moon was bright, being two days from full moon, I took a walk along the lake shore. Puku and reed buck were still feeding all round me and I startled a herd of impala. I walked past Pelican Bay, which evoked a lot of grumbling, and on to a clump of reeds where I expected to see hippo, but they hadn't yet come out to feed. I had left the second puku I had shot out on the plain on the far side of a clump of thorn bushes in the hopes of attracting a lion, but could see nothing round it. I then went back to camp and told my boy to wake me at 5 a.m., an hour before dawn.

I was out just before 6 a.m. and went off with my orderly to look at the kill I had left out, but we drew a blank and no lion had been near it. So I hurried back to camp and had my breakfast as in half an hour game would be coming down to drink and I was anxious to see what would arrive. As the dawn broke Lake Rukwa became an animated scene. The feathered world woke in a jubilation of sound. Pelican Bay was sending out its squadron in search of food; duck were flying up and down, and

high over head were coveys of sandgrouse coming down to drink. From the land as far as the eye could see were herds of game sauntering down to the lake.

I had taken up a position behind a clump of reeds about half a mile from my camp as the more timid animals would be shy of the tent and motor car. First to come were a small herd of roan antelope and beyond them some topi, but there were no really good heads amongst them; and then coming across the plain I spotted a small herd of eland. I put my glasses on to them and saw there were two good bulls amongst them, one in particular seemed to stand out. The Mission Fathers had told me that there were some fine eland at Rukwa. On they came slowly and looked as if they would come quite close to where I was hidden, but they must have seen my camp as they turned half left and were about 500 yards from me. I then saw that one bull had a fine head. A real old blue fellow with a massive pair of horns and a grand crest of hair over his brow. It wasn't going to be an easy stalk as there was no cover. My chance seemed to be when they went down to drink. Unfortunately they seemed very suspicious and were continually looking round, only half drinking at a time. However, now or never, and I started to crawl towards them. I hadn't gone more than a hundred yards when they spotted me and off they went at a fast trot. They went about 500 yards and then stopped; I just walked after them. There was practically no cover and I realised that if I were to get a shot it would have to be a long one. I got up to within 300 yards of them when off they trotted again. Again they halted and I was able to put a small clump of thorn bushes between me and them. I got up to the thorn bushes and found that the old bull was standing alone about 250 yards from me, broadside on. I got down quickly and took a shot with my .318; down he came. It was a real fine head that I found on getting up to him, no record in length, but 29 inches, very thick, with beautiful white tips and a grand crest on him. It wasn't necessary to send back to the camp as my boys had heard the shot and, together with the native fishermen, came up and helped cut up the meat. My orderly cut off the scalp and mask which I sent back to camp to be dressed. While this was going on the headman of the village turned up

with the native who was to act as our local guide. He pointed to a head of zebra about half a mile away and begged me to shoot one, and so to please him I went off and shot one. I then went off with my orderly and the native guide to see what other species of game we could find and shot a good topi. For any one who had wanted to start collecting trophies what a day he could have had. He could have shot at least eight different species, i.e., puku, reed buck, sable antelope, impala, eland, roan antelope, topi and hartebeeste. I was back in camp about 2 p.m. and after lunch I shot a zebra as a kill for lion. As I had shot it in the open away from any sort of cover I went back for the motor car and dragged the zebra near to a clump of thorn bushes. I then made my orderly and the native guide cut a heap of thorns, on the middle of which we dragged the zebra and then piled more thorns round it and on the top of it. This is one of the best ways of laying a kill for lion, as they will prowl around the kill in a vain endeavour to reach it and remain there until daylight. Near to the kill, about 50 yards, there should be enough cover to enable one to get up without being seen. In this case there was a large clump of thorn bushes which would hide my approach from the camp. I did no more shooting that day and went to bed early, having given instructions to be called at 4.30 a.m. as I wanted to be at the kill as soon as it got light. By 5.30 a.m. I was dressed and had cleaned both my rifles, waiting impatiently for the feint streak of dawn. I wanted to time it so that I did not get to the kill before it was light enough to shoot; so at 5.45 we started off. I carried my double-barrelled .475 and my orderly carried my .318. We had a mile to walk and I somehow felt we were going to be lucky. When we were about 300 yards from the clump of thorn bushes I thought I saw something move beyond it. I opened my rifle to be sure that it was loaded and approached the clump cautiously in case there should be a lion lying up in it. Those 300 yards seemed a long way, but we arrived at last and there round the kill were a pride of five lion : an old male, a lioness and three cubs. The lion was standing up while the lioness and cubs were lying down, not fifty yards from me, all quite unsuspecting. The lion was nearly broadside on. I took a standing shot and bowled him over whereupon the

lioness jumped up and turned to face in my direction. I reloaded quickly and it was well I did so, as my first shot hit her rather far back and she gave a spring towards me, but my second shot took her in the chest and over she rolled. The three cubs, thoroughly frightened, made off. My orderly was hugely excited but I restrained him from dashing up to the lion, and we approached them cautiously. They were both stone dead; two good specimens. I left my orderly and the native guide to skin the lion and returned to camp to have some breakfast. During breakfast I made up my mind to move camp and go further up the lake to the place where they said I should find elephant and kudu. I was just about to send my boy to the village when the headman arrived with some milk and eggs. He promised to let me have fifteen porters by 11 o'clock. After breakfast I went to see how they were getting on skinning the lion and found that they had nearly finished. I waited until they had finished and helped them bring the skins in and prepare them.

By 11 o'clock the porters arrived, so we packed up and by 12 noon we were ready to start. I estimated that we had a march of about fifteen miles to our next camp. Mid-day is not a good time to start a long march under a hot sun, but there was no point in staying in our present camp, very pleasant though it might be, as there was nothing further I wanted to shoot. It was a very hot march, but certainly not monotonous as we were seeing game the whole way. We reached the place where I intended to camp about 5 p.m. and just before we got there we ran into a herd of eland, out of which I shot a bull, which was lucky as the porters would want meat. I chose a place for our camp and then went off to see if there was any spoor of elephant. About half a mile from camp I found several elephant tracks leading to the lake, but none of them were very fresh and it didn't look very hopeful. Kudu spoor, there was none, but it wasn't kudu country. I returned to camp rather disheartened, where I was met by a deputation from my porters begging me to shoot them a hippo, hippo flesh being full of fat which they boil down.

I had never shot a hippo and as the lake was full of them

I decided to see if I could shoot one. I took my heavy rifle and my field glasses and walked down to the lake only a few yards away. It wasn't easy to find cover, but a small thorn bush seemed to be sufficient and I sat myself down. Neither animal life nor bird life were as plentiful as at the first camp, but quite sufficient to make one enjoy every minute. The hippo were getting nearer and nearer to the shore and gave the greatest amusement. I longed for a cinematograph camera to photograph their antics, as quite unconscious of my presence they were thoroughly enjoying themselves. One enormous old bull kept getting closer and closer until at last he pulled himself out of the water only about 30 yards from where I was sitting. This was too much for me and I shot him. The commotion was then intense; the whole lake seemed to heave with splashing and bellowing hippo. The porters had evidently been watching as they streamed down to the lake and pounced on the dead hippo. So having fulfilled my contract and given instructions that I wanted the tusks, I went back to have a drink and some dinner. As the chances of finding elephant or kudu here seemed remote I sent for the local guide who advised going another five or six miles farther up to a village where elephant were generally to be found at this time of year feeding on the palm nuts. So I gave orders to break camp as soon after dawn as possible. We were at the village by 8 a.m. next morning. Here the news was better. Elephants were feeding on the palm nuts and drinking in the lake every night. As soon as I had had some breakfast I got hold of the headman and went off to see if we could pick up any fresh tracks of elephant. We made for the place where they generally went down to drink about a mile from the village. They had certainly used it often, but we could find no really fresh spoor. The most recent were the foot prints of two fair sized elephant but my orderly said they were at least a day old. We followed these until about 2 p.m., but as there were no signs that we were getting up to them I decided to return to camp and wait up that night in the hopes that they might come down to drink. We got back to camp about 5 p.m. and I made arrangements to go and sleep near the place they generally came down to drink. It was to be a full moon.

I chose a secluded spot for my valise and a good hiding place for the few porters, my orderly and head boy. While I was having dinner I suddenly heard four rifle shots in quick succession. Who the devil could that be! Whoever it was he had ruined my chance of getting an elephant. It appeared that one of the Mission Fathers had a camp near by and had been there two days. That accounted for not finding any fresh spoor of elephant, as of all animals they are the most easily scared. Anyway I was determined to sit up for an hour or so as one never knows one's luck, and some thirsty elephant might come down. 11 p.m. and no sign of an elephant. I began to think of turning in when my orderly came up in a state of great agitation. Our little camp was being invaded by hippo and the porters were very frightened. I went back with him and sure enough there were at least a dozen hippo grazing quite close to our camp. The porters were huddled together and I couldn't help being amused at their discomfort. I felt that if we wanted a quiet night I had better shoot one, so I picked out the largest one and shot him.

No elephant came down to drink during the night and as soon as it was light I went off to try and get a greater kudu. For the first three hours we found no trace of kudu, but about 10 a.m. we got into much denser bush, which kudu like, and here we came on fresh spoor. We hadn't gone very far when my orderly pulled me by the arm and pointed at what appeared to me only dense bush, but then suddenly I saw, less than a 100 yards from us, a fine bull, wonderfully camouflaged against the grey background and in deep shade. Unfortunately he had also seen us and as I put my rifle up he bounded forward. I fired but I knew I must have hit him far back. There was no chance of a second shot, the bush was much too thick; neither for the first few hundred yards was there any blood. My orderly was sure I had hit him and sure enough a little further on a drop of blood on a leaf, then more blood. Of all animals a wounded kudu is perhaps the most difficult to follow as he is continually crossing and recrossing his tracks. For two hours we followed him up and twice we heard him dash off quite close to us. He was bleeding freely; twice he had lain down and each time left

a pool of blood behind him. And then in a small clearing I saw him, took a quick shot; an almighty bound and then a heavy thud. My orderly dashed forward, shouting "kufa bwana" (dead bwana). Sure enough there he was, quite dead, my second shot had hit him in the neck. What a beautiful beast with those spiral massive horns. It was a nice head, 50 inches, with a fine wide spread. It was now about 1 p.m. and we were at least 3 hours march from camp. The head was massive and there were only four of us, my orderly and two natives and myself. But I was determined to get the head into camp that night. My orderly cut a good pole on which he hung the head and we carried it between us, reaching camp about 6 p.m.

Alas! my trip to Rukwa was now nearly over. In the morning we would have to return to our first camp. It was a long, hot, dusty trek and we didn't make camp until 3 p.m., where we found the boy whom I had left to look after the motor car in a state almost of delirium as the native fishermen had left him alone and the hippo had invaded the place. However, he soon regained his normal state and was trying to impress the others with his perilous adventures, of how the hippo had surrounded the motor car and roared at him. But what was very alarming was the fact that three of the tyres of the car were flat and I only had half a dozen patches left. Having mended these I went out after tea and shot an impala to take back to Masoko and also enough duck for the three of us there and some for the Mission Fathers. I was truly sorry to be leaving Lake Rukwa. Of the many shooting camps I went to in Tanganyika I never enjoyed one more. From a shooting point of view it wasn't exceptional, but I couldn't grumble.

My bag had been : 2 lion, 1 greater kudu, 2 eland, 2 puku, 2 hippo, 1 topi, 1 impala, 1 reed buck.

I have often longed to go there again with a cinematograph camera, perhaps one day I shall.

My last evening there was a very pleasant one. Some more fishermen had arrived and I sat and watched them fishing; to say nothing of a nice, fresh bream for dinner. My boys and the porters had plenty of meat, and as I didn't want to take any spare flour or rice back with me I let them have what was left,

which was considerable. They were a happy crowd that night round their camp fire. We didn't get off next morning until 8 a.m. as during the night two more tyres had gone down. This left me with only one more patch, two spare wheels and two spare inner tubes. I can still remember that drive back. One puncture after another, five punctures in fifteen miles, all our spares and patches exhausted and five miles to the Mission. On for another two miles when we punctured again. Only one solution, to fill the tyre with dried meat, of which we luckily had plenty. But what a mode of progression, very slowly, most of the time in bottom gear. However we reached the Mission where I hoped to mend the puncture. The Fathers were much concerned but they were doubtful if they had any patches, if they had they would only be bicycle patches. My spirits sank; a bicycle patch wouldn't take me very far, but any way it must be tried. At last one bicycle patch was produced. The puncture was mended and off we started with the Fathers' blessing. Whether it was the Fathers' blessing or the wonderful material of a bicycle patch I don't know, but it took me those 80 odd miles back to Masoko. But our troubles were not over, as after going about halfway I found one of the bridges over a dry river bed had been completely burned out. It was then 4 p.m. and there was nothing for it but to make camp there and get down to making a deviation. Luckily I had the necessary tools and was also able to find a place about 100 yards from the bridge where the banks of the dry river were low. The bush was also light and nothing formidable in the way of a tree had to be felled. After working for two hours a party of twenty natives came along on their way to the salt pits, and with their help we cut a rough road way. But stay they must until the morning as I knew the car would take a lot of pulling through the sandy river bed. And so it did, but we got it across and were back at Masoko by mid-day. To show my appreciation of that bicycle patch I sent the Mission Fathers a new repair outfit.



*OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS**(October 17, 1917, to January 25, 1918).*

BEING EXTRACTS FROM THE DIARIES OF MAJOR A. J. R. LAMB,
D.S.O., LATE THE QUEEN'S BAYS.

PART II.*

(8TH NOVEMBER).—We now started putting our plan of operations into execution, that is, we set about encircling the entire *gebels*. The section allotted to the squadron lay opposite to, and midway between, Gebels Toto and Nyima. The general idea was to surround the Nubas with a continuous *zariba*, strengthened by fortified posts bringing under fire all known sources of water. We thereby hoped to reduce the Nubas to submission by privations of food and water. But after working at the *zariba* for some hours we began to wonder what good we should do with it, unless the sight of it alone should terrify the Nubas. We had not nearly enough troops to establish an effective line or to build obstacles sufficient to keep the Nubas from breaking through.

At 3 p.m. we started back to camp, calling on Crichton-Saunders who lay south of Gebel Korbel. He had had a little shooting, but needed no help, so we returned to Kelama where I found that more horses had died—then found myself inundated with correspondence!

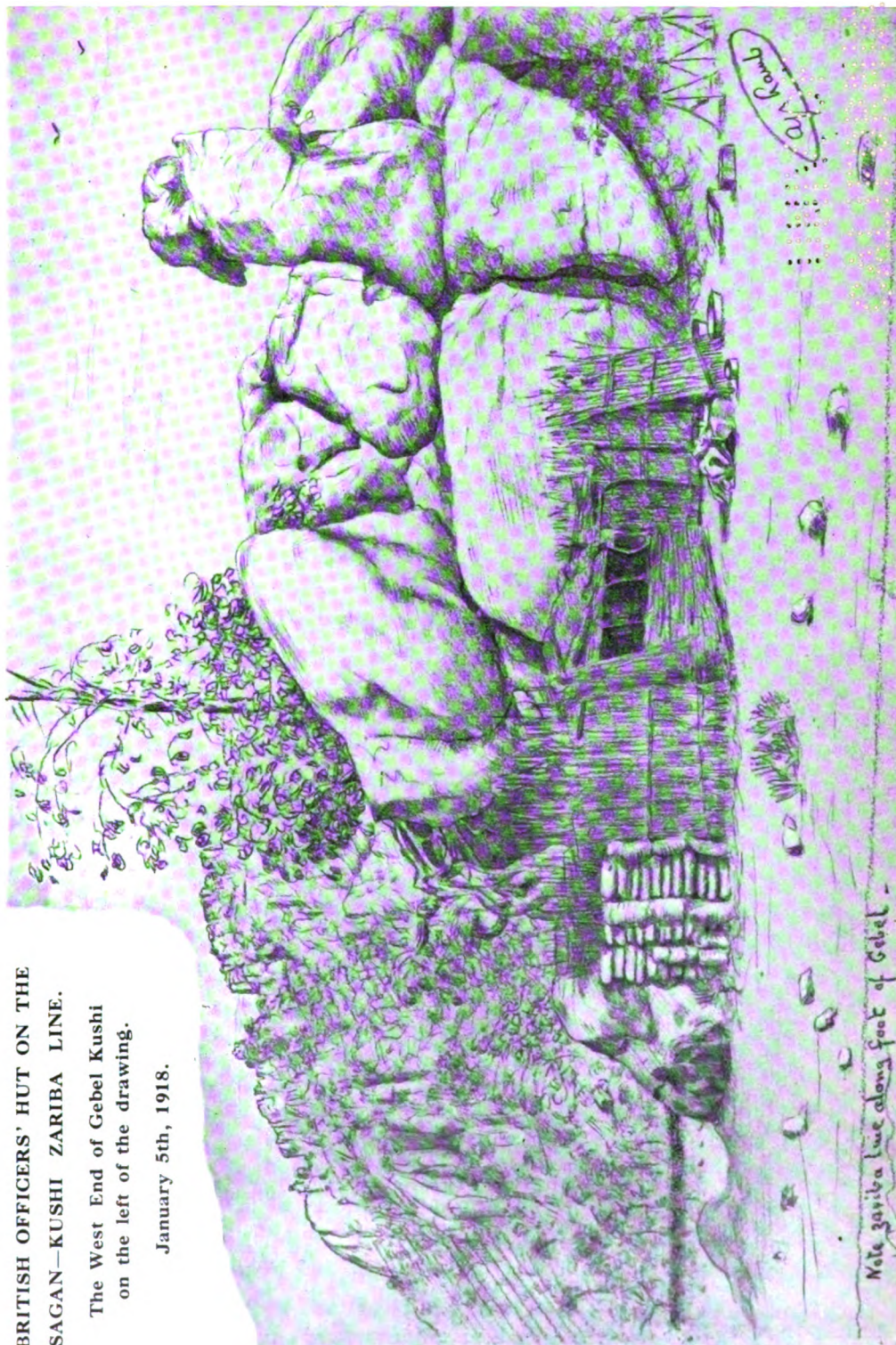
Next day we had a day's rest—a good thing, as several horses were done up and looked very sick. My own pony, "Melik," a nice young Syrian Arab that I was schooling for polo, was sickening, and died next day; that was the thirteenth animal I had lost.

* The whole force was now divided into three columns: the Northern Column working from Ullal; the Southern Column based on Kelama Post; the Eastern Column, with headquarters of the force, based on Nitl. The Cavalry Squadron, at this moment, formed part of the Southern Column.

BRITISH OFFICERS' HUT ON THE
SAGAN—KUSHI ZARIBA LINE.

The West End of Gebel Kushi
on the left of the drawing.

January 5th, 1918.



At 5 a.m. off to Kadilibong Wells again. The *zaribas* to the south and west of the Salara Gebels being well under way, we were ordered to advance northwards past Doma Water and so continue the encirclement of the *gebel*. It was creepy work riding beneath the frowning heights of Gebel Doma, expecting a bullet at any moment. But, though firing was audible, not a shot came our way. Doma Water was remarkably pretty with a little stream bordered by green trees running among rocks. At the head of the pass we were able to occupy all the main features and set fire to the *tukl* villages, which burnt furiously. We now overlooked Piccadilly with Gebels Koddo and Komorro on the far side. I was next sent eastwards to reconnoitre a dry sandy *khôr* leading towards Agabna's village. The rocky sides rose straight up from the bed of the *khôr*, and so we rode on for one mile until, after scrambling through thorns, we turned left-handed and found ourselves at Agabna's village. We were in a hornets' nest!

The Nubas were rushing about everywhere, while the *sabian* opened fire at us from behind boulders; worse still we saw several running along the crests of the *khôr* to cut us off. Here was a nice quandary! To have gone back by Church Hill and so to Doma Water would have exposed Grey's flank for which I was responsible. To attack was out of the question since I had only eighteen men. There remained but one alternative—to canter back along the way we had come. By keeping well to the sides of the *khôr* we got some cover from the trees, but on reaching the bare ravine the bullets began to hum around us. Then the firing ceased; the Nubas realised that we had slipped them. The extraordinary fact was that not a man nor a horse had been hit!

The infantry now picketed the summits of the *gebels* while we made our way to the top of Torman and so looked down on to Piccadilly. Here I found the 11th Sudanese exploring some caves: great caverns and little chambers, tunnels and holes, a veritable labyrinth! What a remote chance there was of catching the Nubas in these retreats! What odds against getting out with a whole skin if one ran up against any *sabian* in there armed with rifles or even spears! Yes, there was no doubt about it, the only

hope was to besiege them in their holes; direct assault had already cost too many lives and led to no decisive result. But for the moment we were lucky: we found large stocks of *dura*, *dakhan* and tobacco made up into flat round cakes nine inches across. These stocks were all taken off by bull transport—to feed prisoners.

Keith-Lockett, of the 11th Sudanese, then sat down and told me the story of some of his men:—"Look at that fellow, comic-looking lad isn't he? He was the ringleader of a small mutiny down south!"

He didn't look as if he could lead anything: an ugly little malformed man of about forty-five with a perfectly vacant face.

"I don't suppose he knew what he mutinied for; he's now a perfectly good soldier and apparently very fond of his British officers. They call him 'Saboon'* and he is the wag of the Company."

And there was 'Saboon' filling sacks of captured grain and occasionally stuffing a handful into his mouth, crunching it up like a horse does his oats, chattering and thoroughly happy.

Throughout the afternoon desultory firing went on until 5 p.m. by which hour all the grain and a few black pigs were removed; we then rode back to Kelama.

Next morning at 5.30 a.m., according to orders, we were unexpectedly summoned to Nitl *via* Gebel Tungera. There we were detailed as advanced guard of a force to occupy Belly Hill. Reaching the summit we were surprised to find it to be the southern crest of the ravine through which we rode for our lives on the previous day. How inaccurate our maps were! Back at Nitl once more, I was informed that the Nubas on Kermutti were running short of water and food and must soon give in. Events were to show how we underestimated the endurance of these people! To replace the thirteen horses I had lost from *nigma*, I wired to Shendi for fifteen remounts.

Colonel Smithson then sent for me to inform me that Vann was in difficulties in the Tendia Gebels. I must, therefore, start next morning to help Vann somewhere on the north side of Gebel Square Top. I was ordered to move round Gebels

* Arabic word for "soap"; many Sudanese are thus christened.

Troutie and Price and so nearly to Maxim Hill before turning south.

A 4.30 a.m. I moved off with 4 native officers, 44 other ranks, and 49 horses; also 22 other ranks and 64 mules for transport. After meeting some 30 Baggara Arabs near Maxim Hill we got into heliographic touch with Vann at Tagega Wells, and then marched to his horse lines. There I found Meeres of the Camel Corps with a nasty wound on his nose. "We were attacking Tagega a few days ago," he explained. "No joke I can tell you! Pretty stiff climbing it was; halfway up when we were hanging on by our eyelids the Nubas opened fire from their caves just overhead. Three of my men were killed and ten wounded. I was hit by a splinter of boulder and nearly lost my eye!"

"I don't think we shall try it again," he added, "till we have reduced them a bit; they're pretty uppish just now!"

Square Top, however, had been captured, so the *zariba* line was to run across the saddle dividing Square Top from Tagega and Cave Ridge. Gebels Awisha and Roach had yet to be dealt with, but they were pretty quiet. So I was sent back to Maxim Hill to prevent, by means of patrols, the escape of any Nubas to the northward. The situation really verged on the incredible. We were encamped at the foot of Tagega just below the Nuba caves, in fact, within close range of them. However, they only fired an occasional shot as we had little sandbag redoubts, each with a sniper on duty all round. One of these sentries can only have been 30 yards from the nearest cave. This made matters so dangerous for the Nuba that we could go about in comparative safety by day, but the real fun began at night!

Next day we started our patrols. The country was intersected with small *khors* and rather blind owing to the long grass. During the morning a Sheikh with ninety Baggara horsemen reported to me. I set them to patrol towards Picket Hill and southwards to Nitl. One of the transport mules was taken ill with a violent seizure of colic: with the efforts of eight men we saved her life by keeping her moving. But in the end she defeated us all and hurled herself to the ground; three men thereupon massaged her belly with all their strength nearly crushing the poor brute in two. The struggle was pathetic and

intensely comic. Man won and the mule recovered. *Nigma* as usual: two horses were so far gone and so weak that they were dragging themselves along in a horrid way on their fetlocks, trailing the hoof behind. So I shot them both. That made eighteen deaths.

I next despatched a troop to remain out all night, as the Nubas now realised that the fewer mouths they had to feed the longer they would be able to hold out, and it was reported they were beginning to drive out all their older non-fighting population. Thirty more Baggaras reported so I sent them to join the rest. A police corporal, who was with them, told me that out of the previous 90 all but 18 had "got sick of it" and deserted. They were a scallywag crowd! They had no maps; they knew none of the points round about by the same name as we did.* It seemed hopeless to expect them to patrol any fixed beat.

(10th November).—Ordered back to Tagega. I was glad to go since there was no water at Maxim Hill and the patrolling we found very dull. I was now to work against the eastern end of Cave Ridge to prevent Nubas from gaining Gebel Koddo, and *vice versa* to prevent those on Gebel Koddo from assisting their fellows on Cave Ridge. At night pretty lively sniping set in, but we sent up Verey lights and fired at any Nubas who were then spotted; but the squadron never fired at all. In the end we had 59 prisoners off this *gebel*. I went to look at them in their *zariba* stark naked and ashy-coloured from living underground; many had a nasty type of countenance, like a gorilla! Each had a long heavy log with a forked end fastened round his neck. These logs are called "sheibas," and are used to prevent prisoners from escaping. They were employed as water carriers or on other fatigues, walking in single file, each resting the end of his *sheiba* on another's shoulder. In another *zariba* were a number of women, mostly in a horrid dirty state and very thin. Two of them attempting to get water at night had been badly wounded and were in hospital: a lamentable business and the ugly feature of the operations, but what could one do in the

* It was, I think, a mistake to identify the topographical features with English names. They conveyed nothing to the native troops, although the local names were difficult to discover or pronounce.

dark? During these nights I never undressed but lay down dressed and booted in my valise.

By 19th November 29 horses had died from *nigma*. At 8 p.m. that day very heavy firing was opened and lasted half an hour, the Nubas were shooting a lot more than usual. It seemed as though the *sabian*, growing desperate, would attempt to break cordon, but nothing happened. My troop, in their new posts only fifty yards distant from the caves, fired over 400 rounds. Musketry fire in the *gebels* sounds heavier in volume than it really is. Every shot has a varying sound and echoes down the *jababs* according to the formation of the *gebel*. The din was terrific.

Fairley was hard at work mounting acetylene bicycle lamps on poles for lighting up the rocks; bomb traps, Verey lights and rockets were all in use, and searchlights were sent to us from Khartoum later on. The bomb traps were made out of a Mills grenade with a trip wire set in a wooden frame over a water-hole, or placed among a patch of water-melons. They often failed to explode, but were morally effective.

On 16th November a Camel Corps company reconnoitred Tagega. The men reached the summit and found no Nubas in the caves though they came across some *dura*, jars of water and one or two rifles. Nevertheless we were afterwards told that there were ten men in the caves. Meanwhile parties from all units assembled to climb the *gebel* from the south western side. From below the boulders looked nothing much, but on climbing one found innumerable caves formed by huge blocks lying on each other at various angles. In many places these caves extended into the heart of the *gebel* forming yawning inky-black abysses. Nearly every boulder stands higher than a man's head and one goes on up and down small chimneys which shut out the whole world. So in climbing these *gebels* one invariably lost all sense of direction and all kind of formation. On reaching a summit we generally found ourselves far from the point we had intended to reach. Small trees, thick and low, and long grass made the climb yet harder and more perplexing. It was therefore, a case of every man doing what he thought best. Never-

theless it was an engrossing and often interesting task, and with the help of a good bamboo staff about four feet long a fit man can go on climbing all day in that healthy dry winter atmosphere—in summer it is another story.

On this occasion we found traces of much blood on the rocks, showing that our fire had proved effective, and all over the *gebel* we heard muffled reports of rifles being fired into suspected caverns. A sudden scuffle behind a boulder and the men were all off like terriers after a rat; finally they came back with three *sabian* who were already tied together by the neck. Later they came back with an old woman; also a typical Remington and a leather bandolier containing one roughly made round and one brass case. That was the whole day's bag. It now seemed that the *gebel* had been thoroughly searched and so we all came down.

Next day the usual reconnaissance round Tangle Hill and then down Regent Street to gain contact with the Nitl column. We rode fairly close to Gebel Sagan and saw many Nubas on it: some came out on the plain, but on seeing the flank guard bolted back. Shortly we found the first fortified post of the Nitl column. But till the Ullal column could link up with the latter Gebels Kushi and Sagan remained open; from the west end of Sagan the Nubas were still perfectly free to come and go. Kermutti, I heard, was holding out obstinately. I then met Wilson-West; he didn't seem quite happy. Finally he confessed that the Nubas on Kushi and Sagan were becoming unpleasant. "Lately," he said, "they have been attacking our posts at night. We throw bombs at them, which they don't like; but they are as persistent as the devil and keep coming back. They've even gone so far as to fire rifles into our loopholes. We've had a good many casualties from this, and my men don't like it a bit!"

I could not help smiling; these men were young Egyptian recruits and hating the experience like poison. The truth was they were dug in far too deep, quite unlike the shallow posts we used in the Ullal column. We nicknamed their trenches "The Hindenburg Line." The result was they were all staying in their posts instead of coming out and going for the Nubas with the bayonet; had they done so they would never have been



British Officers at
Agabnas Village at
foot of Gebel Kudara.



Captured old Nuba Woman
dressed in a sack.



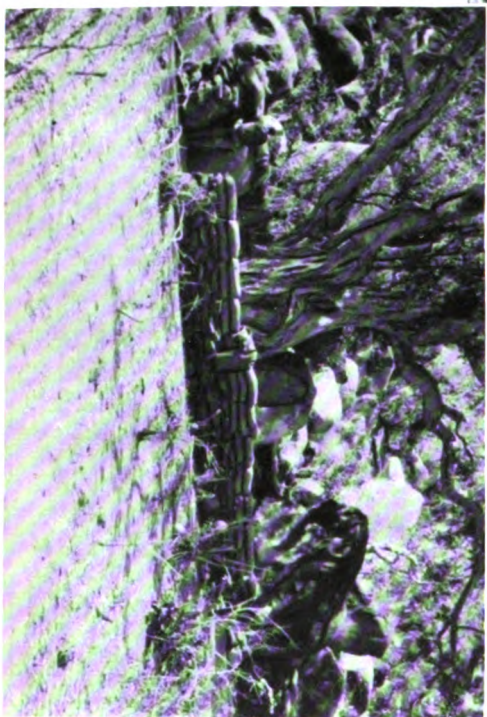
Friendly Nuba Spearmen.



Tuki Village at the foot of Gebel Kilkun, taken at the time the fighting was going on, Nov. 25th. The boulder on right saved my life during several anxious hours.



Camel Transport near Gebel Koddoo.



Double Sentry Piquet over Nuba Caves at foot of Gebel Kilkun.

worried again at close quarters. Moreover, their fortified line was sited too far back from the *gebels*.

On my return we shifted camp to Tagega Wells. In my estimation two facts stood out: the first was that, once the *gebels* were hemmed in, horses could be of little use, and in that respect it really did not matter much how quickly they died. The second was that my men's kit was most unsuitable for this *gebel* work. So I allowed them to discard their Bedford cord breeches and boots and to parade in their cotton drawers;* they were consequently nicknamed the "Alpini." Later they received khaki shorts. Dear old men! Most of them had been taken prisoner at Omdurman in 1898 and had served in the cavalry ever since. Loyal to the last degree, fine fighting men, cheerful and ready to undergo any hardship or danger, I could never wish to command better troops.

At 6 a.m. we marched off to the south side of Gebel Awisha to seize the eastern and highest point of the *gebel*; on our left were two companies of the Camel Corps and the Mounted Infantry. First we crossed a deep ravine; then up the slope, scrambling, crawling, tearing, pushing, heaving, continually turned back by unclimbable boulders or unfathomable chasms. Every cave we approached with care, firing a few rounds into it. So we came to the peak itself, all bare rock and huge boulders. The first wall of rock was climbed by one man stepping up over the shoulders of another: then up a chimney and again another smooth face of rock. How we got up I do not know, but we did! Near the top I had a narrow escape—having left a lower boulder I was negotiating an upper one, clawing on by hands and toes; of a sudden my handhold broke clean off "in me 'ands," as the housemaid says! My signalling sergeant just grabbed my wrist and saved me. Thus we finally reached the top, 3,259 feet up; a bit dangerous for the uninitiated in mountaineering.

The view was wonderful: *gebels* all round like a rocky archipelago rising up from the level plain. So we watched the attack on Tangle Hill which was found almost evacuated. The artillery which had been in readiness to support us now began shelling

* Called "*lebas*."

some Nubas grazing their cattle at the eastern end of Gebel Sagan. Very beautiful the landscape looked : a luxuriant *jahab* running into the rocky fastness, green with grass, carpeting the valley and setting off the rocks; there was water there! The gunners were ranging very short so I managed to get a message through to them by a young Nuba soldier who raced down over the obstacles we had so laboriously overcome. Soon the shells were bursting right among them and a stampede ensued, but they were caught again going up the *jahab* before they could reach their caves. At 2.30 p.m. we returned to camp, burning several *tukl* villages on the way.

Next afternoon we rode out to Tangya Hill which lay west of Gebel Koddo, being reinforced by 30 Mounted Infantry and Camel Corps scouts. Vann now expounded his plan to me for dealing with Gebels Koddo and Komorro, both unknown quantities, but not reputed to harbour many *sabian* owing to the lack of caves. I was to cover the right flank, mounted; but having only 34 horses left alive I could only muster 30 men.

At 5.30 a.m. we moved off to Tangya Hill and halted under cover of a crop of *dura* while the guns shelled the western face of Koddo. With some maxims of the Camel Corps we worked through into Piccadilly and finally occupied a small solitary *gebel* to the south-east of Komorro, which we christened "Cavalry Hill." We had already established heliographic touch with the Kelama column on Nose Hill near Torman. About midday a good deal of firing came from Gebel Sagan as soon as the troops reached the east end of Komorro, and when later on they came off Komorro they were fired on from behind; apparently there were a few Nubas left in those caves. But that game was soon stopped. About a hundred goats were captured.

During the night I had two posts of 10 men on the south and south-east angles of Cavalry Hill, and another of 6 men facing down Piccadilly. Meeres and I encamped together and decided to risk getting into pyjamas. It was quite wrong, of course! But then we were beginning to know our Nubas.

Cavalry Hill was an idyllic spot. Birds and beasts abounded; whenever we moved hawks and vultures lazily circled overhead. Occasionally a huge flock of what looked like small

storks flew by in pursuit of locusts. Every kind of pigeon and small bird, many with wonderful plumage, such as the green bee-eater, hoopoe, metallic bluebird, and the brilliant scarlet cock *dura* bird; lizards galore, while chameleons were fairly common. I felt I should not mind making my home in that spot in those troublous days of wars and unrest!

Considering the number of Nubas reported to be on Sagan it was surprising how quiet they kept. Still they were attacking Wilson-West as usual! They had more respect for the Sudanese and Arab troops. Agabna himself was rumoured to have made off north-west to Gebel Funda, while half the people on Sagan and almost all the cattle were said to have gone off to the Salara Group which the Kelama column was dealing with.

An epidemic of fever then broke out—a sort of fever which occasioned high temperatures with pain in the back of the head. About 10 men were taken ill, then my servant and cook, and finally I turned seedy and took to bed, followed by John Meeres and Wortham.

All day the squadron worked at clearing the field of fire and building a *zariba*. Desultory sniping went on. Old Meeres and I lay under the hill, bemoaning our fate—and grouching. We tore the whole scheme of operations to pieces. The gap of over a mile between us and the Nital column caused us particular irritation. Fifteen horses from Shendi then arrived, but, as there were one officer and six men with them, these only gave me eight fresh horses. As I had lost 37 animals from *nigma* this left me with 29 useless sets of saddlery.

On 23rd November the squadron handed over its line to No. 1 Company of the Camel Corps; then together with the Mounted Infantry and Nos. 2 and 5 Companies of the Camel Corps set out to clear the hills south of Sagan—Kudera and Kilkun included—intending them to form line to the east and advance northwards across Piccadilly, thereby linking No. 1 company with the Nital column; an ambitious programme which, in the end, took many weeks to complete.

Being still weak from fever, I left at 10 a.m. with the transport column: 370 little donkeys each carrying a 50 lb. load slung on either side of a pack-saddle; they wore no head-collars nor

bridles, but were driven along like a flock of sheep. On the way I saw one of my horses with white froth at his nostrils and a tongue as black as jet; he had been stripped of saddlery and left to die by the roadside—a bad case of *nigma*. So I took a rifle and shot him. At Silikun Water I came up with the squadron. The cavalry had not had much to do, but the others had not finished yet. My malaria made me feel a complete worm. Eventually we settled down in Agabna's village, where we remained till I left in January. In the village we found a wooden platform roofed with sticks and grass, which we were told was Agabna's throne from which he dispensed justice, or, in other words, minor forms of torture.

I now had leisure to review the situation, which I did as follows:—(1) The Kelama column had pressed in all round the Salara Group; it was building a fortified line around it on a perimeter of 12-15 miles; the northern part of this area was friendly. The next step would be to move slowly forward and reduce the area step by step, a policy of attrition if you like. (2) Kermutti, undefeated and bitterly hostile, was being left alone in hopes that lack of water would bring the Nubas to terms. All the water was under observation. There was no *zariba* round the *gebel*, but the inhabitants seemed determined not to leave. (3) Gebels Sagan and Kushi were on the point of being surrounded—this would occur as soon as Kilkun and the other little *gebels* had been made good.

Eight more men went down with fever; the total loss of horses was now 40.

On 25th November we attacked Kilkun, in company with the Mounted Infantry, first from the south side. It was reported that Agabna with his *kagour* (witch doctor) was on the *gebel*, which bore his name, Kilkun. It was a stiff climb but uneventful. I went up most of the way up a "boulder-shoot," a feature found on many of the *gebels*; it is just like what a monstrous scree slope might be on other mountains, and resembles the result that might be expected if a colossal bucketful of boulders had been poured down the hill. They are easier to scale than other parts of the *gebels*, but they have this peculiarity, namely, that they conceal a veritable honeycomb of caves. It was, therefore,

somewhat "nervy" work going up or down. On this occasion we fired off several rounds into the holes but nothing resulted and so we reached the summit. On descending we came across some enormous caverns. I ordered them to be searched but it was far too big a job for my small party. When I told my men that beneath their feet there lay hidden Agabna, with his household and Kilkun, they grinned incredulously. As matters turned out, I was right. They were there that day right through. Oh! if we had only known! We reached the bottom and rested.

Then suddenly we received an order to hasten eastwards. No sound of firing reached us owing to the lie of the ground and we suddenly came upon the M.I. in a big village busily firing at the mouths of several caves among the *tulks*. Five of their men lay wounded under the trees. But not a Nuba was to be seen! The firing dwindled down to occasional sniping until the M.I. were ordered off to Sagan. They withdrew by rushes, one Arab officer being killed in doing so; so there I was and the squadron had to stay and make the best of it!

One of my native officers was up the *gebel* and sent back for candles to explore some caverns in which he had found a quantity of food and trophies. Another of my officers, on the extreme right of the squadron, had just come down missing a narrow opening connected with another immense cave; it all showed what a difficult business this fighting could be. I sent him back later to block the hole. There he heard voices and bleating goats, but the Nubas, when summoned to surrender, declined to do so. We tried a few bombs but in the ramifications of these caves no bombs could be of much use, so we gave them up. Another smaller cave which I explored contained a huge quantity of millet, *dura* and tobacco, water in jars, two goats, rhinoceros-hide whips, embroidered bed-covers and ornamental axes. We assumed this to be Kilkun's own cave.

Next morning I lost one man killed at the entrance of a cave. In the attempt to recover his body another man was speared fatally by a Nuba hiding in a tunnel among the boulders, the existence of which was unsuspected.* The Nubas got his rifle,

* A Sudanese sergeant got a mention in London despatches for his work there that morning.

of course, and ammunition, which meant a lot to them. It was a horrible night-marish sort of business. One longed to send over a cloud of poison gas to finish them off, for it seemed things might go on for ever like this, never killing a Nuba while losing many ourselves. The men were all very tired and one or two somewhat shaken, so I sent them back to camp. Vann sent down some smoke balls, but it was so doubtful whether the smoke would not filter out through countless apertures that we did not try to use them.

The western end of Kilkun so far overlooked the camp that I set a post up the slope above us and we sandbagged our tents on the exposed side; thus we slept in comparative peace. A company of 11th Sudanese arrived in the afternoon to assist us in the siege. All this was going on within a few hundred yards of the bigger job of reducing Sagan and Kushi. Vann then came round and gave his orders. The 11th Sudanese were to occupy fortified posts south and west of the *gebel*, linking up with the squadron at the north-western and south-eastern angles of the *gebel*. The latter was to be surrounded with a *zariba*. From the 11th Sudanese I thereupon took four parties of ten men each with tools and 100 rounds per man; found four good sites for the posts, each about 100 yards from the foot of the *gebel*. The remaining men were kept back in camp. The *zariba* was a big job as the posts were as much as 500 yards apart; the two at the western end quite 1,000 yards apart. There were not nearly enough men. My squadron continued to hold the post under the caves on the north side. It was a ticklish job going round there. To encourage the men I offered them 15 piastres for every Nuba brought in, dead or alive; Vann raised the sum to 50 piastres (about ten shillings). The *zariba* was progressing well. I then went down suddenly with jaundice, and from 28th November until 12th December I lay in bed in my tent feeling pretty wretched, living on Bengier's food. At night bullets hummed over the tent but up against the wall of sandbags I felt pretty safe. The siege meanwhile proceeded, and when I returned to the land of the living I found the *zariba* to be a formidable obstacle that only a very desperate man would attempt to penetrate.

(To be continued.)



ONE HUNDRED AND FORTY-ONE YEARS AGO

DURING the campaign in Flanders, 1794-1795, Lord Moira kept a diary in which he jotted down, daily, his impressions of the various events.

The following entry appears under the date 6th of July, 1794, and gives an interesting sidelight on the training of cavalry horses at that period.

“I shall here speak of the British horses, whose natural sagacity, spirit and courage, are not equalled by those of any other nation, particularly those trained for war. If a dragoon is killed, or dismounted, his horse will immediately make the best of his way to the place where he was last fed with the horses of his own troop, however great the distance may be; and if there are twenty regiments of cavalry on the ground, he will not only single out his own regiment, but the troop he belongs to and will fall in, whether in front or rear, with as much facility as if his rider were on his back.

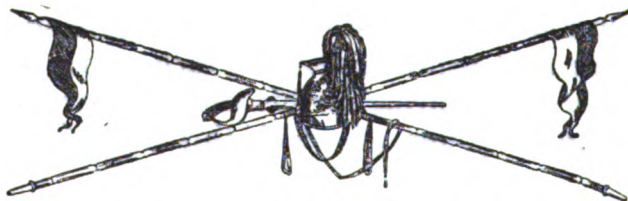
“In an engagement the horses shew as great courage as it is possible for man to shew; and when restrained from partaking of the glories and honours of the combat, they shew the utmost impatience and ardour, on hearing the sound of cannon, drums and trumpets, in a manner truly expressive, by pawing the ground, erecting their ears, snorting and foaming, in a manner which proves them to be possessed of the highest courage. When the trumpet sounds the charge, it would be nigh impossible for the most experienced riders to hold them in; but they rush instinctively into the thickest of the enemy, preserving at the same time the most regular order and each animal seems to vie with the other in procuring for his rider honour and fame by every means in his power, of which this noble beast seems to

partake in an equal degree with his master; and though apparently impelled by a fierceness ungovernable, yet in the hands of a skilful equestrian, he is as gentle as a lamb, and obeys every touch of the reins or sound of his master's voice, with the most cheerful alacrity; and there certainly is a kind of mutual friendship subsisting between man and horse.

"A soldier would as soon see his comrade killed as his horse; and that the horse has an equal regard for, and knowledge of his master, will be seen in the following fact, which though in some measure a contradiction of what has been observed of a horse returning to his troop, when his rider is dismounted, yet it nevertheless shews equal sagacity in the animal. A dragoon being shot in a skirmish on the borders of a wood, was left behind by his own party, they not having it in their power to carry him off, on account of the numbers of the enemy who were coming up, and as he fell from his horse when he received the ball, his comrades concluded he was dead, which was actually the case. A patrol coming by the place about two days afterwards, discovered the body, with the horse feeding by it, and which the poor creature had never quitted, as was plainly seen by the grass being eaten close within a few yards round the body. When they had buried the corpse on the spot, the faithful animal seemed to shew great reluctance to come away without his master, frequently turning his head and neighing, as if wishing his dead master to come and mount him; this was an old horse that had lived with one rider many years.

"The dragoons frequently say that they would sooner lose their wife than their horse, especially in an enemy's country; because it is an easy matter to get a new wife, but an impossibility to get a well trained horse to their liking; though they sometimes are accommodated with both on the death of a comrade."

K. R. W.



“ OVER THE PORT ”

THE scene is laid in a low built country house. The French windows are open on this breathless summer evening. Beyond them, the well kept lawn slopes down to a tempting trout stream. Our host, a retired soldier in the middle sixties, passes the decanter once again to his friend, a young Member of Parliament, who in his turn gives it to the nephew of the house. There are no lights but the candles, the polished table top reflecting the old silver and glass. The nephew, now a squadron leader in a Cavalry regiment, was just old enough to serve in France in the last year of the Great War. His uncle, who in his day had been a well known polo player, and had spent most of his service in India, left after the Armistice, having eventually commanded a Cavalry Brigade. He has now settled down in his old home and amuses himself by fishing and hunting. Perhaps, if one wanted to be critical, he was rather prone to reminiscences of “the good old days.” The two younger men listened, but their thoughts were apt to turn more to the future than the past.

M.P. “ When we were considering the estimates in the House the other day, there was the usual attack on the cavalry. Although it is a hardy annual, I sometimes wonder if there is not something in it. Besides, I hear the Treasury is getting rather worried about the question. You see the cavalry has not got a very good press nowadays. What do you think about it ? ”

Uncle. “ I am certain the day of the mounted man is by no means past. Who, I should like to know, is going to do his job instead ? ”

M.P. “ Before answering your question, I should like to ask you another. I read somewhere recently, that an army, if it is to keep virile and up-to-date, must change its tactics every ten years. How does the cavalry stand with regard to that particular teaching ? ”

Nephew. "I am afraid not very well. It is true some regiments at home have had to experiment with a new type of light automatic, but these apparently will not be issued for some time. The wheels of the War Office grind slowly. Otherwise our armament for war is exactly the same as 1914, except that each regiment has four light machine guns instead of two Vickers."

Uncle. "I thought you told me your transport was now motors?"

Nephew. "Yes, that is so. And we have some light cars for scouting, too."

M.P. "But I take it, your methods of fighting are just the same. Tell me, do you still teach the use of that archaic weapon, the sword?"

Uncle. "Why, of course, my dear fellow! Surely you know the sword practically won the Palestine Campaign. Lord Allenby himself the other day told me the Australians"

M.P. (interrupting). "Yes, I know. But was not Palestine an exceptional campaign? We were fighting, after Beersheba, a demoralised enemy, ill-fed, and led by foreign masters. I grant you that the sword may have been instrumental in helping to gain the final victory in that theatre, but it was the only place it was the least use. And a study of war for the last forty years does not encourage one to think it will ever be any good again."

Nephew. "Yes, I am afraid you are right. But while I personally cannot see a charge even of a squadron, let alone a regiment, I feel teaching the use of the sword may give small patrols and advanced points the incentive to attack their like. I grant you we are apt to overdo the teaching of this weapon, but I dare say this could be avoided, were it not for the bogey of peace-time inspections and competitions!"

M.P. "It is certainly not easy to persuade old timers that the *arme-blanche* is a thing of the past. Of course we dislike losing the picturesque. But one must not lose sight of the element of fear in war. In a campaign against a modern enemy, you are obviously not afraid of being charged by cavalry. Then you must be frightened of something, surely!"

Nephew. "I dislike machine-gun fire more than anything I know, except possibly being bombed at night! And mobile

machine-gun fire from which I cannot get away is naturally the worst.”

M.P. “You are referring to the light tank, I suppose.”

Nephew. “Yes.”

M.P. “But I can never understand why you cavalry do not take over the light tanks. Surely nowadays that is your job. I suppose you are frightened of losing your horses. No more hunting, eh?”

Nephew. “I admit that, if we were mechanized, there might be difficulties to start with; for instance, the recruiting of the young officer would become more of a problem. But not so difficult as so many people imagine or want us to believe. After all, nowadays the young all understand magnetos and carburettors. A subaltern may even buy a car before he invests in a horse. It is a sign of the times and one cannot get away from it.”

M.P. “I rather agree with you there. Besides, in another fifty years or so, there may not be any more hunting. Even in the midlands, wire is beginning to rear its ugly head, and tarmac, as we all know to our cost, is ubiquitous.”

Nephew. “All the same, I should hate to fry and train young officers without horses. I wonder if they could not be considered from the same point of view as recreational training, or even football grounds for the troops! I think they are just as much of a necessity.”

M.P. “Then I take it, broadly speaking, you are really in favour of arming the cavalry with light tanks.”

Nephew. “Yes, I am bound to say I am.”

Uncle. “Of course, the light tank is all very well, but it has so many disadvantages. For instance, it is very noisy, and the columns on the ground will always present an obvious target to the air.”

Nephew. “The noise bogey is being improved on every year. As for a bombing target, I should have thought horses were far more vulnerable. After all, many more horses are required to do a similar job to light tanks, and the days of the armoured horse are past!”

Uncle. "Well, possibly. But you can get cavalry into places where you cannot get light tanks. They are terribly sensitive to ground, I am told."

Nephew. "Up to a point, that is so. But even now, armies move along roads and the majority of fighting is done in a flat place. I know we are always ragging Tank Corps officers about their expression 'good tanking ground,' but I seem to remember the expression 'good cavalry country.'"

Uncle. "Then there is the supply question. Imagine the amount of petrol these beastly things use."

Nephew. "But horses want forage in just the same way as machines want petrol. And even you must admit that when an armoured force is standing still it is not consuming any oil or petrol."

M.P. "I think we are rather wandering from the point. What I want to know is this. What are the arguments in favour of the cavalry being armed with light tanks and would they play?"

Nephew. "You have given me a pretty difficult conundrum, and one about which there are bound to be many points of view. You see there are certain things which one hardly dare criticise in this country. For instance, have you ever heard any one joke about Nelson, or the team spirit in cricket? It is really the same about the horse. If one dares, in the life I lead, even to question the utility of the horse in war, or training for war, then one brings a veritable tornado about one's head. Yet, all the same, a good many of us younger ones think his usefulness on the modern battlefield is very limited. And I must admit that we, who are serving in horsed regiments, have a good deal to put up with nowadays. We are on such a low peace establishment at home that, even on manœuvres, it is rare to see a squadron of more than forty strong. Troop training is the same. You see a troop leader riding about and trying to keep half-a-dozen men amused. This state of affairs has gone on for so long that it is beginning to undermine the enthusiasm of the leaders. And if one complains and points it out, one is accused of being unduly pessimistic!"

M.P. “I am afraid you would have a good deal of difficulty in getting any more money to increase your present establishment. The trend of thought is rather in the other direction.”

Nephew. “Yes, I realise that. And that is why I am forced to think we must turn our energies elsewhere. You see, in this country there is a type who likes living dangerously. Mussolini has tried to make the Fascists take that creed for their motto, ‘*vivere pericolosamente.*’ But we have always had the type in England; for the past 200 years or so, they have found their outlet in the cavalry. I feel it would be a thousand pities to lose them. After all, what is the good in a small professional army of abolishing old established units, with all their traditions, and raising new ones. In other words, why should the cavalry not take over the light tanks?”

Uncle. “But surely you would not like to see all the horsed regiments done away with?”

Nephew. “By no means. I think it is imperative to leave one horsed Cavalry Brigade, and also the Divisional Cavalry Regiments at present seem to fill the bill.”

Uncle. “My dear boy, if you took over these tanks, you would never get them properly looked after.”

Nephew. “I am afraid I do not agree with you there. The two cavalry regiments which have recently been mechanized are proving themselves to be among the best machine-masters (if there is such an expression) in the army.”

M.P. “Of course the change over would be pretty drastic. what about the various vested interests?”

Nephew. “Well, to start with, the principle has been accepted already. The most recent War Office pamphlet on the new ‘Mobile Division’ lays this down. It talks about armoured cavalry regiments, by which light tanks are meant. I would like to see us try them out because I believe they are the thing of the future. You see, in the cavalry you have all the fundamentals of leading light tanks. The will to succeed is there. After all, tactically we are already three parts trained. We are used to thinking ahead and thinkly quickly. Moreover, we have always been brought up to co-operate with the other arms. Besides our relatively quick promotion is a great asset. I am

sure the younger the man who leads these tanks the better will be the results."

Uncle. "How will the rank and file like this idea of yours?"

Nephew. "I don't think you need have any worry on that score. All the ones I have talked to are much in favour of it. Look what a good training it would give them for civil life."

Uncle. "You can say what you like, but I personally do not think your new fangled contraptions would be any use in a rough and tumble such as we had in France during the end of March, 1918."

Nephew. "That remains to be proved."

Uncle. "But does not this pamphlet you have been talking about say something about cavalry in trucks? Is that not good enough for you to start with, anyway?"

Nephew. "No, not altogether. The trouble is that although these trucks are strategically very mobile, tactically they are not so practical. Any attacking from them must be done on foot."

Uncle. "In other words, they are useless."

Nephew. "I should not like to say that. They certainly should be most useful when handled in co-operation with light tanks, for instance, to hold a position already gained."

M.P. "Well, I have had a lot of fun to-night, drawing out our friend here. And I must confess there is a very great deal in what he says."

Uncle. "He certainly has given us some very advanced ideas! But before it becomes too dark outside and the argument gets out of hand, shall we go and take one last look at the big trout which is sure to be lying in the pool below the bridge?"

The party blows out the candles and disappears through the French windows on to the lawn beyond. The dining room is left empty.



CORRESPONDENCE

THE GERMAN CAVALRY ON THE MARNE.

To the Editor, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL.

DEAR SIR,—In my article in your October number I write : that our slow advance was partly attributable to “ a supposedly unfordable river.” It has occurred to me that these words may be held to imply that it actually was fordable and that consequently our cavalry are to be blamed for not forcing the passage at once. When I read in Colonel Pugens’ account that the Petit Morin is fordable, “ à peu près partout,” I confess this thought did cross my mind. However, our Official Account describes it tersely as “ Fordable,” so I decided to investigate the problem for myself. In view of what I have written above the results of my investigation may be of some interest to your readers.

Now, it is notoriously difficult to prove a negative. The only satisfactory way to prove that a river is unfordable is to attempt to ford it, so with that object in view I recently spent two days following the course of the Petit Morin from Bellot to La Ferté-sous-Jouarre and testing its fordability in a practical manner at many points in its course.

The following are the results of my test, moving downstream, that is from right to left of the British line* :—

At Bellot the river is about 20 feet wide and 6 feet deep ; the banks are steep and about 6 feet high. It can, however, be crossed immediately above and below the bridge by a dismounted man. Otherwise it is unfordable for three-quarters of a mile downstream to Les Brodards, where are rapids only 2 feet deep. (N.B.—1914 was a fairly dry year, but about 6 inches should be taken off the figures given in this article.)

The river gradually gets deeper and more sluggish, and, indeed, half a mile S.E. of Sablonnières it is 8 feet deep. At this

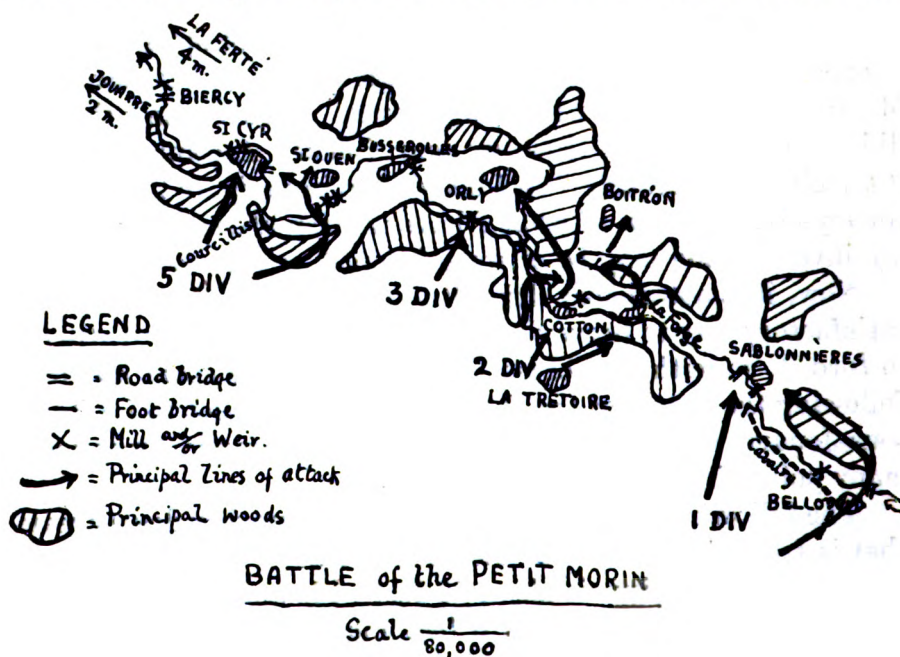
* Our 1st Division crossed at Bellot and Sablonnières.

Our 2nd Division crossed at Cotton.

Our 3rd Division crossed at Orly.

Our 5th Division crossed at St. Ouen and St. Cyr.

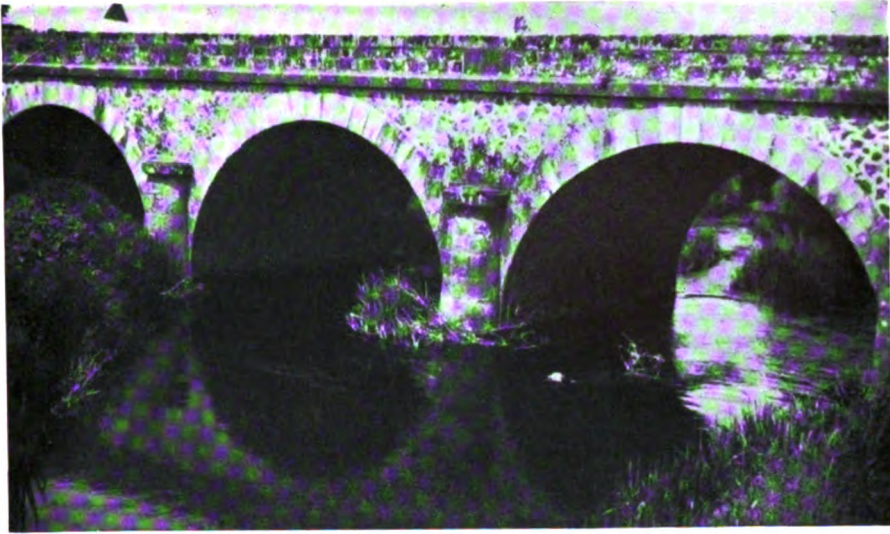
village there are two bridges and the stream is fordable immediately above and below each of them. 200 yards below the western bridge there are rapids, but the bank is so high and steep that a man would have to be lowered down, and in full equipment it is doubtful if he could keep his foothold; we can therefore dismiss it as a practicable crossing. 200 yards lower down I had to swim in order to cross, and even so it would have been difficult to climb the far bank which is precipitous and overhung with trees. In fact the whole course of the stream is lined with trees, though many have been cut down since the war.



This, combined with the steepness of the banks makes it utterly impracticable for cavalry, i.e., troopers would have to leave their horses behind.

At La Forge is (or rather was, it has since been dismantled) a mill, and below both mill and bridge the river can be forded. After that it becomes deep again as far as Cotton* (between La

* This bridge is described variously as Le Trétoire, Boitron and Le Gravier, but the hamlet is known locally as Cotton and is so marked on the map used by our troops, though the hachuring makes it indistinct. It figured prominently in the battle and deserves to be named correctly.



PETIT MORIN AT SABLONNIÈRES



PETIT MORIN AT LA FORGE

TO THE
LIBRARY

Trétoire and Boitron). Here the river can be crossed by both bridge and mill, and also between the two (a distance of 200 yards). But as the Germans held the mill it was not available for our troops.

We now come to a very interesting and important sector, that between Cotton and Orly, because it was at these two bridges that the B.E.F. was held up the longest. Below Cotton the river completely changes its character; the fall becomes greater, the bottom rocky and the stream narrows to about 10 feet with a very rapid current. At one place I could cross without wetting the knees. At the other extreme, I tested it at two deep-looking points and found it respectively shoulder and breast high. It is safe to say that this sector is fordable, though in places, owing to the steepness of the bank and rapidity of the current, it would not be an easy operation for fully-equipped men. Two companies of the Worcestershire Regiment did in fact wade across it in this sector. But here, as almost everywhere, the steep over-hanging banks make it impracticable for a mounted man.

Below Orly it partakes of the same nature for about 300 yards, and I was able to cross 100 yards below the bridge (and out of sight of it) without wetting my waist. Below this point, however, the stream gradually assumes a different aspect, broader, deeper, with a clay bottom, but with the same steep banks.

At Busserolles the mill-race can be forded and the same is true of the mill-race at St. Ouen.

St. Cyr possesses two bridges, and, as always, the river is fordable immediately above and below each. Thence to the mouth it becomes increasingly sluggish and wide (30 feet), and half a mile below St. Cyr it attains a depth of at least 8 feet, and is fordable only at Biercy and Les Prés.

To sum up, the Petit Morin is fordable to a dismounted man near the bridges and mills, and anywhere in the sector Cotton to 300 yards below Orly, and practically nowhere else. But to a mounted man, owing to the steep banks it is negotiable scarcely anywhere. Unless, therefore, our cavalry could rush

the bridges (and most, but by no means all, of them were held or commanded by the Germans) the only hope our cavalry had of forcing the passage was by leaving their horses behind and going forward on foot. If we add that the enclosed nature of the ground made effective artillery support difficult, it can be seen what a formidable task our cavalry had before them.

Yours truly,

A. H. BURNE.

* * * *

A SPY STORY.

To the Editor, CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR, The April number of THE CAVALRY JOURNAL contains a contribution by Major H. C. H. Robertson, D.S.O., Australian Staff Corps, entitled "A Spy Story."

The Major relates an incident which occurred in Palestine, September, 1917, and led him to believe that he had encountered a German officer disguised in British uniform, spying within the British lines.

Both Major Robertson and General Sir George de S. Barrow, then commanding the Yeomanry Mounted Division, speak of the supposed enemy spy in chivalrous terms, expressing admiration for his courage, and saying that they would be greatly interested if the officer concerned came forward and gave his story.

Prompted by the sportsmanlike attitude of our "ex" adversaries, I undertook to discover the officer's identity, provided he proved to be real and not imaginary. My friend General Grünert (Hindenburg's Q.M.G. at Tannenberg), to whom I showed my translation of Major Robertson's article, passed it on to General Kress von Kressenstein, at the period in question commanding the Turco-German forces on the Palestine front, and now sends me the letter he had from General von Kress in reply. According to the evidence of this most competent authority, Major Robertson, and other officers who believe to have seen the German spy, must have been victims of a delusion. All the same, it is a strange case, remindful of psychical phenomena one has read about.

Here follows my English translation of General von Kress' letter :—

Feldafing,

October 27th, 1934.

Excellency,—In reply to your letter of 25th inst. I beg to state that I have no knowledge of the alleged German spy, and that, in fact, during the critical days preceding the third Battle of Gaza I, unfortunately, received no intelligence from agents whatsoever.

The entire front from Gaza to Beersheba was at the time—as 8th Army—under my command, and even if Headquarters Army Group Falkenhain had sent out a disguised German or Turkish officer to reconnoitre without my being aware of it—a very unlikely thing—it must certainly be taken for granted that the results of such a reconnaissance would have been communicated to me.

I have reason to believe that Army Group Headquarters were also uninformed regarding the distribution of the enemy's forces. Major Robertson must therefore have been mistaken, and his visitor, in spite of the suspicious circumstances, been after all a British officer and not a German spy.

How easily fallacies of a like nature are apt to occur in war, is shown—as in many other instances—by the story of the supposed deeds of the spy “F. F.,” which appeared in post war British literary publications. Among the foolish things ascribed to him was that he had moved about behind the British front disguised in British uniform, and visiting officers' messes.

Fritz Frank—“F. F.”—was a patriotic artisan of German extraction, domiciled in Palestine, who volunteered his services at the commencement of the War. Accompanied by a few Bedouins he undertook repeated topographical surveys in the Sinai Desert before our front. He never came up to the enemy lines, still less could he have been able to penetrate behind them. Quite apart from the circumstance that his whole personality was not suited to

act the part of a British officer, he could not, at any time, speak or understand a word of English.

I gladly authorise Colonel Martin to make what use he thinks fit of these remarks.

Major von Papen, mentioned in "Yildirim," is the later Chancellor. He could not have been the officer in question, for the reason that before and during the 3rd Battle of Gaza, he was attached to my headquarters as Army Group Liaison Officer.

Etc., etc.,

(Signed) FRHR. VON KRESS.

General von Kress' last remark respecting Major von Papen was in reply to my suggestion whether the disguised scout might not have been the Major himself. This officer, as former Military Attaché in Washington, undoubtedly speaks English fluently, and it must have been his presence at German Headquarters which was reported to the British Command, as stated by Major Robertson.

Yours faithfully,

A. G. MARTIN,

Lieut.-Colonel formerly German Army.

November 2nd, 1934.

* * * *

THE CAPTURE OF DAMASCUS IN 1918.

To the Editor, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL.

DEAR SIR,—Owing to the unfortunate accident that has recently happened to Colonel Lawrence several papers have mentioned the capture of Damascus in 1918. As I was ordered by the late General Sir Harry McAndrew commanding the 5th Cavalry Division to carry the order for the attack on the city, this short account of what actually happened may be of interest. I only mention what I saw myself whilst attached to the General's staff.

In the early morning of September 30th, 1918, the 5th Cavalry Division and the Australian Mounted Division, the leading troops of the Desert Mounted Corps, were approaching Damascus from the south. Near Sasa, a village some few miles

from the city, the Australians rode away to the north, to pass between the Antilebanun Mountains and the town, while the 5th Cavalry Division moved on towards the city.

About nine o'clock that morning a message was received by aeroplane that the Turkish army was approaching Damascus along the Deraa road, which runs near the Hedjaz railway from the south. It was known that Sir George Barrow with the 4th Cavalry Division was following them up and that the Emir Feizal with Hedjaz army was on their right rear. General MacAndrew decided to head off the Turkish army and detached his leading Cavalry Brigade, the 14th, under General Goland Clarke, to accomplish this.

The Brigade disappeared into the broken country to the east and we saw nothing more of them.

We halted for a considerable time to await developments, and after an hour or so General MacAndrew sent me to find General Clarke and to tell him not to wait for the Turkish army but to attack Damascus. He was not easy to find as he had gone some miles, and one naturally thought it wiser to avoid inhabitants. I eventually found the 14th Brigade on some rising ground to the South of the Jebel Aswad overlooking the Damascus-Deraa Road. They were being shelled by the Turks, whom we could see coming up from the south in what appeared to be good order.

On receiving the message, General Clarke turned towards the Jebel Aswad and Damascus, leaving some machine gunners to protect his rear.

As this Brigade moved down the Northern slopes of these hills, fire was opened on them from a low conical hill ahead. The hill was charged by the Poona or Deccan Horse under a covering fire from the Essex R.H.A. Battery. Then, from some orchards below, came a man, with a white flag saying he came from a Turkish Cavalry Commander, who, with his officers, wished to surrender; they, with some other Turks, were all that remained of their division.

It was getting late in the afternoon, and General Clarke thought it was too late to try to get into the city that day, especially as he had no knowledge of where his Divisional Head-

quarters were, and he could not get into signalling communication with the Australians. He advised me to stay with him that night and not try to ride back to the Divisional Headquarters. It was now, in the evening light, that we could see the fugitive Turkish army streaming into Damascus away on our right flank, having lost all order, and one realised what a sad sight a beaten and demoralised army is. We saw the last Turkish train going into Damascus, on which the Essex Battery opened fire, and later as we ate our supper we watched the burning stores near the Damascus Railway Station on the Meidan Road, with occasional explosions making huge columns of smoke like mushrooms in the air.

Next day at daybreak on October 1st, two Syrians in Arab dress came to our Headquarters asking us to direct them to the Hedjaz army. We explained to them that the Hedjaz army was still some miles away. We asked these Syrians if they would have some breakfast, and they almost finished our only remaining pot of jam.

When General Clarke asked me to try to find General Barrow commanding the 4th Cavalry Division before going back to General MacAndrew, these two men followed me, and shortly afterwards we met a single car containing two men, one of which was Colonel Lawrence.

I handed the men over to him, and told him where the 14th Brigade was in front, and the Brigade found Colonel Lawrence an escort to go with him into Damascus to interview the city authorities.

On my way to the 4th Cavalry Division I soon met General MacAndrew, who told me the orders from the Desert Corps with regard to the surrounding of Damascus. He marked my map with the section of the perimeter that the 14th Brigade was to take up and sent me back to General Clarke. The General also showed me a space on the map away to the East of the city, free from orchards and buildings, which was to be the Headquarters that night of his Division and of two of his Brigades.

He himself moved on to the 14th Brigade, and observing from the rising ground how difficult it was to go round outside the walls, he decided it was easier to go through the middle of

the town and take the 14th Brigade with him, and that they should take up their position outside afterwards.

We moved up to the Railway Station by the Meidan Road, where stores were still burning. We were met there by some Italian prisoners of the Türks who assured us that there were no British prisoners in the town.

General MacAndrew then moved on through the town. The population cheered frantically, and Turkish soldiers were pushed forward in such numbers to surrender that by the time we reached the British Hospital on the north of the town the prisoners far outnumbered their captors. The Australians had entered the northern part of the city that morning, October 1st, but the 14th Brigade were the first body of allied troops to pass through the city of Damascus from end to end.

When we reached the neighbourhood of the British Hospital of Damascus, General MacAndrew thought it was time to get back to the Headquarters camping ground, so after leaving the 14th Brigade with its crowd of prisoners, the Headquarters staff commenced to make its way through the orchards of apricot trees to the open space marked on the map. When at last the spot was reached it was discovered that the reason that it was open and that there were no orchards or buildings there, was that it was a large swamp, and, of course, there was no sign of the other two Brigades. I might mention that the maps used were those of Lord Kitchener's survey of many years ago, very much enlarged and therefore really very inaccurate.

When at last the camp was found, orders had arrived from the Desert Corps to say that the *first* entry of the allied troops into the city of Damascus would take place next day, October 2nd.

General MacAndrew, realising that he had already had a triumphal entry with a Brigade through the town, thought that something must be done about it. It was too late that evening, but he ordered me, as soon next morning as I had had some food, to take his Sunbeam car and to go with Captain Crossland and warn the 14th Brigade and any other troops to be outside the city, and *not to mention the previous day's entry*.

It was whilst coming out of the town after doing this duty that I met the Hedjaz army entering Damascus for their official entry, an hour or so before the state entry of the rest of the representative troops.

The entry was quite Eastern. In front went men firing their rifles in the air and doing a sort of ride and singing a chant of victory, which I had heard many times before on the first entry into Syrian towns with the relieving troops.

The motif of this song rather reminded me of Wagner's "Ride of the Valkyries." This song was taken up by the Hedjaz troops who were following.

It was a riot of colour and a fine sight, and I got back against the wall of a house to see them pass. The size of the Hedjaz army waxed and waned, according to the success of the operations, and I think they had many among their followers who had come in from the Eastern Desert in response to the cry "Osmanli Rah," the Turk is gone, and as I went on to our camp at Judeide on the south of the town I met the French mission hurrying on to be in time for the procession.

The Hedjaz army, being Mohammedan, were placed by the G.O.C. Desert Corps in charge of the town, but as you see from this account the Hedjaz had no part in the actual taking of the city, as they were too far away on October 1st, and did not enter the town till 24 hours later.

I do not think that Sir Harry MacAndrew's triumphal entry into Damascus on October 1st, the day before the official first entry, was known till many weeks afterwards at Army Headquarters, as he joined again in the official entry on the day following. At any rate, whatever official reason may have been given later, the General's real reason for his gallant and somewhat impetuous decision on October 1st was because, as he said to me, it was an easier march through Damascus than going round outside the walls.

Yours truly,

GEORGE WHEELER, Major,
late 21st Lancers.

*

*

*

*

To the Editor, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR,—The interesting article on Hunting in Australia contains the statement that the Melbourne Hunt Club is the senior and was established in 1854. In the "United Service Magazine" for 1852 the author of an article on Australia writes, referring to the Colony of N.S. Wales: "An attempt was made to establish fox-hunting, but a difficulty arose in that the country contained no foxes. The dingo, a native dog, formed but an indifferent substitute when pursued by his canine followers, and the country itself was about as inimical to the amusement as can well be conceived. Large tracts of forest and dense sandy soil made it impossible for the scent to lie, and ravines and fences presented difficulties to the votaries of the chase. A pack was, however, established. Not infrequently the huntsmen returned with not more than a dozen or so hounds out of twenty couples. Game was scarce and any quarry sufficed. A fat sheep or a fat lapdog were all on the cards. Bones and all were devoured. Sometimes a real dingo gave them a fine run. As the master of the Paramatta hounds was returning home after a successful run, with a brush peeping out of his pocket, and the head of a dingo hanging from the saddle of the whipper-in, while hounds followed with bloody muzzles, an old fellow, who looked like a retired earth-stopper from the old country, exclaimed: 'Well, d——n me! but this looks like work!'"

Yours faithfully,
RUSSELL STEELE.

* * * *

To the Editor, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL.

SIR,—Lieut.-Colonel Ryan in his interesting article "Modern Cavalry Head-dresses," Part IV, mentions that "Hussars were introduced into the British Cavalry much later than in the principal European armies." There is no doubting this as a statement of historical fact, nevertheless it may be of interest to note that a party of Hussars, fifty of them, rode with Prince Charles Stuart in the '45.

It seems that they came over from France, and they were probably employed, as Colonel Ryan describes, by Louis XIV in the French cavalry as messengers, scouts, raiders. They must have seen a good deal of the Border country in a short time, as there is no one so liberal as a dilettante leader in distributing his mounted men in small packets all over the landscape.

Yours faithfully,

B. GRANVILLE BAKER.

Beccles, Suffolk.

OBITUARY.

Field-Marshal Viscount Byng of Vimy, G.C.B., G.C.M.G., joined the 10th Royal Hussars in 1883. Commanded :—

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| The South African Light Horse | The 3rd Cavalry Division. |
| in the S.A. War. | The Cavalry Corps. |
| The 10th Hussars in India. | The IXth Corps. |
| The 2nd Cavalry Brigade. | The XVIIth Corps. |
| The 1st Cavalry Brigade. | The Canadian Corps. |
| The East Anglian Division. | The 3rd Army. |
| The 3rd Cavalry Brigade. | |
| Governor-General of Canada. | |
| Commissioner of the Metropolitan Police. | |

"The Times" headed its obituary notice with the words "A Great Public Servant," and well it might in view of the above list of his services. They speak for themselves, and I would write more of the man himself than of the posts he held.

My memory of Lord Byng goes back to the year 1889, when he was Adjutant of the 10th Hussars and 27 years old, and I can say without the smallest hesitation, that no man inspired more confidence or affection than "Bungo" did throughout the whole of his career from those who were above him in rank down to the last joined recruit. That confidence was rooted in the fact that all knew he had made himself master of every detail of his pro-

fession, that he was guided by honesty of purpose in every action, was a wise, true and loyal friend and possessed, in a marked degree, a delightful sense of humour.

It was a matter of great pride to him to hold the position of Colonel of the 10th Royal Hussars, and to the day of his death he took the greatest personal interest in his old regiment.

To quote his own words in a speech he made at the Old Comrades' Dinner last year :—"The whole of our regimental life has been a great ideal to us, and it is something we treasure in our innermost soul. It is something we feel rather than talk about. We think of you, serving Tenth, in Lucknow doing what we did 50 years ago. You have got us absolutely with you, and we glory in the fact that we came here and heard that excellent report and what we are going to take back, as we did last year, to our homes and our people is simply this—'Well done, dear old Regiment!'"

The High Commissioner for Canada in a moving tribute, tells us that as Commander of the Canadian Corps he won an imperishable name in the history of the Empire, and that to the humblest soldier he appeared in the rôle not only of a leader to be respected but a friend to be trusted.

We in this country realise to the full the bonds of sympathy, respect and affection which existed between Lord Byng and the Canadians, and we join with them in honouring the memory of a great leader.

* * * *

A correspondent has sent us the following appreciation of Lord Tweedmouth :—

Lord Tweedmouth, who died on April 23rd, achieved what we think must be a unique record for a commanding officer in modern days, for he commanded the Blues for four years of war and for an additional three-and-a-half years of peace.

He boxed for Harrow, played for his Regiment in the finals of the Cavalry Football Cup and Inter-Regimental, got the D.S.O. as a subaltern in South Africa, and won the

Waterloo Cup. Not only the Blues, but many other cavalrymen, especially those who served in the 8th Cavalry Brigade, will long remember "Beef" with affection and admiration. He was a born leader of men. Endowed with great physical strength, imperturbable in a crisis, quick in decision, brimful of commonsense and human feeling, he inspired confidence in all who were lucky enough to serve under him.

That he received no higher command was due in no small part to his single-hearted devotion to the interests of his own Regiment. Many of those who knew him best think that the Regiment's gain was the Army's loss. All who knew him at all must feel the poorer for his death in what seemed little more than the prime of life.

* * * *

Lieut.-General the Earl of Dundonald, who died on April 12th at the age of 82, played a conspicuous part in the South African War in command of a Cavalry Brigade.

He bought his commission in the 2nd Life Guards in 1870. In 1884 he served in the Egyptian Campaign. At the beginning of the South African War he was given by Sir Redvers Buller command of a Mounted Brigade and took part in the operations for the relief of Ladysmith. He retired from the Army in 1906



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES

THERE are four very important articles in the April "Army Quarterly." The first of these by Major Robertson, "The Defence of Australia," discusses the question of the most suitable form of organisation for the local defence of the Dominion. He points out that she cannot rely solely on protection by our Navy, particularly in the event of the loss of Singapore, and that she must be prepared on her own account to deal with sea or air raids, and even with invasion by considerable forces. Some current "freak" suggestions for solving the problem are then considered and rejected, and the final decision is that she should concentrate on submarines, a field army of two cavalry and four infantry divisions, and three mixed brigades, with a few regular garrisons and coast and A.A. defence units, the necessary air force for an army of this size, and a scheme for war material supplies and reserves. A very thoughtful and interesting article, well worth reading.

The second article, by Colonel Edwards, deals with the part to be played by the Territorial Army in any future great war. He considers it unsuited to play the part of draft finding for the Regular Army and pleads for the revival of the pre-war Special Reserve for this purpose. It is not a practical proposition to find the necessary reliefs for overseas garrisons or to supplement the Regular Army by the mobilisation of certain Territorial Divisions only, in the existing state of sentiment against war of any kind; yet this is a future contingency quite likely to arise, and the problem can be solved only by the revival of the Special Reserve or the Militia, with a clearly defined obligation to undertake this rôle. But—one may perhaps pertinently ask—is such a revival a practical proposition, and will the officers

and men be forthcoming to fill the ranks of such a reconstituted force?

Colonel G. S. Hutchinson pleads for a new Model Army as the only answer to the recruiting problem—an army which is a “movement,” a “peace machine,” with modernised life and training, instinct with a new spirit of pride, *esprit de corps*, and a sure guarantee of employment after the soldiers’ period of service is over. “Life in the Army must appear to be attractive, adventurous, filled with novelty, comradeship.” The wealth of suggestions put forward by the author to achieve this end cannot be done justice to in a brief summary such as this; they are all well worth attention—many of them worth adoption. But they would involve such a revolution in our military methods and modes of thought that the prospects of their being officially accepted or widely practised can hardly be said to be other than remote.

Finally, Major-General Collins discourses on the mobility of mechanised columns. He considers that protection must be the limiting factor, and that this is bound seriously to affect rate of movement. For adequate protection he believes cavalry, infantry and artillery, will all have to form part of any mechanized force, which he argues will be difficult to handle, vulnerable and comparatively slow moving, the high speeds hitherto dreamed of being quite out of the question where there is any question of opposition being encountered. It seems, however, to have been forgotten that speed is in itself a protection, and that in mobile warfare at least there is usually a way round every obstacle, natural or artificial. If the writer’s contentions are to be accepted as they stand, it would be hardly worth while to embark on mechanised warfare at all.

The valuable selection of historical articles cannot be dealt with in the space at our disposal; they are well up to the normal high standard we expect from the “Army Quarterly.”

The “Royal Artillery Journal” starts off with a narration of the Crimean War from the pen of General Sir G. MacMunn. He believes that our unhappy experiences there were due less to incompetent management at home and in the field—though he

does not deny this incompetence—but to two mischances—the destruction of the main French magazine at the crisis of the first bombardment of Sebastopol on October 10th, and the destruction of shipping in Balaclava harbour by the storm on November 14th, as a result of which the Allies had to spend the winter, quite unprepared and unprovided, before the walls of the fortress. He then gives a brief story of the campaign—not always accurate in details—but very breezy, vivid and well worth perusal. Another interesting story is told by General Rowan Robinson of the operations in the spring of 1933 by the Iraq Army against the North Kurdistan mountaineers—an excellent example of a small police campaign in difficult country against a not very formidable but highly elusive enemy. Particularly noteworthy points are the importance of the supply question, the unreliability of intelligence, and the value of air co-operation in operations of this nature. There are two more interesting articles, on language duty in Poland, and on the present situation in Germany; the last of the extracts from Marshal Foch's book "Manœuvre for Battle" also appears.

The "Royal Engineers' Journal"—less technical this time than usual—has an interesting account of an Anti-Tank Exercise by Major Fitzpatrick, describing the employment of the three field companies of a division during last year's Southern Command training, in the laying of road tracks, mines, and craters to hamper the movement of a hostile armoured force; the work done was extensive and widespread in a remarkably short space of time. There are two travel stories: one of a town in the U.S.A., the other of an overland motor trip from India to England. Captain Davidson Houston gives an eye witness account of the Japanese capture of Harbin in the recent Manchurian campaign, and Major Worsford tells the story of an R.E. tour of the western front battlefields, with special reference to the crossing of the Aisne in 1914.

The *piece de resistance* of the Journal of the United Service Institution of India is the farewell address of Sir Philip Chetwode to the Quetta Staff College. He makes an eloquent

and powerful plea for deeper study, greater imagination, less slavery to rules and principles, more boldness, readiness to risk much to gain much, more independence, less reliance on the commonplace, and the sealed pattern. It is all very stimulating and persuasive, and it is to be hoped Sir Philip's words will be as widely read, pondered and acted on as they deserve to be. Other articles deal with employment of light tanks in India, the question of Imperial unity in defence, and the training of infantry for mountain warfare, while sporting interests are catered for in two papers on tiger shooting and on trout fishing in Austria.

The "Canadian Defence Quarterly" reprints General Smuts' address to the Royal Institute of International Affairs on the international outlook. Colonel Baird Smith throws doubt on the possibility of arriving at a satisfactory science of war, or a set of universally applicable principles of practical utility, and another paper discusses from a somewhat abstract point of view the basic causes of wars.

The "Royal Air Force Quarterly" contains two theoretical articles—perhaps too theoretical to be of easy comprehension to him, who reads while running—on the air defence of Great Britain and the question of making the air force "the universal arm"—the latter being by way of a reply to an Italian proposal to this effect. A useful paper translated from the German deals with communications and their susceptibility to air attack; the writer points out that railways are, and for many years to come must be, the chief form of civil transportation, and that both they and the roads are very vulnerable to air attack as regards nodal points and junctions unless adequate peace-time provision is made to safeguard these. Air attack can thus quickly paralyse the whole civil life of a country, and it is towards such protection that the first defensive steps must be taken. Major Pemberton puts forward a lengthy plea in defence of the League of Nations, containing a wealth of facts as to its nature and achievements, not all of which are as widely known and understood as they ought to be.

There have also been received:—

Journal of the Royal Army Veterinary Corps.

Faugh a Ballagh (Royal Irish Fusiliers Regimental Gazette).

The Wasp (Journal of the Bedfordshire and Hertfordshire Regiment).

The Xth Royal Hussars Gazette.

The Scarlet and Green Journal (16th/5th Lancers).

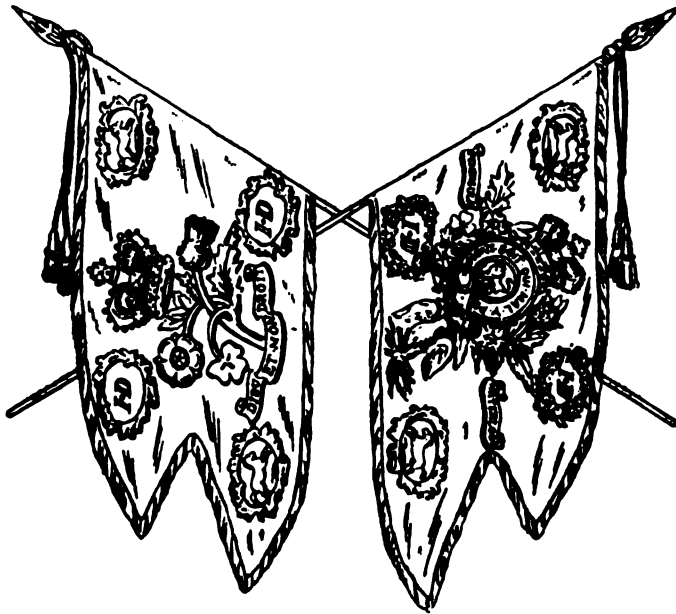
The Royal Tank Corps Journal.

The Fifteenth Lancers (India).

Yorkshire Hussars Magazine.

Horse and Foot (C.M.R. and C.P.R.C. Regimental Magazine).

The Legionary (Official National Magazine of the British Empire Service League of Canada).



FOREIGN MAGAZINES

THE United States "Cavalry Journal" for January-February opens with a discussion by Major T. K. Brown on the correct use of the light machine gun. Two schools of thought exist in the States on this subject: one wishes to retain the light machine gun as an organic part of the rifle squad, the other favours grouping light machine guns into a separate unit. The author's conclusion is that if machine guns are organically part of the rifle squads they will become a positive detriment to cavalry in mounted action and only occasionally advantageous in dismounted action. The idea postulates the use of these guns as accompanying weapons, and further that dismounted attack should be the habitual form of attack by cavalry. The author claims that the machine gun should go—decidedly *not* with the rifle squad, as a compromise probably with the troop, most advantageously with the squadron.

Major R. B. Trimble, recently an instructor at the Cavalry School, gives some concrete cases, illustrated with large-scale diagrams, of cavalry in mounted and dismounted action. He urges the need for careful preparation in combined action since he believes that in view of the rapid developments in mechanization cavalry runs a risk of falling behind the times in its training with other arms.

A further instalment of the work on "Modern Cavalry" by Lieut.-General G. Brandt follows. This section deals with troop leading and tactics, and appears worthy of close study. Owing to new fighting methods, writes the General, the command of a present day cavalry division more closely resembles that of an infantry division; yet there remain vast differences, principally arising out of the factor of mobility; time and space factors are thus infinitely more important than with infantry. On the other hand, a large area invites dispersion. The

commonplace that "cavalry fights in spacious zones" is quite erroneous. It would be more correct to say "cavalry reconnoitres large areas." It is therefore necessary for the cavalry commander to know how to remain concentrated yet to take advantage of the "spacious zones." A wide lateral distribution is justified only if the commander has decided on defensive tactics. Nowadays cavalry is normally at a numerical disadvantage; moreover, the massed employment of cavalry imposes great exertions on the troops, far greater than when it is acting in small bodies. Cavalry commanders, who now travel by motor car, need to be very much alive to the physical state and morale of their troops. The marching and billeting of cavalry more than ever needs the closest attention.

In the matter of tactics General Brandt gives what is largely an expansion of the German Regulation concerning the cavalry battle. He differentiates between the action by which the decision is sought and the attack that is launched on a broad front with a limited objective only. He emphasises the possibilities in the use of chemical troops in delaying actions. The cavalry commander must always act with decision and make known his desires in clear terms, particularly whether the troops are to attack in a narrow zone of action and in depth formation or on a wide front without depth. The troops must never be left in doubt, when on the defensive, whether a protracted defence or only a delaying action is demanded of them.

Master-Sergeant J. R. Reardon pleads for the drastic reduction of the cavalry horse's load. He would see the whole equipment, outside arms, carried by the horse reduced to the "slicker" and one feed. The whole of the rest of the pack should be relegated to motor transport.

In the same journal for March-April there comes the first instalment of a study of the "Influences of Mechanization, Motorization and Machine Guns on the Horse Cavalry Regiment's Tactics, Organization and Supplying Methods" by Colonel C. F. Martin. This promises to become a good series of articles, although this first portion is only clearing the ground. The American cavalry regiment (in addition to its rifles) is armed with:—

- (a) A heavy water-cooled 30-calibre machine gun.
- (b) A light air-cooled 30-calibre machine gun.
- (c) A 37mm. gun. This at present is allotted to the regimental machine-gun troop.
- (d) A 50-calibre machine for A.T. work, allotted to scout cars, machine-gun troop and probably to the regimental train.

The author then goes on to show, by quoting establishments, etc., that the cavalry platoon does not lend itself to a combined organization of squads armed with rifles and light machine guns. The discussion is to be continued.

The next item is a fine appreciation of Hodson of Hodson's Horse, who is styled "a true general of advanced posts."

Another instalment of the German Lieut.-General G. Brandt's book on Modern Cavalry follows. This deals with organization, which, the writer maintains, must aim at an increase of fire power. The supply of light machine guns to cavalry has raised this power; but it is not yet great enough. The number of squadrons per regiment should be increased; a commander incapable of leading six squadrons and a strong machine gun squadron will be incapable of leading four squadrons. The writer next advocates a division of 36 squadrons: owing to the number of the latter which may be absent on independent missions the division will hardly ever come into action at full strength. Heavy machine guns should be allotted to rifle squadrons; super-heavy machine guns are also needed. He recommends two to three field guns per regiment; also two to four anti-tank weapons. He thus reaches the following regimental organization:—

H.Q.

- 6 rifle squadrons, each including 6 to 12 light machine guns and from 2 to 3 heavy machine guns.
- 1 heavy machine-gun squadron (guns on vehicles).
- 1 communication platoon.
- 2 field guns.
- 4 heavy anti-tank guns.
- 3 super-heavy A.A. machine guns.
- 1 cyclist platoon.

1 pioneer and demolition squad.

5 motor cycles.

2 or 3 motor cars.

The armament of the cavalryman must be the same as that of the infantryman. The sabre could be replaced by a pistol, but until a suitable arm is found the sabre must be retained.

The proportion of artillery allotted to a cavalry division is important; this has usually been too low, and tradition has had an evil effect in this respect. The artillery must be increased; it must include field guns, light howitzers and long-ranging heavy howitzers. The artillery must be an integral part of the division and train with it in peace.

Motorized infantry are of use to cavalry and should be organized.

The setting up of cavalry corps in peace is imperative.

Colonel F. G. Bauer contributes a clear and well documented study of Oliver Cromwell as a cavalry leader. He traces Cromwell's career down to the surrender of Oxford, just after the battle of Naseby, which is the point at which his command of the Parliamentary Cavalry came to an end.

In the French "*Revue de Cavalerie*" for March-April Colonel Argueyrolles studies certain examples taken from the Great War for the illustration of the capacity of modern mechanized formations to achieve decisive results by means of their mobility. He begins with the premise that cavalry divisions of 1914 bear to the mechanized formation of 1935 the same relation as the fleets of Navarino do to the navies of Jutland. He then points out the danger of these mobile formations being tempted, by their very mobility, to undertake immaterial tasks instead of reserving themselves for the decisive stroke. He takes the battle of Lodz in November, 1914, and shows how the German cavalry intervened at Kutno by a flank attack on the Russians. Then followed the encirclement of the German IX Corps by the Russians; the Germans only broke through by dint of heroic efforts when the 6th and 9th Cavalry Divisions did some wonderful work in extricating the German Corps from its quandary. In the first phase the Russians, certain that their communications would be re-established, were not

greatly distressed; in the second phase, the Germans, being surrounded, gave up the object of their whole movement. This battle amply proves the value of the threat to communications. Again in July, 1915, Ludendorff acting against the Russians in Courland, after dividing his forces into two masses, succeeded by a clever manœuvre towards Mitau to bring about the Russian retreat. Nevertheless, when he tried an analogous movement shortly after, in August, Von Garnier's cavalry corps attempted to cut the Russian communications yet failed somewhat disastrously. Another example is provided by the Bulgarian flanking attack against the Serbians in October, 1915. The author believes that these great turning movements are still as menacing as of old.

The interesting point in all these cases is that whereas the threat to a flank is as potent as of old, that same threat can fail because of the weakness and lack of power of the cavalry or other formations which attempt them. How much greater then may not be the results achieved by modern mechanized formations since these possess precisely the qualities lacking in their predecessors.

Captain Becquey continues his discussion on the signal service in the French cavalry. He considers the case of the cavalry division acting on the defensive, and concludes that the telephonic system which may be set up in this case is the most important. But whenever time admits, he sets great store on W.T., visual signalling and conventional light signals such as Verey lights. In the case of the cavalry regiment he goes on to work out in detail the various means of communication that are required for a proper system of command. In the case of a defensive attitude on the part of cavalry this can become a complicated matter, since the troops are greatly subdivided and most careful collaboration with the cavalry becomes necessary. the whole series of these articles appears to require close study; they are not easily summarized.

The Swiss "Schweizer Kavallerist" announces that a new light machine gun, mounted on a carriage, is to be allotted to cavalry. The establishment is to be: to each Reconnaissance Detachment one troop of six guns; every Light Brigade one

squadron of twelve guns. The same paper gives details of an experimental Reconnaissance Detachment for a division :—

H.Q. (with 1 troop attached) :

2 squadrons, each with 9 light machine guns.

1 cyclist squadron, with 8 light machine guns.

1 squadron, for heavy weapons, consisting of :—

1 motorized troop of light machine guns carried in cars.

1 motorized troop of “accompanying” artillery (3) on trailers.

1 troop of armoured cars (6), of which :—

4 carrying 1 heavy machine gun apiece.

2 carry 1 “accompanying” gun apiece.

The German “Militär Wochenblatt,” Nos. 34-43, contains several articles which go to prove that the problem of uniting horsed and motorised units is arousing considerable discussion in Germany. The conservative element is standing out for the retention of horsed units and formations. It is claimed that the combination of horses and motors should be so elaborated as to permit of either arm being used under conditions that favour it most, whilst the whole object of the motorized units should be to facilitate and speed up the movements of the horsed units. It will be interesting to watch developments as the expansion of the German army proceeds.



RECENT PUBLICATIONS

“Official History of the War.—The German Offensive, March, 1918.” (Macmillan.) 12s. 6d.; Appendices, 6s. 6d.; Case of Maps, 5s. 6d.

The compilers of the Official History decided to depart from chronological order and issue this volume before others, and, in view of its interest and value, this decision was wise.

The early part of the book deals with the political and military factors which caused the dangerous weakness of the defending forces, the next eleven chapters deal with the actual fighting between March 21st and 26th, while a final chapter deals with the Doullens conference.

In these early chapters one gets an interesting comparison between the centralised German command and the divergent views and claims among the Allies. The Supreme War Council, established in November, 1917, really delayed rather than helped defensive arrangements. The general reserve was never formed, and the extension of the weakened British forces further south was insisted on. At the same time, the War Cabinet refused to supply reinforcements, and Brigadier-General Edmonds writes in no uncertain terms about this decision. The defences in the area taken over were very thin, and, in their attempts to improve them, troops had to forego rest and training. As the historian says, disaster to the Fifth Army was almost ensured.

There is a very interesting chapter on the German plans which covered three possibilities: a fresh attack at Verdun; one about Hazebrouck; or the stroke towards Amiens. The last was decided upon, and preparations and training for the attack were extremely thorough.

There was actually little secrecy about the locality of attack, but their immense superiority in men and guns and the presence of fog discounted the value of knowledge of the area of attack.

Actually, some 43 divisions were massed against the 14 divisions of the Fifth Army, and 19 against the 6 of the Third Army. These assaulting divisions were supported by 6,500 guns and 3,500 trench mortars.

In view of the amazing incoherence of the operations, and of the fact that most of the official records were lost, a very clear and connected picture of the fighting is given. Operations soon became of an open type, and the British troops had practically no experience of defence under such circumstances. Commanders were often much too far back, and unfortunately the cavalry divisions had been dismounted before the battle. Still, by sheer stubbornness, a fighting front was maintained.

French help had been very slow; they were not convinced that this was the main attack, and at last the danger of a complete separation of the forces became imminent. An extremely interesting last chapter explains how this was averted by the famous Doullens conference.

This is an exceptionally interesting volume, particularly because of the shrewd comments of the author, and the maps are up to the high standard set by previous volumes.

“R. E. Lee.” By Douglas Southall Freeman. Vols. III and IV. (Scribners.)

The last volumes left the picture at the death of Jackson, when Lee had “lost his right arm.” The third volume opens with a survey of the situation after Chancellorsville. The confederates had paid heavily for their somewhat hollow victory.

Lee carried out his long-worked for reorganisation of the Army in North Virginia into three Corps instead of two, a reorganisation which the author considers explains Gettysburg, as many of his commanders were entirely new to their tasks when Lee started his march Northwards. The reasons which decided Lee to start an immediate offensive are convincingly set out, and the story of the Gettysburg Campaign is thoroughly well told, particularly that of the fog of war which descended on Lee as a result of the great latitude he had allowed Stuart, and the latter’s disregard of instructions. This led to a complete lack of information at a critical time.

The causes of the actual failures in the subsequent battles are clearly brought out. The machinery was not working; there was little co-operation; and no co-ordination of attacks. Lee's belief in the invincibility of his army made him over-confident.

The author deals admirably with the duel between Grant and Lee, when the former crossed the James in June, 1864, and altogether vindicates the Southern Commander.

The fourth volume shows the post-war Lee as president of Washington College, where he did such splendid work for his country.

These four volumes provide a singularly clear and impartial story of Lee, both as a soldier and as a man, and must rank as one of the outstanding military biographies.

"Birkenhead—The Last Phase." By His Son. (Butterworth.) 21s.

This, the second volume of Lord Birkenhead's life, deals with the portion of his career from the outbreak of the war to his death in 1929. The sections of most interest to soldiers deal with his activities when in charge of the Press Bureau at the opening of the war, and as official "Eye-witness" with the Indian Corps in France in 1914-15, and with the trial of Casement for treason in 1916. His views on Labour questions and on the Indian problem are also of considerable topical interest. Lord Birkenhead, a man of brilliant parts whose very gifts, together with his outspokenness, and caustic wit, made him many enemies, stands out in the picture drawn of him by his son, as a great public servant, and a delightful personality to those who knew him well, and could appreciate his many lovable qualities and his fine intelligence, his courage and his love of country.

"Ethics of Peace and War." By Father H. Gigon. (Burns Oates & Washbourne.) 2s.

This is an exposition of the Roman Catholic view of peace and war, as expounded by the mediæval Fathers of the Church. According to them the State's duty being to ensure the welfare of its members—in the religious and moral as well as the physical sense—it has a right to resist, by force of arms if necessary, any

attempt by another State unjustly to deprive it of its rightful means of assuring its subjects' welfare. War in a truly, just cause, declared by legitimate authority, and waged with right intention for the punishment of evil and the furtherance of good, is in full accord with the teaching of Christ and His Church; but war for imperialistic or selfish ends only is condemned by both. This sane and sensible doctrine, clearly expounded by Father Gigon, certainly seems at once more reasonable and more generally acceptable than the selfish or sentimental outlook evident in so much present day discussion of the matter.

"The Infantry Experiment." By Major-General H. Rowan Robinson. (Clowes.) 3s.

In this little book, published just when the new experimental infantry organisation was announced by the War Office, the author propounds some novel and even revolutionary ideas. Infantry, he says, must accept the fact that it is no longer queen of the battlefield and re-organise itself for a more effaced if no less necessary rôle than heretofore. He discusses what parts it is likely to have to play in Imperial police work, in minor wars, and in a Continental conflict, and the training and equipment necessary for it in the light of his conclusions. In view of these future probabilities he considers we should furnish our overseas and Indian garrisons by means of a specially enlisted long service army and reduce our infantry at home to four brigades, transforming the residue into mechanised brigades; reduce our present variety of battalion weapons by handing over the mortar and the heavy machine guns to specialised units; and by cutting down weight, and the calibre of the rifle, and mechanising all transport, make our infantry really a light infantry capable of high and sustained mobility. Major-General Rowan Robinson's views, if not perhaps likely to be universally acceptable, should at any rate give rise to useful thought and discussion, and in part at least to agreement.

"Cambridge during the Civil War, 1642-1646." By F. J. Varley. (Heffer, Cambridge.) 6s.

Mr. Varley has followed up his excellent little book on Oxford during the Civil War with a sequel describing the for-

tunes of Cambridge at the same period. He has not such an exciting tale to tell, for while Oxford for the greater part of the war was the King's headquarters, and a centre of operations, the tide of hostilities never actually reached Cambridge, and all he has to narrate are the contributions made by the University to the Parliamentary cause in the way of money and plate, the activities of the Eastern Association, of which the city was the headquarters, and the personal part played by Manchester and Cromwell while they were the leading spirits of the Association. For this reason his book is of value mainly to specialised students of the period, and from the purely military point of view is of minor interest.

"Comrades of the Great Adventure." By H. R. Williams. (Angus & Robertson, Sydney, and 37, Great Russell Street, W.C.1.) 6s.

Mr. Williams has already in "The Gallant Company" told his personal story of the Great War. This is a book of war-time stories concerned mainly with the many outstanding figures and strange personalities he met with and fought beside during his four years of service in Egypt and France with the 5th Australian Division. As such it is inevitably somewhat diffuse and scrappy, but there is left from the perusal of the many vivid and amusing tales he tells a clear picture of that excellent fighting man the Australian soldier, and of the spirit of Australia at war, which fills one with liking, respect, and admiration. It is admittedly the lighter side of the war with which Mr. Williams has set himself here to deal; but he tells enough of the other and grimmer aspect to give us the complete picture, and to maintain for himself the reputation gained by his earlier book of one of the best of the soldier writers sprung from the ranks of the Australian Expeditionary Force.

"Watchdogs of the Deep." By T. M. Jones. (Angus & Robertson, Sydney, and 37, Great Russell Street, W.C.1.) 6s.

This excellent little narrative of the experiences of an Australian sailor who served for two years as a torpedo man on board a British submarine sheds considerable light on a phase of

the war which is probably unfamiliar to most soldier readers, and is well worth perusal. Mr. Jones spent most of his time in Submarine J2, one of the vessels afterwards handed over to the Australian navy, which during the war was engaged on patrol work in the North Sea, and he is eloquent on the discomforts of the service—cold, sea sickness, cramped quarters, monotonous food; on the arduousness of the duty—long spells of work, short periods of rest in harbour, lack of fresh air and daylight; and on the risks of the task, not least among them those arising from the zeal of friendly surface craft, for to them every submarine seen was an enemy, and to be dealt with as such, without waiting for investigation as to her real nature. He speaks pleasingly, however, of the spirit of *camaraderie* and free and easy yet real discipline existing between officers and men in the service, and is full of admiration for the commanders under whom he went to sea and fought. His unusual little book is thoroughly to be recommended as a vivid sidelight on a little known aspect of modern war at sea.

“When Britain Goes to War.” By Captain B. H. Liddell Hart. (Faber & Faber.) 8s. 6d.

This is a welcome re-issue—a revised and enlarged re-issue—of a book originally published some three years ago under the title “The British Way in Warfares.” Some of the original matter has been cut out, to give place to five new chapters, bringing the author’s thesis up to date. The cream of the earlier volume, the essays on “The Historic Strategy of Britain,” “Strategy Reframed,” and “The Concentrated Essence of War,” together with the series of articles describing the progress of British mechanisation down to 1931, are all included; and in three new articles the latter story has been brought down to the end of last year’s training season. The other two new chapters deal with war in the air, and with speed in war, and since the writer’s views on mechanisation are too well known for novelty, it is perhaps to these that interested readers will first turn. Briefly, Captain Liddell Hart believes that the chief feature of air warfare will be action not so much against the civilian population as such, as against the war organisation of the enemy,

whose power to make war at all may be by suitable measures suppressed at its source, so that the next Great War may well degenerate into a great chaos. All the more is this likely to be the case because the great masses of modern conscript armies have still no battlefield mobility, and as in the last great war will neutralise each other at the first clash; only rear attack by mobile armoured forces offers a hope of our avoiding such a stalemate, and for such attack no European army is adequately equipped. Mass will become a boomerang for its user, and a large conscript army, with its dependence on a complex and gigantic rear organisation is itself exposed to more danger than it offers to the enemy. But the whole book, new chapters and old, defies review in a short space; it must be read and pondered to be appreciated.

E. W. S.

"The Fighting Cameliers." By Frank Reid. (Angus & Robertson, Ltd., 89, Castlereagh Street, Sydney, and 37, Great Russell Street, W.C.1.) 6s.

The Imperial Camel Corps Brigade was well named, as it was formed, in Egypt in 1916, by transfers from British Yeomanry, Australian Light Horsemen and Infantry, and New Zealand Mounted Rifles, while it had attached to it the Hong-kong and Singapore Battery. It served first of all in the Western Desert against the Senussi, and afterwards in the campaigns which took the Egyptian Expeditionary Force from the Suez Canal to the Jordan Valley and the Mountains of Moab beyond.

Naturally a formation of this sort contained not a few "hard cases" whose ideas of the sanctity of military orders were not those of the author of the Charge of the Light Brigade. Ready, indeed, to do and die, they were not averse from reasoning why. Tempers, too, were often sorely tried, not only by the conditions of desert warfare, but, in addition, by that singularly uncompanionable animal the camel; though there is something to be said for a beast who will, according to the author, if his foreleg is used as a pillow, not move that leg till the sleeper awakes.

At the other end of the scale, and far outweighing the occasional lapses of discipline (which are themselves nearly all funny), are the powers of endurance of the cameliers, their sense of humour, their loyalty, and their gallantry.

The drawback to the camel as a conveyance for mounted infantry is, of course, his visibility, which usually entails long advances on foot; nor is he satisfactory on wet or rocky ground. These points are well brought out in the narrative. As a historical record alone, the book is well worth reading, but its chief value lies in the way in which, by snatches of conversation in camp and on the march, and by incidents in battle, the author succeeds in bringing vividly before one the humorous as well as the tragic side of war. The thoughtful reader will learn also how to deal, and how not to deal, with the temporary soldiers of the Empire.

This is a very human book; and its author, who is an Australian who served in the ranks of the brigade throughout its existence, must be a very human man, and, incidentally, a very lucky one to be alive.

R. G. H. V.

“The Army in My Time.” By Major-General J. F. C. Fuller. (Rich & Cowan, Ltd.) 6s.

General Fuller divides this book into four parts: “Yesterday,” “The Boer War,” “The World War,” and “To-morrow.”

The first two parts are to some extent a historical survey to show how little, as he insists, the Army in its conservatism has changed its characteristics, mentality and organisation. Part III serves to introduce tanks and to describe the reaction of what he calls the Haig mind against them. As in the first part he starts before his own time, so in the last part he strays well beyond it and depicts the war of the future as he sees it, though he does pull in to describe what he considers practicable at present.

General Fuller is always amusing, often irritating and generally interesting to read, and this book is characteristic. That it gives the general public a fair or accurate picture of the Army in his time I would stoutly deny. Even his picture of the private soldier is something of a caricature—cousin to the stage major or stage Irishman. In his advocacy of mechanisation he omits practically all reference to the advance made in the technique of the older arms, especially in and since the last year of the

war. What the Germans and our own under-trained troops accomplished without the aid of tanks makes one hesitate to deny to infantry, as he does, all power of offensive action. He is scornful of all anti-tank weapons except the tank itself, and does not allow for the probability that the less infantry attack is to be feared the greater will be the multiplication of anti-tank measures. In illustrating his arguments we find him, like all propagandists, dealing an undue proportion of trumps to his own hand and he does not discuss the results of a tank v. tank encounter about which we know so little.

I have no quarrel with his contention that to render effective assistance to an ally in Europe our small Army should to the highest degree be mechanised, but I suspect that it would more often be employed in co-operation with other arms than in ambitious independent action, though its training should cover both rôles. General Fuller believes in outspoken criticism and propaganda but goes to such extremes that he excites opposition to many of his arguments with which, if they were more moderately expressed, one might be in considerable agreement.

That the Army is conservative and has perhaps undue consideration for vested interests we may agree, but the experience of most of us has been to find more conservatism among regimental officers than in the "hierarchy" which he accuses. If one were to criticise the latter it would be for excessive consideration for regimental vested interests and compliance with the conservatism of military public opinion at times when changes in the international situation alter the purposes for which the Army is required and call for re-organisation.

"The Silent Division." By O. E. Burton, M.M., M.I.H.
(Angus & Robertson, Sydney, and 37, Great Russell Street,
W.C.1.) 6s.

By general consent the New Zealand Division was second to none in France as a fighting force; it gave little trouble to authority behind the lines and it had a reputation all its own for being particularly pleasant to deal with in carrying out reliefs, when everyone was struck by the bearing, intelligence, and good manners of the men. The division was doubly fortunate in having a commander of exceptional quality in

General Russell, and in retaining his services throughout the war in spite of the offer of command of a British corps in 1918. In every respect the division had a character of its own and it is its character that Mr. Burton shows us. His book is a biography of the division rather than military history in the ordinary sense, for units are rarely mentioned, names of individuals never; and when actions are described it is more to show the New Zealander as a fighting man than to explain operations. If it is not military history neither is it a sordid description of all the more repulsive features of war such as we have had a surfeit of. Mr. Burton, though he professes that as a "Christian Pacifist" he would not again volunteer for service in war, fully appreciates the finer side of war and its value in forming national character.

He gives us the atmosphere of war as sensed by the Dominion non-professional soldier in the ranks. What he has to say about the training and discipline of that type is well worth study by British officers in case British and Dominion troops should again fight side by side; and is suggestive of important points for consideration in connection with training temporary troops of our own. Some of his comparisons between British and Dominion troops are hard to bear, but one must admit that for New Zealanders, so near success on Sari Bair, the happenings at Suvla left a lasting and bitter impression.

As a narrative the book supplies a very readable and interesting record of the N.Z.E.F.: its formation in New Zealand as a brigade group of all arms, its achievements in Gallipoli as part of the Anzac Division, its growth into a complete division in Egypt after the evacuation of Gallipoli, and its part in practically all of the heaviest fighting in France from 1916 to 1918 up to its final exploit of capturing the old Vauban fortifications of Quesnoy with scaling ladders.

C. W. G.

"Brown Jack." By R. C. Lyle. (Putnam.) 10s. 6d.

The life story of perhaps the most famous racehorse of our time.

This story is well told by Mr. R. C. Lyle, who appears to be a genuine admirer of this exceptional horse. The book has the

great advantage of being illustrated by Mr. Lionel Edwards.

Brown Jack started life in Ireland, his first appearance in public being in the yearling class at Birr, in which he was placed last.

A few years later he ran his first race at Navan in 1927—a six-furlong hurdle; in this he finished last. This seems an amazing start to the career of a horse which a few years later made history as “one of the gallantest and strongest stayers that has ever raced upon British Turf.”

This excellent book is not only a catalogue of Brown Jack's wonderful achievements but Mr. Lyle has given us a real insight to this gallant horse's character. M. P. A.

“Hark Back.” By Colonel Wilfrid Jelf, C.M.G., D.S.O.
(Published by John Murray.) 5s.

This is a book of first-rate war sketches, in which the author has “painted the picture” of country and individuals so well that the reader feels he is “part and parcel” of the episodes.

All the sketches are vivid, full of interest and convey many a military lesson in disguise. It is difficult to pick out any one as being above the rest, but to the reviewer the episode of the “Highveldt Hussars” was the most entertaining.

Wilfrid Jelf had a great charm and human touch and these qualities come out clearly in his writings, which alas, were brought to an early end by his death in 1933. Had he lived longer, he would have made a great mark in the literary world.

“Hark Back” is recommended to all and sundry, who desire to read a volume of light entertainment combined with the hard facts relating to the sidelights of war. O.J.F.F.

“Die Geschichte Des K.u.K. Mährischen Dragonerregimentes Nr. 6. 1906-1918.” By Ferdinand Freiherrn Schramm-Schiessl von Pestorff. (Published by the Officers of the Regiment.)

The Austro-Hungarian army was instinct with ancient traditions to an extent which it is hard to realise. Nowhere else but in Britain did old customs flourish to a like extent. It is interesting, therefore, to see a regimental history of an ancient and proud corps such as this Austrian Dragoon Regi-

ment. This sumptuous and massive volume of 1,200 pages describes in detail the whole history of the corps during the space of twelve years, four of which cover the World War. There is a tinge of sadness throughout and the whole narrative seems to grow more tragic as the end of the war draws near with the total collapse of the Austro-Hungarian Empire; with its fall the old regiment simply dropped out of existence.

The first part of the war was a terrible time of trial for cavalry. The battle of Rawa Ruska was the climax of a period of retreat and of reverses in which the normal duties of cavalry slowly gave way to sheer hard fighting. At the beginning of 1915 a period of re-organisation set in during which part of the cavalry was dismounted and organised into "Foot-battalions." Between the Rivers Prutt and Dniester the various portions of the Regiment again had an arduous time. They next went to the Bessarabia frontier where the mounted squadrons had to shoot some of their own horses.

In 1916 the 6th Dragoons were engaged in bitter fighting during the repulse of Brusilow's offensive; in this operation it was involved in a heavy reverse at Puzniki-Bortniki. The losses of the regiment were most serious. By the end of 1916 a great part of the Austrian Cavalry was dismounted.

At the close of the year the regiment returned to the Seventh Army in the Rumanian Mountains about Dorna Watra and Eisenau. This winter finally dismounted the cavalry. Early in 1918 the regiment was brought to the Italian front near the Val d'Astico. There on 15th/16th May, 1918, the 6th Dragoons (dismounted) encountered an attack of British troops and took prisoners from the Honourable Artillery Company, upon whose equipment the ill-clothed Austrians gazed with envy. The end came a few months later.

It is a remarkable story which gains from the unfamiliar detail and from the soldierly mode of writing.

It is curious to find English names such as Frank Linke-Crawford and Warren among the officers of the Regiment. The numerous photographs are a great aid towards appreciating the real nature of the fighting in the Carpathians and other hilly districts.

"Hindenburg, 1847-1934." By his nephew Major Gert von Hindenburg. With Illustrations. (Hutchinson.) 18s.

The author is inclined to stress the fact that the Great War was the third experience of the kind through which his uncle had passed. How many British serving regulars had not an equal number of wars to their credit when they landed in France? The difference between our wars and those in which Hindenburg took part may have been very marked at the time, important world affairs against what appears to continental people, as purely colonial concerns of ours. Nevertheless, warfare of any kind means experience and in the case of British officers very varied experience too, all this must have carried weight in the Great War though its value is beyond any possibility of computation. War certainly forms character and in this respect the late Field Marshal was fortunate. He joined his regiment, the 3rd Prussian Foot Guards, in 1865, and in the year following, still in his teens, underwent his baptism of fire in the engagement at Soor, on the road between Trantenau and Königinhof, an action that ushered in the great battle of Königgrätz, or Sadowa as the Austrians call it. There was plenty of the old-fashioned close-quarter fighting among the cornfields and in village streets, affording young Hindenburg the chance of distinguishing himself. As a steady hard-working regimental officer and adjutant of the 1st Battalion of his regiment when it marched into France in 1870, he again won distinction and eventually rode through the Arc de Triomphe at the head of a regiment of Hussars when Paris had capitulated. Then followed the usual course of existence for a professional soldier of some ambition, "Kriegs academie" (Staff College), Staff appointments alternating with turns of regimental duty, until General von Hindenburg could write in his memoirs: "I had been making up my mind for some time that I would retire from the Army. I had been far more successful in my military career than I had ever dared to hope. There was no likelihood of war breaking out, and so I considered that it was my duty to give a chance of promotion to younger men, and in the year 1911 I asked His Majesty for permission to retire."

It is curious that Hindenburg was unaware of the imminence

of war when 1911 was throbbing with the fear thereof; perhaps this ignorance is indication of his determined stand against becoming involved in politics of any kind, an attitude which proved peculiarly helpful under conditions that no one could have foreseen, least of all an honest soldier.

The chief interest of Major von Hindenburg's book lies naturally in those chapters that deal with the Great War. The headings of those chapters are short, expressive and significant: "Tannenberg," "The War of Lost Opportunities," "The Supreme Command's Wild Hopes," "Collapse of the Western Front," "Hindenburg leads his defeated Army Home," etc.

There can obviously be little special reference to any one arm in a book that deals with the conduct of the war as seen from above, but there are interesting remarks on the Russian Cavalry. Curious is the statement describing as a disastrous blunder the sending of a cavalry division to reinforce Hindenburg by Moltke, who seems to have shared the Supreme Command's alarm at the situation on the Russian front. Many may not agree that the withdrawal of those troops from the west "was the deciding factor which turned the tide of battle against Germany on the Marne." On the subject of this battle the author quotes the opinion of several well-known authorities, and expresses his, or perhaps his uncle's opinion on Falkenhayn. Indeed, throughout the book there are many interesting sidelights on personalities. Whether these are all drawn from personal experience, or are hearsay only, is not easy to determine. This applies particularly to the chapters that deal with Hindenburg as President of the Reich, in which position he was upheld by the self discipline of his long career as a soldier.

If this book gives little that is new concerning Field Marshal Hindenburg it does justice to a man whom to abuse was easy enough, but one who nevertheless filled a very difficult position not only with dignity but with exemplary rectitude and impartiality, qualities which at the time, are rarely found in high places in these topsy-turvy years of post-war Europe.

Major Gert von Hindenburg has given the world an honest and capable bit of work in this interesting biography of his uncle.

SPORTING NEWS

CAVALRY CUP FINAL

3rd Carabiniers (1) v. 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards (0)

On Saturday, 27th April, the 3rd Carabiniers, stationed at Aldershot, won the Cavalry Cup for the first time since the war, when they scored the only goal against the 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards, in a tremendously fast and exciting game, played on the Fulham F.C. ground in London.

The winners were without Lance-Corporal Perry, their regular right back, but Vaill, who had been playing at centre-half for the second team, was an able deputy. The way in which the winning defence stood up against determined and prolonged pressure in the second half was, in fact, one of the chief features of the game.

Corporal Robinson, who has scored in every cup game for the Carabiniers, with two hat-tricks to his credit, scored what proved to be the only goal quite early in the game, placing the ball out of the goal-keeper's reach after good work by Anderson.

After a fairly level first half the Inniskillings kept their opponents mostly on the defensive. Mutch gave a wonderful display in goal.

The Carabiniers were represented by : Tpr. Mutch ; Tpr. Vaill and Sgt. Cushing (Capt.) ; Tpr. Young, Sgt. Robinson and Sgt. Long ; Sadd.-Cpl. Robinson, Tpr. Anderson, L.-Cpl. Old, Farrier Watkeys and Tpr. Smith.

Lieut.-General Sir Tom Bridges, Colonel of the 5th Inniskilling Dragoon Guards, presented the cup and medals, and among others who saw the game were Lieut.-General Sir A. E. W. Harman, Maj.-General J. Blakiston-Houston (Inspector of Cavalry), and Brigadier F. W. Bullock-Marsham, Commanding the 1st Cavalry Brigade.

THE KADIR CUP, 1935

The 64th Kadir Cup Meeting was held at Sherpursujmana on 21st-23rd March, and was once again a tremendous success thanks to the untiring efforts and excellent arrangements made by the Honorary Secretary, Captain P. J. Tuck, Royal Artillery.

The usual animated scene greeted one on arrival at Sherpur Bagh. The conscientious few could be seen giving their nominations a final school ; the majority, however, were to be found walking round the Horse Bagh critically inspecting the horses and giving the final instructions for the morrow before foregathering at the bar to renew acquaintances and discuss the prospects of the meeting.

There were thirty-seven less entries than last year but even so eighty-two horses were entered, forty-five of these being first nominations. This reduc-

tion was due to the Honorary Secretary's appeal last summer to all the well-known Tent Clubs, asking them to curtail their entries to genuine hog-hunters. Many suggestions had been put forward for limiting entries but no hard and fast rule met with general approval, so this appeal was decided upon. The eighty-two entries were made up as follows :—

| | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| The Royals from Meerut | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 27 |
| The 10th Hussars from Lucknow | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 16 |
| Gunners | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 20 |
| British Infantry | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 11 |

and the remaining eight coming from the Civilians, Indian Cavalry and the Indian Army Service Corps.

Among the nominations, Manifest alone was a previous winner, but the Hon. Arthur Grenfell brought Australian Star to perform in his old age the less arduous task of umpire. Among the spears were two previous winners in the Hon. Arthur Grenfell and Mr. Jones, finalists in Colonel Norrie and Captain Harvey, and semi-finalists in Mr. Brandford, Captain Moseley, Mr. Amory, Captain Tuck, Mr. Durnford-Slater and Mr. Macmullen.

Mr. Percy Marsh, the Commissioner of Meerut, without whom no Kadir Meeting would be complete, and who was, of course, a previous winner himself, again performed the difficult task of Field-Master with his usual consummate skill.

With the spectators finally arranged on their Elephants after the usual time and space problems had been settled and still looking anything but comfortable, a start was made from Bisauli towards Sherpur. Four heats were on the line and two in reserve, but so many pig were on foot at once that these were all decided in the first half-hour. A halt was made to re-organize and get more heats mounted ; several good boar slipping away while this was going on. By lunch time thirteen heats had been decided and naturally everyone was in good spirits ; those who had had many years of experience freely expressed the opinion that they had never seen more pig. The afternoon proved to be a very difficult affair, and only one heat was decided ; this was not due to a shortage of pig, but to the unusually thick state of that part of the country as a result of the heavy rains in January. Many pig were lost without any decision being made and many more were wasted through the Umpires being unable to pick them up and get their heats away. Special incidents of the day were not numerous ; one member of a heat speared early and lightly and the remaining three, unaware of this, hunted on, their pig taking them into a jheel into which they plunged at full gallop. They were totally submerged but their ardour was still more damped when they discovered it had all been unnecessary.

The eight undecided heats were carried forward to the second day, and with six second-round heats this left a total of fourteen for decision.

Another excellent start was made and several heats were decided quickly. This happy state of affairs was not allowed to continue and as the line got into thicker country decisions became less frequent. Heats Numbers 17 and 21, left over from the day before, were particularly unfortunate and at lunch

time the Committee decided that if they could not catch a pig by 3 p.m. they would have to be decided by lot, as they were holding up other heats and no progress could be made until they found their winners. This decision had to be enforced, but curiously enough both the competitors who had selected the right piece of grass won their next heats, and so got in the semi-finals.

During the day Captain Moseley of the Royals had the bad luck to break a collar bone at a time when he still had two horses left in.

This year the Committee decided to run as many heats of four as possible in the first round, and so reduce the number of heats to twenty-two. There were six heats in the second round and therefore only two semi-finals of three, with a final of two, the general feeling being that a final of two was better. Consequently we had two semi-final heats on the line when a start was made on the final day on the same country as had been selected for the commencement of the first day.

The semi-final heats consisted of :—

- (1) Mr. Everitt, a civilian, who is at present the Hon. Secretary of the Cawnpore Tent Club.
- (2) Mr. Bramford, who had reached the semi-final in 1911 on his famous Arab Rustom, on which he had then attained over 100 first spears, and is now Hon. Secretary of the Delhi Tent Club.
- (3) Lieut. Teacher, of "E" Battery, R.H.A., who will be remembered as the owner of that good steeplechaser, Gunner L.

This heat was decided almost at once, for a good 30 inch boar broke over easy open country, and from a standing start Teacher, on the quickest horse, got in first but failed in his first effort. The pig reached some thick grass when all in turn had difficult chances, but Teacher eventually got on again and speared heavily.

The other semi-final heat consisted of :—

- (1) Captain Browne, The Royals.
- (2) Lieut. Hon. J. Hamilton-Russell, Royals, who had been a member of the Meerut Tent Club team when they won the Muttra Cup in 1933.
- (3) Lieut. Durnford-Slater, Royal Artillery, who had been in the semi-final before.

This was a very different story for the heat was not decided until 1 p.m., after a very gruelling morning for both horses and men. First they were slipped on a good boar at very long range, but after a long gallop-up the boar just reached a thick before anyone had a chance to spear and was lost. After some time they were slipped again behind the elephants and the pig crossed a bad nullah when Hamilton-Russell all but fell. The pig was lost but the heat was re-slipped twice in difficult country and again lost. Yet another pig was lost across the same nullah before the line was taken out into more open country. Here they were slipped on small pig and a very fast

hunt ensued in which Hamilton-Russell took a sharp jink and a difficult chance to spear cleverly.

During lunch, Babu moved the line over to Rafatpur, and at 3.30 p.m. began beating from Krishna Jhil towards Mukarrampur.

The final heat was therefore :—

- (1) Lieut. Hon. J. Hamilton-Russell, the Royals, on his bay c.b.g. Lindy Loo.
- (2) Lieut. A. Teacher, R.H.A., on his ches. c.b.g. Gunmaster.

Umpire.—Captain C. B. Harvey, 10th Royal Hussars.

After twenty minutes Captain Harvey slipped them on a 28 inch boar that had left heavy cover and the heat was soon decided. It was a short fast hunt with both on together, Hamilton-Russell slightly in the lead. He took a difficult chance early and speared well. Almost immediately afterwards Gunmaster slipped and fell, but he then galloped on and proceeded with the Umpire and Hamilton-Russell to kill the pig.

Hamilton-Russell is the first Royal Dragoon to win the Kadir Cup and showed he knew a good horse when he found one, for he brought Lindy Loo with him to Meerut from Secunderabad as a likely pig-sticker. The performance of Lindy Loo was really magnificent. Lindy Loo, a quality horse, very doubtfully up to the 14 stone of his rider, was on the line from 9 a.m. to 1 p.m. without a break and during this time was continually on the go and had several hunts. His opponent in the final had a sharp hunt early and a long rest. That he should have come out as fresh as he did after lunch and find the speed to beat Gunmaster with a light-weight on his back, stamped Lindy Loo as a horse well out of the ordinary and qualified him to rank as one of the best horses that ever won the Kadir. No little credit for this achievement must lie with his owner who rode him with great judgment throughout and who took the chances that came, no matter how difficult.

It was getting late before the two Hog-Hunter Races that followed could be started. The heavy-weight race was won by Lieut. Whitfield of the Green Howards on Milk Punch. He was followed home by Captain Harvey of the 10th Royal Hussars on Battler. Lieut. Norman, R.A., was third on Khazipur, which had won last year. It was a really good race though the finish was marred by an accident to Captain Miller, through an incident which might well have had an even worse result. A herd of Kadir cattle stampeded across the course just as the leading competitors were about to finish. How they all avoided accident is remarkable but Captain Miller was less fortunate than the remainder and being unable to avoid a collision had a nasty fall.

In the light-weight race Captain Harvey of the 10th Royal Hussars, and Captain Atherton of the Royal Deccan Horse, and Adjutant of the Governor-General's Body Guard, ran a dead heat. Captain Atherton on his good horse, Refugee, who had already won this race for the last two years, had fallen when well in the lead close to home, but he remounted and got going again to make it a dead heat.

EQUITATION SCHOOL HORSE SHOW, 1935

SAUGOR

The Equitation School Horse Show was held in "Leicestershire" on 12th and 14th March. The entries this year were somewhat below the average, particularly in the Polo Pony Classes. This was largely owing to the absence of visiting polo teams due to Equine Influenza up North and the postponement of the Inter-Regimental Tournament.

Donors of cups included His Excellency The Viceroy, His Excellency The Commander-in-Chief, His Excellency The Governor of the Central Provinces, His Highness The Maharaja of Jodhpur, Bhavnagar and Patiala, and Messrs. P. Orr & Sons, Madras.

To judge the classes, the Committee had the assistance of Lieut.-Colonel T. H. Sebag-Montefiore, D.S.O., M.C.; Major G. G. Collins; Captain G. M. Dyer and Captain R. B. Greig.

RESULTS OF CLASSES.

Troop Horses, Indian Students.

- 1st Jem. Habib Khokar, Junagadh Lancers.
- 2nd Jem. Ali Hussain Shah, Signal Training Battalion.
- 3rd L/Dfr. Gurbachan Singh, Probyn's Horse.

A good class. Winner outstanding.

Troop Horses, British N.C.O. Students.

- 1st Cpl. F. E. Rammell, 17th/21st Lancers.
- 2nd do. do. do.
- 3rd Sgt. C. G. Smith, 14th/20th Hussars.

Winner outstanding both in conformation and training.

State Force Horses or Ponies in Hand.

- 1st Jem. Habib Khokar, Junagadh Lancers, B. Aust. G. Gulfam.
- 2nd Lt. Dileep Sinha, Mewar Lancers, B. Aust. G. Loala.
- 3rd Lt. Arjun Singh, Jodhpur Sardar Risala, B. Aust. M. Juleat.

A good class.

Pigstickers.

- 1st Major C. H. H. Eales, The Guides Cavalry, B. Aust. G. Gerald.
- 2nd do. do. do. Br. Aust. G. School Boy.

A small but average class with the first two outstanding.

Jumping.—Indian Students for "The Golconda Cup."

- 1st L/Dfr. Harchand Singh, P.A.V.O. Cavalry, B. Ind. G. Prince.
- 2nd L/Dfr. Umrao Singh, 16th Light Cavalry, Bl. Aust. G. Scissors.
- 3rd Jem. Zamir Mohd Khan, 3rd Cavalry, Bl. Aust. G. Rose.

An average class.

Jumping.—British N.C.O. Students.

- 1st Bdr. F. O. Cullen, "E" Battery, R.H.A., Br. Aust. G. Ego.
- 2nd Cpl. E. A. Inch, 14th/20th Hussars, Ch. Ind. G. Severn.
- 3rd Bdr. J. Barrell, 73rd Fd. Bty., R.A., B. Ind. G. Lethal.

An average class.

Jumping.—Student Officers for "The 2nd Lancers' Cup."

- 1st Lt. R. A. Shebbeare, The Guides Cavalry, Dun. Ind. G. Tiger.
 2nd Lt. J. W. F. Casson, The Royal Deccan Horse, B. Aust. G. Deck Chair.
 3rd Lt. H. L. B. Kealy, Royal Signals, B. Ind. G. The Stag.

As a class the jumping was poor, but the winner was outstanding.

Jumping.—School Staff.

Equal 1st

S.S.M. A. Elsworth, 14th/20th Hussars, B. Ind. G. Viceroy.
 B. Ind. G. Arzole.

- 2nd Capt. D. C. Voelcker, 20th Lancers, B. Ind. G. Carlos.

An average class. S.S.M. Elsworth did well to be equal first with his two horses.

Jumping.—Open. For The Viceroy's Cup.

- 1st R.S.M. H. N. Watts, D.C.M. (late 4th Hussars), Br. Ind. G. Curate.
 2nd Capt. D. C. Voelcker, 20th Lancers, B. Ind. G. Carlos.
 3rd S.S.M. A. Elsworth, 14th/20th Hussars, B. Ind. G. Viceroy.

An average class.

Handy Hunter Competition.—For the Commander-in-Chief's Cup.

- 1st Jem. Habib Khokar, Junagadh Lancers, B. Aust. G. Gulfam.
 2nd Lt. Khajoor Singh, Jammu & Kashmir Cavalry, B. Aust. G. Nelson.
 3rd Lt. I. Irvine, R.A., Br. Aust. M. Lady Luck.

A well-filled class with a high standard of performance throughout.

Handy Hunter Competition.—School Staff.

- 1st S.S.M. R. Fowler, 17th/21st Lancers, Gr. Ind. G. Silver Dawn.
 2nd Capt. H. D. Caldecott, 13th D.C.O. Lancers, B. Ind. G. Milk Punch.

A very good class. The first four horses doing clear rounds at a very fast pace.

Polo Ponies.—Government or State Owned.

- 1st Lt. Mohinder Singh Wadalia, 16th Light Cavalry, Br. Aust. M. Harmony.
 2nd Lt. A. R. W. Sproule, 2nd Lancers, Br. Aust. M. Constable.

An average class.

Hacks.

- 1st Lt. J. Norman, Ch. Aust. G. Borealis.
 2nd Fl. Lt. C. H. Turner, Ch. Aust. G. Romeo.

A small and very poor class.

Ponies likely to make Polo Ponies.

- 1st Major C. H. H. Eales, The Guides Cavalry, Ch. Aust. G. John Barley-corn.
 2nd Lt. R. A. Shebbeare, The Guides Cavalry, Br. Ind. G. Vigorous.
 3rd Capt. D. C. Voelcker, 20th Lancers, B. Aust. G. Loyalty.

A well-filled and very good class.

Polo Ponies.—Light Weight.

- 1st Lt.-Col. W. G. H. Vickers, 13th D.C.O. Lancers, Skb. Ind. G. Pale Face.
 2nd Capt. H. D. Caldecott, 13th D.C.O. Lancers, Dun. Ind. M. Minnie Mouse.

A very small class.

Polo Ponies.—Heavy Weight.

- 1st Lt. A. S. Armstrong, Skinner's Horse, B. Aust. M. Iona.
 2nd Lt. F. R. C. Stewart, 6th D.C.O. Lancers, Ch. Aust. G. Red Gauntlet.

A small class.

Horses in Hand.

- 1st Capt. H. D. Caldecott, 13th D.C.O. Lancers, Ch. Aust. G. Sunstorm.
 2nd Major G. G. Collyns, 15th Lancers, B. Eng. G. Tom Fair.
 3rd Lt. J. E. Backhouse, R.A., B. Eng. G. Coed Canlas.

A useful class, first and second outstanding.

Officers' Chargers.—Student Officers.

- 1st Lt. J. W. F. Casson, The Royal Deccan Horse, B. Aust. G. Compton.
 2nd Lt. J. E. Backhouse, R.A., B. Eng. G. Coed Canlas.

An average class, standard of training poor.

Best Stable of Three.—Student Officers.

- 1st Lt. A. S. Armstrong, Skinner's Horse.
 2nd Lt. R. A. Shebbeare, The Guides Cavalry.

A small but average class. First and second difficult to separate.

Ladies' Hacks.

- 1st Lt.-Col. W. G. H. Vickers, 13th D.C.O. Lancers, Skb. Ind. G. Pale Face.
 2nd Lt. P. A. H. Heneker, 3rd Cavalry, B. Aust. M. Mischief.

A very small class.

Best Pony in the Show.

Major C. H. H. Eales, The Guides Cavalry, Ch. Aust. G. John Barleycorn.

Best Horse in the Show.

Capt. H. D. Caldecott, 13th D.C.O. Lancers, Ch. Aust. G. Sunstorm.

National Horse Breeding and Show Society Medal for The Best Indian Bred Pony in the Show.

Lt. R. A. Shebbeare, The Guides Cavalry, Br. Ind. G. Vigorous.

SAUGOR. 18th March, 1935.

RADHA MOHAN POLO TOURNAMENT

1934-35 SEASON

PLAYED AT MEERUT AND DELHI DURING THE PERIOD 29TH NOVEMBER TO
 7TH DECEMBER, 1934

FIRST ROUND—28TH AND 29TH NOVEMBER, 1934

| | HCP. | | HCP. | Goals |
|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------|------|-------|
| Royal Dragoons "A" | (15) beat | Central India Horse "B" | (6) | 9—6 |
| Royal Dragoons "B" | (7) „ | Dragoons | (2) | 8—3 |
| R.A., Meerut | (3) „ | 19th K.G.O. Lancers "C" | (4) | 3½—3 |

SECOND ROUND—30TH NOVEMBER AND 3RD DECEMBER, 1934

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-----|------|
| Royal Dragoons "A" | (15) beat | 3rd Cavalry | (7) | 7—5 |
| Royal Dragoons "B" | (7) „ | Central India Horse "A" | (8) | 5½—3 |
| Army Headquarters | (14) „ | 19th K.G.O. Lancers "B" | (4) | 7—6 |
| 19th K.G.O. Lancers "A" | (13) „ | R.A., Meerut | (3) | 9—5 |

SEMI-FINALS—5TH DECEMBER, 1934

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------|------|------|
| 19th K.G.O. Lancers "A" | (13) beat | Royal Dragoons "A" | (13) | 4—3 |
| Royal Dragoons "B" | (7) „ | Army Headquarters | (14) | 8½—4 |

FINALS—7TH DECEMBER, 1934

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------|-----|-----|
| 19th K.G.O. Lancers "A" | (13) beat | Royal Dragoons "B" | (7) | 6—5 |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------|-----|-----|

THE RADHA MOHAN

FOUR CHUKKERS. HANDICAP TOURNAMENT : LIMITED TO 16 GOALS

In the semi-final match between 19th Lancers and The Royals "B" extra time had to be played.

In the finals the 19th Lancers beat the Royal Dragoons "B" also after extra time.

In the final Chauvel met with an accident in the second Chukker, his place was taken by L. D. Barkhurdar.

FINALISTS

| <i>The Royal Dragoons</i> | | <i>19th K.G.O. Lancers</i> | |
|---------------------------|--------|----------------------------|--------|
| Mr. C. Cooper | 2 | Mr. E. Chauvel | 0 |
| Mr. H. Scott | 5 | Mr. N. Chaplin | 4 |
| Colonel W. FitzGerald | 4 | Colonel R. Dening | 6 |
| Mr. B. Gore | 1—(12) | Captain G. Critchley | 3—(13) |

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS THE PRINCE OF WALES' COMMEMORATION
POLO TOURNAMENT, 1935

PLAYED AT DELHI, 9TH TO 20TH FEBRUARY, 1935

FIRST ROUND

| | <i>HCP.</i> | <i>HCP. Goals</i> |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Four Faultless Felons | (20) <i>w.o.</i> 19th K.G.O. Lancers | (15) Scratched |

SECOND ROUND

| | | |
|----------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| Les Diables | (23) <i>beat</i> Travellers | (14) 5—4 |
| Kashmir Scouts | (27) „ Four Faultless Felons | (20) 12—8 |
| Jaipur | (31) „ Skinners Horse | (14) 15—3 |
| 15th Lancers | (19) „ Royal Dragoons | (12) 11—3 |

SEMI-FINALS

| | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| Les Diables | (23) <i>beat</i> Kashmir Scouts | (27) 5—4 |
| Jaipur | (31) „ 15th Lancers | (19) 10—0 |

FINALS

| | | |
|--------|------------------------------|-----------|
| Jaipur | (31) <i>beat</i> Les Diables | (23) 10—2 |
|--------|------------------------------|-----------|

THE BARIA CHALLENGE CUP HANDICAP POLO TOURNAMENT, 1935

PLAYED AT DELHI, 9TH TO 20TH FEBRUARY, 1935

FIRST ROUND

| | <i>HCP.</i> | <i>HCP. Goals</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 13th/18th Hussars | (7) <i>w.o.</i> The Northern Lights | (2) Scratched |
| The Poona Horse | (7) <i>beat</i> Royal Dragoons | (6) 4—1½ |
| Jaipur Lancers | (6) „ 13th D.C.O. Lancers | (8) 5—2 |
| Rajinder Lancers | (7) <i>w.o.</i> 3rd Cavalry "X" | (7) Scratched |

SECOND ROUND

| | | |
|-------------------|--|----------|
| Les Diabes "B" | (3) <i>beat</i> 8th K.G.O. Cavalry "X" | (4) 6½—3 |
| 13th/18th Hussars | (7) „ The Poona Horse | (7) 2—1 |
| Rajinder Lancers | (7) „ Jaipur Lancers | (6) 3—2½ |
| The Exiles | (6) „ Kashmir "X" | (8) 8—4 |

SEMI-FINALS

| | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|----------|
| 13th/18th Hussars | (7) <i>beat</i> Les Diabes "B" | (3) 4—3 |
| The Exiles | (6) „ Rajinder Lancers | (7) 3½—0 |

FINALS

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---------|
| 13th/18th Hussars | (7) <i>beat</i> The Exiles | (6) 5—½ |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---------|

THE DELHI LOW HANDICAP POLO TOURNAMENT, 1935

PLAYED AT DELHI, 9TH TO 20TH FEBRUARY, 1935

FIRST ROUND

| | <i>HCP.</i> | <i>HCP. Goals</i> |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Bhavnagar | (4) <i>w.o.</i> 2nd Lancers (G.H.) | (2) Scratched |
| The Poona Horse | (4) „ K.O.Y.L.I. | (2) „ |
| 13th D.C.O. Lancers | (2) <i>beat</i> Kashmir Bodyguard | (1) 12—1½ |

SECOND ROUND

| | | |
|------------------------|---|---------------|
| 8th K.G.O. Cavalry "X" | (4) <i>w.o.</i> 8th Field Brigade, R.A. | (1) Scratched |
| Les Diabes "B" | (3) „ K.S.L.I. | (2) „ |
| Jaipur Lancers | (0) <i>beat</i> Royal Dragoons | (2) 8—0 |
| Bhavnagar | (4) „ The Poona Horse | (4) 3—2 |
| 13th D.C.O. Lancers | (2) <i>w.o.</i> 3rd Cavalry "X" | (4) Scratched |
| 19th K.G.O. Lancers | (4) „ The Dreadnoughts | (4) „ |
| 13th/18th Hussars | (4) „ Pinta | (1) „ |
| "E" Battery, R.H.A. | (2) „ 10th Royal Hussars | (1) „ |

THIRD ROUND

| | | |
|---------------------|--|----------|
| Les Diabes "B" | (3) <i>beat</i> 8th K.G.O. Cavalry "X" | (4) 6½—2 |
| Bhavnagar | (4) „ Jaipur Lancers | (0) 8—4 |
| 13th D.C.O. Lancers | (2) „ 19th K.G.O. Lancers | (4) 8—2 |
| 13th/18th Hussars | (4) „ "E" Battery, R.H.A. | (2) 5—4 |

SEMI-FINALS

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| Les Diabes "B" | (3) <i>beat</i> Bhavnagar | (4) 3½—2 |
| 13th/18th Hussars | (4) „ 13th D.C.O. Lancers | (2) 3—2 |

FINALS

| | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Les Diabes "B" | (3) <i>beat</i> 13th/18th Hussars | (4) 3½—3 |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|----------|

THE DUKE OF CONNAUGHT'S POLO TOURNAMENT

DELHI, 1934-35 SEASON

PLAYED AT MEERUT AND DELHI ON 25TH, 28TH, 30TH MARCH, 1935

FIRST ROUND—25TH MARCH—MEERUT

| | <i>HCP.</i> | <i>HCP. Goals</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| The Royal Dragoons | (12) <i>beat</i> R.A., Meerut | (3½) 7—3½ |
| 13th/18th Hussars | (9) „ Central India Horse | (8) 5½—2 |

SEMI-FINAL

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| The Royal Dragoons | (12) <i>beat</i> 19th K.G.O. Lancers | (8) 5—4 |
| 13th/18th Hussars | (9) „ 3rd Cavalry | (8) 8—2 |

FINAL

| | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| 13th/18th Hussars | (9) <i>beat</i> The Royal Dragoons | (12) 5½—2 |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|-----------|

THE PRINCE OF WALES' TOURNAMENT

The standard of Polo in the Prince of Wales Tournament was good as could be wished for. Four teams of twenty and over taking part.

The Jaipur Team, beautifully mounted and playing with perfect team work, gave a wonderful exhibition of Polo. It was unfortunate that H.H. the Nawab of Bhopal could not play for the Kashmir Scouts in the semi-final. This team is also very well mounted. Unfortunately, Tony Sanger could not play for Kashmir owing to a damaged thumb.

Les Diables, with the help of Michael Phipps, defeated the Travellers after extra time and again in the semi-final extra time had to be played against Kashmir. H.H. of Bhopal's place being taken by Thakur Phirathi Singh of Jodhpur, who played well in spite of no practice this year.

It is hoped that some more American players may come to India in 1936-37 season.

This year the Low Handicap Tournament was divided into two—the Low Handicap of 4 goals, and the Baria Cup limited to 8 goals. Twelve teams entered for the Baria and eighteen for the Low Handicap.

The Durbar grounds will again be played on next year. Major Mostyn-Owen, 19th Lancers, has been Polo Secretary this season.

Owing to the Horse Influenza many teams had to scratch. In the Prince of Wales' the 19th Lancers were the only unlucky team, though not suffering from the epidemic, they had to scratch owing to certain restrictions of movement of ponies.

AUSTRALIA

CAVALRY COMPETITIONS

The following are the results of the Cavalry Competitions for the year 1933/34 :—

1ST CAVALRY DIVISION

PRINCE OF WALES TROPHY

| | | | | | | | | <i>Points awarded</i> |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-----------|------------|----|----|-----|---------------------------|
| 4 Cav. Bde. | No. 1 Tp. | "A" Sqn. | 6 L.H. | (Parkes) | .. | .. | 428 | |
| 2 Cav. Bde. | No. 1 Tp. | "A" Sqn. | 12 L.H. | (Inverell) | .. | .. | 404 | |
| 1 Cav. Bde. | No. 2 Tp. | "B" Sqn. | 2/14 L.H. | (Kalbar) | .. | .. | 352 | |

LORD FORSTER CUP

| | | | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|---------|------------|----|----|-----|
| 2 Cav. Bde. | No. 2 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 12 L.H. | (Uralla) | .. | .. | 336 |
| 1 Cav. Bde. | No. 2 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 5 L.H. | (Kandanga) | .. | .. | 334 |
| 4 Cav. Bde. | No. 1 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 7 L.H. | (Goulburn) | .. | .. | 302 |

2ND CAVALRY DIVISION

HUTTON TROPHY

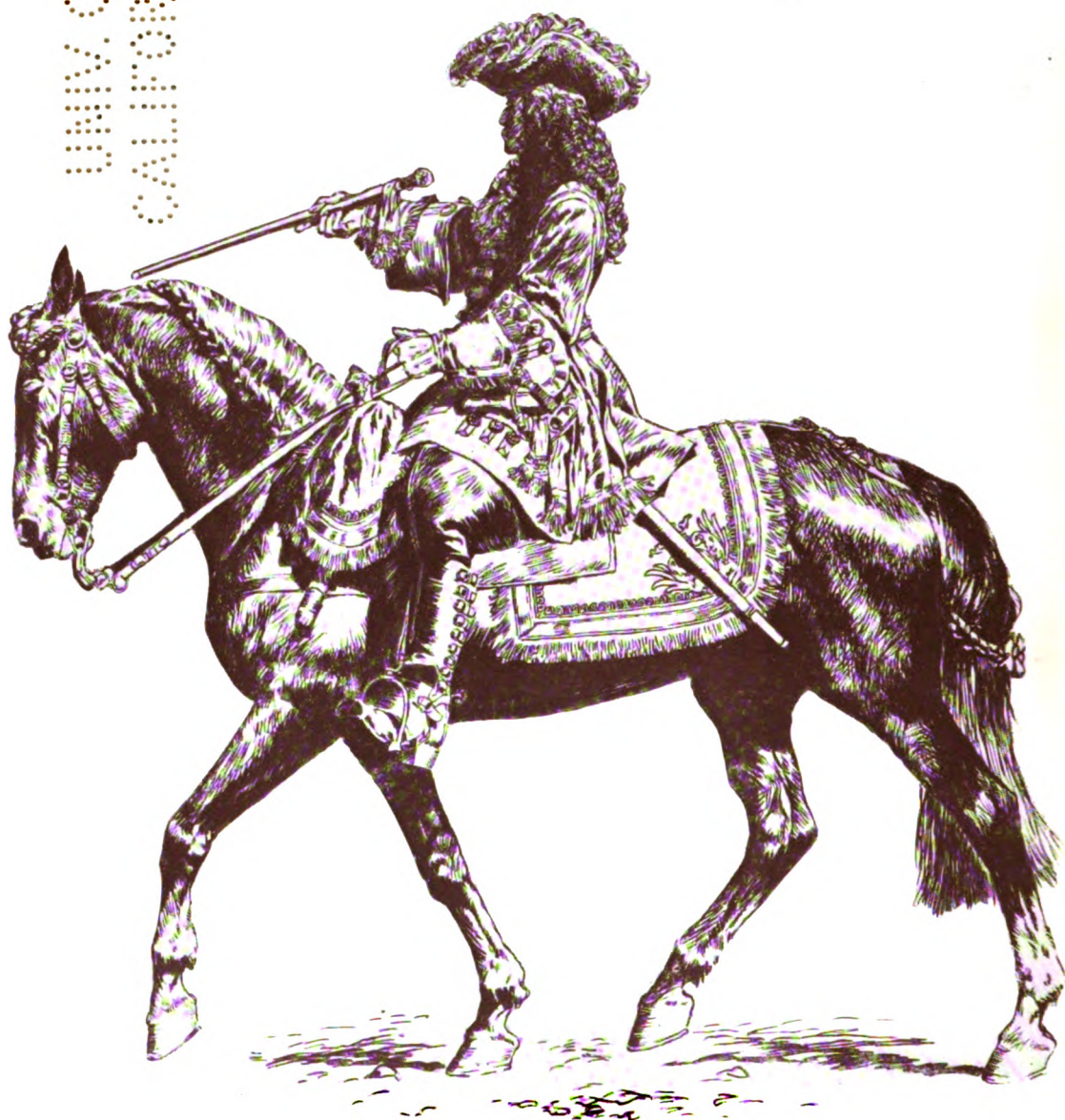
| | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|---------|----------------|----|-----|
| 3 Cav. Bde. | No. 1 Tp. | "A" Sqn. | 13 L.H. | (Stratford) .. | .. | 397 |
| 5 Cav. Bde. | No. 3 Tp. | "B" Sqn. | 4 L.H. | (Camperdown) | .. | 375 |
| 6 Cav. Bde. | No. 1 Tp. | "B" Sqn. | 9 L.H. | (Orroroo) .. | .. | 349 |
| 5 M.D. | No. 3 Tp. | "A" Sqn. | 10 L.H. | (Wickepin) .. | .. | 346 |
| 6 M.D. | No. 2 Tp. | "A" Sqn. | 22 L.H. | (Scottsdale) | .. | 329 |

LORD FORSTER CUP

| | | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|------------|---------------|----|-----|
| 6 M.D. | No. 2 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 22 L.H. | (Longford) .. | .. | 300 |
| 3 Cav. Bde. | No. 2 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 13 L.H. | (Sale) .. | .. | 280 |
| 5 Cav. Bde. | No. 1 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 4 L.H. | (Colac) .. | .. | 255 |
| 6 Cav. Bde. | No. 2 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 18/23 L.H. | (Roseworthy) | .. | 250 |
| 5 M.D. | No. 1 Sec. | M.G. Tp. | 10 L.H. | (Northam) .. | .. | 179 |



3456789



From "Das Heer des Blauen Königs."
A GENERAL OFFICER OF MARLBOROUGH'S DAY

THE HISTORY OF THE

REIGN OF

CHARLES THE FIRST

By JOHN BURNET, Esq. of Edinburgh.
 In two Volumes.
 The First Volume.
 London, Printed by J. Sturges, in Pall-mall, 1724.

Vol. I.

Part I.

Page 1.

1625.

1626.

1627.

1628.

1629.

1630.

1631.

1632.

1633.

1634.

1635.

1636.

1637.



Portrait of the Officer of the Day
OFFICER OF PARIEGROUGHS DAY

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

OCTOBER, 1935

THE CAVALRY IN FRANCE, AUGUST-NOV., 1918

By LIEUT.-COLONEL T. PRESTON, M.C., T.D., Yorkshire Hussars

PART VII

THE 4TH CAVALRY BRIGADE WITH THE THIRD ARMY :
THE OXFORDSHIRE HUSSARS

(Sketch 1)

WE must now go back to the last week in October and shift our scene a few miles to the north, to the country over which General Byng's Third Army was advancing. On the 23rd October this Army delivered an attack west of Le Quesnoy and the Forest of Mormal with four corps, of which the VI Corps* was the second from the left. The Queen's Own Oxfordshire Hussars (Lieut.-Colonel A. Dugdale) were still working with this corps, and at 10 a.m. the regiment moved to St. Python, just north-west of Solesmes. The corps was attacking on a 2½ miles front, its final objective being a line from just west of Beaudignies to just south of Bermerain. During the afternoon A Squadron of the Oxfords sent patrols to report on both villages and on the crossings of the Ecaillon stream which ran just in front of them; the enemy was found to be holding the north bank of the Ecaillon—which was much swollen by recent rains—and also the villages, though in every other respect the attack had been a great success.

| | | | | |
|----------------------|----|----|----|--|
| * VI Corps commander | .. | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir J. A. L. Haldane. |
| 2nd Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General C. E. Pereira. |
| 3rd Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General C. J. Deverell. |
| Guards Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General T. G. Matheson. |
| 62nd Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General R. D. Whigham. |

24th Oct.

Next morning at dawn the infantry crossed the Ecaillon, many men wading with the water up to their waists, and the yeomanry moved at 6.15 a.m. from St. Python through Vertain to Escarmain, whence D Squadron—working with the 2nd Division—despatched patrols to Ruesnes. Four of these patrols led by junior N.C.O's were extremely well handled, and some mention may be permitted of their movements, which can be followed on the sketch map.

Lance-Corporal Huckerby's patrol left Escarmain to find out (1) if the bridge over the Ecaillon south of Ruesnes was passable, and if so (2) what was the situation in Ruesnes. This patrol carried out its mission very quickly, reporting that the bridge was in good repair and our infantry just entering Ruesnes.

Corporal Stockford carried out an important reconnaissance south-east of Ruesnes, which was to maintain touch with the right flank of the 9th Infantry Brigade; whilst *Lance-Corporal Hunt* was ordered to push forward with his patrol towards the Le Quesnoy-Valenciennes railway. This patrol, in spite of coming under heavy machine-gun and rifle fire when trying to pass south-east of Ruesnes, managed to get round by skilful use of cover and obtained valuable information.

Corporal Tompkins' patrol was ordered to report on the German positions north and north-east of Ruesnes. On reaching the Le Quesnoy-Ruesnes road he came under heavy machine-gun fire, but knowing that his own infantry (2nd Division) were out of touch with the troops on their left, he pushed forward north of Ruesnes and ascertained the position of the latter, at the same time telling them what he knew of the situation. This patrol also located an enemy field battery firing at close range into the village.

At 8.30 a.m. the remainder of the Oxfordshire Hussars moved up to Ruesnes; but as the various patrols were unable to get any further forward, the regiment was withdrawn at 2 p.m. to billets at St. Python for the night.

25th Oct.

Next morning at 9.30 a.m. came the news that the Germans had fallen back from the Le Quesnoy-Valenciennes railway line, and the Oxfords were moved up to Escarmain, where they came

under the orders of the 8th Infantry Brigade (3rd Division). An hour later they were moved on to near Ruesnes. A Squadron being sent to La Belle Vue Farm. At this time the infantry front line lay along the railway, and Lieutenant Smetham with his troop was ordered to pass through and try to seize the high ground overlooking Villers-Pol. He managed to occupy a position nearly a mile beyond the railway which, with other posts taken up by A Squadron, was handed over to the infantry at dusk, the squadron then withdrawing to Escarmain, whilst D Squadron went into bivouac south of Ruesnes. An officer, sent out to find a suitable place for a bivouac, found himself in a village full of Germans and had to extricate himself in a hurry, and others had similar experiences. Open warfare had indeed come into its own again on the Western Front.

At 7 a.m. on the following day, D Squadron was told to **20th Oct.** send out two patrols to find out (1) whether the bridges over the Rhonelle stream were intact, and (2) whether La Folie Farm was held. One patrol soon reported that the farm *was* held by the enemy, whilst the other found that two bridges were broken, but that the stream was fordable at one point. The latter patrol was shot at from Villers-Pol, which village, incidentally, remained in German hands until taken on the night 3rd/4th November by the Coldstream Guards. The Battle of the Selle had now closed on the Third Army front, and the Oxfordshire Hussars could not be employed again for another nine days.

The regiment took up a position of readiness (less C **27th Oct.** Squadron on duty with VI Corps H.Q.) at Escarmain from the 27th to the 29th October, moving back on the latter date to **29th Oct.** Boussières—some 10 miles in rear—for baths and cleaning up. Here the men were in decent billets after three months in devastated areas.

THE OXFORDSHIRE HUSSARS AND CARABINIERS IN THE BATTLE OF THE SAMBRE

For the opening of the final and decisive attack, the Third **4th Nov.** Army employed the V, IV, VI and XVII Corps from right to **Sketch 1**

left. The two latter formations had with them the Oxfordshire Hussars and the Carabiniers respectively, and as will be seen, both regiments were extensively used during the last week of the war.

By zero hour (6 a.m.) on the 4th November, C Squadron of the Oxfords was divided up as follows :—

One troop to the 2nd Guards Brigade facing Frasnay ;

One troop to the 62nd Division opposite Orsinval ;

One troop to the 6th Bn. R. Tank Corps at Pont De Buat, the rest of the regiment moving in the first instance to Ruesnes. All the troops of C Squadron were employed on patrol work during the day's advance.

5th Nov.

At 6.30 a.m. next morning Lieutenant H. J. Soame's troop (C Squadron) reported to the 185th Infantry Brigade (62nd Division) at La Belle Maison, south-west of Frasnay ; he was ordered to push on through the infantry and ascertain whether Bavisiau (2 miles south-west of Bavai) was held by the enemy ; if not, he was to ride on to Obies. Soame succeeded in reaching Bavisiau and sent back a message to that effect ; his party was, however, fired on, and Private J. B. Cross was killed in attempting to capture two Germans. He has the sad distinction of being the last Oxfordshire Hussar to lose his life in the Great War.

At almost the same time another troop under 2nd Lieutenant H. F. Wise (A Squadron) had been ordered by the G.O.C. 3rd Guards Brigade, at La Flaque Farm, to find out whether Amfroipret was held, and if not to push on to Bermeries and Bavisiau. Wise was fired on from houses in the north-western part of Bavisiau and reported that it was held by the enemy, which in a sense was true, though in actual fact Lieutenant Soame's troop had already passed through the southern end of the village.

The remainder of the Oxfords had at 10 a.m. marched to Frasnay and later were told to go on to Bavisiau to billet, but this order turned out to be too optimistic and the regiment ultimately billeted in Gommegnies and Frasnay.

There was continuous heavy rain throughout the day, and traffic and troops on the roads were much delayed by the many

mine craters. According to one officer's account, the country was now very enclosed, and "a machine-gunner's paradise," more like England than the open land between Amiens and Cambrai.

A few miles to the north, the Carabiniers—under the XVII Corps*—had been moved to Jenlain and Le Bois Crette.

They sent troops next day to the 19th and 24th Divisions, but it was found later that these formations already had their infantry in touch with the enemy.

The 6th November again dawned in pouring rain, and it should be noted that whereas the Third Army's advance had been towards the north-east, it was now due east, being directed against the line of the main road Avesnes—Maubeuge—Mons. The Oxfordshire Hussars had more patrol work with the 62nd and Guards Divisions, and this continued on the 7th, regimental headquarters remaining at Frasnoy. Great excitement was caused by the receipt of a message at 11.30 a.m. to the effect that if a German officer bearing a flag of truce presented himself, he must be conducted to the nearest divisional headquarters and an "Urgent Operations Priority Wire" sent to Advanced G.H.Q. Later, however, came another message saying that the German delegates, if and when they came, would pass through the French lines. 6th Nov.

At 2 p.m. Captain Fleming, with three troops of C Squadron, Oxfordshire Hussars, was sent to Locquignol in the middle of the Mormal Forest, to report to the 38th Division. Later in the day a communication was received from VI Corps Headquarters, stating that the enemy appeared to be withdrawing along the whole length of the Third Army front, and that if the infantry lost touch with the German rearguards, the cavalry must regain it. 7th Nov.

On Friday, 8th November, the mounted troops were astir early, and passed through the infantry some 2,000 yards east of Bavai. Patrols from A Squadron, Oxfordshire Hussars 8th Nov.
Sketch 1

| | | | |
|------------------------|----|----|--------------------------------------|
| * XVII Corps commander | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir C. Fergusson. |
| 19th Division | .. | .. | Major-General G. D. Jeffreys. |
| 20th Division | .. | .. | Major-General G. G. S. Carey. |
| 24th Division | .. | .. | Major-General A. C. Daly. |
| 61st Division | .. | .. | Major-General F. J. Duncan. |

rode through La Longueville towards Maubeuge, but were held up 1,000 yards east of Les Mottes (or some 3 miles short of Maubeuge), whilst the Carabiniers were working roughly parallel with them and some two or three miles on their left.

Of the latter regiment, one troop of A Squadron rode towards Berlière and another towards Malplaquet; they met with some slight opposition after crossing the little River Honneau, but the Germans soon withdrew as the cavalymen came up. The Carabiniers were finally held up on the high ground near Le Cul de Sac, overlooking the Maubeuge-Mons railway, and handed this line over to the infantry, who came up about 1 p.m. The infantry were equally unable to advance any further that day, and the Carabiniers went into billets about a mile and a half behind the front line, B Squadron in a farm near Bois des Sarts and the rest of the regiment nearly two miles further back in Hameau de Sur Hon.

9th Nov.

Reverting to the Oxfordshire Hussars, 2nd Lieutenant Wise and his troop started off at dawn for Maubeuge, entered by the Faubourg St. Guilain, and rode straight through the town at 6.45 a.m.

It has often been stated that the Guards and 62nd Divisions were the first British troops into Maubeuge, but in actual fact they only had infantry patrols on the western outskirts of the town when Wise and his yeomen were riding through its centre, so it may fairly be claimed that the honour of first setting foot in Maubeuge belongs to this troop of Oxfordshire Hussars, who then pushed on eastwards through Assevent and Boussois—capturing a German officer and nine men—before being stopped by machine-gun fire from the Fort de Boussois.

Another troop, under Lieutenant Smetham, starting from Neuf Mesnil, had crossed the Sambre and advanced south of Maubeuge to Ostergnies, where it met with some opposition, but succeeded in riding on another two miles to Marpent, where it was compelled to halt by the enemy's increasing resistance.

In the meantime B Squadron of the Carabiniers, working ahead of the 24th Division, safely reached the line Leveau-Les Bas Vents just over the Maubeuge-Mons railway; and although

they came up against some slight opposition later, east of the Lanière Wood, this squadron—supported by C Squadron less one troop—continued to advance on the front of the 73rd Infantry Brigade, and in the end reached a line a mile beyond the Maubeuge-Mons road, which was the infantry's final objective for the day. After handing over to the infantry, the Carabiniers withdrew to billets at Les Bas Vents.

THE 4TH CAVALRY BRIGADE RE-FORMED, 9TH NOVEMBER

Soon after 3 p.m. the units of the 4th Cavalry Brigade received the welcome order that they would—after more than two months' separation—be re-united as soon as possible as a complete formation, with the addition of a fourth regiment, the Northumberland Hussars.*

5th Nov.
Sketch 1

The reason for this was that General Byng had decided to advance on a one-corps front with Lieut.-General Haldane's VI Corps leading, the 4th Cavalry Brigade to come under that corps to cover its front and keep touch with the enemy. It was not found possible for Brigadier-General Rankin to assemble his brigade till next day at La Longueville, when he issued his orders. His advance would be on a frontage of about ten miles, and he proposed to move forward on a three-regiment front as under:—

10th Nov.

3rd Hussars on right; Oxfordshire Hussars in centre; Carabiniers on left; Northumberland Hussars in reserve.

Inter-regimental boundaries (both inclusive to Oxfordshire Hussars):—

Right.—River Sambre.

Left.—The line Mairieux — Vieux Reng — Peissant — Merbes Ste. Marie — Mont Ste. Genève.

The flank regiments to get in touch with the 5th Cavalry Brigade on the right and the 3rd Cavalry Brigade on the left.

The march was to start next day (11th) and be timed so as to reach the main road Beaumont-Givry by 12 noon. There

* This unit was then at St. Benin in the Fourth Army area, having been recently doing corps cavalry to the XIII Corps.

the main bodies would halt, sending patrols forward to maintain touch with the enemy.

These orders were, apparently, not received by units until the afternoon of Sunday the 10th. During the morning the Oxfordshire Hussars had despatched patrols eastwards along both banks of the Sambre, who reported that Bois de Jeumont (6 miles east of Maubeuge) and Fort de Boussois (4 miles east) were still held by the Germans. It was on this day that news came in of the Kaiser's flight to Holland.

11th Nov.

The 4th Cavalry Brigade moved off at 7 a.m. on Monday, 11th November, each regiment covering a front of just over 3 miles. In the centre, the Oxfords moved to Assevent, a patrol under Lieutenant Soame reporting by 7.30 that the enemy had gone from Fort de Boussois. At 8 a.m. regiments heard for the first time that hostilities would cease at 11 o'clock, and that they were to halt on the Beaumont-Givry road, all Germans coming towards our lines to be taken prisoner. By 9.30 a.m., A Squadron of the Oxfords had found Elesmes, Grand Reng and Vieux Reng clear and had pushed on to the main road, whilst on its right D Squadron's patrols had found Erquellines lightly held by machine guns. By 10.55 a.m. it was reported clear and an outpost line was taken up along the Beaumont-Givry road, with patrols east of it.

We may here quote from an account by Captain G. V. Wellesley, commanding D Squadron, Oxfordshire Hussars, of his experiences during the last hour before the Armistice. He had ridden out from Assevent earlier and was advancing on the north bank of the Sambre :—

“ I sent Lieutenant Tompkins out on the left of my front and went myself with Lieutenant List of No. 1 Troop on the right, leaving Lieutenant Allfrey in charge of the remainder of the squadron. Both the advanced troops had patrols well out in front and—beyond a certain amount of desultory rifle fire—little opposition was met with. About 10.30 we came, with the advanced troop on the right, under long-range machine-gun fire, and withdrew into some dead ground.

"A patrol under Corporal Stockford pushed out round the edge of Erquellines and immediately beyond our final objective, the main road. I followed the patrol, and on reaching the outskirts of the town was met by a cheering mass of inhabitants, some of whom sang, others wept, and others begged me to be careful as German machine-guns were in position round the corner. (To these civilians, of course, it was complete news that an Armistice was at hand). So great was the crush that, having sent back for the squadron to come on, it was with the greatest difficulty that I got down to the market-place on foot, only to find that the last of the enemy had just gone.

"On returning to my pony I found her bestraddled by a huge fat Belgian who was addressing the crowd from her back. Having kicked him off I went on to investigate, charged through mobs of wildly excited inhabitants, and finally got through the town and out on to the main road beyond. Here I met the patrol who had come round the outskirts, and we established a Hotchkiss post on the road and sent back for the squadron.

"Meanwhile Stockford and I tried to round up some escaping Boches, who finally jumped into the River Sambre. Tompkins' troop arrived almost simultaneously on the road half-a-mile on our left and reported having obtained touch with A Squadron, who had also reached the objective. I sent a patrol down the road on my right to Solre, only 600 yards away, but found the village full of Germans.

"On arrival of the squadron, posts were put out along the road and we began to take stock of the situation. At 11.15 it was found necessary to end the days of a Hun machine-gunner on our front who would keep on shooting; the Armistice was already in force but there was no alternative. Perhaps his watch was wrong, but he probably was the last German killed in the war—a most unlucky individual."

The only part of the brigade front where the objective was not reached by 11 o'clock was on the right, where the 3rd

Hussars encountered strong opposition in the Bois de Jeumont and Cousolre. All the leading regiments killed some of the enemy and about eight prisoners were taken. The final line held by the 4th Cavalry Brigade was: Cousolre Station—west edge of Bois de Jeumont—Jeumont—Erquellines—along the main road to Givry, with patrols to the east of this line.

THE 3RD CAVALRY BRIGADE WITH THE FIRST ARMY:

THE 4TH HUSSARS

(Sketch 2)

As noted in a former number, Brigadier-General Bell Smyth's 3rd Cavalry Brigade had been sent on 5th September to General Horne's First Army, who allotted its three regiments to different corps with whom they remained until the Armistice; the brigade did not join up as a complete formation before hostilities ended.

During the operations of the last half of October the 4th Hussars (Lieut.-Colonel N. O. Laing) were working with the VIII and XXII Corps,* with its three squadrons under different infantry divisions.

On the 18th the regiment arrived at Esquerchin (2 miles west of Douai)† and next morning C Squadron came under the orders of the 8th Division, who were making an attack and needed mounted men to reconnoitre various localities in front. The squadron overtook the infantry on their first "bound," the Marchiennes-Bouvignies road; this was clear, and two 4th Hussar troops were immediately pushed forward under Lieutenants J. W. S. Morrison and J. D. Delius. The former troops, after being delayed by a broken bridge at Tilloy, reported that

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| * VIII Corps commander | Lieutenant-General Sir A. Hunter-Weston. |
| 8th Division | Major-General W. C. G. Heneker. |
| 12th Division | Major-General H. W. Higginson. |
| 52nd Division | Major-General F. J. Marshall. |
| 63rd Division | Major-General C. A. Blacklock (transferred to XXII Corps in November). |
| XXII Corps commander | Lieutenant-General Sir A. J. Godley. |
| 4th Division | Major-General C. H. T. Lucas. |
| 11th Division | Major-General H. R. Davies. |
| 49th Division | Major-General N. J. G. Cameron (to VIII Corps in November). |
| 51st Division | Major-General G. T. C. Carter-Campbell. |
| 56th Division | Major-General C. P. A. Hull. |

† Not shown on Sketch 2. Douai is about 8 miles W.S.W. of Marchiennes.

18th Oct.
Sketch 2

19th Oct.

Brillon and Sars-Rosières were clear but that the Germans had a line of machine-gun posts just to the east, this information being confirmed by the other troop on the left. During this reconnaissance, Lieutenant Morrison and Private C. W. Bishop were killed by a shell, whilst Shoeing-Smith Corporal Rouse was wounded by a machine-gun and taken prisoner. Neither the cavalry nor the infantry made any more progress during the day, and as evening drew in the squadron rode back to 24th Infantry Brigade headquarters at Cattelet.

On this same day B Squadron was operating some four miles to the north of C, under the 12th Division, one troop working with the 12th Divisional Signals whilst the other three were lent to the 35th, 36th and 37th Infantry Brigades respectively. Patrols under Lieutenants P. J. Matthews and A. M. Marshall were despatched at 3 p.m., with orders to reconnoitre in the direction of Lecelles, but they had no chance of penetrating as far as that place, Marshall's patrol being unfortunately knocked out by a shell when riding through Orchies, whilst Matthews and his men were held up by machine-gun fire at Rue d'Orchies very soon after passing through our infantry outpost line.

B Squadron was astir early next morning (20th) its task **20th Oct.** being to pass through the infantry just east of Orchies, find out the exact whereabouts of the enemy, and if possible push on towards the Escaut river. One patrol, under Corporal Sharpe, soon reported the Germans in Sameon—from which our infantry drove them shortly afterwards—whilst another led by Corporal Poole, managed to get as far as the Einon stream; this N.C.O. reported the bridges destroyed but added that the stream was fordable. The roads in this area were pavé and in good order, except that there were craters at almost every cross-road. The squadron withdrew in the evening to Rue d'Orchies in rear of the infantry, where they did not get their rations until very late. It appears that this delay in getting up rations prevented C Squadron operating at all on the 20th, even their iron rations having been eaten the day before.

21st Oct.

The advance was resumed on the 21st October, the mission of B Squadron (with the 8th Division) being to report on St. Amand and the crossing over the Scarpe just east of the town. At an early hour two troops under Lieutenants W. C. Bailey and R. W. Howe, passed through the infantry just beyond Brillon and Sars-Rosières; Bailey's on the right was immediately held up by machine-gun fire and could not get forward until the infantry dislodged the guns later. On the left, Howe's troop had better luck, for although it also came up against German machine-gunners, these retired after firing a few shots and the troop rode on without further trouble to St. Amand, which was reported at 2 p.m. to be clear of the enemy, who had destroyed all the bridges over the Scarpe and was holding the eastern bank with machine-guns. Incidentally, Lieutenant Howe and his men were the first British soldiers to enter St. Amand.

B Squadron withdrew at dusk to Brillon and was not again actively employed until the last morning of the war.

Reverting to C Squadron with the 12th Division, the leading patrols passed through the infantry front line near Sameon at 6.30 a.m., 21st, and by 8 o'clock had located the enemy on the Einon stream. Beyond this, however, it was found quite impossible to advance; posts were therefore taken up, and touch was gained on the left with the XXII Corps Cyclists about Rue Ruteleux, also with the left flank of the 8th Division on the right, south of Lecelles. At 3.30 p.m. C Squadron was relieved by infantry and cyclists and rode back to Rue d'Orchies, Lieutenant Marshall having been wounded by machine-gun fire and seven other ranks wounded or injured; some of the latter had been hurt owing to their horses coming down on the pavé when riding back from Rue Bouchart.

The 4th Hussars—and for that matter the 5th and 16th Lancers—do not appear to have been actively employed again until the 8th November. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade seems to have been re-formed temporarily for purposes of administration.

THE LAST FOUR DAYS

The parts played by the three regiments on the 8th-11th November, 1918, will be more easily understood if we first state

that the 16th Lancers (Lieut.-Colonel G. F. H. Brooke) were on the right of the First Army; the 5th Lancers (Lieut.-Colonel Hon. H. C. Alexander) in the centre, and the 4th Hussars (Lieut.-Colonel N. O. Laing) on the left, each being under the orders of a different infantry formation and not under their own brigadier.

The morning of Friday, 8th November, found the 4th Hussars taking part in the advance north-east of St. Amand, their A Squadron's task being to cross the Jard Canal and secure the line Le Cocq (just north of Vieux Condé)—Le Chene Raoul—Bonsecours. A patrol under 2nd Lieutenant H. Raby* and Sergeant Sharp found the canal bridges destroyed, but they managed to cross by means of a raft and, after gaining touch with the VIII Corps cyclists, got on to Bonsecours. By 3.30 p.m. the R.E. had bridged the canal and the rest of the squadron crossed: no further advance was, however, possible that afternoon and the squadron was brought back to Hergnies for the night.

8th Nov.
Sketch 2

It was on this day that the First Army's right Corps (the XXII) wrote:—

“His (the enemy's) policy appears to be to continue withdrawing until he forces us to a standstill through the impossibility of maintaining our communications, and so gain sufficient time to reorganize his defeated troops.”

On the 9th November the enemy was in general retreat all along the line, and A Squadron, 4th Hussars, received orders at 11 a.m. to gallop forward as quickly as possible to the Antoin Canal and seize a bridge opposite Harchies. The cavalrymen soon reached the bridge, which the Germans had tried to destroy but over which it was possible for dismounted men to pass. A party was accordingly sent over on foot for local protection whilst the rest of the Hussars, helped by Belgian civilians, managed to repair the bridge so that horses could be led singly across it: this was about noon. Fresh orders now reached the squadron to push on through Ville Wood—keeping touch with the VIII Corps cyclists on the right—and secure the line Coron

9th Nov.

* Attached from Leicestershire Yeomanry.

Wood—Couttes Bruyères—Le Happart. Patrols came in contact with enemy rearguards in the wood, but opposition was slight and the line was duly reached by 1 p.m.; none of our troops appeared to have come up on the left, so patrols were pushed out to guard that flank. At 2.20 p.m. the squadron was ordered to secure, as an outpost line for the night, the villages of Villerot and Sirault. Both villages had Germans in them, but these were driven out and the line established by 3.30 p.m., the only 4th Hussar casualty being Private J. Quinn (killed). During the night attempts were made by the enemy to re-enter Villerot, but these were repulsed and the line was taken over by cyclists at 7.30 a.m. next morning.

9th Nov.

While these events were in progress, the 5th Lancers were with the Canadian Corps† some four miles to the south, one squadron being with the 2nd Canadian Division and the remainder of the regiment with the 3rd. Major-General Loomis (G.O.C. 3rd Canadian Division) explained to Lieut.-Colonel Alexander that his division was about to advance on Jemappes and Mons and that he wished the 5th Lancers to move on his left flank; they were to cross the Condé Canal north of Thulin as soon as possible and then work north-eastward towards Ghlin Wood and the Mons—Jurbise railway line. It was then found, however, that the canal bridge north of Thulin would not be fit for horses till 9 p.m., so Colonel Alexander arranged with the officer commanding the 49th Canadian Battalion that the 5th Lancers would be in position on his left flank by 4.30 a.m. next morning (10th). General Loomis approved, but stipulated that only one squadron must be so used, the remainder to be in divisional reserve in the first instance. The regiment billeted in Thulin for the night 9th/10th.

THE 10TH NOVEMBER: THE 16TH LANCERS.

Having spent the night at Montignies, the 16th Lancers—who had not been in action for a month—moved off ahead of

10th Nov.
Sketch 2

| | | | | |
|-----------------------|----|----|----|--------------------------------------|
| † Corps Commander | .. | .. | .. | Lieutenant-General Sir A. W. Currie. |
| 1st Canadian Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General A. C. Macdonell. |
| 2nd Canadian Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General Sir H. E. Burstall. |
| 3rd Canadian Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General F. O. W. Loomis. |
| 4th Canadian Division | .. | .. | .. | Major-General Sir D. Watson. |

the infantry on the XXII Corps front, this being the right corps of the First Army; from right to left, C, A and D Squadrons covered the 11th, 56th and 63rd Divisions respectively. Each squadron had with it four machine-guns of the 3rd Machine Gun Squadron, whilst part of D Battery, R.H.A., moved behind the centre squadron, and the objectives were first, the line Havay—Maladrie and second, Villers-St. Ghislain.

There was hardly any opposition until after crossing the main Maubeuge—Mons road, and then German machine-gunners, with intervals of 300 yards and more between them, were found to be holding the line of the little Blangeroy stream. A Squadron managed to get across the stream by the road bridge south of Harveng but could not progress any further, whilst a little later D Squadron ejected a number of the enemy from the sugar factory on the main road east of Havay. On the left of the corps front C Squadron was held up by enfilade machine-gun fire, and during the afternoon the infantry came up and took over the 16th Lancers' line; the regiment withdrew at 4 p.m. to l'Hermitage, having sustained 16 casualties altogether during the day.

THE 5TH LANCERS ON 10TH NOVEMBER.

We must now return to the 5th Lancers at Thulin. At 4 a.m. on the 10th the regiment (less C Squadron) crossed the Condé Canal and turned to the east, its task being to protect the left flank of the 3rd Canadian Division advancing on Mons south of the canal. At first there was no opposition to the Lancers' march, but after passing Tertre they came to a railway line on a steep embankment; all the bridges under this had been blown up and were so blocked with debris that none of the passages under the embankment could be used till it had been cleared away. This meant a delay of some forty-five minutes, and while the cavalymen were engaged in the work they were suddenly shelled with H.E. and gas from beyond Douvrain. Luckily no casualties were suffered at the time, but later on several men felt the effects of the gas. The leading squadron (under Captain Heath, a Leicestershire Yeomanry

10th Nov.
Sketch 2

officer) now pushed on to Ghlin, where its vanguard troop was fired on, the main body of the regiment meanwhile moving up to Long Coron. It was not long, however, before Heath reported that Ghlin was clear of the enemy, though small bodies of Germans were seen in the southern edge of Baudour and Ghlin Woods on the left.

Lieut.-Colonel Alexander now rode to Jemappes to see Brigadier-General J. A. Clarke, commanding the 7th Canadian Brigade, who decided that it would be best to draw in the 5th Lancers closer to the canal, leaving only Captain Heath's squadron (D) to reconnoitre towards the north-east. Returning to Ghlin, Alexander found the place being heavily bombarded with gas and H.E. shell; the situation as reported by Heath's patrols was that the enemy was holding a strong line along the Mons—Jurbise railway embankment and that they could not get on; this information was duly passed back to the Canadian infantry.

During the afternoon the enemy's shell fire became so troublesome that the 5th Lancers were brought back across the canal and billeted in Jemappes, the VIII Corps infantry having arrived about 5 p.m. on the left of D Squadron at Ghlin and taken over the line. In the course of the day three other ranks were killed and Lieutenants B. J. Hardman and W. A. T. Fleury wounded.

It should be noted that C Squadron (Captain J. A. T. Batten-Pooll) did not take part in the operations just described. This squadron was placed, at noon on the 10th, at the disposal of the 6th Canadian Brigade who did not then need it, and it was ordered to billet in Frameries.

THE 4TH HUSSARS ON THE 10TH NOVEMBER.

10th Nov.

We left A Squadron of the 4th Hussars near Villerot and Sirault (on the extreme left of the First Army front) where at 7.30 a.m. they had been relieved by cyclists. Two hours later they were ordered to push forward through Baudour Wood which they did, but they soon came under shell-fire from the Herchies direction. The squadron later on came up against

hostile machine-guns along the Mons—Jurbise railway—a continuation, in fact, of the line which was holding up the 5th Lancers near Ghlin about a mile to the right. The 4th Hussars reported the situation to the 52nd Division, whose infantry came up at dusk and relieved the cavalry, enabling them to withdraw for the night to billets in Joncquois. A Squadron, 4th Hussars, was relieved by B Squadron next day and was not in action again.

THE 11TH NOVEMBER: THE 16TH LANCERS.

It had been decided on the previous night that the XXII Corps should, at daybreak on the 11th, move forward on a frontage of one division, the 63rd, which was to have the 16th Lancers at its disposal to cover the advance. 11th Nov.
Sketch 2

The regiment started off accordingly, and very little opposition was encountered until the vanguards reached the line Estinne-au-Val—Villers—St. Ghislain, where the advance was held up by Germans in the former village and long the road between Villers and Bray. At 10 o'clock D Battery, R.H.A., unlimbered and came into action, and about the same time a patrol under Lieutenant Johnson made a daring mounted attack against some hostile machine-guns. The enemy machine-gunners, however, kept their heads and engaged the charging Lancers at point-blank range; every horse was brought down and it was only by great good fortune that the sole casualties were Johnson and four other ranks wounded.

The right squadron of the 16th now prepared to charge, but the order to cease hostilities arrived just in time to prevent this; what the result would have been is hard to say.

THE 5TH LANCERS: THE RECAPTURE OF MONS.

We must return to Captain Batten-Pooll's C Squadron of the 5th Lancers billeted in the colliery town of Frameries.* 11th Nov.
Sketch 2 Parading in the dark at 3 a.m. on the morning of the 11th November, the squadron in accordance with orders marched to Hyon (just south of Mons), where it was split up into two parties

* The 9th Infantry Brigade of the original B.E.F. fought a rearguard action in Frameries on 24th August, 1914, the first day of the Retreat from Mons.

each of two troops, one party under the squadron leader and the other under Lieutenant J. C. Biggs ; these half-squadrons were to cover the advance of the two leading battalions of the 6th Canadian Infantry Brigade which was, at 8 a.m., to pass through the outpost line of the 4th Canadian Brigade. The particular task of the cavalry was to push to the final objective, the Mons Canal north of Havré, and it was hoped that if the opposition were slight the Lancers could brush it aside, making it unnecessary for the infantry to deploy.

Captain Batten-Pooll's two troops marched first to Malplaquet where it was learnt that St. Symphorien was clear of the enemy and that our infantry patrols were there. Lieutenant A. G. Frost was accordingly sent on to St. Symphorien with instructions to push on towards the canal, but by mistake turned to the right along the road to Villers-St. Ghislain and was shot at by two hostile machine-guns and a field gun. Batten-Pooll on seeing the error recalled this troop, at the same time despatching another under Sergeant Goodman along the St. Symphorien—Bon Vouloir road ; the leading points of the latter troop were fired on from some chemical works and the troop's advance was held up.

After a personal reconnaissance which showed him that the chemical works were strongly held, Batten-Pooll sent back a message to the infantry (31st Canadian Battalion) ; but by the time they came up it was 11 o'clock, the Armistice came into force and the Germans retired, the Canadians occupying Bon Vouloir and Havré.

In the meantime the other half-squadron under Lieutenant Biggs had been moving forward on the left, two patrols being sent through Havré Wood and the wood just north of it ; both were fired upon, and estimated that there were about 20 Germans in the wood. Biggs reported in this sense to the 28th Canadian Battalion coming up behind him, and then despatched a third patrol round the northern end of the wood with a view to continuing his advance on the canal that way. This latter patrol came upon a small force of enemy cyclists and then came under machine-gun fire in the wood ; Biggs tried to clear the

wood with the remainder of his Lancers but without success, and the Canadian infantry who had now arrived deployed for action (9.30 a.m.). They secured Havré Wood and village just on 11 a.m., the whole of C Squadron subsequently assembling at St. Symphorien.

Turning now to the remainder of the 5th Lancers, it should be noted that on the night 10th/11th November the 4th Canadian Infantry Brigade held an outpost line just west of Mons, and orders were issued that the 7th Canadian Brigade, preceded by the 5th Lancers, should pass through the outpost line at 6 a.m. on the 11th. At 7 a.m. Lieut.-Colonel Alexander was sent for by the G.O.C. 7th Canadian Brigade who told him that the leading infantry battalion had taken Mons, and asked that one squadron of the 5th Lancers should be sent through the town to seize the high ground to the north-east, about St. Denis. Lieutenant F. Scott-Brown's squadron (A) was selected for this task and ordered to saddle up;* they started off at 7.45 a.m. and were considerably delayed at the outset by various bridges having been blown up and by craters in the roads, which meant making detours. Further delay was also caused to the squadron by the cheering crowds in the streets, and it was 9.45 before Scott-Brown reached St. Denis, whence his patrols got in touch with the enemy in Vignette and Haynon Woods; heavy firing was also heard in the woods on his right rear. Shortly afterwards, Scott-Brown was informed that the Armistice would come into force at 11 a.m., and just before that hour the Canadian infantry came up and he handed over his posts to them, returning later to Jemappes. It was interesting to learn that the Maire of St. Denis had witnessed a British cavalry skirmish in August, 1914.

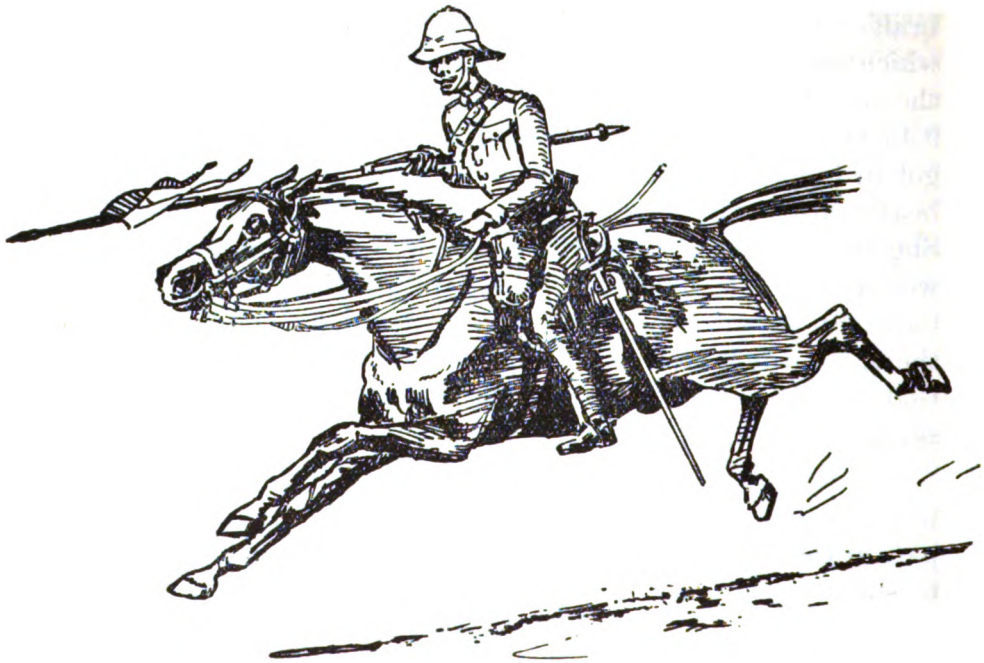
11th Nov.
Sketch 2

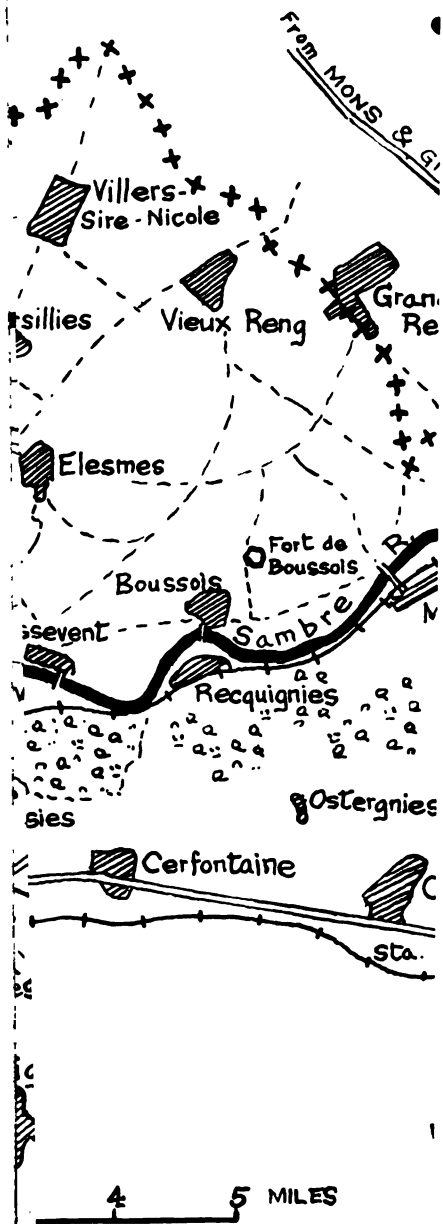
No account of the 5th Lancers' doings on this memorable day would be complete without a reference to the escort which took part in the Canadians' official entry into Mons. This was timed to start at 10.30 a.m. and was to be led by the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 5th Lancers at once turned out an

* The fact of the regiment not being saddled up seems to show that the original order to begin the advance at 6 a.m. had been altered

escort consisting of 2nd Lieutenant A. W. Allison, M.C., and thirty-four other ranks with pennons on their lances, and with them marched one gun from D Battery, R.H.A., which had been with the regiment in this neighbourhood in August, 1914. The Lancers accompanied Brigadier-General Clarke into Mons where he was welcomed by the Maire, and were then retained as escort to the Canadian Corps commander (Lieut.-General Sir Arthur Currie) when he made his formal entry in the afternoon. General Currie made 2nd Lieutenant Allison stand beside him on the steps of the Hôtel de Ville, introduced him to the Maire, and afterwards directed that the escort should march off the parade first, as they were representatives of the old British Army that had fought at Mons in 1914.

(To be concluded)





THE YEOMANRY AT GAZA I.

(26th March, 1917)

By MAJOR OSKAR TEICHMAN, D.S.O., M.C., T.D.,
Late M.O., Queen's Own 'Worcestershire Hussars.

“ One ordinary General is better than two excellent ones ;
for nothing is more pernicious than Confusion and Irresolution.” (William Freke, in “ The Art of War,” 1693, on
Generals.)

THREE weeks after the Battle of Rafa the 5th Mounted Brigade (Warwick, Worcester and Gloucester Yeomanries) left El Arish and marched along the coast to El Burj, a few miles from Sheikh Zowaid. This was a pleasant camp, amongst tamarisk trees, on a sand hill a mile from the sea and overlooking the old caravan route. Good water was plentiful, and fish caught in the surf was a welcome addition to the bully beef ration. Another useful amenity of this place was the presence of colonies of ants which proved most efficient delousers. Articles of clothing left in their vicinity were rapidly cleaned up.

The 5th Mounted Brigade now took its turn (with the Australian and New Zealand Brigades) once more in forming the advanced Cavalry screen of Desert Column. It spread its patrols eastwards and southwards, and sometimes right up to Rafa, which had been re-occupied by a few of the enemy's outposts. Small parties of Turks and hostile Bedouin were encountered frequently, which provided many an *escarmouche* most useful for the training of newly arrived drafts. These Bedouin when pursued sometimes hid their arms in the sand, and a careful search occasionally revealed some lately turned sand covering a Turkish rifle and ammunition.

Scraps with the Turkish outposts often provided prisoners and deserters. Two of the latter, on one occasion, turned out to be Algerian soldiers captured by the Germans in Belgium in 1914 when fighting for France, and handed over by them to the Turks to fight against us. In due course they were sent by us to the French Base at Sidi Bishr, possibly to be transferred to the Bulgarian front at Salonika, as they could not well be utilised in Palestine again.

To these natives of Africa, war must have seemed a curious business. On one occasion the Worcester Machine Gun Section was practising at a target consisting of three palm trees when, during a pause in the firing, much to everyone's surprise, a Turkish cavalryman complete with lance, sword and rifle calmly rode out from behind the trees. He was a patrol who had got lost south of our camp, and he caused some amusement when he was found to be wearing the Suez Canal medal 1915.

During the first week in March the 5th Mounted Brigade was bivouacked at Sheikh Zowaid (enemy patrols having retired to the neighbourhood of Khan Yunus), and was joined by the 22nd Mounted Brigade (Lincoln, Stafford and East Riding Yeomanries) which had arrived from the Western Frontier. At this date Desert Column was reconstituted into two Divisions called the Anzac Mounted and the Imperial Mounted, each of which contained four Brigades and four R.H.A. Batteries, and the 53rd Division. Of these eight Brigades three were Yeomanry formations—the Anzac Mounted Division included the 22nd Mounted Brigade while the 5th and 6th Mounted Brigades formed half of the Imperial Mounted Division.*

Brigade Machine Gun Squadrons were formed in each case and Regiments were issued with Hotchkiss guns for the first time.

Six dismounted Yeomanry Regiments which constituted the 229th Brigade, the only formation of the newly created 74th (Broken Spur) Division as yet available, were also concentrated in the neighbourhood and came under East Force (which included the 52nd and 54th Divisions together with the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade).

* For Battle Order of all the Yeomanry formations present at the first Battle of Gaza, see end.

It had been known for some time that the enemy was holding Khan Yunus in considerable numbers : also that he had developed a position of great strength at Weli Sheikh Nuran an eminence just west of the Wadi* Ghuzze near Shellal. The advance of the Cavalry to Sheikh Zowaid followed by three Infantry Divisions, and a reconnaissance in force by the Anzac Mounted Division in which the 22nd Mounted Brigade took part, decided the enemy to evacuate both these positions by the first week in March and to withdraw behind the Wadi Ghuzze with his right on Gaza and his left on Beersheba.

On March 16th the 6th Mounted Brigade (Berks, Bucks, and Dorset Yeomanries)† arrived from Shallufa after crossing the Sinai Desert and joined the 5th Mounted Brigade in the Imperial Mounted Division.

Maps of Kosseima, Beersheba and Jerusalem were issued to all officers and we were informed that we should soon be attacking Gaza.

It was to be a repetition of Rafa on a much larger scale. The Garrison was to be surrounded by Cavalry attacking its rear and eastern flank, whilst much stronger Turkish reinforcements in the neighbourhood were held at bay. But before this occurred an important event, not mentioned in the "Official History of the War," took place. Permission was granted for the two Cavalry Divisions, together with the three Infantry Divisions, to hold a race meeting on the fine grass country round Rafa. With the twenty-four Cavalry Regiments concentrated in the vicinity of Sheikh Zowaid it was a grand opportunity for such an event. The only fear was that the Turkish Army, located only some ten miles away, might have the bad taste to interfere with the meeting!

For the next week horses were trained and taken out secretly in the early dawn; an air of mystery pervaded the camps of all units, and men spoke in whispers of dead certainties, dark horses and possible ramps. Interest in the approaching attack on Gaza faded away, the prospects of a race meeting being

* Wadi—a water-course (often dry).

† The other two Yeomanry Brigades of the original 2nd Mounted Division (formed in 1914) the Notts. and Derby Mounted Brigade and the London Mounted Brigade, were at Salonika. They returned, however, in time for Gaza III, less the Derbyshire Yeomanry.

infinitely more important to most people. At last something had occurred on which all ranks could concentrate in deadly earnest. The secrets of owners and their backers were much more carefully guarded than any official information marked *Secret*.

Meanwhile the course was being prepared by willing hands. Fences were built of sandbags, scrub and felled palm trees; the course was marked out, the paddock was enclosed and a "tote" set up.

The difficulty was to keep down the entries with some 12,000 horsemen encamped on "Newmarket Heath!" but eventually the enormous list was curtailed to possible dimensions, and even then the starters were too numerous to hoist on the board, only non-starters being shown.

"The Desert Column First Spring Meeting" of "The Sinai Hunt Club" was to have been held on March 22nd, but owing to impending operations it took place on March 21st. Cups were presented by the G.Os.C. Desert Column, Imperial Mounted Division, Anzac Mounted Division, 52nd Division, 53rd Division and by the C.R.A. Desert Column, added to sweepstakes of from 3,000 to 6,000 piastres. There were nine races which included: The Rafa Cup (11 stone, 1 mile), the Syrian Derby (for Arabs, 10.7, 5 furlongs), the Promised Land Stakes (11.7, 6 furlongs), the Sinai Grand National (11.7, 2½ miles steeple-chase course), the Stewards Welter Plate (13, 1 mile), the Border Stakes (for Ponies, 10.7, 5 furlongs), the Anzac Champion Steeple chase (12, 2 miles), the Ubique Plate, (11, 1¼ miles), and the Jerusalem Scurry (for Mules, 5 furlongs).

The writer offers no excuse for inflicting all these details on the reader of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, for this was probably a unique meeting. It was held on a battle-field a few weeks after an action had been fought on it. Nearly all the horses engaged had carried their riders in the battle, and our patrols were in touch with the enemy a few miles away, while the meeting was in progress. A proportion of the entry money and the proceeds of the "tote" went to War charities which benefited to the extent of £200; and this sum would probably have been exceeded had it not been necessary for two Mounted Brigades and an

Infantry Division to leave Rafa for the front line on the day of the meeting.

The race of the day, the Sinai Grand National (40 starters and no gate!), was won by Captain R. F. K. Gooch, M.C., riding his horse Clautoi, to the delight of the Yeomanry in general and the Warwicks in particular. This horse, well known in England before the War, had a remarkable career. In early 1915 he was one of the horses who survived, when the Warwickshire horse boat "Wayfarer" was torpedoed in the Bristol Channel and was run ashore in a sinking condition at Queenstown. He was wounded at Katia, at Romani (where the writer saw him with blood streaming from a gaping shell wound in the neck, and also his owner shot through the arm) and, for the third time in twelve months, on the ground where he won the 2½ miles steeplechase a few weeks afterwards. A year later this gallant horse, after carrying his rider in the three Gaza battles, the advance to Jerusalem and the preceding waterless period (when the cavalry sometimes went two to three days without watering), won two more races in Palestine. After the War he was repatriated.

There was one casualty in the Sinai Grand National, Captain M. C. Albright (Worcester Yeomanry)* in the thick dust collided with a guide post, came down and received severe concussion; it was two months before he could return to his unit.

To many Yeomen the operations of the next few days, leading up to the first Battle of Gaza, came as an anti-climax after the Desert Column Spring Meeting.

On March 22nd the following orders for the Imperial Mounted Division to make a reconnaissance in force towards Gaza were issued :—†

"At 5 a.m. Imperial Mounted Division will proceed towards the Wadi Ghuzze. Objective of the Worcester Yeomanry is Sheikh Nebhan on the Wadi Ghuzze. First bound, Gloucester and Worcester Yeomanry proceed to Beni Sela, east of Khan Yunus. Second bound, Worcester Yeomanry proceed to 320 (In Seirat), and then move to 310 at 8 a.m. Warwick Yeomanry and Bearer sub-division of Field Ambulance proceed to 340, whence

* Master of the South Herefordshire, he was killed at the head of his squadron while charging the guns at Huj eight months later.

† This reconnaissance and subsequent movements leading up to March 26th may be followed on the map of Gaza I (appended), disregarding positions of units located for that battle.

Warwick Yeomanry take up a position on Tel El Jemmi. R.E. Field Troop and Worcester Yeomanry will look for wells near Seirat. D.H.Q. at 330 and B.H.Q. at Abu Teibig. 5th Mounted Brigade holds line Sheikh Nebhan to Abu Bakra (both on the Wadi). 3rd Light Horse Brigade on the left holds the line Sheikh Nebhan to the sea. 6th Mounted Brigade will be in Divisional Reserve behind Seirat: camels and tent subdivision of Field Ambulance remain at Khan Yunus. All ranks will carry six days' rations with them and on pack horses."

At 5 a.m. the 5th Mounted Brigade left its camp at Rafa. As we passed over the hill and descended into the Khan Yunus valley a veritable Promised Land met our view: below us lay a flourishing village dominated by the ruins of an ancient Crusader castle, and surrounded by tall trees and green fields which were irrigated by running water and plentifully dotted with bright coloured flowers; and stretching away in the distance appeared the green cornfields of Southern Palestine; on the rolling downs towards the sea many cattle and sheep were grazing.

It was a scene of peace and plenty, and a great contrast to the sandy desert of the Sinai Peninsula. At this time the country was still flourishing from the effects of the recent winter rains; a month or two later the same countryside presented a very different picture, when the cornfields had been transformed into dusty wastes under the feet of the cavalry and a relentless sun.

The 5th Mounted Brigade arrived at the village of Beni Sela at 7 a.m. and proceeding along the Goz El Taire ridge halted near the hamlet of In Seirat, where the 6th Mounted Brigade had already arrived. Some enemy aeroplanes came over but they dropped nothing. Crossing some very rough ground, intersected by many small wadis, the 5th Mounted Brigade arrived at the great Wadi Ghuzze; the Worcesters at Sheikh Nebhan, the Warwicks at Tel El Jemmi (a hill which rose sheer out of the bed of the Wadi), and the Gloucesters at Abu Bakra on the extreme right. Meanwhile the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade prolonged the line on the left from Sheikh Nebhan to the sea. This was our first view of the Wadi Ghuzze with its sandy bed containing pools of clear water, and its steep cliffs of

forty feet in height cut by numerous nullahs which afforded possible crossings. From Sheikh Nebhan, Gaza could be plainly seen some four and a half miles away. Patrols were pushed over the Wadi and some desultory scrapping with enemy outposts went on during the day, the Turks using small mountain guns which did little damage. While this reconnaissance was in progress, divisional and brigade commanders obtained a good view of the Turkish positions across the Wadi. As at the Battle of Rafa, the Bearer Subdivision of the 5th Mounted Brigade Field Ambulance came into action early in the day;; and being attacked by enemy patrols (from the south) near Abasan El Kebir retired to Beni Sela.

At 4 p.m. the reconnaissance completed, the Division was ordered to retire. The Warwicks, who covered the Yeomanry's retirement, suffered from low flying aeroplanes which used their machine guns. This regiment also had the unique experience of being attacked by Turkish cavalry who fired from their saddles, whilst trotting through the standing corn, needless to say without any effect.

On the following day the 22nd Mounted Brigade accompanied the Anzac Mounted Division on a similar expedition. This time the cavalry screen, consisting of a thin line of patrols kept as invisible as possible, moved some distance beyond the Wadi and came into more intimate contact with the enemy's outposts.

Again the ground was reconnoitred by Generals and their staffs, while working parties converted some of the nullahs which led down to the Wadi into crossings.

On March 25th the 5th Mounted Brigade left Rafa at 8 a.m. and proceeding along the beach halted amongst the sand dunes at Tel El Marakeb, where the 6th Mounted Brigade and the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade had already arrived. In the afternoon the Imperial Mounted Division (less the 4th Australian Light Horse Brigade) marched to Deir El Belah where it bivouacked on the shores of the lake. Close by lay the Anzac Mounted Division with the 22nd Mounted Brigade. The 53rd Division arrived after dusk. The 54th Division lay at In Seirat, the 52nd at Khan Yunus with the six dismounted

Yeomanry Regiments of the 229th Brigade, and the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade at Abasan El Kebir.

Meanwhile the route, which was to be followed by the Mounted troops that night (or rather early next morning), was carefully reconnoitred again as far as the Wadi Ghuzze. The Divisional Staffs and an officer from each Brigade were taken over it, sign-boards were put up and a trench was cut across the track at a point where the Column had to leave it and go across country for about 200 yards to another one.

The stage was now set for that singular battle known to history as Gaza I.; and the fact that G.H.Q., E.E.F. had temporarily moved its advanced H.Q. from the Savoy Hotel in Cairo (250 miles from the front) to a railway train at El Arish (only 50 miles from Gaza) gave some indication of the importance of impending operations.

We were given a very rough idea of the enemy's dispositions :—

“The enemy are in force at Huj, Abu Hareira, Tel El Sheria and Gaza. The Imperial Mounted Division will hold the line from Abu Teibig to Huj, facing South.* Anzac Mounted Division will hold the line from Huj to the sea, facing North. The 53rd Division will be on the Gaza road and the 54th Division will be in the vicinity of Sheikh Abbas.”

Rumour had it that the enemy possessed 48 guns of which 24 were in Gaza, and that the numbers of his troops were roughly as follows :—Gaza 4,000, Huj-Sihan 5,000, Beersheba 5,000 and Nejile 7,000.

While watering in the lake at Deir El Belah, information was received that the Gloucester Yeomanry would be detached from the 5th Mounted Brigade on the morrow in order to be included in “Money's Detachment.” This force commanded by Lieut.-Colonel N. Money consisted of the West Kent Battalion of the 160th Brigade (53rd Division), the Gloucester Yeomanry, and two 60-pdrs. of the 15th Heavy Battery; its rôle was to cross the Wadi on the sea shore at dawn, take up a position in the sand dunes and divert the enemy's attention on this flank; also to provide protection for the Heavy Battery. The Divi-

* The Southern portion of this 14 miles front, i.e., from the Gaza-Beersheba road to Abu Teibig, was to be held by the Imperial Camel Corps Brigade.

sional Cavalry of the 53rd Division, one squadron of the Duke of Lancaster's Own Yeomanry, received orders to cross the Wadi by the main Gaza road and accompany the 91st Heavy Battery at dawn.

At 2 a.m. (March 26th) the Anzac Mounted Division* rode out of Deir El Belah in the following order :—2nd Australian Light Horse Brigade, New Zealand Mounted Rifle Brigade and 22nd Mounted (Yeomanry) Brigade; behind the latter came the Imperial Mounted Division† led by the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade and followed by 6th and 5th Mounted (Yeomanry) Brigades. Each Brigade was accompanied by its R.H.A. Battery. It was pitch dark. It had been arranged that the whole Column should pass in rear of the 53rd Division at Seirat before the Infantry were on the move, but by the time the Imperial Mounted Division reached the end of the Goz El Taire ridge the 53rd had already begun to move and for a time considerable confusion was caused by the mixture of the two arms. However owing to good leading the break, caused by the delay, between the two Cavalry Divisions was soon mended. A little later a break occurred in the Imperial Mounted Division, owing to the leading Brigade which had been riding in sections, suddenly shortening up into column of troops; through this gap a whole battalion of Infantry penetrated. Directly they were through, the last two Yeomanry Brigades broke into a trot and managed to catch up the Column, in spite of the rough ground and inky darkness, as it halted at the prepared crossing of the Wadi Ghuzze at Jerrar. A thick fog now descended which rendered the passage of the Wadi a very lengthy proceeding. By 5 a.m. the crossing was completed.

We will first follow the fortunes of the Anzac Mounted Division with the 22nd Mounted Brigade. This Division rode now north east over Sheikh Abbas, brushing aside numerous enemy patrols *en route*. By the time the Gaza-Beersheba road was reached at 7 a.m. the fog had lifted, disclosing some Turkish transport, which was captured. Enemy aeroplanes were troublesome for a time, as they flew low over the Division using

* Less the 1st A.L.H. Brigade.

† Less the 4th A.L.H. Brigade.

their machine guns; they were, however, eventually driven off by the rifle fire of the Australians and Yeomen. The Division was now riding over an ideal grass country, intersected by little wadis containing water. Small parties of Turks were met which the flank guards galloped down at will.

By 9 a.m. the Division halted at Beit* Durdis. Here many of the horses were watered in the Wadi Hamra which still contained pools of clear water from the late winter rains. With Beit Durdis as Divisional H.Q., the 2nd A.L.H. Brigade was despatched to the north of Gaza where it captured the G.O.C. 53rd Turkish Division (and Staff), who was proceeding to take over his command in the town. The 2nd A.L.H. Brigade obtained possession of the large pond just north of Gaza (which was most useful for watering the horses of the Division during the day), occupied Jebalie, sent patrols up the Northern road to watch the enemy at Deir Seneid, and prolonged their line to the sea by 11 a.m.

Meanwhile the N.Z.M.R. Brigade had concentrated at Beit Durdis, the Lincoln, Stafford and East Riding Yeomanries (of the 22nd Mounted Brigade) under Brig.-General Fryer forming up south of the New Zealanders. At the same time strong patrols were sent out by the New Zealanders and Yeomanry to watch the vicinity of Huj and Nejd (N.E. of Huj), where they came in contact with the enemy.

We will now return to the Imperial Mounted Division which had crossed the Wadi Ghuzze at 5.30 a.m. By 6 a.m. the Divisional rendezvous at Mendur was reached, where the R.H.A. batteries and Field Ambulances joined up. Two hours later, delayed by the fog, the Division reached the Gaza-Beersheba road and cut the telegraph wire; here it was attacked by several German aeroplanes with machine guns which caused parties to dismount to fire back at them and more delay.

The Division continued its way north east over down-like country covered with closely cropped turf, actually intersected by English-looking brooks fringed with kingcups. As the author of one Yeomanry History puts it :—"The horses got more

* Beit—a house.

and better water than had been available for them for many months."

The 5th Mounted Brigade (less the Gloucestershire Yeomanry) halted just east of Khirbit* Sihan where the regiments and their Battery, "B," H.A.C., watered. The 6th Mounted Brigade halted north of Khirbit Reseim (Divisional H.Q.), and the 3rd A.L.H. Brigade on the Wadi Fuailis in touch with the 22nd Mounted Brigade at Beit Durdis.

By 10.30 a.m. the Desert Column had accomplished its mission of enveloping Gaza and interposing its mounted troops between the town and Turkish formations to the east and north, thus creating a passage for the main Infantry attack from the south.

Each of the three Brigades of the Imperial Mounted Division moved out eastwards, gradually spreading out fan-wise as they did so. Units had to keep continually on the move as enemy aeroplanes overhead were constantly giving the range to a big Austrian howitzer at Hareira, which caused the Warwickshire Yeomanry the loss of Captain Smith-Ryland, several ORs. and some horses, just south of Sihan. This regiment of the 5th Mounted Brigade watched the Turks on the extreme right of the Imperial Mounted Division, astride the Gaza-Beersheba road, where it joined up with the Imperial Camel Corps which was strung out to Mendur. While the Warwickshire Yeomanry was patrolling south east, the Worcesters on their left had despatched C Squadron towards Hareira where it watched the enemy. D Squadron patrolled towards Zuheilika where it encountered some Turkish Lancers who retreated before the Squadron could charge them; while A. Squadron moved out towards Sheria. This Squadron surprised a small Turkish camp and charged about a hundred semi-naked men, who hastily surrendered before receiving the point of the sword. The camp turned out to be a delousing station, the personnel of which were not aware of the Cavalry's advance. Men never fight well mother-naked, hence the return of A Squadron with some 100 Turks at the double, wearing only pants, amidst shrieks of laughter.

While this little comedy was being enacted the great tragedy

* Khirbit—a ruin or pile of stones.

of the First Battle of Gaza had commenced, heavy firing being heard some nine miles away to the west.

About the Wadi Fuailis patrols of the 6th Mounted Brigade were active. One of these, Lieutenant Lidderdale with 11 ORs. of the Dorset Yeomanry, was told to proceed to Khirbit Kufieh and to send back information about any enemy movement from the north. Finding K. Kufieh occupied he sent back the information, and arriving within sight of Huj cut the Huj-Gaza telegraph wire. Here he lay up and observed for an hour or more, when a large force of Turks left Huj marching south. Lidderdale and his men found themselves surrounded on three sides; but although heavily fired at and chased by Turkish Cavalry the patrol escaped and reported to D.H.Q. half an hour later.

Up till now the Yeomanry had only been involved in skirmishes with the enemy east of the line Beit Durdis-Baha, but about midday he began to show signs of real activity and columns of Infantry were reported by patrols to be advancing from Huj, Sheria and Beersheba. One of these columns was engaged by A Squadron Worcestershire Yeomanry, and for the next two hours some very pretty cavalry fighting took place over the undulating downland which was ideal for manœuvring. The head of the column was not met frontally, but it halted suddenly as a brisk fire broke out on one flank. By the time the Turks had deployed to the threatened flank, the Yeomanry, making use of their mobility and the undulating ground, had vanished into thin air. A few minutes later the enemy was fired at in rear by another troop, which in its turn faded away, while a brisk fire broke out against the enemy's other flank from Yeomen who had been hidden in a fold in the ground. Harried this way and that by their mobile opponents, and never given the chance of making a frontal attack where their numbers might have told, the enemy finally retired from the contest until sunset. This method of defence carried out by A Squadron, commanded by Major Ffrench Blake, M.C. (21st Lancers),* was adopted later in the

* Killed three weeks later at Gaza II, he was one of four Regular Cavalry officers sent to the Worcestershire Yeomanry in 1916. Owing to casualties during 1915-16 this unit only had six of its original officers left and those who arrived with drafts were mostly very young.

afternoon against another column with equal success and without suffering a single casualty to men or horses.

Up till now, about 3 p.m., the Anzac Mounted Division with the 22nd Mounted Brigade had not been seriously engaged with the enemy, who was chiefly concerned with the main Infantry attack (53rd Division) from the south. At 3.30 p.m. orders were received for the 2nd A.L.H. Brigade to attack from the sea to the Gaza-Jebaile road, the N.Z.M.R. Brigade from the road to the "Anzac" ridge (which north-east of Gaza runs south to Ali Muntar), and the 22nd Mounted Brigade thence to the Beit-Durdis road.

At 4 p.m. the attack commenced. The Lincoln, Stafford and East Riding Yeomanries under Brig.-General Fryer advanced at a gallop down the road from Beit Durdis to Gaza and, after occupying a part of the "Anzac" ridge afterwards known as Fryer's Hill, fought their way into the eastern suburbs before dusk. Meanwhile the 2nd A.L.H. Brigade and the N.Z.M.R. Brigade had after severe hand-to-hand fighting entered the northern and north eastern part of the town respectively; and the New Zealanders, joining up with the Yeomanry, turning south against Ali Muntar entered the trenches just after these had been captured by part of the 53rd Division assisted by the 161st Infantry Brigade.

A little later British Cavalry and Infantry met one another in the eastern streets of the town. All appeared to be over except the shouting and the fact that some enemy in the sand dunes still held up "Money's" detachment near the coast. There was even one case* of notifiable disease amongst our troops as the result of our entry into the town.

The centre of Gaza had not been occupied by our troops; and there sat a disconsolate German officer, Major Tiller, temporarily in command of the Gaza garrison, who had been waiting all day for the G.O.C. Turkish 53rd Division to take over. This gentleman had been captured, as related, by the Australian Light Horse when he was approaching the town in the morning. By 6 p.m. Tiller was sending urgent wireless messages to General Kress von Kressenstein at Sheria for help as the British had

* Who had emulated Samson, *vide* Judges XVI, 1.

entered the town; and a little later on hearing that no help could arrive till next day when it would be too late, he was arranging to burn all papers and blow up an ammunition dump (and this was actually done).

We must now return to the 5th and 6th Mounted Brigade whose Yeomen we left doing practically what they liked with enemy patrols and larger formations east of the line Beit Durdis-Baha. About 3 p.m. Major-General Hodgson issued orders for the Imperial Mounted Division to move further northwards in order to take over the outposts of the N.Z.M.R. Brigade and the 22nd Mounted Brigade, as the New Zealanders and Yeomanry were about to attack Gaza.

The 6th Mounted (Brig.-General T. M. Pitt) accordingly left the neighbourhood of K. Reseim and proceeded to Beit Durdis; but while relieving the 22nd Mounted Brigade's outposts a mile and a half north-east of Beit Durdis, and while the majority of the Berks, Bucks and Dorset Yeomanry were watering, a strong Turkish attack from the direction of Huj drove in the posts on Hill 405.

General Hodgson then ordered the 6th Mounted Brigade with the Berkshire R.H.A. Battery to retake the hill, which meanwhile had been occupied in force.

The 3rd A.L.H. Brigade of the Imperial Mounted Division, which had been loaned to the Anzac Division (to cover the attack on Gaza), was hastily recalled and soon afterwards occupied a hill north-west of 405 with its Battery, the Notts R.H.A. The timely arrival of the 3rd A.L.H. Brigade relieved the pressure on the 6th Mounted Brigade. With the Notts and Berks Batteries firing from positions north west and south west of Hill 405, the Turks on the crest of that hill were enfiladed and suffered considerable loss. The Berks Battery was later caught by the fire of three Turkish Batteries in the Wadi Kofkah and was forced to withdraw.

While this action was going on the 5th Mounted Brigade (Brig.-General E. A. Wiggin, D.S.O.), whose H.Q. were astride the Gaza-Beersheba road by the Wadi Baha, received orders to occupy the line between K. Reseim and Beit Durdis, as soon as the Imperial Camel Corps took over the Yeomanry line from

K. Reseim to the main road. The Camel Corps, however, did not receive Desert Column's order until much later, and consequently the Yeomanry did not move north for about two hours. But meanwhile they were kept well occupied. About 4.30 p.m. Lieut.-Colonel H. J. Williams, D.S.O. (K.D.Gs.), commanding Worcestershire Yeomanry, which was located between K. Reseim and M. Baghl, received a message from the Berkshire Yeomanry that it was being heavily attacked and was in need of support. A gap had now occurred between the right of the 6th Mounted Brigade and the left of the 5th, because owing to the non-arrival of the Camels the 5th had not been able to move north. This gap was being watched by D. Squadron Worcestershire Yeomanry, and it was this Squadron which Lieut.-Colonel Williams sent to assist the Berkshire Yeomanry.

Meanwhile the Warwickshire Yeomanry were heavily engaged near B.H.Q., between the Beersheba road and a spot called Hurab Drab, against considerable bodies of Infantry advancing along and to the north of the Gaza road from Hareira.

C Squadron Worcestershire Yeomanry was already on the Warwickshire Yeomanry's left, and a little later A Squadron was ordered to join C. Our position was a good one with a magnificent field of fire. About a mile away and slightly below us could be seen a large column of Infantry marching up the road. As soon as our Yeoman, aided by the Brigade machine guns, got the range the enemy was forced to extend. Clouds of dust just visible in the half light showed that more troops were on the march from Beersheba. The enemy returned our fire but with very little effect as from our position we were practically invisible, and he had no field guns. The Turks must have suffered heavily for the attack was in no way pressed home, and when darkness put a stop to the firing, Brig.-General Wiggin was confident of maintaining his position till morning. Water was plentiful and the casualties suffered by his Brigade were trifling. It was now 6 p.m.

While this action was in progress the Imperial Camel Corps* had arrived at K. Reseim; but there was still a gap between that

* Its former line Sihan-Mendur had been taken over by outposts of the 54th Division.

spot (a heap of stones) and Beit Durdis, which the 5th Mounted Brigade should have filled had it not been actively engaged astride the Beersheba road. The 10th Australian Light Horse Regiment (3rd A.L.H. Brigade) was brought down at the gallop in the growing darkness, on it being reported that an enemy column was about to pierce the gap. The Australians met the column and drove it back in confusion.

Three enemy columns were also reported to be marching down the road towards Gaza from the north; these were driven back by the 6th Australian Light Horse Regiment assisted by a squadron of the 22nd Mounted Brigade and some light armoured cars.

The advance of the enemy from the north and east had been now successfully checked, and officers on the spot felt confident of maintaining their positions, at any rate until morning.

The third Regiment of the 5th Mounted Brigade, the Gloucestershire Yeomanry, had been in action across the Wadi in the sand dunes on the coast most of the day. Fortunately the Wadi contained many pools of water in which the horses were watered. At 2 p.m. they had advanced with the West Kent on their right and opened fire on the enemy's trenches. Although the trenches were not captured, the enemy's attention had been diverted to this flank, and at dusk the Yeomanry covered the Infantry's retirement to the Wadi.

At 6 p.m. two worried General Officers* (Sir Charles Dobell, G.O.C. East Force, and Sir Philip Chetwode, G.O.C. Desert Column) were discussing the situation on the banks of the Wadi Ghuzze near Seirat. It was nearly dark. Ali Muntar had not fallen (it was captured half an hour later and our troops were in the streets of Gaza). The two Generals knew nothing of Major Tiller's despairing wireless messages to Kress at Sheria. These had been picked up in Cairo, deciphered, translated and forwarded to Rafa within 15 minutes, but owing to some delay did not arrive at East Force H.Q. till 11 p.m.

Sir Philip Chetwode came to the conclusion that "the sands had run out." He was wrongly informed that most of his horses

* The Official Historian compares the position of Sir Philip Chetwode, subordinate to Sir Charles Dobell—with that of Sir Charles Warren conducting the Spion Kop operations while Sir Redvers Buller was looking on.

had not been watered!* and he felt that with Gaza still held by the enemy he could not leave half his mounted troops involved in fighting in the gardens of the town, while the other half were being attacked from the north and east.

At 6.10 p.m. he telegraphed an order to the Mounted Troops that they should break off the action and retire across the Wadi Ghuzze, and at 6.35 (5 minutes after the victory of Gaza had been won) Sir Charles Dobell sent the same order to the whole of Desert Column (including 53rd Division and Imperial Camel Corps) and the 54th Division.

It may be of interest to see how these orders affected the eight Yeomanry Regiments in the triangle Gaza-Huj-Baha. It was pitch dark. For the Lincoln, Stafford and East Riding Yeomanries "cease fire" had already sounded, for these units were in the eastern suburbs of Gaza, and their wounded were being collected after the recent fighting. This Brigade had sent a squadron to assist an Australian Regiment three miles north of Gaza which returned in due course to its regiment. Some of the Australians were four miles from their horses and it was 1 a.m. on March 27th by the time the Anzac Mounted Division with the 22nd Mounted Brigade were all collected west of Beit Durdis.

But for the 5th and 6th Mounted Brigades it was a different matter; both were still engaged with the enemy when the order was received to rendezvous at Beit Durdis.

The 5th Mounted Brigade, consisting of only the Warwickshire and Worcestershire Yeomanry, the latter less D Squadron which was assisting the Berks near Huj, was strung out along the Wadi Baha, some eight miles from Beit Durdis. Now arose the question of reassembling the scattered squadrons of the Brigade in the pitch darkness, and vacating the outpost line without letting the enemy know of the retirement. While this was being effected, the M.O. of the Worcestershire Yeomanry was despatched with a couple of men to the vicinity of Huj with

* In General Sir Archibald Murray's fourth despatch dated June 28th, 1917, and not published in full until 1920 (Dent & Sons), it is stated on page 149 (line 2) that: "The majority of the mounted troops had been unable to water their horses during the day." This statement was refuted a year later by Lt.-Col. J. G. Browne, C.M.G., D.S.O. p.s.c., 14th Hussars, G.S.O.I. Anzac Mounted Division, in the *CAVALRY JOURNAL*, July, 1921. The 1932 volume (January) contains a letter on this subject which proves that the majority of the horses were watered.

orders to collect D Squadron and conduct it to the Divisional rendezvous at Beit Durdis. There was no difficulty about finding the direction as the flashes of the Notts and Berkshire R.H.A. Batteries were plainly visible away to the north. The M.O. proceeded with the utmost caution, fully aware of the proximity of the enemy's outposts on his right. He did not know, at the time, that he was riding across the front of the 10th Australian Light Horse Regiment's outposts also. After riding some three miles and stumbling over small wadis and crossing the Wadi Fuailis in the dark, D Squadron was discovered just below a ridge on the top of which the Berkshire Yeomanry were in action. The M.O. had hoped that the squadron would be able to follow the "road," which the map showed, from Huj to Beit Durdis, but this turned out to be only a faintly marked track over the downs and quite indiscernible in the dark. He had, however, been given the bearing from the position the squadron was supposed to be in to Beit Durdis, before starting, and on this bearing the squadron set out. The firing line of the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade and the 6th Mounted prevented Major Straker (O.C. D Squadron) from edging too far north, but his compass ride was complicated by a series of wadis over which crossings had to be found. These, and numerous halts to allow guns or troops to cross the squadron, necessitated a frequent change of direction, correction, careful timing, and mental arithmetic. Consequently it is not surprising that the squadron took two hours to cover three miles. At Beit Durdis (actually a stone hut) two frightened orderlies hastily packing up maps, etc., constituted D.H.Q., but it was ascertained that the G.O.C. and his staff had moved two miles nearer Gaza.

Proceeding westwards a staff officer of the Division was encountered but he could give no information as to the whereabouts of the Regiment or Brigade. A little later the M.O., who was riding in advance of the squadron, rode into a R.H.A. Battery which was halted. It was "B," H.A.C., waiting for orders to move. Other detachments were encountered in the dark, but not a single staff or regimental officer met with could give any information as to the situation. The squadron had

been riding south for some hours, as that seemed to be the direction in which most detachments were drifting, when it struck the Gaza-Beersheba road. A motor despatch rider was stopped as he rode up from the south. He was interrogated by the S.S.M., and his reply issuing from a cloud of dust and fumes put new life into the weary squadron: "Gaza has fallen, the —ing war is over and I am taking in despatches to the 53rd Division."

O.C. Squadron and the M.O. debated the question of riding straight up the road into Gaza; why not be in at the death and find the regiment next day? Neither the O.C. Squadron nor the M.O. had any inkling of the general order for all the cavalry to retire behind the Wadi Ghuzze. So they proceeded up the road with the squadron and in the early hours of the morning fell in with their regiment, which was halted on the side of the road above K. Sihan.

It appeared that the Regiment (Worcestershire Yeomanry) had after disengaging on the Wadi Baha, reached the new D.H.Q., two miles west of Beit Durdis by midnight. The 6th Mounted and 3rd Light Horse Brigades had remained in position to cover the retirement of the Anzac Mounted Division which had been extricated from Gaza. By 2 a.m. that Division had passed Beit Durdis *en route* for K. Sihan and the Jerrar crossing of the Wadi Ghuzze. The Imperial Mounted Division was therefore concentrated at Beit Durdis and despatched by General Hodgson on the same route.

O.C. Worcestershire Yeomanry had been ordered to join up with B.H.Q. and the Warwickshire Yeomanry, and two hours later, waiting for the rest of the Brigade at Sihan, D. Squadron had fallen in with him as related. The Worcestershire Yeomanry continued to wait by the side of the road, as various units rode by.

"Who is following behind you?" Colonel Williams kept asking each formation. At length a battalion of the Camel Corps appeared in the early dawn. "Who is following behind you?" called out the C.O. once more.

"The Turks," was the laconic answer. The Regiment continued its retirement (the Warwickshire Yeomanry and B.H.Q.

having taken a different route) and riding in the early morning over very rough ground, often held up by transport columns, guns and precipitous ravines, reached a crossing of the Wadi Ghuzze near Sheikh Nèbhan by 6 a.m.

Just before descending from the higher ground a last view of Gaza, with its stately minarets was obtained. Gaza which had been and was no longer ours! Some armoured cars came by, they had narrowly escaped capture when covering the retreat of the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade. Everywhere was to be seen evidence of our hurried retreat, each unit striving to cross the Wadi as quickly as possible. Endless streams of camels bore our swaying wounded westward, and as day broke the Turkish guns commenced to shell the Wadi.

The withdrawal of the Anzac Mounted Division and the leading Brigade (5th Mounted) of the Imperial Mounted Division had been a slow and laborious affair, mainly owing to formations being widely scattered in the darkness, and often intermixed and confused orders. There had been no hostile pressure. But the 3rd Australian Light Horse Brigade and the 6th Mounted Brigade, who brought up the rear proceeding by different routes, both had to fight rearguard actions.

The Dorset Yeomanry (Lieut.-Colonel Sir Randolphe Baker) had considerable difficulty in collecting its squadrons when the engagement near Hill 405 was broken off after dark.* A Squadron (Major Dammers) had lost touch with its horses, and had to foot it for some miles before it had the luck to fall in with them. The divisional rendezvous west of Beit Durdis was not reached till 4.30 a.m., when the whole 6th Mounted Brigade retired *viâ* Sihan, the Dorset Yeomanry covering its retirement. At 6 a.m. as the Regiment was crossing the Gaza-Beersheba road the Turks began to shell it, and a little later the enemy could be seen advancing up the road. This was probably one of the columns with which the Warwickshire Yeomanry had been engaged on the previous evening, and which hoped to catch the Dorset Yeomanry in flank. That Regiment broke into a trot, leaving Major Digby with B Squadron as a rearguard. "The

* In the general confusion following the withdrawal under fire in the dark Brigadier-General Pitt "lost" the Dorset Yeomanry completely and, according to his Brigade Major, only found them again at midnight by accident.

enemy pressed on eagerly and B Squadron had their work cut out to cover the retirement and not get left."

At one time the Hotchkiss gun and No. 2 Troop (Lieutenant Benchcroft) were heavily engaged at 600 yards, "and it was only the coolness of the men that enabled the squadron to fulfill its difficult rôle and extricate itself."

By 10 a.m. (March 27th) nine tired Yeomanry Regiments were back in their bivouacks at Deir El Belah; they had watered and fed and were hoping for some rest when orders came to saddle up. A defensive position was taken up on the Seirat Ridge and along the Wadi Ghuzze, and a third night was spent without any sleep.

So ended the First Battle of Gaza as far as the mounted troops were concerned. A feeling of depression settled on most Yeomen, which was not decreased when "The Times" (weekly edition) of April 6th, 1917, arrived a few weeks later with the following headlines:—

"Fight for the Holy Land."

"Sir A. Murray's Victory."

"20,000 Turks Defeated."

And even the fact (reported in the same edition) that the C.-in-C. had received congratulatory telegrams from the King, the Imperial War Cabinet, the President of the French Republic and others, on his victory, raised no enthusiasm amongst the troops.

Three weeks later followed the Second Battle of Gaza, and after that the deluge—for it simply poured bowler hats.

BATTLE ORDER OF YEOMANRY FORMATIONS PRESENT AT FIRST BATTLE OF GAZA—1917.

In the Imperial Mounted Division (commanded by Major-General H. W. Hodgson, C.V.O., C.B.):—

5th Mounted Brigade.

G.O.C. : Brig.-General E. A. Wiggin, D.S.O.

1/1 Warwickshire Yeomanry.

1/1 R. Gloucestershire Hussars.

1/1 Q.O. Worcestershire Hussars.

6th Mounted Brigade.

G.O.C. : Brig.-General T. S. M. Pitt.

1/1 R. Bucks Hussars.

1/1 Q.O. Dorset Yeomanry.

1/1 Berkshire Yeomanry.

In the Anzac Mounted Division (commanded by Major-General Sir H. G. Chauvel, K.C.M.G., C.B.) :—

22nd Mounted Brigade.

G.O.C. : Brig.-General F. A. B. Fryer.

1/1 Lincolnshire Yeomanry.

1/1 Q.O. Staffordshire Yeomanry.

1/1 East Riding Yeomanry.

In the 53rd Division :—

1/1 Duke of Lancaster's Own Yeomanry (one squadron).

In the 54th Division :—

1/1 Hertfordshire Yeomanry (one squadron).

The following were in reserve at Khan Yunus, and took no active part in the battle :—

In the 52nd Division :—

1/1 R. Glasgow Yeomanry (one squadron).

229th Infantry Brigade (of 74th Dismounted Yeomanry Division).

1/1 Royal 1st Devon Yeomanry.

1/1 Royal North Devon Yeomanry.

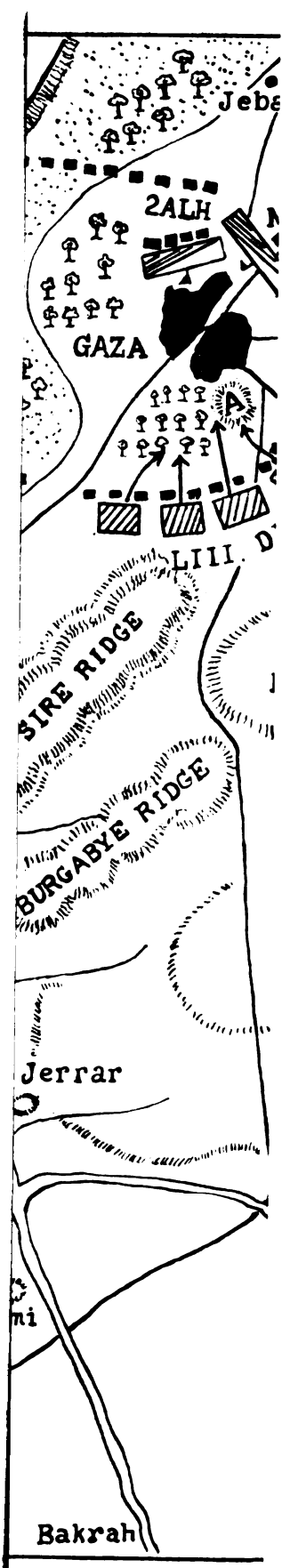
1/1 West Somerset Yeomanry.

1/1 Fife and Forfar Yeomanry.

1/1 Ayrshire Yeomanry.

1/1 Lanarkshire Yeomanry.

The writer has based the above account on his book "The Diary of a Yeomanry M.O." (published in 1921), but he wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to the Official History of the War (Egypt and Palestine, Vol. I) and to the Histories of the Worcestershire and Dorset Yeomanries in the Great War.



TWO CAVALRY RAIDS OF THE GREAT WAR

BY MAJOR E. W. SHEPPARD, O.B.E., M.C.

II. *The Raid of the German Cavalry Corps at the Battle of Wilna, September, 1915.*

INTRODUCTORY.

DURING the whole summer of 1915 the armies of the Central Powers in the Eastern theatre of war had been continuously on the offensive against the Russians. Their success had been striking and extensive, and by the end of August the Russian armies, which in May had held a line close up to the borders of East Prussia, well in front of Warsaw, and along the crests of the Carpathians, had been thrust back to a depth of over 200 miles along the southern, and close on 60 miles along the northern half of their front. Their right wing and centre, now ran on a general north and south line covering at a short distance to the west Riga, Dvinsk and Vilna, and thence to the east of Orany, Grodno and Bialystok.

This series of important victories gained by the Central Powers had not however been in any sense decisive in its results; and now that the moment was clearly at hand when the German front in the Western theatre would be heavily attacked by superior forces, Von Falkenhayn, the German Chief of Staff, decided that the offensive in the East must be suspended and all available troops be held in instant readiness for despatch to the West. Hindenburg and Ludendorff, in command at German "G.H.Q. East," however, who had throughout advocated vigorous large scale operations in that theatre, designed definitely to knock Russia out before the Western allies were ready to attack in force, pleaded to be allowed to try one more thrust in the north before operations finally closed down, and

permission for this, under strict limitations of force and time, was somewhat grudgingly given at the end of August.

Situation and Battle Plans of the Northern German Armies.

At this time the front of the German Tenth Army, under Gen. Von Eichhorn, to which the chief role in the forthcoming attack had been allotted, ran from a point south-west of Orany by Troki Nowe to Wilkomierz. On its right stood first Von Scholtz's Eighth Army, east of Grodno, and Von Gallwitz's Twelfth Army, with its right extending to Wolkowysk; this town marked the extreme southern limit of German "G.H.Q. East's" command, the front thence to the south being held by the Austrians. To the north of the Tenth Army was Otto Von Below's Niemen Army, extending the front due northwards to the River Dvina and the Baltic Coast. The Tenth Army, with which our story will be principally concerned, comprised at this date seventeen and a half infantry and four cavalry divisions.

The enemy in its front (Radkevich's Russian Tenth Army) was believed to outnumber it considerably: there were reported to be twenty infantry divisions in line, eleven north of the River Wilia, nine south of it: but their right wing was believed to extend no further north than Schirwinty, the front thence to the extreme left of the Russian Fifth Army, which stood only just south of Dvinsk, being observed by Cossacks only. This gap obviously offered a favourable opportunity for rapid penetration and exploitation.

G.H.Q. East's object, as given in the orders issued on September 6th, was to beat the Russians decisively before they could effect their retirement from the area between the Wilia and the Beresina. The plan was for the Twelfth and Eighth Armies to press north-east astride the Wolkowysk-Lida-Molodechno railway; the Tenth Army was to attack on its whole front, reinforcing and throwing forward its left wing so as to encircle Wilna from the north, while the 6th Cavalry Corps with four divisions was to break into the gap from the area north of Wilkomierz in the direction Kukuzischki-Uzjany. The Niemen Army on its right was to keep up the pressure all along its front.

Gen. Von Eichhorn, G.O.C. Tenth Army, decided to allot nine of his infantry divisions (Groups Carlowitz and Litzmann) to the frontal attack on his right wing and centre astride the Wilia, and eight (Groups Hutier and Eben) to the turning movement to the north. September 9th was allotted as zero day for the commencement of the offensive.

The First Stage of the Raid, September 9th—16th.

The first task of the Cavalry Corps under Gen. Von Garnier, as given in Tenth Army orders, was to move forward into the thinly held gap in the enemy front by way of Uzjany and cover the left flank of the army in the area north of Lake Maliaty, holding itself ready to co-operate closely with the infantry turning movement as opportunity presented itself.

The country over which operations were now to take place was closely wooded, interspersed with steep hills and deeply cut ravine valleys, affording a succession of good defensive positions and rendering effective co-operation of all arms in the attack difficult. The opposing entrenched lines were not so continuous or elaborate as on the Western front, and the width of No Man's land was usually much greater, so that assembly and manoeuvre were within limits easier and less likely to be interfered with by hostile action; on the other hand, owing to paucity of communications and the extent of the area of operations in proportion to the forces employed, offensive movements had usually to be carried out on a broad front, without much depth to sustain pressure or exploit success.

On September 9th and 10th, while the holding attacks on the right and centre of the Tenth Army front pinned the Russians there to their ground, the left wing swung forward pivoting on the centre, and the Eben Group on the outer flank reached the line Schirwinty-Lake Maliaty without meeting any real resistance; it was heading for Ljudjuna on the Dvinsk-Wilna railway. From here onwards its progress was somewhat slowed up by the arrival of fresh hostile troops to oppose it, and the Cavalry Corps away to the north-west of Uzjany, which it had reached without seeing anything of the enemy, extended its right southwards to Lake Dubinki to maintain touch with

the left flank of the infantry. However, by the evening of September 12th the Eben Group had reached and crossed the railway and captured Swenzjany; its rapid advance had apparently come as a surprise to the enemy, who was hurriedly detrainning troops at Wilna and the stations north and east of it, and was reported to be massing cavalry at Widsy to threaten Eben's left.

Gen. Von Eichhorn, having successfully thrust his left wing so far forward as effectively to overlap his immediate adversary's flank, now ordered the Eben Group to swing southwards across the Wilia, and come in on the rear of the Russians holding the approaches to Vilna. Garnier's Cavalry Corps was also switched off in a south-easterly direction; its main body was directed from the area north of Swenzjany to pass between Lakes Swir and Narocz and send out detachments to destroy the railway running North East from Molodechno by Wileika and Polotsk; one of its divisions was to be left behind to observe the hostile cavalry reported at Widsy.

Accordingly on this day Von Garnier left behind the 9th Cavalry Division near Polusche to observe the Cossack masses and to maintain touch with the Bavarian Cavalry Division, which was covering the flank of Von Below's Niemen Army away to the north, and with his main body covered ten miles from Swenzjany in the direction of Molodechno; his patrols, sent out as ordered, effected a few demolitions in the Polotsk-Molodechno railway and returned safely. Nothing was seen of the enemy either on this day or the next; and the evening of September 14th found the cavalry halted south of Lake Narocz, less than ten miles from the Wilna-Molodechno railway, which formed the only line of communications of the Russian forces still stubbornly holding Wilna. Away to the north the 9th Cavalry Division, having seen nothing of the reported Cossack concentration at Widsy, had followed in the wake of the main body to Swenzjany.

Meanwhile, however, far away in rear, at Headquarters of "G.H.Q. East," ominous news had come in that the enemy, now alive to the menace to his Tenth Army, was rapidly shifting strong forces northwards to fill the yawning gap extending over the seventy-five miles, between Molodechno and the Dvina river.

One cavalry and eight infantry divisions were reported to be abroad or coming up by rail, and time was short if the fleeting chance of striking a serious blow were not to be lost. Early on the 15th therefore Von Eichhorn was urgently ordered to push on swiftly and vigorously with all available forces, and a direct order was sent from "G.H.Q. East" to the Cavalry Corps to raid and destroy effectively and extensively all the railway lines around Molodechno, so as to delay as long as possible the arrival of the Russian reinforcements.

Unfortunately when this order reached Von Garnier part of his force was already engaged in carrying out an earlier task entrusted to him by the Tenth Army, which was now not unnaturally, but, as it happened quite unnecessarily, nervous about the danger overhanging its exposed left from the Cossacks, believed still to be at Widsy. The 9th Cavalry Division had been hurried off to the northwards to unite with the Bavarian Cavalry Division, and to attack and disperse this threatening hostile concentration, and as the 3rd Cavalry Division also was on a detached mission away to the north-east, on September 15th it crossed the Molodechno-Dvinsk railway at Krzywicze, apparently without doing any serious or lasting damage to the line—Von Garnier was left with two divisions, only half his force, to fulfil the all-important mission now entrusted to him.

Nevertheless the first stage of the raid was successfully accomplished almost without opposition from the enemy, whose attention was fully engaged by the unrelenting pressure on his front and right flank in the Wilna section. The vital railway line from thence to Molodechno was reached and crossed and destroyed for a considerable length at and west of Smorgon, where a good deal of transport and material, including 3,000 head of cattle, fell into the raiders' hands. The 1st Cavalry Division pushed southward beyond it to Zuprany; the 4th Cavalry Division extended along the Osmziana stream, from the west bank of which however it was unable to drive the defenders; it halted for the night on the line Soly-Zuprany. This threat to their rear, combined with the advance of the Group Eben against their northern flank in the angle between

the Oszmijana stream and the Wilia, placed the Russians defending Wilna in an awkward position, and only a rapid retirement seemed to offer them any hope of escape.

Accordingly Tenth Army orders for the 16th enjoined a converging vigorous offensive from north-west by all available troops of the four infantry groups. The task of the Cavalry Corps was to press strongly against the hostile rear with its main body, the 1st and 4th Cavalry Divisions, which were also to send detachments southward to cut the Lida-Molodechno railway so as to interrupt the transport of reinforcements by that line. The 3rd Cavalry Division was ordered to seize Molodechno, put out of action a Russian Army Headquarters believed to be in the town, destroy the Polotsk-Molodechno railway as completely as possible, and try also to cut the railway running south east to Minsk. To the 9th Cavalry Division, which had safely effected its junction with the Bavarian Cavalry Division and established the fact that the Russian cavalry, reported at Widsy, were falling back, was entrusted the duty of covering the left flank of the Tenth Army on the wide front between the Molodechno-Polotsk railway and the Postawy-Swenzjany road.

But the grand operation of the 16th, which was expected to lead to the rapid dispersal or destruction of the stubborn Russian defenders of Wilna, missed fire badly. The infantry failed to make any progress worth mentioning either west or north-east of the town, and a wide gap of ten miles still separated the left of the Group Eben at Gerwjaty from the right of the 4th Cavalry Division west of Smorgon. Nor could the latter manage to establish themselves on the further bank of the Oszmijana stream in face of tenacious hostile resistance; while the somewhat half-hearted efforts of the 1st Cavalry Division further to the south to extend the enveloping movement in the direction of Olzany were also checked, and the division was brought to a stand at Boruny. The leading elements of the 3rd Cavalry Division reached Wileika on the Molodechno-Polotsk railway and effected some unimportant demolitions; the 3rd Cavalry Division was still far off to the north somewhere east of Postawy, in no position to assist its

comrades, even had its orders not confined it to an attitude purely of observation.

The Failure of the Raid, September 17th—26th.

From the early hours of September 17th onwards the situation of the German Cavalry became increasingly difficult. There was no sign of the arrival of its own infantry, which as a matter of fact were still held up far to the west by Stubborn Russian rearguards covering the southward withdrawal of their main body from the Wilna salient, and the cavalry soon began to be subjected to heavy pressure from two sides. Fresh hostile troops moving westwards along the railway from Molodechno attacked vigorously to free the severed line of retreat of their comrades, who on their part made no less strenuous efforts to force a way through the thin cordon of dismounted German troopers holding precariously on to the line of the Oszmijana stream. Before long the line gave way at Zuprany; the 1st Cavalry Division was rolled up and fell back northwards and eastwards, while the 4th, seeing its line of retreat seriously imperilled by increasing pressure from the east and its northern flank also now threatened with envelopment, likewise drew away towards Smorgon, where both formations eventually rallied, considerably disorganised by their prolonged exertions and recent buffetings. For the moment, at any rate, they were quite incapable of further effort.

What hope there might still be of clinching the initial half achieved success rested on the 3rd Cavalry Division, which comparatively fresh and intact, was now ordered to move from Wileika to Molodechno and at all costs prevent the arrival of any further enemy troops at that important junction. When it came within sight of the village, however, it found the approaches held by strong forces of enemy infantry and could do no more than shell it without much visible effect; transport by rail was disturbed and delayed but not seriously interfered with. Late in the afternoon the Division drew off westwards under orders from Von Garnier, in anxiety for the security of his left flank, and took up position for the night near Zaskiewiczze.

Far away to the north, seventy miles distant from the main scene of the fighting where its presence would have been of such assistance to its hard pressed comrades, the 9th Cavalry Division was halted at Glubokoje.

Tenth Army Orders for the 18th, which must from Von Garnier's point of view have seemed singularly inapplicable to the existing situation, enjoined continued and unremitting pressure on the retiring enemy, and an attempt to block all his lines of retreat in the angle between the Wilia and the marshes of the Beresina.

In actual fact the main body of the Russian Tenth Army had successfully completed its withdrawal from the Wilna salient the previous day, and its last rearguards got away under cover of night; Wilna and all the area north east of it fell without resistance into German hands in the course of the 18th. But this brought no relief to the much tried cavalry, for the Eben Group, still confronted by hostile rearguards, much exhausted by all its recent exertions, and with the reinforcing divisions allotted to it by the Army Command still a long way behind, came to a standstill on a line running westwards from Gerwajaty, with its most eastward division at Sawelzy, still a long day's march from Smorgon, where the cavalry, so far from being able to press forward against a retiring enemy, was now fighting for its life.

From the first hours of daylight it was violently and incessantly assailed by ever-increasing hostile masses; the pressure was strongest from the west on the 4th Cavalry Division, which was eventually thrust back over the Wilna river at Zodicze; here it succeeded in holding fast. On its left the 1st Cavalry Division, less heavily assailed, managed with some difficulty to retain possession of Smorgon.

The 3rd Cavalry Division had once more moved against Molodechno. A dismounted attack assisted by artillery made some initial progress, and the hostile resistance seemed weaker than on the previous day; but the arrival of fresh troops by rail and road from Lida and Minsk soon put an end to any hope of success by direct attack. The cavalry sought to lap round the enemy flanks and cut the railway on either side of the place,

but with no better results; their demolition parties were beaten off with loss, and it was clear that the enemy forces in the Molodechno area were far too strong for the three weakened German cavalry divisions to deal with alone. Orders were sent out for the 9th Cavalry Division to hurry south to their aid, but the appearance of a strong force of Cossacks in its front at Glubokoje prevented immediate execution being given to them, and the Bavarian Cavalry Division, still at Widsy, was too far off to help.

Despite the definite information now at its disposal as to the great strength of the Russian forces in the battle zones (they were estimated at sixteen divisions actually in action and six more on the way thither) German "G.H.Q. East" clung to the hope that some result worth while might still at the last moment be achieved, and urged on the Tenth Army to reinforce its left and push forward. The 9th Cavalry Division was ordered to move south, cut the Molodechno-Polotsk railway, and endeavour to destroy the Minsk line also; the Bavarian Cavalry Division was ordered from Widsy to Krzywicze to support and assist it.

But it was altogether too late for any measures of this kind to have any prospect of succeeding. The three divisions of the Cavalry Corps north of Smorgon were at the end of their tether, and quite unable to make head against the renewed pressure to which they were subjected. By noon on September 20th a wide gap had opened in their line at Zaskiewicze, and the Russians had penetrated it, fallen on to the open flank of the 1st Division, and hurled it back across the Wilia; it lost heavily, and was put completely out of action. The 3rd Cavalry Division, which had planned to renew its attempts on Molodechno, was also compelled hurriedly to fall back to Wileika. By next morning, the 20th, the last of the German troopers had been withdrawn across the Wilia everywhere, and the units were rallying under shelter of an outpost line holding the north bank of the river. The 9th and Bavarian Cavalry Divisions, halted at Dolhinow and Krzywicze respectively, had failed in all their attempts to cut the Molodechno-Minsk railway; a regiment sent to endeavour to destroy the Beresina railway bridge at Borisov was anticipated and beaten off by Russian infantry

opportunately arrived, and succeeded only in pulling up a few rails in the neighbourhood. Had the bridge been blown up, the Russian railway communications must have been seriously disorganised for some weeks.

September 20th marked the definite end of the raid. Early that morning the left flank infantry unit of Eben's Group had at last got touch with their sorely tried cavalry comrades, and took over their front as far east as Wileika. The 9th and Bavarian Cavalry Divisions were halted away to the north east at Dolhinow and Milcza. In the final phase of the battle—the Russian counter offensive to recover the lost ground, its defeat, and the subsequent repulse of the partial German attacks about Lake Narocz—the German cavalry played no further part, and the front eventually settled down on the line Postawy-Lake Narocz-Smorgon—the Beresina.

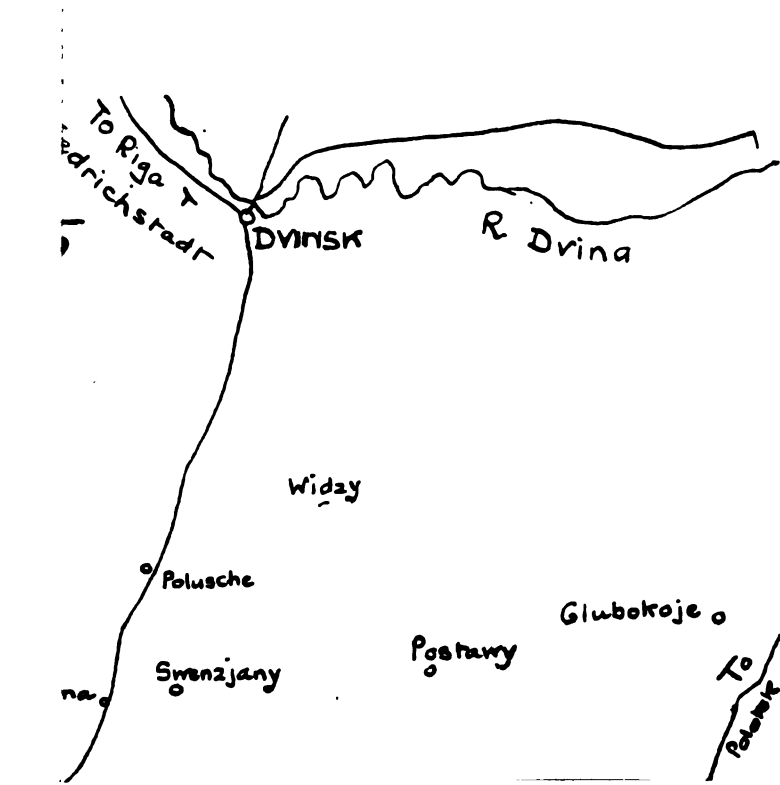
The battle of Wilna had been no great or profitable victory for the Germans; such success as they had achieved they had bought at the cost of 50,000 casualties. The cavalry in particular had suffered severely; they had lost practically all their horses, and were for the time being completely exhausted and unfit for service.

Results of the Raid.

There can be little doubt from the above narrative, that the great German cavalry raid must be set down as a failure. All the great exertions, the stubborn fighting, the daring enterprise, the heroic courage of Von Garnier's horsemen were without real influence on the ultimate result of the battle, and the price paid in horse-flesh and casualties was enormously high.

If we are to draw our lessons for the future from the history of this episode alone, they can serve only to support the official doctrine that the success of a raid is always problematical and the price of such results as may be achieved usually excessive.

Whether we should be justified in arriving at such a conclusion falls to be considered in our third and concluding article. Here it need only be noted that one contributory cause of the failure of the raid was the fact that it remained entirely without influence on the mind of the Russian commanders. The Staff



of the First Army, arriving at Molodechno on the 14th, found that German cavalry were approaching the place and had interrupted the movement of the XXVII Corps, which was in course of transport by rail to Dvinsk; but it refused to allow itself to be perturbed and took instant measures for the defence of the junction, which proved entirely efficacious. The commanders of the Tenth Army and of the Western Front were in no way perturbed by the activities of the German cavalry in their back areas, and refused to be diverted from their plan of assembling forces to undertake a counter offensive at the earliest moment and in the greatest strength possible. It is true that some of the commanders of lower formations failed to show quite the same resolution, but no perceptible weakening took place anywhere;; and the calmness and nerve of the Russian commanders and the skilful manner in which they and their armies extricated themselves from a decidedly unpleasant extinction deserve high praise.

As for material results the extensive captures of material and supplies made at Smorgon and elsewhere can hardly be said to have been adequate compensation for the heavy sacrifices of the German cavalry. Such interruptions of the Russian rail communications as were achieved were small and unimportant, apart from that effected near Borisow referred to already; they appear to have comprised only the destruction of a considerable stretch of track, including several bridges near Glubokoje, and the burning of Wileika and Krzywicz stations. Traffic between Molodechno and Polotsk was resumed in a week's time. Gen. Knox in his "With the Russian Army, 1914-1917" has remarked that if the raiders had devoted half the explosives expended on the destruction of the bridges to destroying the water supply at the stations, the interruption of traffic would have lasted three times as long. Equally from the material point of view, then, the raid must be regarded as a failure.

(To be concluded.)

*OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS**(October 17th, 1917, to January 25th, 1918.)*

BEING EXTRACTS FROM THE DIARIES OF MAJOR A. J. R. LAMB,
D.S.O., LATE THE QUEEN'S BAYS.

PART III.

29TH NOVEMBER.—To-day the Nubas made their first serious attempt to break out of Gebel Kilkun. At 3 a.m. heavy rifle fire began on the western slopes at a range of 300 yards from camp. Bullets whisked around our tents! As these were the early days, before the large scale use of searchlights, Verrey lights and bomb-traps, it was thought that many Nubas got away in the dark. So 100 Baggara Arabs were brought in to reinforce the line.

So the siege of Kilkun dragged on, tedious and slow work. Once the posts were properly established and a fixed routine had been adopted, there was not much to do; news from other parts of the line and visits to the detachments of other columns alone broke the monotonous round.

30th November. At 5 a.m. the Nubas made another attempt to break out of Kilkun: after a short action they were driven back: we had no casualties.

Several old women and children who came down yesterday reported that Agabna himself was there, and that the Nubas had suffered many casualties from our rifle fire. Could we but capture or kill Agabna, the Nuba resistance—who knows—would sooner or later collapse!

I heard that some 70 Nubas from Sagan tried to break through, opposite Brockley's sector; they were heard shouting for water. The *Zariba* round Kushi and Sagan is now a formidable affair: they ought not to be able to get out.

1st December.—It is rumoured the Nubas on Sagan have still another fortnight's water. I also hear that a deserter from the M.I. who went over to Agabna with his carbine and ammunition

has been killed. He was at first on Kilkun, and being a trained shot, he no doubt has been responsible for some of our casualties. He was one of the lot of Nubas who got away at the first attempt to break out. The story runs that he meant to take his women folk to Sagan and return to Kilkun. Finding he could not get back; he went with two other Nubas to Kermutti, but on getting there the Kermutti Nubas, owing to some family feud, killed him. The two others were wounded but managed to get back into Sagan. All this information came from an inhabitant of Tendia, who had been wounded and cured in our hospital. Since then he had acted as our spy!

2nd December.—Daily we have more *nigma* casualties among our horses: there seems no earthly remedy.

The Kelama column is reported to have left a certain amount of water unguarded inside their *zariba* in hopes of causing the Nubas to remain on the *gebels* and so to consume their hoards of food more quickly. If Sagan, Kushi and Kilkun can be made to surrender, both the Kelama and the Niti columns will go to assist in the blockade of Selara. Then they will be able to occupy all sources of water and so gradually "eat" their way forward on to the *gebels*.

3rd December.—I have now lost 64 out of the 76 horses I had brought from Shendi: seven of the survivors are with the C.O.'s escort so I have five, plus the fifteen Kordofanis received as remounts.

4th December.—A Nuba woman came in and said the *sabian* would hand in some rifles but refused to surrender themselves. They are said to have piqueted the *mushessha* (water holes) to prevent the old men and women drinking it as there is not enough water left for themselves and their non-combatants! They still do a deal of firing, mostly at night when they try to break out.

5th December.—Noticed many brilliantly coloured lizards: this country teems with them.

8th December.—This is the coldest morning I have felt in the Sudan: an icy haze hung over the *gebels* till 8 a.m. Some firing all through last night. Occasional casualties continue: the rate is very high for this Sudan warfare. On the other hand no more *nigma* casualties: it seems as though the cold weather

has killed the flies that carry the disease. The squadron is now dressed in khaki shirts and shorts; much better suited for *gebel* warfare.

During the afternoon the Sirdar with his Staff and the Adjutant-General rode into camp. They reached Nitl by car yesterday and slept there. After inspecting the troops and the *zariba* line they returned to Nitl. To-morrow they go to Kadili-bong.

10th December. Brockley has found a spot at the west end of Sagan where Nubas can be seen drawing water. A machine-gun has been posted there. In spite of it the Nubas still come to get water at that place and dodge from tree to tree on the way down: they cannot be seen at the water. But they have to race from cover to cover on the way back.

12th December.—The squadron lines look painfully empty—only 19 animals left: but the transport mules are in good condition. They seem to thrive in this climate.

The Adjutant-General decided that Fairley's Company of M.I. should be relieved by another Sudanese Company, as Fairley's men have been here a whole year round the *gebels*: many are due for discharge, others have had no leave for four years. So they are to return to Shendi.

I also hear that an M.I. Company is required for operations in the Bahr el Ghazal next March.

13th December.—Butland started with some of the 11th Sudanese and a troop of M.I. and went half way across Gebel Kilkun from the western end. It was proposed to establish a piquet line across the centre of the *gebel*. They reached this line; but in the end it was decided to go back to the old *zariba* owing to the difficulty of maintaining a really good line across the *gebel*.

I visited the Sagan *zariba* and found Meeres in a *rookooba* (flat-topped hut) surrounded by boulders and rocks: he told me that when there is shooting on Kilkun stray bullets whizz around him plentifully but he is quite safe in his shelter.

14th December.—Unusually quiet last night. I visited my sick horses in the camp situated some way back where supplies, etc., are stored. I talked to our Armourer-Sergeant, a typical

pre-war N.C.O., whom I have sometimes met returning from the *zariba* rifle in hand.

"Well!" I asked, "Any sport to-day?"

"No, Sir!" he replied, "they're getting too cunning. The other day I got some rare good sniping as they were trying to get water and kept doubling down over 50 yards of open ground to reach it! They weren't so knowing then!"

"Did you get any?"

"I think I got a couple, but now they dodge behind trees and things: you don't get a chance now!" He was quite disappointed in them.

Old poacher!

15th December.—To-day the place is swarming with about 200 friendly Nuba women; they are all carrying *dura* (see photo). Yesterday some Arab irregulars discovered a huge store of this grain in a cave on Kilkun. It is to be divided among the Arabs, police and others, after the women have washed it.

16th December.—We are bothered with metallic fouling in the rifles. Fifteen have to go to the armourer. They are the 1914 pattern S.M.L.E.

Meeres took his Company up Sagan and found much water. They seem to have unlimited water on the *gebels*. I hear the Nubas themselves found some *mushesshas* yesterday on Sagan whose existence they had not previously known. So, in the words of Pepys, "what will be the end of it, God knows!" Very noisy night: much firing; a loose horse stampeded, and the Nubas kept on shouting. I inspected the Kilkun *zariba* all round again to-day. The *zariba* is now indeed formidable: fortified posts of boulders and sandbags at about every 200 yards: and lesser posts every 50 yards for night piquets—all sited about 50 yards behind the *zariba*, except my old cave piquet which is close up to the Nuba caves and in front of the *zariba*. All *dura* has been flattened out and much of the scrub has been cleared so that we have a good field of fire: it is needed on these dark nights when the Nubas venture right down to the *zariba*. But unless they have abnormal luck they surely cannot get out!

18th December.—We have a searchlight now to help us at night; I have also drawn some Verey lights. I have been in-

specting piquets and getting them into better trim : had some difficulty in one place and broke an N.C.O. for misplacing his post contrary to orders.

19th December.—I rode to View Point on the north side of the Selara group, this being a corner of Sheikh Nimera's friendly *gebels*. Here I found Mildon of the Eastern Arab Corps talking to Nimera,* a nice-looking little man, very loyal to Government. He is thoroughly afraid of the Selara Nubas, and particularly so of Agabna, who is believed to be there. As he is friendly to us he would certainly be killed by these people.

The latest rumour now is that, Agabna, who has fled to the Selaras, is not wanted by the local inhabitants, who are afraid of the Government making things worse for them for sheltering him. Agabna is reported to be hiding in a cave near Sahoon Water just south of View Point.

There is a story going round that Marston is proposing to take 20 Police with him to try and fetch him out. The idea is opposed on the ground that it would be madness since, in order to do so, he must penetrate the hostile *gebels*, and would be attacked on the way. I then went to examine the line we shall take over, if and when the Kilkun operations come to an end. A more awkward line could scarcely be imagined ! It winds in and out of gorges ; up little hills and down again ; round water holes ; over impossible rocks ; through weird little passages ; in one place through a regular tunnel ! All very pretty but impossible to organize—and as for defensive posts !! The Nubas could come quite close up at most places without ever being seen at all. Even now if Nimera and his followers had been hostile, the whole thing would have been utterly impossible, as it stands !

I went up a small *gebel* from which one could look down into the large *jahab* running east to west along the north side of Gebel Nyima, which looked huge, formidable and full of caves, Mildon had built himself a hut up there and sniped the hostile Nubas at impossible ranges. He got on admirably with the friendly Nubas and chaffed their girls : they were all full of fun and enjoyed it thoroughly.

* See photo.



Some of Sheikh Nimera's friendly Nuba "Sabian" armed with old Remington rifles.



Some of the 200 friendly Nuba women with captured "dura."



12½ pdr. Mountain Guns (Egyptian personnel) in action against Gebel Sagan.



Agabna Wad Aranga being bound before hanging.



The Hanging of Agabna and Kilkun.



Sheikh Nimera (right) with British and Native Officials.

OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS 547

That evening Butland lit a flare, a thing like a big candle about a foot long and three inches across, with a long spike to stick in the ground. We were inundated with gadgets of that type from Khartum! It started spluttering and set fire to the *zariba* which Butland managed to extinguish himself by jumping on it.

20th December.—It is rumoured we are to drive Kermutti, which, although hostile has been left alone since Godward tried to establish the 4th Sudanese on it and failed. It is the most formidable *gebel* of the lot and I do not relish climbing up it! There was a frosty feeling in the air at 7 a.m. and I wore a coat.

No. 3 Company arrived at Dilling. As most of my transport belongs to it, I shall lose the animals: I shall have camel transport instead.

21st December.—East wind, cold and invigorating. Great excitement caused by finding a place in the *zariba* obviously disturbed by Nubas—did they get out? The Arab post next door to mine thinks not; they fired at some Nubas and claim they were turned back.

The *zariba* is being strengthened, but it is hard work as the thorn bushes have been cleared everywhere nearby.

22nd December.—Colder to-day and so getting up a large appetite. I arranged a scheme for permanent piquets which will be necessary, as No. 3 Company will require their transport men and so I shall not be able to relieve piquets every 24 hours.

23rd December.—My No. 1 Troop is now a fixture at the Kilkun Caves; No. 2 Troop supplies a permanent piquet at Camp Rock; No. 3 and 4 divide duty on top of the *gebel* and find four night piquets to the west of the *gebels*. So I am occupying the same number of posts as before. Bigan, who is relieving Fairley, was late in arriving, having been detained at Niti owing to rumours of the Nubas being about to surrender. Rumour false as usual!

24th December.—Twelve donkeys reached me for transport purposes: they are more convenient than camels as they need not be kept out grazing all day. Fairley took his Company back to Dilling: I shall miss his cheery company.

25th December.—The quietest night since the blockade of Kilkun began. The water-holes at Silikun are drying up.

Went up to Gun Hill where the mountain guns shell Sagan by signal from the *zariba* line (see photo). The gunners are growing very cunning in dropping shell into cave entrances.

A great Christmas party : a screen of *dura* stalks on black poles, trimmed with flowering branches, made a distinctly Japanese background to the "restaurant" consisting of 8 tables. No less than 15 British officers assembled to dine off a stuffed turkey, ham, sausages, bread sauce and tinned potatoes, all excellently cooked. Plum-pudding, champagne, cocktails and liqueurs were all forthcoming as a result of pooling our stores ! Towards the end of dinner Mawson appeared as Santa Claus, wearing a white *Emma* (turban), cotton wool moustache, a chequered red and white *jibba* (long shirt). The general effect was true to tradition and a crowd of natives of all kinds were vastly amused. The evening ended with a display of feats of strength and skill—lifting sandbags, bottle-climbing, glass-turning, etc. Mawson's gramophone was also kept busy.

26th December.—Another wonderfully quiet night on Kilkun. Sheikh Nimera arrived from Tendia with his army of spearmen and riflemen to be inspected by Marston : they were identical in appearance to the Nubas we were fighting, and consequently very interesting to see. (See photo.)

27th December. Only fifteen rounds were fired during the past 24 hours—a low record so far ! Some Nubas came down the north face of Kilkun but were driven up again.

28th December.—Butland and I started at 7 a.m. with the relieving piquet and climbed to the top of Kilkun. There were one or two awkward bits to negotiate and some very deep clefts to cross. The piquet and sentry were neatly sheltered at the very top among the rocks, well protected against wind and bullets. In front of them the rocks were covered with bullet splashes.

Soon after descending Marston came with the announcement that both Agabna and Kilkun had been captured by Sheikh Nimera : great news ! He caught them in a cave near one of his villages : not a shot was fired ! Hearing where they were he (Nimera) boldly went to the spot, relying on the Nuba conception of *sibba* (enchantment). At the mouth of the cave he

found some of Agabna's men asleep. So he quietly went up to Agabna and told him that his own *sibba* was now the stronger and that he (Agabna) must surrender. The latter believed it and surrendered like a lamb !!

Agabna, wearing a brilliantly coloured gown, and Kilkun, in a sort of brownish smock were brought into camp at 10.30 a.m., the former on a mule. A large crowd assembled to see them. Agabna had a wild, shifty look; Kilkun was the taller and rather fine-looking: both were oldish-looking men with grey beards. The crowd was forcibly kept away from the prisoners while a preliminary investigation was conducted by Weston, the governor of the province. A telegram was then despatched to Khartum asking for permission to try and punish the prisoners on the spot. Meanwhile they were both put in "sheibas" fore and aft.

I was informed that same morning that my squadron would shortly return to Shendi as half of it may be required for operations in the Bahr el Ghazal, probably in February. It would be a very different affair, but I was not enamoured of the prospect of staying here, for, now that Agabna had been taken, the operations might drag on and become yet more tedious.

29th December.—Agabna and Kilkun were tried to-day, Colonel Smithson, Vann and Marston conducting the case. In view of the mass of evidence available there was no need for a lengthy trial: by the afternoon they were both found guilty of:

1. Open rebellion against the Government;
2. Committing various raids against other Nuba *gebels*;
3. Murder and brigandage.

They were both sentenced to be hanged.

The last two days have been remarkably peaceful—practically no firing anywhere—daily ammunition return "nil," the first since joining the column.

A telegram arrived from the Adjutant-General demanding 50 M.I. forthwith owing to disturbances in Southern Darfur.

30th December.—Agabna's son, aged ten, was sent up Gebel Kilkun with a white flag to find out whether the Nubas would surrender. He returned with half a dozen famished women and three boys. The latter were not in such bad condition as the

women, whose tongues were dry and cracked. As usual, owing to living in caves, their bodies had turned ashy grey and their faces a curious dirty brown colour . . . gruesome objects! They say there is but one armed man left on the *gebel*, and he is in a cave seriously wounded, where there are four rifles.

At 3 p.m. Agabna and Kilkun were hanged. An escort of cavalry and M.I. marched them, arms bound behind them and ropes round their necks, up Gun Hill where gallows had been erected. A huge mob of Arabs and others followed. Agabna was shouting all the way, but Kilkun was silent. On arrival they were blindfolded and their legs bound. A rope was then fastened round their waists and passed through a pulley at the top of the gallows. The rope round their necks being subsequently fastened to the top of the gallows, this being of the correct length to secure the necessary drop. They were then hauled up to the top of the gallows; when these latter ropes were suddenly released the two dropped without a sound or a wriggle. So ended the two malefactors (see photos).

Bigan was now under orders to move to Abu Zabat with half his men and six weeks' supplies. I was to remain with the patrol, but two of my troops were to be ready to embark by White Nile steamer for the south on February 14th.

31st December.—Agabna's wife was cross-questioned this morning. Agabna was on the *gebel* when we arrived but got away before the *zariba* was completed. At present, she said, there are 3 *sabian*, one sick man and 7 rifles on the *gebel*. The men are very thirsty as all the water and water-melons are used up.

Agabna was credited with the possession of supernatural powers and greatly feared by all the leading men of the region. It had often been stated to us that it would be impossible to defeat, let alone kill, him. They could not believe he had now been hanged. All the important natives were therefore summoned to Agabna's village to see the truth for themselves. There they were shown the heads of Agabna and Kilkun stuck on short poles by the roadside. A truly primitive and horrible way of doing things! Yet a better method has in vain been sought! Only the crudest actions will impress crude brains!!

OPERATIONS AGAINST THE NUBA GEBELS 551

1st January.—The Nubas on Gebel Sagan tried to force a way through the *zariba* opposite No. 1 Camel Corps Company last night. Eight succeeded in getting through; five were shot; and the rest driven back up the *gebel*. It is said that those who got away were “scuppered” by the Arabs.

I am to hold two troops in readiness to return to El Obeid at any moment as escort to prisoners.

Every day new gadgets are being devised to facilitate the task of guarding the *zaribas*. This evening I went to see Bonner fixing up some traps made with old Nuba Remington rifles. The rifles had been cut down and were fixed into a *sheiba* in the *zariba*, after being loaded with a blank round. The trigger was then connected to a system of wires and weights by which it could be fired. In front of the muzzle was fixed a flare with the fuze covered with loose powder. On the trigger being released by the Nubas tripping over the wires, the flash of the blank round ignited the powder and thereby the flare, which illuminated the enemy trying to cross the *zariba*. Highly ingenious and simple to instal!

At 7 p.m. heavy firing opened all round Kilkun lasting for an hour. Owing to our having some friendly Nubas in the posts, who used their own cartridges, it was difficult to distinguish the friendly from the enemy fire. Last night a Nuba with a small boy broke through but was caught: he confirmed the report that there were only two *sabian*, besides himself, and two women on the *gebel*.

2nd January.—Agabna's wife went up the *gebel* and returned saying that only two *sabian* were left: they were prepared to surrender and would enlist with us provided they were neither bound nor put in *sheibas*. This was promised and Agabna's wife returned with the two men, strong fit-looking men too, with rifles and plenty of ammunition in their bandoliers—also one woman. She also brought back the rifle captured by the Nubas off my man, who was killed on November 26th, together with 55 rounds and a belt containing £1 in silver. I was much impressed by the fact that the money had not been touched either by the Nubas or by the men who found it.

As our two prisoners professed their readiness to stake their lives on the truth of the statement that there was not a living soul left on the *gebel* we set about reconnoitring the whole of it. The 13th Sudanese went up the southern face; the rest of us with my own escort and the friendly Nubas started up from "the cave" piquets. We climbed up a stiff boulder shoot, while the Arabs roamed over the rocks picking up any loot there was to be found. At the summit we found the spot where Abd El Karim claimed to have shot the three Nubas. Sure enough there were bloodstains on the rocks, and the stench coming from an adjacent cave was dreadful—proof that he had at least got one; so we gave him his 30 piastres. A little further on was the mouth of the huge cave system where, on 25th November, there was found all the *marissa*, the silver bracelets and other stuff, which we now knew, had belonged to Agabna. Here we gained touch with the 13th Sudanese and then went on to the western end of the *gebel*. Not a Nuba was encountered, so we could safely claim to have reduced Gebel Kilkun, or Gebel Odea as the natives call it. A long business for such small results! I fear many Nubas must have broken out in the early days before the *zariba* was finally organized. It had taken us 38 days to clear the Nubas off it!

* * * *

After the fall of Kilkun my squadron was split up: One troop went to the Sagan-Kushi *zariba*, next to the M.I. and opposite the saddle joining the two *gebels*. Another piquet was required for the summit of Gebel Kudera (known as Domile); finally there were still two posts needed for Gebel Kilkun. The latter was now in fact the scene of a game rather like "King of the Castle." Having captured the castle, a piquet was posted on the summit to keep the Nubas away from it, since it was perfectly possible that they might try to slip back, with fresh water and provisions and so to start the game all over again.

The first time I posted the Domile piquet I went with Morrow, who took me up a long circuitous route to avoid the stiff climb. But coming down we went straight down the steep Eastern face. We were slithering down the boulders and smooth

granite walls, when Morrow remarked quite casually :—

“Be careful! there are a good many bomb-traps and trip-wires about here!”

“Good heavens!” I exclaimed, “we shall never see the blinking things: the light’s going!”

“If you feel your way gingerly,” he replied quite unconcernedly, “you’ll probably spot the wire before you touch it.”

He was a bombing officer, of course: one of the usual fearless kind who seem able to teach their bombs not to hurt them. Anyhow we got down safely, though I just managed to avoid stepping on one trip-wire!

Another duty that now fell to us was to collect the prisoners into small *zaribas* near Agabna’s village, for the siege of Kushi and Sagan was beginning to tell on the Nubas, although, as yet, it was only the old men and women who were surrendering. We made it a rule to send back on to the *gebel* all those who had relatives among the *sabian* up there, and to accept as prisoners only those who could disprove any such kinship. This in fact was not such a difficult task as it sounded, for plenty of information on this head was usually forthcoming from the various Nubas, friendly or otherwise, who were in or around the camps. But the *sabian* only began to surrender at the end of January, when they were coming to the end of their tether. The few we captured before then were handcuffed with a short chain; I kept one sentry in the *zariba* with them, and two more outside as I was taking no chances. There was little fear of the rest of the prisoners trying to escape. They all received an old blanket apiece, as they came in naked, and the January nights were really cold. It was not a pleasant sight to see them huddled together and devouring *bil-bil*, or boiled *dura*, an unappetising looking mess. I was much impressed by seeing how cheerful they all were; it could only be the relief from fear of death or of starvation that kept up their spirits in spite of the miserable state they were in when they surrendered. Many had nasty wounds but seemed to make light of them! Every morning I sent a mounted escort to conduct those fit to walk to Nitl. The *sabian* marched with ropes round their waists and a halter round their necks, the latter being held by the escort. From

Nitl they would be taken to the large concentration camp at Dilling.

Altogether it was a nasty job !

Another task was the removal of bomb-traps; we first cleared Gebel Kilkun. I was greatly surprised at the number of *shweibas* (earthen jars about 5 feet high) used for storing grain that we found in the ruins of the burnt village at the foot of Kilkun : an astonishingly large village it had been too.

The *sabian* remaining on Kushi and Sagan were now growing desperate; we heard tales of their being compelled to suck the bark of trees. They also showed themselves more and more determined to break out, and they were adopting a new ruse to effect their purpose. Two or three would descend at night with lighted torches, concealed from us by being held in *burma* (earthen pots). Thus equipped they crept up to the *zariba* and set it on fire. When our men saw the blaze they rushed to the spot to extinguish the flames. The Nubas meanwhile quietly stole back and joined a group which then made for the *zariba* near the scene of the fire, hoping to find that spot unwatched. They struggled to get through or over it, using hurdles, planks and even skins for assistance in climbing over it. In these attempts they were desperately brave and would face the hottest fire. However, I do not imagine they were often successful.

Once such a supreme effort was made in force in the middle of the night when they attacked the sector of *zariba* held by Brockley at the western end of Sagan, that several undoubtedly got away, but as their point of attack was swept by a machine gun, it was not surprising that they received terrible punishment : the wounds that I saw, owing to the closeness of the range, were horrible. Forty-three were killed.

I visited the new piquet on Gebel Odea (Kilkun). The piquet consisted of a sergeant, a corporal and five men. Each man carried a waterproof sheet, rifle, 100 rounds S.A.A., water for 24 hours, rations and a great coat. Under these circumstances *gebel* climbing was not easy. On reaching the central ridge, I found it cut in two by a smooth face of rock eighty foot high which divided it into two (in Alpine language a *gendarme*). However, we discovered a cave, descended into

it, scrambled down over each other's shoulders and finally found ourselves in a sort of tunnel running under the rock wall. On emerging we found one piquet close under the very highest point of the *gebel* enjoying a marvellous view of the whole countryside. To the east one could even see Gebel Daier, which lies near the railway leading to El Obeid : that was nearly 100 miles away.

We came down what must have been Agabna's "main road" down the north face of the *gebel*. It ran parallel to the great boulder-shoot covering the cave system where he was hiding on 25th November. The path was wider than the usual Nuba track, all earthy and very steep; one could almost let one's self slide down standing upright ! On several occasions I took out a .22 rifle to shoot rock pheasant and *cacoes* (rock rabbit). The pheasant offered a difficult shot, but I bagged a few. I had no luck with the *cacoes*—they never sat for a moment. We also found two horses on Sagan : pathetic, emaciated, objects—just living skeletons.

The squadron was now due to go back to Shendi for further operations in the Bahr el Ghazal. On 11th January we were ready to move. I felt almost sorry to leave our camp in Agabna's village, for it had become a veritable "home from home" in what may be termed some of the most beautiful country in the Sudan. We left at 3 p.m. passing under Kermutti, grim, formidable and still unconquered. Not a sign of life on it—all its inhabitants were underground. I went to take leave of Colonel Smithson. "Say good-bye to the old squadron for me," said he. "Tell them how pleased I am with them and how well I consider they have done !" He always loved my old "black nuggets" !

The operations had proved an interesting experience, although this class of warfare is in many ways horrible since it causes suffering to guilty and innocent alike. The full results achieved were not perceptible at the time I left. I afterwards heard that the total number of prisoners finally amounted to about 5,000, while 700 rifles were surrendered—far more than was ever anticipated. In return we had suffered 150 casualties, a very high total for operations in the Sudan, though not really heavy if the effects of the patrol be taken into consideration.

but the deaths from *nigma* among the horses were an outstanding feature of the whole campaign.

We reached Dilling at sunset. I was housed in a large marquee. The place was a pandemonium owing to the presence of the prisoners' compounds, where they were all sorted out according to age and sex, while sentries were posted among the cages on raised platforms. The whole lot were shouting and chattering. At the moment there were about a thousand of them—later on the total was very much greater. Among them was a daughter of Agabna, an uncommonly well-shaped young woman for a Nuba; gifted with intelligence, too. Goss depended on her largely for assistance in sorting out the prisoners, finding lost children and like tasks. The Nubas were obsessed with the idea we intended to take all their boys from them and tried to conceal them. They even tried to "camouflage" their naked boy babies to resemble girl babies!! A relic of times of oppression no doubt! In short, Dilling was now almost a bustling town—a veritable Boulogne. After all it was one of the largest patrols ever held in the Sudan: about 3,000 men were employed, a larger number than had been assembled for the re-conquest of Darfur in 1916. But in a waterless country like the Sudan large forces could never operate far from a river; while in any case, communications are always a difficulty and a hindrance to any but small forces.

On the morning of the 14th January we marched for El Obeid, in charge of a convoy of twenty-five *sabian* and thirteen jolly little Nuba boys. The men were tied up five abreast, each fastened to his neighbour by a long continuous rope running loosely round his neck and another round their right wrists. The boys were dressed in specially cut-down sacks, because they shivered in the cold of the early morning; they had canvas belts round their waists; each belt had a brass ring through which was run a rope. These were tied up in two batches, one of seven, the other of six. Goss and I had spent some time in experimenting as to the manner of tying up prisoners and had decided upon this as being the best method of doing so. The *sheiba* for putting on the *sabian* at night were carried on camels, together with our baggage.

We started at 6.30 a.m., an hour-and-a-half late; but this

was inevitable on the first morning of such a move. The squadron marched on foot except the few men riding the only remaining horses. One troop supplied the mounted guards and dismounted escort. On halting, the mounted men, being fresh, found the sentries over the prisoners; another troop took charge of the horses; the remaining two troops built the *zariba* at night. These duties went by a roster of troops.

On the march the men sang tuneful marching songs, keeping wonderful time. These songs dated from the days of the Mahdi and nearly all referred to campaigns against the white man. It seemed so odd to hear these loyal old men singing songs breathing hostility against us. One of the best ran thus (in English):—

Allah ! he is always great;

Always for seven years !

Allah ! he is always bountiful.

Always we ate our food away from home ! *

Doubtless a memory of the Khalifa's long campaigns.

The prisoners marching powers exceeded all my expectations. The weather was perfect and comparatively cool. So we covered 23 miles, past Nyala to Sungekai where we arrived at 6 p.m. The greater part of the journey lay over a rough track through sparse bush; the country was perfectly flat. We saw some Arab cultivation and many Arab cattle.

We built a little *zariba* at night for the prisoners and lit three fires, both to keep them warm and to watch them. The boys were in excellent form, most cheerful and not tired.

On 15th I sent off two troops early to prepare the nightly *zariba*; the transport marched at 1.30 p.m. and we followed at 2 p.m. reaching Aradeib at 6.45 p.m., after a march of 13 miles. It was so bitterly cold I could not eat. Quite a number of the men, after being accustomed to ride, were finding the marching rather too much for them !

On 16th we moved off at 5.15 a.m., about an hour before sunrise. I marched on foot as before. At 9.30 a.m. we reached Hammadi, twelve miles on. The oldest of the *sabian* had collapsed on the way. For sometime he

*In the native tongue:—Allah howa daim !
Sabaa sinyn daim !
Karim Allaoh daim !
Akul barra daim !

had been complaining; by hanging back he had tightened the ropes round the necks and wrists of his companions on his "string." This caused much bickering and the rest started pulling him along. He did not like that and so finally threw himself on the ground inflicting a nasty choking pull on the others. After testing him, I decided he was not shamming and then put him up on a horse as far as Hammadi. This place had altered for the worse since we passed through on 24th October, when it was all grass, trees and bushes—all very pretty. Now every bush and small tree had been cut for firewood or timber, whilst the animals had cleared the grass. The whole place looked dirty.

Next morning (17th) the bi-weekly motor convoy carrying food, stores, mails and occasional personnel between Dilling to El Obeid passed through *en route* for El Obeid. We then heard that our troops had cleared Gebel Kushi without firing a shot, the enemy having bolted on to Sagan. The line was therefore established across the saddle separating Sagan and Kushi.

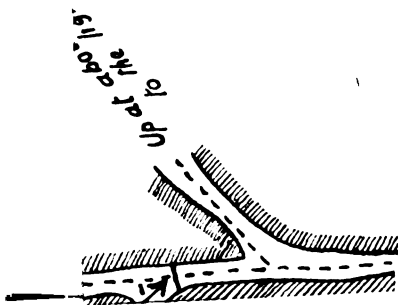
We started again at 2.30 p.m., the transport having gone on an hour earlier, and halted by the roadside at 5.30 p.m.

On 18th we marched at 4.50 a.m. to Fertingul and completed the 9 miles by 7.45 a.m. Several prisoners and men of the squadron were going footsore and lame. But with only twenty more miles to go I decided they must see it out. So two troops left Fertingal at 2 p.m.; the transport at 2.30 p.m., and the rest at 3 p.m. for Mereikib. After going eleven miles we reached that place at 6.20 p.m., the road going mostly up a long gentle rise through sparse bush with dense cultivation here and there.

On the 19th we started in the dark as usual: very cold. By sunrise we reached the plateau at the summit of the long rise, passing some great *tebel*di trees. Away below us about four miles out on the plain lay El Obeid—beyond it the railway with a little train creeping away into the desert. The sight of the town, the knowledge that we were completing our last lap, the fresh air, all spurred us on faster and faster. Even before reaching the last slope into El Obeid some of the men in rear were breaking into a trot. Our march discipline went to the winds! We were running in what was no longer any form-

PASS SKETCH OF

GEBEL SABAI



ation at all! Even our prisoners were infected with our enthusiasm. They were all singing and jogging along like children returning from school.

At length as we reached the outskirts of the town decorum reigned once more! Every man was now marching to attention; every prisoner was wearing the properly humbled yet determined look that every self-respecting prisoner should wear. As the result of that rapid walk and run I was suffering fearful cramp in the legs. I had already twice endured positive torture in the knees after halting; this occurred after the twelve miles from Aradeib to Hammadi and again at Nyala after marching the fourteen miles from Dilling: that was when we were doing our average of $3\frac{1}{2}$ miles per hour, with only a five minute halt at the end of every hour.

At El Obeid we took over our former lines. The prisoners were handed over to the station staff officer and despatched to Khartum by the mail train: as this started half an hour after our arrival there was not time to serve out any clothing to the prisoners, in spite of the fact that there had been a great outcry in Khartum against the "disgusting sight" of naked men being marched out of the station! When one has lived a short time amongst them it becomes hard to realize that there is any great indecency about it! Accommodation had been arranged for the squadron on this train, but we had no time to make our preparations for the move. So we had to wait three days for the next mail train.

We left for Khartum with 62 Nubas prisoners and 32 Kordofani remounts that had just been purchased for the squadron at the annual horse fair of Abu Zabat in the Province of Kordofan. The locomotive of our train ran out of water in the desert so we had to wait until a relief engine came out to bring us in: the train, moreover, was unusually heavy, so we were eight hours late at Sennar and finally did not reach Khartum until 2.30 a.m. on 25th January. We then caught the mail train for Shendi and arrived there at midday to be greeted by a large crowd of officers and others.

Three weeks later we had refitted and were once more entraining to go on an expedition to the far distant regions of the Upper White Nile, but that is another story.

COMPRISING THE WHOLE OF HIS STUD

By LIEUT-COLONEL SIDNEY G. GOLDSCHMIDT.

JOHN DENISON watched the string file out of the stable yard. Six tried and trusted hunters, the companions of many a joyous day. He thought that the wrench of parting was over and done with when he had reluctantly made up his mind that times were too bad for him and the family to continue hunting; but as he saw his rugged and bandaged friends disappear down the stable drive *en route* for the local railway station he realised how distasteful every stage of the process of dispersing the stud was going to be.

They had all often been boxed before to go to shows and for distant meets, but now it was borne in on him that there was no return journey for which to arrange.

* * * * *

Mr. and Mrs. John followed the stud to London, the train with the horse-boxes taking five hours instead of three. Before going to their hotel they looked in at Tattersall's and got the satisfactory report that the horses were all feeding and none the worse: even the restless Girl Guide had only marked one hock slightly.

The next morning, Saturday, there was a fair attendance; but, although John hardly moved from his row of stalls, nobody displayed more than a passing interest. Plenty of people strolled past, and the groom, ready if any one took the slightest notice, to be at their side with a confidential whisper, "The Guvnor's there if you want him, sir." But nobody did, and when Mrs. John arrived towards lunch-time he had to report "Blank, so far." The afternoon was little better, Mr. and Mrs. John superstitiously thinking that if they were not at hand they would

be sure to be wanted, wandered off to the other stables and took stock of the other horses.

There were the studs of several celebrated owners, who year after year secured the same numbers in Tattersall's Ascot Week catalogue, and John was pleased to see that these celebrities attracted little more attention than his modest entries. Every time he got back to his stalls he found someone interviewing his groom, and each time "The Guvnor's here now, sir," was a signal for them to fade away. Indeed, the attitude of everyone in the yard seemed to indicate that the last thing they wanted was to buy a horse. His groom further informed him that he thought he could manage better if he, John, kept out of the way, as he had had several enquirers, who always disappeared as soon as John hove in sight.

So on the Sunday Mr. and Mrs. John went to Knightsbridge as spectators only. Mrs. John, with the magic of her sex, showed none of that weather-beaten look of the hunting woman; but her husband was unmistakable, in spite of his London clothes. The day was fine, and the Ascot frocks were worth looking at, and there were plenty of friends to greet and with whom to gossip. It was all very pleasant and interesting, but the prospect of making a decent sale seemed nil. Still no one displayed more than a passing interest in any of the stud. By Monday morning, however, the head groom seemed more hopeful, if the number of half-crowns and "five bobs" he had been given to induce him to divulge the horses shortcomings was any guide. But one thing was clear: no one wanted to interview the owner, preferring to try to bribe his servants to give away any stable secrets there might be. "Well!" thought John, "I hope they got what they paid for; but if I know my men, the only impression they'll get is that I only keep one kind of horse—'the best in the world.'"

John Denison's six were due to come up at 11.30, not quite the best position—this is reserved year after year for the regular customers, who hold annual sales of their studs.

John and his wife stood together and listened to the monotonous patter of the auctioneer. The first few lots realised abnormally low prices, and were probably horses returned from

previous sales through not answering the catalogue description. Mrs. John, who had never been to a serious auction before, was puzzled to know from where the bidding was coming. Not a voice could be heard except that of the auctioneer and the subdued whispering of the spectators, most of whom appeared to be interested in anything except the business in hand. Her husband explained the procedure, and then it was just possible to spot who was bidding. One man would nod to signify that he was willing to take up the bid. Another just raised the hand that held his catalogue, another caught the auctioneer's eye and gave an exaggerated wink. John called to mind an old story of a man who once attended a sale at Tattersall's with a rough edge to his collar which caused him every now and then to twitch his neck away from it and who found that these movements had been mistaken for bids, with the result that he had three polo ponies knocked down to him before the mistake was discovered.

The time for Lot 28 approached, and John, with his heart beating rather faster, pushed his way into the rostrum. It is the custom for the owner to be at the auctioneer's elbow to inform him when the reserve is reached, after which the call for bids takes on a new tone, and the words "I am selling" informs the assembled company that the bids from now on are serious.

In a few minutes the general description of the Stud has been recited—"Comprising the whole of his stud," not even "excepting one old favourite" to soften it, or "excepting one unsound horse." "Owing to the family having to give up hunting" sounded like a knell.

A carefully selected lot they were, all bought young, and schooled and trained by the family. The oldest was eight years, and they had a fairly clean lot of certificates on which they were being sold. "Spindrif—Lot 28," bawled the auctioneer. A bay gelding 15.3, seven years, by The Raft, dam Windgauge, regularly hunted by the owner, his wife and daughters. What may I start Spindrif at—300, 250, 200, 150, 100? I am offered 100 for Lot 28, Spindrif."

Dear Spindrif, thinks Mrs. Denison. He was bought at Dublin Show as a four-year-old. What trouble they had had to acclimatise him. He took nearly two years to develop his full

powers. He had the gentlest disposition, and loved hounds, but, having been tried for racing in his youth, he had at first carried his head too low in his gallop. It had taken nearly a year to give a good carriage to head and neck.

Spindrift goes for 210 guineas.

Lot 29 is Girl Guide, a mighty huntress and the most disconcerting buck-jumper when fresh and thwarted. Her knowledge of hunting was profound, and she appeared to have a better nose than a hound. Nothing bored her so much as a covert in which she decided (usually rightly) that there was no fox, and her instinctive knowledge of where a fox would break was unerring. Her pedigree was unconfirmed, but as she was up to weight she makes 200 guineas.

Josephine came next, a miniature hunter, being just over 15 hands, by French Eagle. She was a polo pony failure, but an undeniable huntress. Part of her polo schooling she had assimilated with the greatest ease—the part that polo men call “foot drill”—but all efforts to break her to stick and ball had failed. Certain positions of the polo stick drove her frantic. She was considered more or less the property of John’s youngest daughter, who had performed prodigies of valour on her in the hunting field. She just reaches her reserve, 75 guineas.

Lot 31 was a grey gelding, the biggest weight-carrier of the stud—16.2, seven years, wonderfully put together. The most intelligent and active horse the Denisons had ever owned. He was an example of that desirable quality. “He moved like a polo pony.” He could cross any country smoothly and with consummate ease, taking each fence, not in any stereotyped way, but each according to its requirements. Gray Friar was the most universally popular horse in the Denison’s stable, and carried cross and side-saddle, a light or heavy weight equally smoothly. Not the straightest of movers, and with two imposing splints in consequence. He only makes 120 guineas.

Lot 32 is Harmony, another thoroughbred, 16 hands. John had bought her one summer specially for his wife from a local dealer. A very bold jumper in cold blood or with hounds. The tale the dealer told of her was really wonderful, but somewhat marred by proving to be entirely without foundation. She was

supposed to have had one season with one of the Leicestershire packs, carrying a whipper-in, and to have been sold when the mastership changed hands. Unfortunately, however, she had been recognised on the first day's cub hunting as having belonged to a member of a neighbouring Hunt and given in exchange because she was too restless at covert-side. In a hunt she was a delight, bold and free, with a light mouth, and she jumped as though she loved it, with her mind concentrated on keeping with hounds. But she was too restless, and wore one out. The following summer John had lent her to the mounted police of a near-by town, and she was put on to patrol and point duty. At first her restlessness was more than one man could cope with, and they would keep her out all day merely changing the rider when his tour of duty was up. This had eventually cured her, and she became the ideal lady's hunter. She was expected to make the highest price and did so, the hammer falling at 275 guineas.

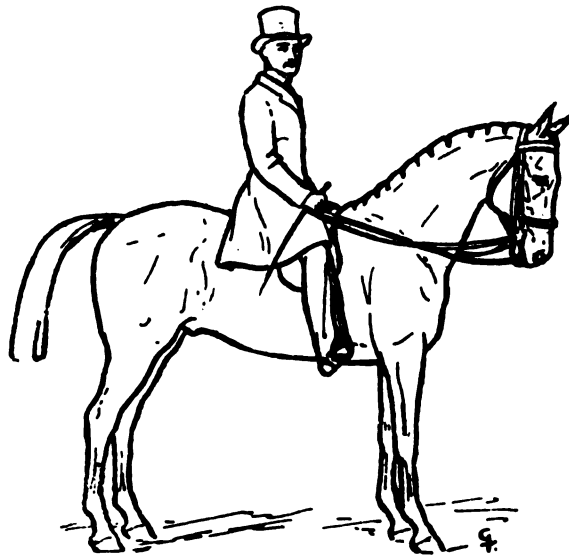
Rufus, the last of the string was the most doubtfully sound animal. Something had gone wrong with him after an attack of strangles. As he approached a fence he would emit an extraordinary squeak as he gathered in his breath for the effort, and another louder squeak on landing, which earned for him the disrespectful nickname of "Creaking Clarence." "Grunts at the stick" the veterinary certificate said. The bidding goes haltingly up to 40 guineas. "That's the first genuine bid yet," whispers the auctioneer. "Don't sell," whispers John in reply. Down comes the hammer, and John reflects too late that he has been fool enough to keep the least desirable of the whole stud.

He leaves the rostrum and, with his wife, hastily makes his way towards the gate.

Someone, a stranger, waylays them. "If you haven't sold Lot 33 I'll give you 50 guineas for him." John accepts, and they proceed to the office to register the transaction.

The sale has been a good one, but they want to hear neither the congratulations of friends nor their condolences, and they have no wish to stay to see the saddlery and stable gear sold. Mrs. John has been told she will be lucky if her beautiful side-saddles realise 30s. each.

As they leave, the thought of the empty stables at home weighs on them; the grooms, more to them than mere servants, as all good grooms should be, are to be turned adrift. "This comes," John reflects, "from putting all your eggs in one basket." Why had he not taken up golf, as his friends had wanted him to do? As they walk out into Knightsbridge, they almost feel as if there were nothing more to live for.



THE CALL OF THE HILL TARNS

By RICHARD CLAPHAM.

IN a mountain country like the Lake District there are many tarns hidden away far up amongst the high tops. At mid-summer, when the hill streams have shrunk to their lowest level and a hot sun glares down from a cloudless sky, trout fishing becomes more of a toil than a pleasure. It is then that one feels the call of the hill tarns. Up where they lie, there is a different atmosphere from that of the sun-drenched valleys. The same sun shines overhead, but its rays are nearly always tempered by a breeze that ripples the water, and gives the angler his chance to get on terms with the small but lusty trout which inhabit these high-lying mountain lakelets.

At a height of two thousand feet or over climatic conditions may vary considerably from those at sea level, even when summer is far advanced. Changes are sudden, too, especially should there be thunder in the offing. When the wind rises it may reach gale strength, and then you see the water of the tarn lifted bodily into the air and hurled upwards in a cloud of spray that reminds you of a water-spout at sea. When this happens all you can do is to wait for one of the brief lulls, during which it is possible to cast a fly. Other days there are when even at that high altitude the breeze drops and the tarn lies like a sheet of glass in its rocky setting. It is tantalising then to see ring after ring widen and gradually fade away as the trout rise steadily, but too far from shore to be covered by your flies.

All the tarns hold trout of sorts, small fish for the most part, although in places they average somewhere about the half-pound mark. They are later in getting into condition than the trout of the lowlands, for food is none too plentiful in these high-lying waters, and it is not until insect life makes its appearance that

the fish get a chance to become plump. Small though they are, these trout, they battle gamely for life when hooked and provide plenty of fun for the angler who has climbed the steep fell side to reach their habitat.

In June or July it is pleasant to leave the stuffy air of the dale behind and make your way out to the high tops. If you are wise you will achieve an early start so as to get the climbing part of your journey over before the sun becomes too powerful. Once on the top you can stride away in comfort until you reach a point from which you look down upon your chosen tarn, lying like a pool of ink rimmed by high crags. From your view-point it does not take long to reach the water. If you are used to scree-beds you can descend *viâ* one of them, half running half sliding, or if you prefer a more sedate mode of progress, there are plenty of sheep tracks that lead in the desired direction.

And now a word as to tackle. All you need is a fly-rod, length according to your own particular liking, several gut casts tapered to 4x, and a small selection of winged or hackled flies. If the latter are tied on No. 2 sneck hooks they will be about right. The trout of the tarns are usually free risers, and they are not very particular as to the pattern of fly, provided the latter is reasonable in size and not too heavily busked. Either on river or tarn, lightly dressed flies always kill best. As showing how even expert authorities differ in their opinions regarding the numbers and patterns of flies to be used, we may say that W. C. Stewart, in his day a king amongst Border anglers, employed but six patterns, all of which were of the "impressionistic" type. The late F. M. Halford, famous as a dry fly authority, used thirty-six, all of which were of the exact imitation variety, being as close copies of the natural insects as human hands could make them. Other well-known anglers have given us even longer lists.

We all have our favourite flies which by experience we find to be killing. My own, for example, are the Black Spider—a favourite with the late W. C. Stewart, above mentioned—and the Black Spinner. With these two flies I have accounted for a good many thousand trout during the last thirty years. The great thing is to have confidence in your flies, for without it you

will be always chopping and changing, thus losing valuable time. Stick to the patterns you have faith in and keep them in the water where they will do the most good. Other patterns than those above mentioned that will kill tarn trout are :—Greenwell's Glory, March Brown, Butcher, Teal and Black, Teal and Red, and Zulu.

Time was when one had to rely entirely on fly-fishing the tarns, but since the advent of the fixed spool casting reel and thread line, a new field has been opened up. Using a reel like the Illingworth No. 3, with a gut substitute line, and a small natural minnow enclosed in a celluloid scarab, you can make long casts and get your bait well out towards the centre of a tarn. You thus cover a very much wider area of water with the minnow than with fly, and heavier trout are accounted for. It pays when on a visit to a tarn to take both a fly-rod and a 7 ft. spinning-rod, and thus you can vary your style of fishing and be prepared for all emergencies. Thread line fishing is quite as artistic and sportsmanlike as fly-fishing, and it accounts as a rule for much larger trout.

In these days of everlasting motor traffic, noise, and ceaseless hustle and bustle, it is pleasant indeed to find oneself far from the madding crowd. Up on the hills where the tarns lie there are no motors and, except at Easter and other holiday seasons, you will meet with few people beyond an occasional shepherd. Alone, or accompanied by a congenial companion, you can spend a really happy day in the country of the hill tarns. The world seems very far away, in fact, you are in a world of your own, peopled only with furred and feathered creatures, some of which you will see, and others which will watch your movements but themselves remain unseen.

When the sun is high at midday and you sit down in the shade of a huge boulder to eat your frugal lunch, you have time to note the wild life that exists amongst the high tops. You are in the land of the peregrine falcon, the raven, and the buzzard, all of which use the precipitous crags as nesting sites. From amongst the rocks you can hear the wild but musical song of the ring-ouzel or mountain blackbird, a sound that seems in perfect keeping with the wild surroundings. Here and there a wheatear



" . . . the breeze drops, and the
Tarn lies like a sheet of glass"

A Typical Hill Tarn.

A Basket of Tarn Trout.

Photos by Richard Clapham, Troutbeck, Windermere.

१० वल्ल
अथवा १०

bobs about the stones, while larks and meadow pipits are ubiquitous. Gulls, too, may put in an appearance, despite the altitude, for there are few sheets of water that they do not visit nowadays. If grouse happen to nest in the vicinity of a tarn you can depend upon it that the black-backed gulls and herring gulls will soon search out their eggs or young and play sad havoc with them. The gulls have changed their habits of recent years and in many instances can only be classed as vermin.

Of animal life you may not see much when you visit the country of the tarns. Wild red deer still exist on the fells, and in the district adjoining Martindale forest—the only deer forest in England—you may chance to run across a band of stags. Stoats roam the high ground, and it is nothing unusual to spot one of them hunting amongst the rocks. Although the high fells are well stocked with foxes you may roam the hills day after day without actually seeing one. It is different in winter when the Fell hounds are out, and perhaps several foxes are afoot. One of our rarest wild animals, viz., the pine marten, still manages to exist in Lakeland. You will be more than lucky if you see one, for unless you have a terrier with you that will locate a marten amongst the crags or underground, when you can then bolt it by means of smoke, you may be quite oblivious to the creatures presence. Once only have I seen a marten at large—other than those which have been bolted—and that was when I disturbed one as I was descending some rough ground to reach a tarn.

Of smaller creatures there are the field voles, whose tunnels amongst the grass can be found right to the tops of the highest mountain. They provide food for the foxes and stoats, kestrels and owls, without which the voles would become a plague. On some sun-warmed rock you may chance to see a lizard lying as if inanimate. Approach it, however, and like a flash it will disappear, leaving you wondering if your eyes deceived you. Many a lizard falls a prey to the kestrel and the buzzard. Scattered about the fells you will see sheep, not of the heavy Southdown type, but little Herdwicks, coarse-woolled and nimble as deer, which provide the sweetest of mutton.

Sun and mist sometimes provide peculiar phenomena on the fells. With a wall of mist rising from below and forming a vast

screen, and the sun behind you, your shadow will be cast upon the mist in huge proportions, a veritable "Spectre of the Brocken." Twice have I been privileged to witness this, both times in winter when hunting with the Fell hounds. Twice, too, have I seen a circular rainbow. I was looking down upon a "floor" of mist below a crag, with the sun above, and a small circular rainbow seemed to lie upon the mist like a coloured plate. Such phenomena take hold upon the memory, and one looks back with pleasure to their unexpected appearance, which perhaps helped to brighten an otherwise uneventful day.

As the American angler said : " It is not all of fishing just to fish." This applies admirably when visiting a hill tarn, for there are so many things both to see and hear, besides the actual fishing, if only you keep your eyes and ears open. I have said nothing of the scenic effects, the play of light and shadow on the hills, the folding and unfolding of the mist curtains, or the wind rippling the water and the grass. There was once an angler up to his waist in a Norway salmon river, and when somebody asked him how he liked the scenery, he replied : " I came here to fish for salmon not to admire the scenery." Most of us go fishing for fish, but nevertheless we subconsciously take in and admire our surroundings, else why, for example, do we prefer the perfect setting of a Highland loch, or a Lakeland tarn, to the tame surroundings of a suburban reservoir ?



USE OF THE SUN IN MAP-READING AND RECONNAISSANCE

By LIEUT.-COLONEL B. O. HUTCHISON, *p.s.c.*,
10th Royal Hussars.

IN "Map-Reading and Field Sketching" we are taught to use the sun in one of the methods of setting a map.

By bisecting the angle between the hour hand when pointed at the sun, and the hour of twelve as marked on the watch face, we find due south in the Northern Hemisphere. Then we can set our map.

This is the sole reference to the sun in the official book. The following paragraphs suggest that more use might be made of the sun in map-reading and in reconnaissance.

Though the sun may not be shining brightly on every day in England, yet its direction is usually apparent through the clouds. In other countries, like India and Africa, the sun is too often with us all day long.

As we can tell the sun's exact true bearing at any time of the day, surely more use can be made of this knowledge to assist us in map-reading and in reconnaissance.

In the flat countries of Egypt and Mesopotamia, and in the plains of Northern India where there are no good landmarks, the sun is invaluable as an aid.

During the last training season the writer has tested the following methods and found them exceedingly useful. They have been useful, not only to the Squadron and Troop leaders, but also to the N.C.Os. and especially to the patrol leaders.

Now we know that the sun is due south at midday (summer time will be treated later), and that owing to the rotation of the earth, the sun appears to move round the earth once in 24 hours. Thus the apparent motion of the sun is 360 degrees in 24 hours. This is equivalent to 15 degrees in one hour.

With this knowledge we can readily calculate the true bearing of the sun at any hour.

At midday it is at 180 degrees.

At 6 a.m. it is at $180 - 6 \times 15$, i.e. 90 degrees.

At 8 a.m. it is at $180 - 4 \times 15$, i.e. 120 degrees.

At 3 p.m. it is at $180 + 3 \times 15$, i.e. 225 degrees.

This is the only knowledge required, and now to apply it to some examples.

Suppose the advance guard has to move across a country towards a village, "B."

On looking at the map it is seen that the village of "B" is on a true bearing of, say, 170 degrees.

At first this may have to be measured off with a protractor. After a little practice, on a gridded map, the approximate bearing within 5 degrees can be read quite easily in a few seconds by eye.

The time is, say, 9 a.m. At that hour the sun is at a true bearing at 180 degrees— $3 \times 15 = 135$ degrees.

So the direction of advance is 35 degrees to the south or right of the sun.

Every N.C.O. is taught in fire control to measure angles with his hand.

On giving out orders and pointing out the country before the advance, it will be of the greatest assistance as a check to tell all N.C.Os. and patrols "Remember to march approximately 35 degrees to the right of the sun."

Of course the sun constantly appears to move, and the allowance must be altered every half hour or so.

If continuing the advance in the same direction for some hours, then at 10 o'clock the direction will be 20 degrees, and at 11 o'clock it will be only 5 degrees to the right of the sun.

Another example.

A patrol has to go to a village which is on a true bearing of 30 degrees, and the time at which you issue orders to the patrol to move off is 8 a.m. At 8 a.m. the sun is at 180 degrees— $4 \times 15 = 120$ degrees.

The difference between the direction of the village and the direction of the sun is exactly 90 degrees.

Therefore your last instruction to the patrol is : " Remember to march in a direction exactly at right angles to the direction of the sun with the sun in line with your right shoulder."

On occasions I have watched a patrol passing through, or skirting round a wood. At the far side, one of two things invariably happens.

Either there is a delay of usually some minutes while the map is set and various places identified, before the advance can be continued; or the patrol continues to advance without pausing in a direction anything from 20 degrees to 50 degrees at variance with its original direction.

By using the sun there is no delay and the correct direction is maintained.

Sometimes the direction of the man's own shadow has to be used instead of the sun. As an instance the following can be given :—

The bearing on which the patrol should proceed is, say, 95 degrees. The time is 5 p.m.

At 5 p.m. the sun is at $180^{\circ} + 5 \times 15 = 255$ degrees. 255 degrees is nowhere near 95 degrees, but the shadow cast by the man himself will be $255^{\circ} - 180^{\circ} = 75$ degrees.

Thus the direction in which the patrol leader should proceed is 20 degrees to the right of the direction in which his own shadow is pointing.

During the past training season I never used a compass and instead I used the sun on all occasions by day. I found that I could find my direction or set my map within 30 seconds, which is much quicker than using a compass.

To set a map by the sun I found the best way was as follows :— The time is, say, 10 a.m. This is two hours before noon, therefore true south is 2×15 degrees, i.e. 30 degrees to the right of the sun. This is easily measured off by hand and eye and the map set.

This method is quicker and more accurate than using a watch.

Summer time introduces a complication as the clock is altered one hour. Every calculation is affected to the extent of 15 degrees.

Should 15 degrees be added to, or subtracted from, the normal bearing of the sun?

On asking that question an argument is always started amongst those present. Remember summer time gives us long evenings. On the first day of summer time the sun sets at about 8 p.m. when the day before it set at about 7 p.m.

Thus on the last day of Greenwich time the sun sets at nearly 6.40 p.m. on a true bearing of $180^{\circ} + 6\frac{2}{3} \times 15 = 280$ degrees.

Now on the first day of summer time the sun sets at approximately 7.40 p.m., on the same true bearing of 280 degrees.

Therefore at noon in summer time the sun will be at $280^{\circ} - 7 \times 15 = 165$ degrees. It will be on a bearing of 180 degrees at 1 p.m. This is the base from which all calculations must be made in summer time.

Thus at 8 a.m. in summer time the sun will be on a bearing of $180^{\circ} - 5 \times 15 = 105$ degrees.

And at 5 p.m. in summer time the sun will be on a bearing of $180^{\circ} + 4 \times 15 = 240$ degrees.

In the Southern Hemisphere of course things are reversed and the sun at midday is due north. The calculations are, however, exactly the same, except that the base direction is that the sun at midday is on a bearing of 0 degrees (or 360 degrees).

At 9 a.m. the sun is on a bearing of $0^{\circ} + 3 \times 15 = 45$ degrees.

At 3 p.m. the sun is on a bearing of $360^{\circ} - 3 \times 15 = 330$ degrees.

All N.C.Os. in my squadron readily picked up the method outlined above, and it was found to be of the greatest practical use, especially for patrols working in the flat plains of Northern India.

There were no landmarks, and one mud village surrounded by crops and trees looked very much like another. In strange country the only method of finding the right village was by very carefully maintaining the right direction.

The use of the sun was found to be of the very greatest assistance.

MUSICAL RELICS OF BRITISH REGIMENTS

By J. PAINE.

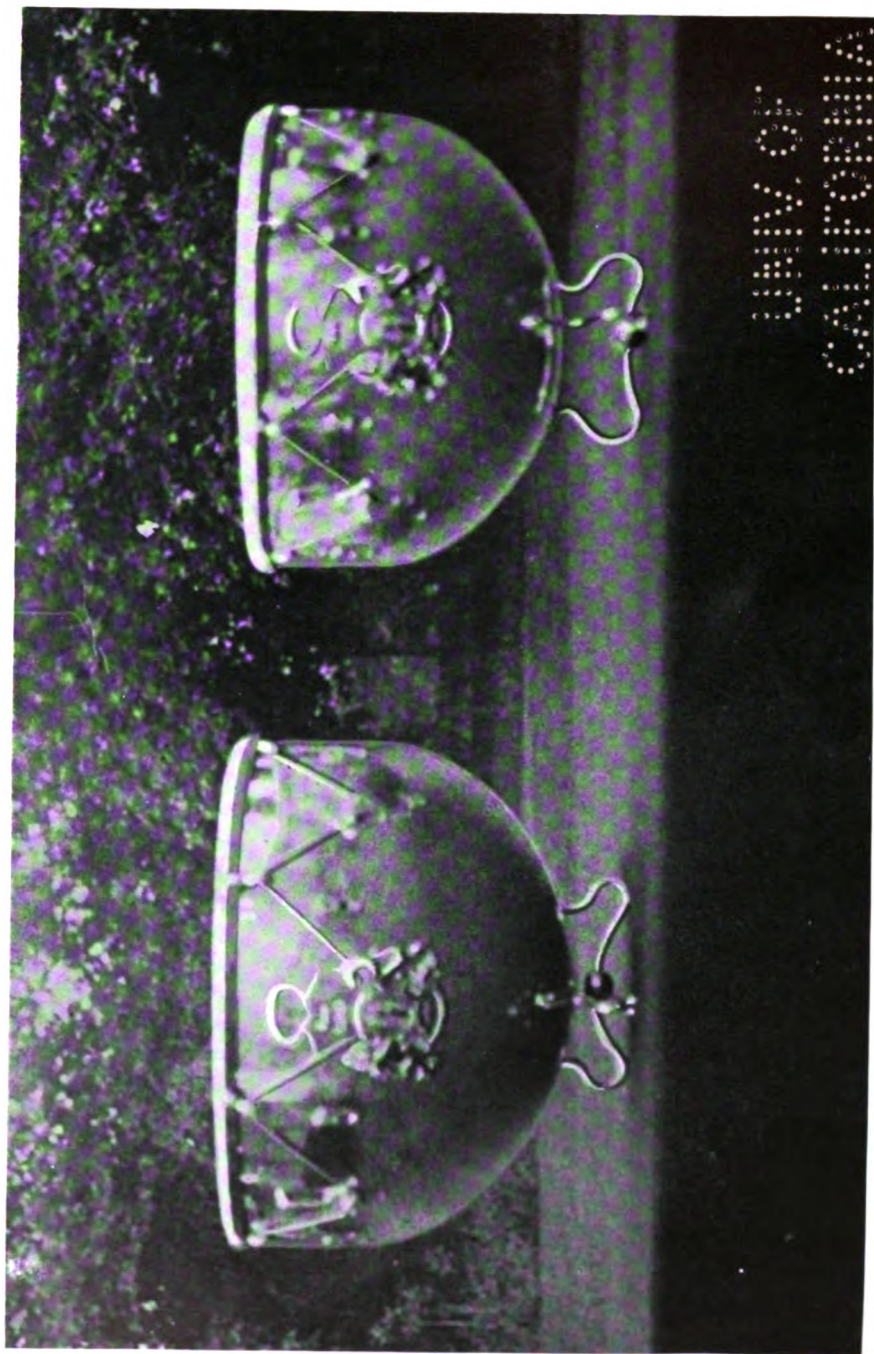
MUSEUMS and other public buildings which exhibit relics recalling the past glories of the British Army invariably display a few musical instruments as a happy reminder of those good old times when war was a chivalrous and romantic undertaking. The great majority of battle souvenirs of this description are drums. No armoury seems complete without its old cavalry kettle drums even though they may be tucked away in a dark corner. Memories are awakened of many a glorious fight on beholding the infantry side drum, once the proud possession of the traditional British drummer boy. And the trumpet too, relic not only of the stable and parade calls in the piping peace periods, but of those memorable occasions when its shrill blast has given the signal to squadrons to hurl themselves to glory and the grave. The bagpipe, despite its romance in military annals, is seldom displayed for the benefit of the museum lover, at least not south of the Tweed, and the ordinary brass and wind instruments once played in a military band are only met with on rare occasions. In the possession of private individuals there must be quite a number of obsolete Army band instruments worthy of a resting place in a public collection.

Beyond the fact that they were captured at the battle of Blenheim, nothing appears to be known of the two kettle drums on show in the Small Arms Room of the White Tower at the Tower of London. As recently pointed out to the present writer by the curator of the Armouries it is probable that the original descriptive label on these drums was destroyed in the disastrous fire which in 1841 robbed the Tower of many valuable relics and records. One would like to know which regiment made this particular capture. There have been several serious fires at the

Tower, and it is quite likely that the pair of drums taken from the enemy at Blenheim by the Fifth Lancers, if ever they were housed at the Tower at all, fell victims to the flames.

Those who have recollections of having seen a small military drum of Queen Anne's day in Windsor Castle will probably also remember in the Waterloo Gallery there three side drums used by a Guards' battalion at Waterloo. There must be many such relics in the various castles of this little island of ours. Amidst the arms and armour displayed in the Banqueting Hall of Edinburgh Castle are some copper bugles used at one time by the Gordon Highlanders and a couple of side drums which accompanied a detachment of the old Seventy-Fourth, now the Second Battalion The Highland Light Infantry (City of Glasgow Regiment), in the Central Indian campaigning at the time of the great Mutiny. The mention of musical instruments which have seen service with Scottish regiments recalls the fact that the pipes played by Daniel Laidlaw, V.C., at the dinner given in London to the Victoria Cross holders by H.R.H. The Prince of Wales was the same set so lustily played by that gallant piper at the Battle of Loos. At the dépôt of Laidlaw's old regiment, the King's Own Scottish Borderers, there is a spirited picture of the exploit painted by the late R. Caton Woodville.

Military musical relics need not necessarily be confined to musical instruments. There are, for instance, the richly worked banners which are suspended from the bagpipes played in Scottish regiments. Pipe banners, by the way, are never carried by the pipers of Irish regiments. In Santo Domingo Church, Buenos Ayres, is a pipe banner of the old Seventy-First, now the First Battalion of the Highland Light Infantry (City of Glasgow Regiment). The Officers' Mess of the same battalion cherishes another relic of the street fighting at Buenos Ayres in 1806 in the shape of a crimson silk pipe banner fringed with gold and embroidered with a thistle and a rose. The banner had been lost by the regiment in the fighting and became a treasured relic in an old family in Chile till just half a century ago when Queen Victoria secured it and handed it over to its rightful owners. It is interesting to note that the H.L.I. is the only Light Infantry regiment in the British Army with pipers. At Leith Hall,



SILVER KETTLE DRUMS presented to the 6th DRAGOON GUARDS (CARABINIERS) in 1876

(By permission of the Commanding Officer, 3rd Carabiniers)

2020

Aberdeenshire, is preserved a pipe banner carried in the Crimean War by the Second Battalion of the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders (Princess Louise's), the old Ninety-Third of Balaclava fame, whilst in St. James's Palace a complete set of pipe banners of all battalions of the Seaforth Highlanders serves as a reminder to H.R.H The Prince of Wales that he is Colonel-in-Chief of this distinguished regiment.

A museum of war relics which for over a century has attracted the attention of visitors to the Waterloo battlefield is that kept for many years by a survivor of the great conflict, Sergeant-Major Edward Cotton, of the Seventh Hussars, who until his death in the late 'forties acted as the official guide to the battlefield, much of his good work being afterwards carried on by his niece. The collection includes two British flutes, a serpent bearing the mark of a then existing firm in Charing Cross, some Prussian drum plates, a Dutch bugle, a French drum and a French clarinet, all of which were picked up on or in the neighbourhood of the celebrated battlefield. In the long drawn out conflict with France the bands of our regiments played a notable part, and the effect of their stirring strains at two battles in particular, Busaco and Talavera, contributed in no small way to those victories.

The senior infantry regiment of the British Army, the Grenadier Guards, has several relics of the Crimean War, including two bugles, and a bass drum which survived the campaign; a side drum taken at the Siege of Sebastopol; and another Russian drum picked up on the battlefield at Inkerman. A couple of bugles used by the Grenadiers in the Boer War are still preserved at Regimental Headquarters, whilst the same regiment still cherishes two bugles and two side drums which did duty during the late War.

Mention has not been made of several musical instruments now reposing in the Royal United Service Museum, the Imperial War Museum and various regimental headquarters since these objects of interest were enumerated at some length by the present writer in an article on "Military Musical Relics," published in the "Journal of The Royal United Service Institution" in November, 1929. A further batch of discoveries was discussed

in a contribution to "The Fighting Forces" in January, 1932, under the title, "Musical Instruments of Regimental Interest." In fact so many of these relics keep coming to light that one could compile quite an interesting little volume about them. The French horns, ophicleides and serpents played in our Army bands in the early part of the last century were eventually discarded in favour of saxhorns, euphoniums and bombardons, whilst courtals at a much earlier date were replaced as bass instruments by bassoons. One wonders if any of the old military hautboys are still in existence. These small wooden primitive instruments with their piercing tones were first introduced in the British Army two and a half centuries ago. Some Arabian, Indian and Chinese specimens may still be seen in the Victoria and Albert Museum.

Some instruments come to a queer end in the Service. A euphonium once parted company with a bandsman of The Queen's who was swept off his feet in the Sittang River in Burma. Thanks to the quickness of an officer of the regiment the bandsman's life was saved but the euphonium found a home in the bed of the river. A board of enquiry duly sat of course to enquire into the loss of the instrument, and after a heavy correspondence *lasting nearly two years* the Government graciously allowed a small compensation. This was in the 'eighties, and one trusts that should a similar calamity occur again the correspondence would not last quite so long. In the Indian Mutiny the Northumberland Fusiliers suffered an unreplaceable loss when a Drum Major's stick was stolen from the regiment. This much prized Peninsular trophy was captured by the Fighting Fifth from a French regiment at the storming of the fortress of Ciudad Rodrigo one hundred and twenty-two years ago. St. George and the Dragon has long been the badge of this regiment, and it is on St. George's Day each year that the regiment parades with its drums gaily bedecked with roses.

Several regiments are very proud of certain musical instruments which have been in their keeping for a long time. The Carabiniers prior to their departure for India in the late 'seventies received a magnificent pair of silver kettle drums from an officer of the regiment, Lieutenant (now Colonel) Sir Carne

Rasch, who was duly thanked for the gift in Regimental Orders. During the late War, when the regiment was on active service, these drums were much admired by visitors to an exhibition of regimental plate held in London for the benefit of the Red Cross funds. The 3rd The King's Own Hussars, now at York, is the only cavalry regiment which never carries banners on its kettle drums. This is a distinction in commemoration of the battle of Dettingen, where the regiment, to use a popular expression, "covered itself with glory." When the Fourth Queen's Own Hussars, on completion of its Indian tour, arrived at York three years ago its drum banners were almost falling to pieces, having arrived at that stage when further patching was out of the question. One of the senior officers generously came to the rescue, with the result that the regiment is now the proud possessor of a very fine pair of banners emblazoned with the Battle Honours gained during the late War, in addition to those scrolls which commemorate achievements in the older wars. Brass side drums were once the fashion in Light Cavalry regiments but their place was taken by trumpets in 1764, when the "band of music" of most of our cavalry regiments consisted only of a couple of French horns, two clarinets, two bassoons and a fife. Even then this quaint combination was only brought into being on dismounted parades, the trumpeters alone being allowed to play when the regiment was mounted.

Quite a number of musical instruments in the keeping of regiments are treasured for their association with some historic event. Such an event need not necessarily be a battle. There is, for instance, a relic of the piping times of peace in the possession of the Fifteenth The King's Royal Hussars, now on their way from India. This is the trumpet used by a trumpeter of the regiment at the proclamation of His Majesty King Edward the Seventh as King-Emperor of India in 1903. This Durbar relic now keeps company in the Officers' Mess with the silver trumpet sounded twenty-six years beforehand at the proclamation of Her Majesty Queen Victoria as Empress of India.

Quite a number of bugles are still cherished by certain battalions of our grand old county regiments, particularly

those which sounded the "Advance" in some tight corner of a foreign field and now repose, never to be sounded again, in a glass case of a regimental mess. The present bugle horn which figures in the badge of all Light Infantry regiments is a replica of the type of instrument once in vogue in the British service.

A full set of brass band instruments was presented by the City of Cardiff to the Welsh Guards on the formation of the regiment during the early part of the late War. One of the instruments, the monster B bass, or Double B as it is sometimes called, is now exhibited as a historic relic in the City Hall at Cardiff: It was in fact only five years ago that a trio of officers of the regiment attended the City Council for the express purpose of asking the Lord Mayor of Cardiff to accept for preservation this rather unique instrument. Its place in the band has been taken by a smaller instrument since a suitable successor to the sergeant who played it has never been found. Only a man of exceptional physique could master this particular instrument, and the musician just referred to was 6 ft. 6 ins. in height and very broad as well. This Double B was played at the Welsh national memorial service at Westminster Abbey, and at the annual Welsh festival service at St. Paul's Cathedral. It was among the instruments of the massed bands of the Guards when the victorious British troops marched through Paris and was played at the head of the Guards in their march through London after the late War. Apropos its present home, it is interesting to note that it was in Cardiff where the instrument was last played. This was on the occasion of the unveiling of the fine Welsh National War Memorial in Cathays Park by His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales.



FAMOUS HIGHWAYMEN'S FAMOUS STEEDS.

“ Then one halloo, boys! one loud, cheering halloo!
 To the swiftest of coursers, the gallant, the true!
 For the sportsman unborn shall the memory bless
 Of the horse of the highwayman, Bonnie Black Bess.”

DID notorious Dick Turpin's glorious ride to York ever take place? Alas, we are compelled to the reluctant conclusion that it did *not*, even in face of such evidence as that provided by two celebrated novels, Harrison Ainsworth's "Rookwood" and Bulwer Lytton's "Paul Clifford." On all available evidence this fabled exploit, if carried out at all, was performed by a previous Knight of the Road yclept "Swift Nick Nevison," who suffered the death penalty at York in 1684. Apart from the romantic (?) figure of Claude Duval—whose end came in 1670 when he was only twenty-seven—other celebrated highwaymen were Jerry Abershaw and Turpin's ill-fated coadjutor Tom King.

Born at Hempstead in Essex in 1705, Richard Turpin became, "successively or simultaneously, a butcher's apprentice, cattle-lifter, smuggler, housebreaker, highwayman, and horse-thief." Eventually he, too, was hanged at York, as immediate sequel to his killing a keeper at Epping and accidentally shooting poor King. The generally accepted story of the ride by Nevison is to the effect that he "robbed a sailor at Gadshill at 4 a.m., and established an alibi at 7.45 that same evening."

Another of the accomplished "tobymen" of that Georgian epoch was Jack Hall, whose hectic career terminated in 1708. He was something of a philosopher to boot, it is to his credit that he once wrote concerning his "profession": "The highwayman's life has the most mirth and the least care in it of any man's breathing, and all he deals for is clear profit: he has that point of good conscience that he always sells as he buys—which is something rare, since he trades with so small

a stock. He has this point of honesty, that he never robs the house he frequents and perhaps pays his debts better than some, for he holds it below his dignity to commit so ungenteel a crime as insolvency, and loves to pay nobly. He has another quality : he takes no more than he has occasion for."

As for Turpin's "companion in crime" Tom King, he is described as "a slender, elegant-looking young man, with dark languid eyes, sallow complexion, and features wearing that peculiarly pensive expression often communicated by dissipation; an expression which, we regret to say, is sometimes found more pleasing than it ought to be in the eyes of the gentler sex. Habited in a light summer riding-dress, fashioned according to the taste of the time, of plain and unpretending material, and rather under than over-dressed, he had perhaps, on that very account, perfectly the air of a gentleman. There was altogether an absence of pretension about him which, combined with great apparent self-possession, contrasted very forcibly with the vulgar assurance of his showy companions. The figure of the youth was slight, even to fragility, giving little outward manifestation of the vigour of frame he in reality possessed."

Immediately antecedent to the alleged ride to York, Tom King is depicted as singing a boisterous highwayman's song or toast :

"Come, fill up a bumper to Eve's fairest daughters,
Who have lavish'd their smiles on the brave and the free;
Toast the sweethearts of Dudley, Hind, Wilmot, and
Waters,

Whate'er their attraction, whate'er their degree"—
—(in allusion to four other contemporary Knights of the Road). This effusion may be read side by side with Turpin's alleged ode to the graces and paces of his beautiful mare :

"From the West was her dam, from the East was her sire;
From the one came her swiftness, the other her fire;
No peer of the Realm better blood can possess
Than flows in the veins of my bonny Black Bess."

Harrison Ainsworth's description of the ride decidedly lacks neither fire nor imagination. "A man in a donkey-cart, unable to get out of the way, drew up in the middle of the

road. Turpin cleared the driver and his little wain with ease. This was a capital stroke, and well adapted to please the multitude. 'Hark-away, Dick!' resounded on all hands, while hisses were as liberally bestowed upon his pursuers." The novelist adds that Turpin "liked the fun of the chase, and would have been sorry to put a period to his own excitement. Confident in his mare, he kept her at just such a speed as should put his pursuers completely "to it" without in the slightest degree inconveniencing himself."

Nevertheless, or so this legend runs, Turpin eventually rode his Bess to death. She was descended from an Arab sire and an English race-horse dam, "coal-black as her child." The last episode in Bess's glorious career was, if it ever happened, her errant master's hold-up of the York stage-coach. Shortly afterwards occurred the inevitable end for both master and mare, since Turpin was unquestionably hanged at York in 1739.

While frankly admitting that he "intended" the portrayal of Turpin in the character of Paul Clifford, Bulwer Lytton endowed *his* Knight of the Road with a grey instead of a black mount, yclept "Robin," as where he says:

"His follower led out his horse, a noble animal of the grand Irish breed, of remarkable strength and bone and, save that it was somewhat sharp in the quarters, of most unequalled beauty in its symmetry and proportions. Well did the courser know and proudly did it render obeisance to its master; snorting impatiently and rearing from the hand of the attendant-robber, the sagacious animal freed itself of the rein and, as it tossed its long mane in the breeze, came trotting to where Clifford stood. 'So ho, Robin, so ho!—what, thou chafest that I have left thy fellow behind at the Red Cave? Him we may never see more, but while I have life I will not leave *thee*, Robin!' . . . as he kissed the face of his steed."*

And again: "Among the early studies of our exemplary hero, the memoirs of Richard Turpin had found a conspicuous portion; and it may also be remembered that nothing had more delighted the juvenile imagination of the student than the

* Paul Clifford, p. 393.

forest-cave in which Turpin had been accustomed to conceal himself, his friend, his horse, and

‘that sweet saint who lay by Turpin’s side,’

—or, to speak more domestically, the respectable Mrs. Turpin.”

Finally, and as students of Bulwer Lytton may recall, Clifford (or Turpin) is made to shoot his noble mount rather than have her fall into sacriligious hands: “But the policeman . . . was not idle. When he saw Clifford about to mount he recurred to his pistol, and taking sure aim . . . he lodged a ball in the right side of the robber, at the very moment he had set spurs in his horse and turned to fly. Clifford’s head drooped to the saddle-bow. Fiercely the horse sprang on: the robber endeavoured, despite his reeling senses, to retain his seat. Once he raised his head, once he nerved his slackened and listless limbs, and then with a faint groan he sank to earth. The horse bounded but one step more and, true to the tutorship he had received, stopped abruptly. Clifford raised himself on one arm; with the other hand he drew forth a pistol and pointed it deliberately at the man who had wounded him—the man stood motionless, cowering and spellbound, beneath the dilating eyes of the robber. It was but for a moment that the man had cause for dread; for muttering between his ground teeth, ‘Why waste it on an enemy?’ Clifford turned the muzzle towards the head of the unconscious steed, which seemed sorrowfully and wistfully to incline towards him. ‘Thou,’ he said, ‘whom I have fed and loved, shalt never know hardship from another!’—and with a merciful cruelty he dragged himself one pace nearer to his beloved steed, uttered a well known word, and placing the pistol close to his ear he fired, and fell back senseless. The animal staggered, and dropped dead.”

According to one version, the favourite mount of Dick Turpin’s comrade and “partner in crime,” Tom King, was a beautiful bay gelding. As for Claude Duval, a native of Normandy, he came over to England as a follower of the Duke of Richmond at the Restoration of 1660. But he rapidly drifted into a career of crime, robbing “many gentlemen of their purses and ladies of their hearts.” Eventually taken prisoner “while drunk,” this very choice specimen suffered

the extreme penalty at Tyburn in 1670, when his bones were committed to Covent Garden Church, London.

Claude Duval usually rode a courser of exquisite appearance, speed and endurance, whose name unhappily has not been preserved. The story of this illustrious ruffian's dance with a lady by the roadside is apparently an authentic one. It appears that Duval "stopped a coach in which a gentleman and his wife were travelling with £400 in cash. The lady, with great presence of mind, began to play on a flageolet, whereupon she was asked by Duval to dance with him on the roadside turf. His request was granted and a *coranto* solemnly executed, the husband looking on. The latter was then asked to pay for his entertainment, and Duval, taking £100 only, allowed the coach to proceed on its way."

Substantial rewards were of course offered for Duval's apprehension and he fled to France—only to return and be captured, when he was put on trial at the Old Bailey on six different indictments. "Many great ladies are said to have interceded for his life"; but King Charles II was inexorable in refusing to grant a reprieve, and Duval duly died at Tyburn on January 21st, 1670. On his mortal remains being "laid in state" at a tavern in St. Giles's, the crowds became so intense that this interesting (?) exhibition was formally prohibited.

One William Pope has usually been credited with the authorship of the "Memoirs of Du Vall," and this writer hastened to notify his public that his booklet was intended as "a severe reflexion on the too great fondness of English ladies for French footmen, which at that time of day was a too common complaint." Duval—who, by the way, could neither read nor write—was also the subject of an "essay" from the pen of the notorious Titus Oates, and of an "ode" ("To the Happy Memory of the Most Renowned Du-Val") by Samuel Butler of "Hudibras" fame. Du Val's ashes, eventually laid to rest in the centre aisle of Covent Garden Church, had for their epitaph the following appropriate lines:

"Here lies Du Vall:
Reader, if male thou art
Look to thy purse;
If female, to thy heart."

A DOUBT ABOUT NAPOLEON

NAPOLEON's fame and reputation are now so great that any doubt about his merits as a general may seem ludicrous. But it can be said that no one has ever covered up his mistakes so adroitly as he has done, and no one else has ever taken such pains to blind posterity to his errors and to make it indulgent to his faults. The romance of his life has cast a glamour over all his actions, and his insight into human character has enabled him to make an insidious appeal to us for a favourable verdict on all his military exploits. He was a mighty ruler and a great leader of men; but was he a great strategist and tactician? Let his record speak for itself, shorn of all the sophistical explanations manufactured for it at St. Helena, and of all the contradictory excuses devised by his partisans and admirers.

Was his strategy in general as wise and brilliant as his disciples believe? It cannot be said to be a proof of strategical genius to possess the greatest army in the world and the command of vast resources, and then to lose every vestige of power. Napoleon is generally credited with being the great exponent of the strategical doctrine, to concentrate the greatest strength against the most formidable enemy, but, actually, he preferred, or selected, triumphal marches through Europe, beating and dispersing the indifferent armies that opposed him, to meeting the army of his chief enemy; Great Britain, which offered itself as an opponent in Spain. It has never been satisfactorily explained why he broke off personally from the pursuit of Sir John Moore. If he had captured the British army at Corunna he might have remained on his throne to the end of his life. The pretext that Austria was looking troublesome was hardly a serious reason for leaving his army at such a critical moment. Austria's provoca-

tion was not so important or dangerous that it couldn't wait to be dealt with later; and, actually, it was eight months before he took action against her. And at any time in the course of the next five years he might have assumed the personal command of his armies in Spain. A severe defeat of the British, or forcing them to a second retreat to Torres Vedras, would almost certainly have brought him peace with his principal enemy. But, no, he preferred the easier, but ineffective, way. A grand march to Moscow was a spectacular event that appealed to all his sense of theatrical display. The enforcement of the continental system made a pretext for it that may have satisfied his sense of reason, but that conception in itself was a chimera, so long as England held the command of the sea.

Then no one can claim the expedition to Egypt as an example of great strategical wisdom, unless the sacrifice of a fleet and army for personal advantage is accounted as such; and the march to Acre has little strategical quality to recommend it. In the 1814 campaign, much admired by Wellington, his performance with a small army was bold and ingenious, but he suffered a succession of heavy defeats after gaining a few small successes; and he owed much of the liberty allowed him to the irresolution of his opponents and to the divergent counsels of enemies with naturally different aims and interests.

He gave a good display of strategy in the Waterloo campaign, where he got quickly into the field before all his adversaries were ready or concentrated, and aimed a sudden blow at the junction of the British and Prussian forces. But then his tactics failed him and he lost all the advantages his good strategy had procured him. The best strategy is useless if it leads up to a battle which is not won.

And what of his tactical ability? He owed much of his early success to his intense study of war at a time when that subject had been much neglected, and to his youthful precocity which gave him a great physical advantage over the septuagenarian generals who opposed him. These factors were chiefly instrumental in achieving the success he gained in the early Italian campaigns. Later, the battle of Marengo was a lucky affair, and the detachment of Desaix before the battle, a grave error of

judgment which nearly had disastrous consequences. Austerlitz, the next great battle, was certainly a tactical gem, but it must be remembered that the Russian army has nearly always been beaten in the field by any well equipped army which is not afraid to face it; a victory over it need not necessarily be considered a great feat.

Next we come to Jena which did not go at all according to plan, but owed much of its decisiveness to the accidental battle of Auerstadt won by Davout some distance away. Eylau came very near to being a disaster, and was strategically a Russian victory, as, through its agency, they secured an unmolested retreat. It was one of the most successful battles ever fought by the Russians against a European enemy. At Friedland Napoleon fought one of his best battles, but here again he was dealing with Russians.

In the 1809 Austrian campaign he had to redeem some initial mistakes made by his chief of the Staff; and the concentration of his army, in the course of which it had to fight five serious battles, was a masterly performance. But would it be ungenerous to cast some doubt on the fighting prowess of the Austrians? Like the Russians they have never proved themselves formidable opponents in the field; though they fought with resolution at the battle of Aspern-Essling where they inflicted a severe tactical defeat on Napoleon, and at Wagram, which was what our own old Duke would have called a "damned near-run thing." In the 1812 Russian campaign the battle of Borodino left a very small margin of success when the fight was over, and the great retreat from Moscow can hardly be described as a well-conducted operation.

In 1813 the indecisive battles of Lutzen and Bautzen are not good examples of tactical skill, and though Dresden was better, the whole of its profit was dissipated by leaving three isolated detachments to be overwhelmed separately. At Leipsig no gleam of genius was displayed by Napoleon; and leaving all his garrisons behind him in German fortresses when he retired across the Rhine, was not commendable strategy. He is usually quoted as the authority against dissipation of strength, but in this campaign he scattered his detachments widely.

We have mentioned the campaign of 1814, and now come to Waterloo. While his strategy in this short campaign was exemplary, his tactics and conduct in the great battle were woeful, and have put his apologists at their wits' end to excuse them. Anyone who could possibly serve as a scapegoat has been employed for that purpose, but careful study of the conditions and dispositions of the battle make it impossible to resist the conviction that Napoleon's own blunders and shortcomings were entirely responsible for his lack of success. By his own good management and the incidence of propitious circumstances he had everything enormously in his favour on June 17th, but by the evening of the 18th he had squandered all his advantages and was a demoralised fugitive from the battle he should have won.

It may be that some revision of the popular estimate of Napoleon's military attainments is required for the guidance of military efforts in the future. Praise of his talents may be too extravagant and admiration of his exploits too blind. Unstinted approval of all his actions and complete disregard of his failures led the French to the lamentable initial mistakes of the Great War. The measure of success Napoleon gained was due to much good fortune and the circumstances of the times, to some great military virtues and strength of character, but not, it would seem, to the possession of strategical and tactical powers of the highest order. He was undeniably a very good soldier and leader of men, enjoying thoroughly all the amenities and excitement of military life and appreciating fully the value of successful military action. "*La guerre est une belle occupation, un grand jeu,*" he said, but was he one of its greatest players? Not expecting to pay when he lost, he was reckless at it, and at times inclined to trust his good star would do for him what his resources and circumstances appeared likely to deny him.

He was at his best with small armies, as his habit of personal direction and his inability to make the best use of a Staff—or even create one—impaired his power of directing great masses. And it cannot be denied that he was under considerable obligation to the finest array of subordinate military talent that the world has ever seen. In his Marshals he had a wealth of military

strength that no other general has ever possessed, not all educated and trained by him, as his admirers claim, but men who rose to the top by their own ability and character, some of them before he himself rose to fame. And he did not always employ them with discrimination or allow them any credit which might detract in the slightest degree from his own renown. As death, estrangement or age took them from his side, his military achievements dwindled greatly in value.



“LAKE AND VICTORY”

By COLONEL E. B. MAUNSELL, *p.s.c.*, late 14th P.W.O.
Scinde Horse.

PART III.

Monson's Retreat.

IN the last chapter* we described how Monson, after halting three weeks at Rampura and being reinforced to a strength of seven battalions, again shirked battle with Holkar when the latter finally approached. Leaving a detachment in Rampura of one and a half battalions he fell back on the Agra road. On reaching the Banass he found the river in flood and while waiting for it to subside Holkar caught him up with his artillery. Three quarters of Monson's force had crossed, by which time the enemy's batteries had ringed in the ford. A counter attack by the rear portion in order to obtain air space failed owing to its having been delivered in insufficient strength, and practically the whole was destroyed. The disaster had taken place in full view of the troops on the northern bank. It is important to remember that the events now to be described concerned troops who would, under most circumstances, be deemed shaken and demoralised. We shall see, therein, the high quality of the old Pandy when well disciplined and led.

The troops marched in an elongated square, the front and rear faces each of two companies in line, and the sides marching in sections, with the little baggage in the centre. Having gone about a couple of miles, a nullah was reached, the sides of which were so steep as to prevent the passage of the baggage animals. Monson, in terror of being overtaken, directed the baggage to be abandoned. It would seem that, at this moment, he lost his head completely, and announced to his colonels that, as a whole detachment, escape would be impossible, but that it could be

* See page 193, April, 1934.

effected if units broke away independently—in other words, he ordered a "*sauve qui peut*." Ashe dismounted from his horse, assembled his battalion, the 2/9th (a corps known until recently as the 1st Brahmins, and now the 1/4th Punjab Regiment with Garhwali Brahmins in lieu of the old Pandies), and told them that, provided they remained round their colours, he would lead them back to Agra intact. As to whether he broke away or not at any period in the retreat is doubtful, but certain it is that his was the only corps that reached Agra more or less intact, and in good order. The loss of the baggage had an extremely bad moral effect, and it would seem that the 2/9th and 2/14th, the new corps, became imbued with a feeling of disgust—no doubt the British officers had given vent to their opinions.

The enemy horse gradually became bolder, but the sepoy retained their cohesion, and repulsed every attempt to break in. Just before midnight, the noise of a horse galloping was heard approaching from the rear. The sepoy fired, killing the horse, when it was discovered that a certain Lieutenant Shaw, of the 2/14th, who had been wounded on the Banass and had then been placed on a camel, was the rider. He had been abandoned, doubtless with many other wounded, at the precipitous nullah referred to above—a fact that gives some idea of the state of Monson's mind—and had been made a prisoner. The enemy had mounted him on the pony, when he managed to break away.

The enemy horse hung round the square until after dawn the next morning, when they drew off, finding they could effect nothing, or, what is equally likely, having discovered some attractive plunder, for such was their real motive. By one of those extraordinary freaks of Indian war, at about seven the column came upon a convoy of one thousand Brinjari bullocks, which had been sent down from Agra for the detachment. As may be imagined, this was an exceedingly acceptable arrival, for, it would seem that the sepoy had had little or no food since their arrival on the Banass. The men were greatly exhausted, and the column now straggled forward in disorder. By a stroke of luck the enemy horse did not put in an appearance and, after marching, almost continuously, for thirty hours, the troops reached Khushalgarh, thirty-six miles from the Banass.

Meanwhile, extraordinary events had been taking place at Khushalgarh. It will be remembered that Nicholl, with six companies of the 2/21st, had been directed to proceed with the treasure to Batoda. He had duly quitted the Banass, and reached this place early on the 24th—the day of the disaster. He then found it was small and destitute of supplies. Justly deeming that Holkar's horse would realize that he was escorting treasure, he decided to push on to the town of Khushalgarh, where there was a company of the 12th, and where he expected to find some Jeypur troops including Gardner, the adventurer. Some of Scindhia's troops, furnished in accordance with the treaty with the British were also known to be here, including Bapujee Scindhia, who had not definitely committed himself but who had been carrying on negotiations with Monson. Bapujee had passed Rampura some days previously, on the 19th. On approaching Khushalgarh Nicholl found a number of Mahratta troops, under Sadasheo Bhao, an officer of Scindhia. After certain obstruction, Nicholl persuaded these that his mission was peaceful, and he camped under the walls of the fort, where there was a company of the 12th, under Harriot, which had been there some days.

Nicholl's arrival excited the Mahrattas, and these soon after his arrival, broke camp and moved out some distance, where they camped again. Sadasheo Bhao, none the less, had conversed with Nicholl in a friendly manner. At eight that night, Nicholl's picquets were fired on by horsemen, and the next morning, the 25th, he moved into the fort. Khushalgarh is a town in the Jeypur state, and it came to the knowledge of this officer that the Bhao had demanded a contribution from it. He at once warned the chief that as Jeypur was our ally, he intended to resist the contribution by force of arms. To this the Bhao replied demanding the surrender of Nicholl's elephants and treasure, when he would be allowed to depart unmolested. In about an hour's time ten guns opened on the fort, which had, like so many of its type, numerous gaps and openings. Nicholl took no notice, but, in the evening, an attack was made by some 700 of the enemy. Harriot, with his company of the 2/12th, and a company of the 2/21st, at once charged them, driving

them out and killing many. Nicholl had, including the 2/12th, only some 300 firelocks under him, with very valuable treasure, and, for this reason alone, did not follow up the success. It was his intention, after dark, to attack the battery, but found it had been removed. The tone of Nicholl's report, apologising for not having done more than he did, owing to the necessity of caring for the treasure, is in marked contrast to the feeble excuses of Monson. The whole incident, indeed, showed that the spirit of the men was excellent.

Possibly owing to Nicholl's bold attitude, Monson's exhausted and scattered force succeeded in entering Khushalgarh unmolested, despite the proximity of Sadasheo's troops. Monson stated he was much surprised at not finding any of the Jeypur contingent at the place, as the raja had promised them, together with a large quantity of provisions. Overawed by the approach of Holkar, however, the chief had done nothing, and had, it would seem, recalled such troops as he had had there, including Gardner. Monson's expression of regret at this occurrence gives some insight into his lack of appreciation of native psychology. No Company's officer of any understanding would have regarded any such assistance as other than improbable in the highest degree.

The following morning, the 26th, the grain that had arrived by convoy was distributed, and here became evident the first symptoms of disaffection among the troops. The sepoys of the 2/9th and 2/14th refused to take it as it was only grain, and hard grain, and that they would rather do without it than carry it. The remaining battalions accepted it gratefully. Holkar's horse now appeared all round, and a correspondence was intercepted between certain native officers of these two corps and the enemy.

The race of the native officers is not given, but, as the enemy horse comprised a large number of Hindustani Mussulmans, and there were a proportion of these in the Bengal infantry of the day, it was most probably from this element that treason occurred. The whole of Frith's irregular horse were Hindustanis, and would find no difficulty in going over. The two battalions of the 12th, together with the 2/21st, were entirely

clear of suspicion. Neither the 2/9th nor the 1/14th were bad regiments. They had both done extremely well at Agra, and in the Second Assault at Bhurtpore it was these two battalions which were practically to save the whole affair from disaster. In Indian corps, or, indeed, in any body which is primarily mercenary, treason is always in the background to a major or minor extent, though great numbers of British officers, particularly those in “class regiments” will persistently blind themselves to the fact, not infrequently, from a mistaken and fatuous *esprit de corps*.

Lake, in 1805, stated that, in his opinion, the desertion which so alarmed Monson was rather the consequence of extreme fatigue than wholesale treason, and that the number that went over, stated to be two companies, was exaggerated.

By five in the evening the hostile horse were reckoned at 20,000, with Sadasheo Baho's and Bapujee Scindhia's people as well. Sadasheo's guns were brought close to the walls and a bombardment began. The troops “stood to,” expecting an attack. As it grew dark, the enemy drew off, though not for any great distance. It has been stated that Nicholl, the previous evening, had contemplated attacking the enemy battery after dark but had found the guns withdrawn.

Now Nicholl had had only some 300 firelocks all told, and had routed some 700 of the enemy with only 100 or so. Monson, on the other hand, had at least 1,400. The men had had a day's rest, and, as Khushalgarh was a biggish town which the inhabitants had only quitted the previous evening, there must have been hidden stores of grain which the sepoys, no doubt, had discovered. It is reasonable to conclude, therefore, that the troops had had a square meal. Nicholl had intended to attack the enemy guns after dark, and it was only the fact that the guns had been withdrawn that prevented him. This evening, however, the guns were not withdrawn, and remained as an objective. A bold attack would, without a doubt, have met with success, for all Nicholl's men would have been only too eager to repeat the efforts of the previous evening, and might have been employed as a spear head. The tales of the disaster on the Banass were not likely to have gravely affected their morale.

The pusilanimous Monson, once more, would risk nothing. He would run away, and that too as fast as he could. At eight that night, accordingly, the detachment fell in in square outside the town gate. Moving on, it had to pass close to the enemy camp, and the alarm was given—a bold officer would have attacked forthwith. Sadasheo's guns opened, but, having been laid for the gateway, did no damage to the detachment, though it was deemed that they did to their own people who were swarming out to attack the square.

Throughout the night, the square slowly moved forward, charged repeatedly by the hostile horse, who now appeared in swarms. No impression whatever was created and the staunchness of the sepoys, particularly those of the 2/21st, were beyond praise. The enemy had three gallopers with them, quite possibly those taken from poor Lucan, but they did little or no damage. By mid-day the following day the horse drew off and, after being under arms the best part of twenty-two hours, the troops, in a state of great exhaustion, reached Hindun at six in the evening, distant from Khushalgarh about twenty-five miles. The last remaining howitzer had been spiked en route. Having halted here until one in the morning only, Monson proceeded to carry on his flight. The hostile horse appeared again at daylight, but made no impression, though some one and a-half pound camel guns wounded a few sepoys and followers. This day, the 28th, after clearing some ravines, the troops got into some disorder, and the horse, seeing this, made a bold charge. The 2/12th and 2/21st, however, closed their ranks and, waiting until the enemy were within fifty yards, commenced a well directed file firing. It was estimated that some 14,000 horse attempted this attack, which was directed against all sides of the square, but principally against the two corps mentioned. The conduct of the sepoys was admirable, and very heavy loss was inflicted. This repulse made the enemy exceedingly wary, and no further charges ensued. On the other hand, a constant sniping went on, and a certain number of casualties occurred, including three British officers, M'Culloch among them. There being no means of carrying the more severe cases, the unfortunate wounded, perforce, were abandoned, and, to the rage of the sepoys, were

fouly done to death under their very eyes. This had a hardening effect on the men and made them resolutely determined to fight to the last. At a point about six miles short of Biana, on crossing the Guddah Kal nullah, some camels carrying the treasure stuck in quicksands and had to be abandoned. It might be supposed that, if camels were available for treasure, the unfortunate wounded could have been loaded on them. Monson found a position among the ravines which he deemed secure from attacks by the hostile horse, and here he proposed to halt. At about five in the evening, however, the enemy brought three or four guns, six and nine pounders, on some higher ground whence they fired on the bivouac. It would seem that, with the short range of the artillery of the day, there should have been but little difficulty in attacking these guns. Monson described their bombardment as “a furious cannonade,” as though the fire from three slow loading muzzle loaders could ever be “furious.” He therefore moved on, and, as the rear of the column was delayed until the head passed up the ravines, some further loss occurred. The Meenahs now began to harry the troops, and it was dark before the Biana Pass was cleared. It was in this passage that the troops as a whole fell into inextricable disorder, largely owing to the broken ground and crops, and, as a formed body, the detachment ceased to exist. A number of men, overcome by fatigue and want of food, lay down and could not be induced to move. Some eight or ten British officers collected between 400 and 500 men and persuaded them to keep together for a time, but as the men kept dropping out until only some 150 remained, it was resolved to push direct for Agra. Don had fallen asleep like so many others, when his syce woke him up and told him the detachment had dispersed. Sick as he was, he climbed on his horse and pushed ahead, the whole route covered with worn-out stragglers, until he found Ashe’s 2/9th, which alone had kept together. After talking to Ashe, he rode on and reached Fatehpore Sikri at ten the next morning, the 29th. The place was full of stragglers and, shortly after, Holkar’s people began to arrive, seemingly much as ordinary travellers would, “though they cast the eye of disdain on the unfortunate.” The townspeople commenced to side with the enemy, and Don, who found himself

with M'Culloch and some British officers, including a Doctor Burgh, persuaded the former to get together some of the men in order to protect the wretched camp followers—who appear to have swarmed—while the town was evacuated. Some 400 sepoy were thus rallied and joined Ashe, who had recently arrived outside the town. Thanks to these measures a great number of men got away who might otherwise have been murdered. As it was, poor Burgh and Harris, both of the 14th N.I., were thus put to death. After quitting Fatehpore Sikri in the evening, and straggling along utterly exhausted all night, the leading survivors reached Agra the next morning, unfortunate sepoy and followers dribbling in for some days after. It was found that a good number had arrived two or three days before, the disaster on the Banass being magnified one hundred fold. Thus ended the greatest reverse suffered by the British since The Black Hole of Calcutta, brought about, almost entirely, by the fatuous and futile leading of Colonel Monson. For the next half century the tale of disaster was sung by the nautch girls and the distich :—

Ghore par howdah hathi par zin

jaldi bhag gya Kernel Mansin

became familiar throughout India, in replacement of verses equally famous, but this time complimentary :—

Hathi par howdah ghore par zin

Sowari par jata Warren Eshting (Warren Hastings),
sung as a tribute to the pomp and magnificence maintained by this great man.

Incapable though Monson had shown himself, he was, nevertheless, a gentleman. There was no making the sepoy into scapegoats—students of war in which native troops have taken part realize that, in this guise, they are often of much value to obscure shortcomings elsewhere. He lavished praise on them, and the men thoroughly deserved it. It has been well stated that quality shows itself best in adversity, and this was particularly true of the old Pandey sepoy of the days of Lake, when he was as fine a soldier as his descendant of the Mutiny was the reverse. The conditions of the retreat threw an intense strain on the men's loyalty, for they could have taken service with Holkar with little or no difficulty, many of his infantry being of

identically the same race. The hardships of the retreat, which impeded the high caste men fulfilling the numerous technicalities in connection with the preparation of their food and compelled them to march hungry, and the appalling weather would, infallibly, have caused less well disciplined men to disperse. The cohesion and discipline maintained until the end indicate an extraordinarily high tone among both officers and men, and no harsh system could possibly have lasted, despite the balderdash bandied about by humanitarians with regard to the brutalities of flogging. These were the days, moreover, when officers in the “forties” referred to the discipline as being “very severe.” The men had remained true to their salt despite every inducement to desert, for, in these days we must remember, the “iqbal” or “prestige” of the Company Bahadur was still in the making.

The total casualties are not known, but they probably amounted to nearly half the detachment, the majority being sick. A goodly proportion rejoined a couple of months or so later, having hidden away from Holkar’s horse. Lake, when he arrived at Agra, gave the men unstinted praise, and, moving among the native officers and sepoy as a comrade and a friend, soon restored morale. His kindly bearing and his sympathetic manner to the numerous sick and wounded effected marvels. That Wellington, under like conditions, could have done as much is more than doubtful. An officer who could, in the presence of a number of officers, deliberately taunt an unfortunate major of engineers with being the son of a butler would not be likely to effect much. The fame of Leek Sahib Bahadur was already great, but now it became greater, and the battalion bards—a regular institution in many of the more famous sepoy corps—for half a century later would recount the doings of their forbears under this great “Jung i Lat Sahib.”

To show that he had not lost confidence in the men, he formed the 1/12th, 2/12th and 2/21st into a Reserve Brigade, with the flank companies of the 22nd Foot. In consideration of his services, Don was placed in command of it, and, in the campaign now about to open no troops did harder work than this formation. Don was very seedy and a number of the surviving officers

of the detachment had to take sick leave. On affairs such as these, it must be remembered that British officers, not accustomed to native food such as was likely to be the only type obtainable under the circumstances, soon begin to suffer in health.

The disaster created astonishingly little recrimination, and that instant seeking for scapegoats, which, on occasions, were such a disgraceful feature of the Great War, was entirely absent. Both the Marquis Wellesley and Lake mutually shouldered full responsibility. The former stated: "I fear my poor friend Monson is gone. Whatever may be his fate or whatever the result of his misfortunes to my own fame, I will endeavour to shield his character from obloquy, nor will attempt the mean subterfuge of sacrificing his reputation to shield mine"; while Lake replied: "I shall, upon every occasion, declare both publicly and privately, that you had nothing to do with the march of that detachment, and that all censure for that measure must be attributed to me, and to me alone." With two such great gentlemen as these at the head of affairs, things were not likely to go far wrong in India.

CANTONMENT LIFE.

We will now turn to the troops in cantonments, whose rest was so soon to be disturbed by the revival of Holkar. The terrible hot weather march, though it had resulted in heavy casualties from heat-stroke, had not proved as devastating as Lake expected. The losses did not approach those of the following year, when the men had got under cover at much the same date. This may be accounted for by the fact that the Grand Army had been marching pretty steadily since Laswari, the previous November, whereas, in 1804-05 the army had been stationary, in appallingly insanitary conditions, before Deeg and Bhurtpore for upwards of four months. The steady marching of the wars of this period, indeed, saved the white soldiery. It was not the case of beer-sodden troops being suddenly engaged in the most exhausting form of war known, as it was in 1897, which resulted in no inconsiderable lowering of their prestige in the eyes of the sepoys.

The British corps had gone as far back as Cawnpore, the only cantonment with lines fit for European soldiery in the rains. They had reached the place between June 20th and 30th, at the pinnacle of the hot weather and at about the period when the rains break. Monson started his retreat on July 8th, and it is of importance to remember that only some eight weeks were to elapse before the unfortunate war-wearied men were on the move once more. News of the commencement of the retreat reached Cawnpore thirteen days later, and we can well imagine the curses that greeted them. The troops, on return to cantonments, were given some days to rest and pull together. The British soldiery required some considerable period longer than the sepoys, chiefly because the men had been allowed time to “sober up” after they had finished squandering arrears of pay on their twin pastimes, women and arrack. To interfere with such legitimate relaxations would be fraught with risk, and, while the orgies were in progress, for an unpopular officer to venture among the men might even be dangerous. On the other hand, for a popular officer to do so might be excessively embarrassing, and sometimes rather a painful experience. There is an absurd account of a popular colonel being chaired by his enthusiastic and exceedingly unsteady followers “and receiving many severe falls.” Charles O'Malley's account of his chairing by drunken soldiery at Badajoz is founded on fact.

The normal peace routine then commenced. To modern ideas the lot of the white soldier must have been one of deadly boredom. Parades were over, in those days of early rising, by 6.30 in the morning, and the man had the whole livelong day to get through without reading, for nine out of ten were illiterate. No games were played. What wonder the men had recourse to those refuges of the bored, drink and women? Of both, abundance is obtainable at the cheapest possible rates if one is not particular, and no man in his senses could accuse the white soldier of this failing.

The Cawnpore of 1804 corresponded largely to the Rawal Pindi of to-day as being the main central station near the frontier. It was, really, the only “cantonment” in the modern sense in Hindustan, for Allahabad and Futtigarh, which, with

Cawnpore, had been garrison towns for the last thirty years had no lines for white troops. It is worth noting, in this connection, that for the greater part of these thirty years the Company's dominions proper only extended as far as Buxar, one hundred miles down stream of Allahabad. Cawnpore was a very big station, even in the modern sense, with three regiments of dragoons, one of native cavalry, one of British infantry, and no fewer than ten native infantry. It stretched the best part of seven miles along the Ganges. The enthusiastic Captain Thorn tells us "the bungalows of the officers are very elegant, spacious and convenient, interspersed with gardens, which supply a profusion of fruit and esculent vegetables"—the word "esculent" should be noted, for we learn, also, that both European and Indian varieties were obtainable, and opinions are often divided with regard to the latter. It was reckoned a good station, with lots of sport and social amenities. The latter, in 1804, were enhanced by the additional ladies of the officers with sepoy corps who did not care to share the active service conditions under which most of those in the Doab were living. Curiously enough, however, there were half a dozen or more at Bareilly, an exposed station.

It is essential to remember that there were then no hill stations. Landour only came into being in the early "thirties." White women, one and all, stayed down in the plains throughout the year. The social round, therefore, was very much the same in the cold weather as it was in the rains, though, from Pester's journal, it would appear that in the hot season ladies hardly quitted their bungalows. A second point to remember is that leave to England for officers in sepoy corps only occurred about once in ten years. Ten years, indeed, was the period for which an officer had to serve in India before being first allowed leave other than sick leave, and there are officers still living who served under this regulation, which came in as one of the reforms of Cornwallis in 1796. Corps do not appear to have moved on relief to anything like the extent of the present day and appear to have remained quartered in the same station for many years on end. The upshot was that men regarded their cantonment far more as their home than they do now. They

would, therefore, embellish their bungalows with gardens and make themselves comfortable to an extent unknown in most cantonments of the present day. None the less the interiors of the bungalows were furnished only in the sparest manner. Pictures of these interiors as late as the “forties” all show walls devoid of any form of embellishment and only bare essentials as furniture.

The white soldiery were housed in long one storey mud and thatch hutments, much as they continued to be for the next seventy years. These were probably just as cool as the modern “two-deckers,” though the roofs soon harboured every species of vermin which favours such roofing in the East. The sanitation was crude to a degree, latrines and cookhouses often being under the same roof, and a corps newly arrived in India would have constantly about 20 per cent. of its strength on the sick list, by far the greater part of which sickness would now be obviated by better hygiene. The strength returns of the period show that the 8th Light Dragoons which had only been in India a year had nearly double the number in hospital the 27th and 29th had. The two latter regiments had been in the country ten years. According to Fortescue there would only be a small proportion of white soldiery who had lasted out the first ten years. Looking at the returns, however, this is not quite the case. There was great mortality in the early days, but, when once the man had been three years in India the proportion dropped, and regiments had quite a large number of hard old stagers of fifteen years’ service or so—“proof against arrack within as against sun without,” as Blakiston says of the famous 19th Light Dragoons.

Among the rank and file soldiering in India was extremely popular. In lieu of being an outcaste as he was at home, the man was a personage of considerable importance, well housed, regularly paid and with none of the irksome fatigues of other quarters of the world.

The white soldier, in particular, was waited on hand and foot. A swarm of dusky attendants attended to his every need, and the only thing he had to do was to walk on parade and

drill, for all his kit was cleaned for him. While a proportion of the men had their white wives, the remainder to a man had their *Dulcineas*. These fairies may not have actually shared their barrack rooms, for fear of the white ladies, who, we may assume, announced that "they was damned if they was going to be under the same roof as those black b'—s," (an expression both canine and feminine), for the soldier's lady of the day was quite capable of using her fists with the best of them. The lives of these latter, who followed the drum into every quarter of the world, living hugger mugger with the men on board ship and elsewhere, must have been extraordinary and would make an interesting study. Unfortunately, no soldier's woman has been able to write and hand down to posterity this amazing form of existence.

In the newly constructed lines at Meerut in 1809, the date the cantonment was started, the women were accommodated in the double verandahs of the company barrack rooms. The privacy allowed was regarded in the light of some stupendous reform, much as was the introduction of baths at Aldershot in the late 1890's. The days of which we write were those of long service. The regiment was the home. Many of the men, and more of the women, had been begotten, born and brought up under these conditions since the corps was raised, and their sons and daughters would be also until short service came in eighty years later.

The cantonments in Hindustan, other than Cawnpore, were excessively primitive. They amounted to the "Government Buildings," which were the only erections with a possibility of permanency, the officers' bungalows, most of which would melt or blow down if left abandoned, and the sepoy lines which would soon degenerate into mounds of mud if not repeatedly patched up. An open space dignified by the name of The Mall—one of those Indian roads "nowhere to go but there, nowhere to come, but back"—traversed all of them, and would be the scene of the "smart set" exercising in their tandems in the evenings for, to drive a tandem was regarded as being very smart indeed. In about the 1820's the custom began of a rendezvous at the bandstand at sunset, which was usually located in the "Company Bagh," in modern terms, the Cantonment Gardens, but in 1804

such a resort of gaiety was only to be found in the Lower Provinces, where life ran almost as it did in the days of the Mutiny fifty years later. The term “bungalow” at this period really indicated a glorified native hut, which was all that the officers’ houses amounted to for the next sixty years. The bungalows we now have pointed out to us with the words “those old boys knew how to live in those days” are merely the survival of the fittest, for by far the majority were little better than shacks, such as an officer with only a modified sense of permanency would build.

The officers did not find the hot weather and rains as boring as we do now. There was no close season for small game, of which there was abundance. Tigers swarmed, largely as the result of the state of turmoil in which the country had been since the memory of man. Dinners at which the ladies discoursed sweet music took place frequently, and men played billiards to an extent not now known. Tennis, hockey and football were, of course, unknown, but every officer rode, his steed, if possible, being an Arab, though in most cases he had to content himself with a small country pony. In the larger stations there was always an amateur dramatic society, and, in the smaller, the performers comprised, on occasion, the whole of the officer cadre, less some newly arrived individual who would be the audience—we have known of theatricals on these lines on the Frontier in recent years. That the season was dull is granted, but our great grandfathers did their best and life in India was far more friendly than is often the case at present, for every man kept open house. The Company’s officers, we must remember, had no messes—they did not come in “by order” until 1806, though in some corps they existed on chummery lines before that date—and all had their own cooks. A feature extraordinary to modern ideas was the high gaming. Pester records winning Rs. 1,200 one evening, and we know his monthly pay was only about Rs. 250.

A feature of all the older books on India is the extraordinary stress laid on feminine society, while, almost in the same breath, there is deprecatory comment on such white ladies

as were to be found. Readers of Thackeray's "Colonel Newcome," "Vanity Fair," and other works see, most admirably portrayed, the ladies of the military hierarchy, who may be taken as fair samples of the majority. Identically the same types are to be met with in garrison towns and naval ports at the present day. The balance, it would appear, were lower in the social scale, and some exceedingly bad verses by Sir John d'Oyley, written in the 1820's, describes one young lady with "a touch of the tar" going out to India to pick up a husband as :

"underbred, but Indians are not hard to please
where the commodity cannot be obtained with ease."

Pester is particularly cutting on the half-dozen ladies at Bareilly in 1804, "a more stiff lot I never met, and the bottle was voted the better company. Pale, proud and ignorant, attempting the airs and graces of gentlewomen, although it is probable that, before arrival in our markets they had been unable to afford a change of dickeys once a month." Another writer says, "some ladies have the weakness to affect such airs of pomp and ceremony as to make their society exceedingly disgusting." Whatever their defects, however, their society was usually much sought for—and they possessed stout hearts, and the natives respected them.

The hum-drum of cantonment life was suddenly broken. On July 20th, nine days after the event, bazaar rumour was current in Bareilly that Holkar had fallen upon Monson with 40,000 horse and that a sahib had been killed. No importance was attached that day but, twenty-four hours later, private letters arrived confirming it. Lloyd was the officer and the action was that which occurred on the Mokandra, three hundred miles to the south—we notice that the rate of rumour in India was usually from thirty to forty miles a day. Day after day more and more news flowed in, most of it grossly distorted and exaggerated, but it soon became obvious that the Grand Army must re-assemble.

At Delhi, the wise and astute Ochterlony took time by the forelock, scenting trouble. He warned all detachments to stand by to close. These included Burn, with a battalion at Saharanpur,

to the north, who at this juncture was causing the Sikhs to feel the weight of his arm, and two battalions from Perron's service under half-caste adventurers. He also caused the tumbledown ramparts of Delhi to be repaired, impressing swarms of coolies. Thanks to these measures the historic defence of the Imperial City was rendered possible the following October.

Lake, as we have shown, despatched two battalions under Ashe to reinforce Monson. These were to be followed up by a strong mixed brigade under Sackville Browne, which was assembling at Muttra when Monson fell back on the Banass.

The orders for the re-assembly of the Grand Army had been issued prior to Monson quitting Rampura, but it was nine days before the 3rd Native Cavalry, an extremely fine regiment, was able to march from Bareilly, presumably owing to transport difficulties, for the cattle had to be impressed and the local inhabitants, foreseeing this, had probably driven the best animals off.

We have a most graphic account of Pester's marching out the previous year—"the drums were beating the Grenadier's march and all ranks in the highest spirits possible"—but we may rather doubt the "highest spirits" on this occasion, for the men were war-weary.

On September 2nd the Cawnpore troops marched out, the British soldiery drunk to a man, those not too drunk to sit on their horses or flounder along the muddy track roaring out that extraordinary, macabre song of Newgate:—

“My name it is Sam Hoare,
And I'm rotting here in quod
For the killing of a ——
And the parson he did come
And he talked of Kingdom Come
For to-morrow I must die
As though I cared a fly.”

Lake, no doubt, had heard the air forty-six years before when he marched, with his Guards, for the Seven Years' War, a young ensign of fourteen. Vandeleur, riding at the head of the

8th, we know, as a fact, was to hear the same eleven years later as he led the Hussar Brigade to Waterloo. It is possible that the great Marlborough himself had heard it a century before.

NOTES.

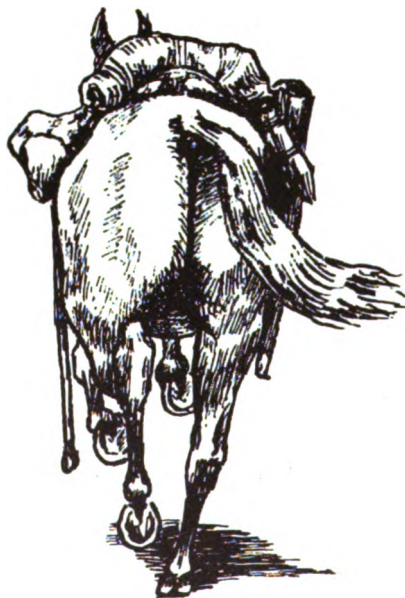
BILLIARDS.—The game was much played in the larger stations or in stations where some important Civil Servant had a good house. At Mainpure, for instance, the Civil Servant was building a small palace for himself at a cost of half a lakh of rupees. The tables were very poorly constructed, the beds being of wood or marble, and the cushions stuffed with cotton. The balls were struck with maces tipped with ivory.

PUNKAHS.—These were an innovation at Calcutta in the 1790's and may not have reached Cawnpore by 1804. They certainly did not exist in the normal officer's bungalow. This point is worth remembering. The white soldiery had none until many years later.

DRESS.—The orders of the day teem with references to the efforts of unfortunate officers to escape from wearing cloth kit. The King's officers were far more subjected to this badgering than those of the Company. The "turn out" of many of the latter, indeed, was exceedingly lax and there is the instance of a duel between a King's officer and a Company's brought about by the slighting reference of the former to the latter's appearance. The crux was the Company's officer's comment that his adversary "looked like a lobster and stank like a badger."

SOLDIER'S WOMEN.—There is, I believe, a book called "The Adventures of Mother Ross," which purports to give the life of a woman accompanying Marlborough's armies, but I have been unable to lay hands on it.

E.B.M.



B.C. LEGENDARIES

By SIEGFRIED P.

6. *Eustace Trenchant*

ARMES BLANCHES

EUSTACE TRENCHANT was a Captain when Pelman joined: always immaculately dressed, a student rather than a sportsman, good looking and a charming companion. He was a brave man, but not a fearless one like his brother, the V.C. The latter was better known by the world. He was older and had attained fame in war and sport—the “beau ideal” of the Bengal Cavalry, the “beau sabreur sans peur et sans reproche,” the Sir Lancelot of the round table at Indian Cavalry dinners. Eustace was a quiet figure rather in the background. He had a somewhat cynical outlook on life which he kept to himself and a trenchant wit which he used unsparingly on those who annoyed him.

His Pathans liked him. Eustace was always ready to stand up for his men before any authority, though he would dress them down unsparingly himself. He took great trouble with their training that last year. He probably felt more than many of his time the shadow which lay over them all. Yet in all he did there was little bravado or show. His squadron seemed to be heard and seen less than the others.

He had served in the South African war with mounted infantry, and was therefore keenly alive to the uses of dismounted action. He dearly loved a mounted charge, but he constantly lamented that the cavalry were not armed with a bayonet. “Here we are tiring ourselves out carrying lances when we’ve got good swords on our saddles. We’d do much better to carry a bayonet instead of the lance,” he said to Bunny, his subaltern, as they withdrew after unsuccessfully trying to take a rocky hill.

They dismounted behind a village, and Trenchant told his Risaldar to water the horses, a third at a time.

An umpire rode up. "Sorry, Trenchant. You remembered what the General said about 'dash' at yesterday's pow-wow, but you could never have taken that position dismounted without bayonets."

"Probably not, Sir," replied Trenchant, "but the cavalry are sure to be given bayonets in a big war. I had hoped to be able to gallop the top of the hill; but it was steeper than I expected and too many rocks; so the only thing was to dismount in that dead ground and try an assault on foot."

"Well, if you can't think of anything better, stay where you are for an hour." The umpire rode away.

Trenchant stood musing. "Bunny, get me two marching order straps, a lance and a rifle," he said suddenly. Bunny quickly obeyed.

"Have you studied boy scouting, Bunny? No? Then watch me," he went on as he bound the lance deftly to the rifle. "That's not too bad. Call up the Indian officers."

He showed his contrivance to the bearded veterans. "Now," he said, "we have got to take that hill. Dash and initiative are what the General stressed. We've tried the dash, so here goes for the initiative. Numbers one, two and three troops will fix lances to the rifles of all but horse-holders, like I have done. Number four troop will lead the way to where we dismounted in the last attack, will dismount and take up a covering position on the small knoll to the right, east. The enemy won't have noticed the other troops behind carrying their rifles and lances. I shall lead them round further to the west than last time, under cover of that bluff. Judging by the map, we ought to be able to get close up on the steep side and do a bit of surprise."

"But the umpire told us not to move," Bunny would have liked to suggest. He refrained as his Captain was not a man to foil in his plans.

"A blind eye for any umpire's signals until we have done our job, Bunny," shouted Trenchant as they trotted out of cover. "Gallop," and away they went in extended column of troops up the lower slopes of the hill.

To the left of them the broad river swirled lazily, a flat plain of baked mud and thick "jao" undergrowth beyond, with patches of tall yellow grass where the boar were taking their midday siesta. A shawk swung high above. In the far distance villages gleamed amongst palms and patches of cultivation. Trenchant considered for a moment how he would have crossed the river and turned the enemy's right flank, if the river had not been proclaimed out of bounds. "How seldom we do swim rivers in peace time": he thought.

An outburst of fire claimed his attention, and immediately afterwards they galloped into the dead ground. Number four troop were dismounted and clambering up to their position as Trenchant took his other troops in half sections traversing along the hillside to the west. He rode with the advanced troop commander. The way was narrow and steep. It led upwards. They rounded a huge boulder, and found the advanced section halted in a small gully. Below them the hillside fell precipitously to the river's edge.

"We can't ride any further," whispered Trenchant, and he gave the signal to dismount. In low tones he ordered his troops to extend to five yards and advance up the slope in column of troops at fifty yards distance. "I'll be with the rear troop. Creep up as near as you can without being spotted!"

Up they scrambled from rock to rock. Trenchant could not see his leading troops; the ground was too steep. He accompanied his reserve troop, echeloned back from the others. Suddenly he heard a shout followed by a burst of blank firing. A few seconds later he came over the crest and saw the enemy infantry, oblivious to his existence, blazing away to their right. "Charge," he shouted. Within ten yards of the enemy he ordered a halt.

The umpire came galloping up. "What do you mean by disobeying my orders?" he bellowed. "I did not disobey them, Sir," smiled Trenchant grimly. "You told me not to move unless I could think of something better. I think I have."

"Humph!" The umpire considered for a moment. Then his face relaxed. "Yes, I did say that. Well, I apologise. Quite a good show, Trenchant. You can have the hill!"

FRICOURT.

Pelman was watching some sappers bombing trout. His squadron were pegged down in a field behind the shelters lining the stream. A hand thumped him on the shoulder. "Hullo, Pelman, I've found you at last. It has taken me hours finding you." It was Trenchant.

Pelman, delighted, made him sit down and drink some tea. "I'll see you back, afterwards. Where are you?"

"It will be a good long walk, I warn you." "All the better. I can't let you go all of a sudden." "Come on then. You had better bring your 'mac.' It is going to pour again."

They set off, crossing the stream by a foot bridge and started to climb the hills beyond. An incessant thunder of guns was about them. Puffs of white smoke chased a Taube high up in the sky.

It was late in the summer of 1916. Pelman's Cavalry Brigade was lying close by Albert for the second time during the Somme battle, hoping to break through. "I'm afraid that there is not much chance of that young man," said Trenchant, who was an acting Lieutenant-Colonel now. He had been transferred to the command of an infantry battalion.

"I daresay, Eustace—but don't dash down all our hopes. As long as we can be optimistic, let's! I have already started trying what it's like to fly. I wish I didn't get so seasick."

Trenchant laughed. "Well, it's better to be in the air than on the ground sometimes, as you'll see. Look at this."

It had commenced to rain. The sky was a sullen grey. The two officers entered a shallow valley about a hundred yards broad with banks ten feet high on either side. A road, or, to be more accurate, a broad track ran up the centre and over the ridge two hundred yards in front. The road was a sea of mud. Transport limbers were toiling painfully up it. Swarms of little men were passing to and fro across the open space. They looked uncommonly wet and dirty. Mud was over everything. A shell whined over and crashed into the field beyond.

"This way," said Trenchant, leading Pelman to a cubby hole cut in the side of the bank. "Now you'll see how the poor live."

They crouched down in the shelter, upon the floor of which a macintosh sheet was spread. The earth walls were pigeonholed with receptacles for tobacco, washing things, a tin mug, field glasses and maps. Smoke rose from kitchens in the bank opposite. The latrines were close alongside the track, scarcely concealed by a few pieces of bedraggled hemp dripping with rain water.

"Jolly scene, isn't it? We've been here for the best part of a fortnight," Eustace continued, "waiting to go in. It has rained practically the whole time. We were ordered to leave all our heavy kit behind, and the men haven't even got greatcoats. We expected to be sent up to the line at once. It's infernal bad luck. My bantams are fine stuff, but they want dry weather. They simply cannot plough through the morasses up there." He nodded his head to the east. "It's wonderful how cheerful they keep."—"Hullo, Kelton. What's the news?—Allow me to introduce Pelman of my old regiment.—Kelton, my adjutant."

An excessively tall, fair young officer stood before them with some papers in his hand. He appeared immense to Pelman, who had been watching Trenchant's bantams for the last ten minutes.

"Brigade message, Sir. We march up at midnight. Secret instructions are here." He handed the papers over and Trenchant was soon immersed in details and maps. Pelman left him in the shelter and chatted to Kelton outside.

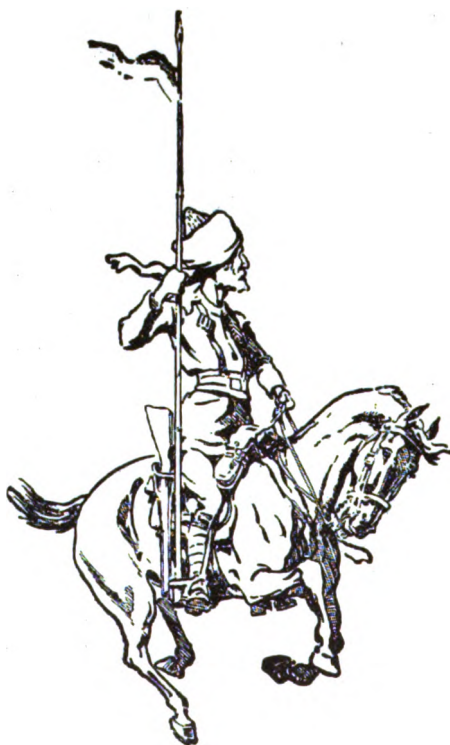
After a few minutes Trenchant joined them; "We march straight to this place." He pointed to a cross on his map, which he had inserted in a talc covered case to keep the rain off. It seems that we shall almost certainly do an attack in the morning. Send the Quartermaster and Transport officer here, Kelton. I'll be along to the office as soon as I've given instructions about rations and kit." Kelton saluted and left them.

"Well, old boy, you had better be getting home. It's late, and I shall be busy for a bit. I'm afraid that we are in for a bad time. The weather is against my chaps," he repeated sadly. "Goodbye and good luck. I hope you'll find your way back safely. Remember me to any of our lads."

Pelman saw him gazing wistfully as he turned to wave farewell in the gloaming half way down the slope.

* * * * *

Pelman heard the story from another officer in Eustace's brigade, a month later. After a tiring wet march up that night, the battalion had remained in reserve until 10 a.m. the next morning, and had then been ordered to attack. Terrific enemy gunfire and mud stopped the little men; but their commanding officer had gone striding on, carrying a rifle at the trail with bayonet fixed. He was seen to reach the enemy trench and go down fighting savagely.



THE HORSE IN CHEMICAL WARFARE

By CAPTAIN H. BARROWCLIFF ELLIS, M.M., 15th Lancers, I.A.

IN accordance with the International agreement entered into by His Majesty's Government, and the Governments of the self-governing Dominions and India, the British Government will, on the outbreak of war, endeavour in conjunction with its allies to obtain from the enemy Government or Governments an engagement that poisonous gas shall not be used as a weapon of war. In the event of failure to obtain such an engagement, "His Majesty's Government" will be free to take such action as circumstances demand.

Such is the policy of the British Government as laid down in "Defence against Gas, 1927."

It would appear to some, that taking into consideration the above-mentioned policy, there would be no need for the British Army to be trained in chemical warfare.

This however is not so, and although we have no offensive gas policy, we must be prepared to protect ourselves and our animals in war against any possible offensive gas action by an enemy power.

It should be remembered that gas is an efficient weapon, it is closely related to peace-time products, it is immediately available and cheap, and above all it is impossible to guarantee its abolition in war, and any nation not bound by treaty, which was fighting a losing war, would certainly make use of the chemical arm in order to avoid defeat.

The protection of our fighting personnel and of the civil population is not within the scope of this article. In the modern respirator we have adequate protection, but very few

steps appear to have been taken to protect animals. The horse means everything to the cavalry soldier and it is indispensable for certain kinds of transport, and although we are told by some that owing to the advent of mechanism there will be no horses in the next war, we know this to be a fallacy.

It is beginning to be understood that horse-drawn transport, for short and quick delivery in large cities, is more efficient and economical than mechanised transport, and the horse in London for these services is on the increase.

The policy in any future war will certainly be to bomb from the air, large factories and munition areas in the opening stages, and the possibilities of gas bombs being used will have to be taken into consideration when deciding on the protection of horses in such places.

We read in regulations that "Air Reconnaissance Reports must be supplemented by Ground Reports." We know that the duties of ground reconnaissance are usually entrusted to Cavalry, we also are acquainted with the numerous other duties of modern cavalry, let us therefore see how chemical warfare will effect us in the carrying out of these duties.

Characteristics about the Horse.

Generally speaking the horse is not so sensitive to gas as human beings, in fact lachrymatory gases have no effect on him.

Mustard vapour which will just blister man or effect his eyes will not worry the horse, but mustard in liquid form is a great casualty producer amongst horses, and is especially active about the eyes, heels, legs, belly and mouth.

Probably the most sensitive part is the heel, and burns from mustard gas in the early stages have the appearance of cracked heels. However, the sole, frog, and horn of the hoof are immune.

Lung irritants such as chlorine and phosgene, although deadly, take longer to affect the horse than they do humans and the concentration must also be heavy.

Whereas mustard reacts after 4 hours with man, it takes 36 hours before blisters appear on the horse. This factor is

one of great importance, and although the horses of a whole unit may be contaminated, they can be worked for this very long period before becoming casualties.

Having seen how a horse may become contaminated, we must now consider his protection.

Protective Training in Barracks.

The soldier is taught how to wear and adjust his respirator from the early days of his recruits training, and he learns how to accustom himself to its discomforts whilst marching, until such a time, when the wearing of it does not seriously interfere with his efficiency, yet a horse's initial training seems to start with the first gas attack on active service. We all know how difficult it is to bridle some badly trained horses, and remounts during war are usually inefficiently trained owing chiefly to the very little time available for their education. We can easily imagine the difficulty that would be experienced in some cases in fitting a respirator, and once it was put on the horse's endurance powers would be limited owing to the restricted breathing caused thereby, unless he had been previously trained to the wearing of it.

The soldier on his first parade in a respirator finds great difficulty in breathing and is very seldom able to march more than a few hundred yards, yet with training we find he is able to march anything up to 20 miles. If we want our horses to be mobile in chemical warfare we must train them in the same way as we do our men, they will then be fit to take their places in the field.

Whilst still a remount he should be taught to stand still and to allow his trainer wearing respirator to handle him all over. He should be taught to go kindly in a respirator on the lunge at the walk, and finally should perform light mounted work still wearing it.

"Protection in the Field."

AT REST.—It is only reasonable to expect an enemy to spray our camps from the air with mustard. All food, grain and

forage must therefore invariably be covered over with tarpaulins.

Grooming and feeding utensils should be protected in the same way and they should never be interchanged.

Coats should be allowed to grow long in order to delay the action of mustard for as long as possible.

Water is very little affected by mustard as it immediately sinks to the bottom, leaving only one per cent. contamination.

The water should be drawn off from the top of the receptacle leaving a small quantity at the bottom which should be destroyed. That drawn off should either be boiled or chlorinated when it will be quite fit for consumption.

As enemy gas attacks from the air on to camps and lines of communication would probably be launched in the early morn, it would be sound to rug up always from one hour before dawn to one hour afterwards. The rugs would give a certain amount of protection against spray, but their removal after an attack would have to be very carefully carried out by men especially protected with anti-gas gloves.

ON THE MOVE.—The protection of horses on the move will have to be very carefully thought out. Nullahs, woods, and low lying ground which normally provide excellent cover for led horses, form deadly mustard traps, and in areas where mustard or any other kind of gases have been used, mounted troops will have to find cover on higher ground behind buildings, etc. The question is a very difficult one to decide, especially when under fire as well. The Commander on the spot will have to decide which is the lesser of two evils, e.g., having his force laid out by machine-gun fire, etc., or by having equally as many casualties from mustard burns.

Rearguards will make use of mustard in contaminating bridges and defiles, and it may often be a sound policy to swim or ford a river in preference to crossing by means of existing bridges.

If an area is known to be contaminated with mustard over which mounted troops must pass, then the pace must be at the walk to avoid splashing the legs and belly with it.

Mustard gas is very soluble in oil which will increase the area of burn, all oily and greasy dressings about the legs must therefore be removed before proceeding into contaminated areas.

In areas where mustard is known to have been used, horses must wear nose bags to prevent of their eating contaminated grass or leaves.

In the event of respirators not being used, the eyes of a horse should be bandaged during a strong concentration of mustard, and if lung irritants are used a fairly useful protection can be made available by using nose bags lined with slightly damped hay.

Should a horse become contaminated with mustard the parts should be scrubbed immediately with a hard brush and clean water, or better still to be allowed to stand in running water. However, once mustard has taken effect, which usually is within half an hour in the case of a horse, this treatment is of no use and the horse will become a casualty, his subsequent treatment being the responsibility of the veterinary officer.

It should be remembered, however, that above all "early intelligence" is the first defence against gas, especially mustard. Well trained reconnaissance parties and ground scouts, by the information they send back will prevent whole formations from crossing contaminated areas.

Protective Clothing.

The question of protective clothing is a very much greater one for mounted troops than it is for infantry. Unless the cavalry soldier can protect his horse as well as himself he will very soon become ineffective as a member of the mounted arm.

It is reasonable to say that once committed to a large concentration of gas of any description, the horse wearing protective clothing will lose its mobility. It will be unable to move at paces faster than the walk, and the best we could hope for with mounted troops would be to withdraw into safety with as few casualties as possible until such a time as they can again come into the picture by moving round to the flanks. The situation of course may demand the sacrificing of complete units in which

case they will have to carry out their tasks, putting into effect all the casualty-saving devices within their power.

The man's waterproof cape acts as a temporary protection against aircraft mustard spray, but it cannot be handled after an attack until decontaminated. In the case of mounted troops the cape should be long and full in the skirt to afford the maximum protection to the horse as well as to the man. It should be fitted with an extension at the back which in use could be spread over the horse's hind quarters, and at other times it would be fastened up inside the back of the cape. (See illustration A.) The head would be protected against all gases by a respirator with a detachable container which could be carried on the front of the saddle. Such a respirator could always be worn in danger zones (without the container) with little discomfort to the horse. The container B could be affixed without dismounting by taking it in the right hand and leaning forward and connecting it to the face piece or hood by pressing it into the slot (C) and giving it a twist to the right as occasions for its use arise. The face piece or hood should have an extension (D) which would protect the neck against spray. In use this extension could be affixed to the front of the saddle and rolled up at other times. (See illustration.)

A respirator of this type would have many advantages. The breathing would not be restricted unnecessarily, and there would be no need for the rider to dismount for the purpose of adjusting it on the alarm being given. The hood or face piece would be adjusted before entering a danger zone and when necessary the rider could fix on the container as mentioned above.

The reins would have to be made in two pieces and adjusted as shown in the illustration (E).

The legs, which are very vulnerable to mustard gas, would be protected by gaiters with straps at the top for fastening round the leg just above the knee and hock, the lower end being shaped so as to cover the pastern and coronet. (See illustration F.)

Protective clothing of this kind would of necessity be light in weight and could be made of cellophane or some similar article.

NOTES.

BISLEY, 1935.

The following are some of the successes gained by Cavalry-men at this year's Army Meeting.

ARMY CHAMPIONSHIP.

Young Soldiers' Class.

2nd. Tpr. L. Payne. 4/7 Dragoon Guards.

Roupell Cup. Class "C" Young Soldiers.

1st. Tpr. L. Payne. 4/7 Dragoon Guards.

5th. Tpr. R. Turner. 5th R. Inns. Dragoon Guards.

Army Hundred Cup.

The following reached the final hundred.

Sgt. Hillier. 3rd Carabiniers.

Cpl. Mitchell. 3rd Carabiniers.

Tpr. Payne. 4/7 Dragoon Guards.

S.S.M. Renwick. Royal Scots Greys.

Tpr. Lothian. Royal Scots Greys.

S.S.M. Ramsome. 4th Hussars.

Cambridge Shield.

1st. Royal Scots Greys. 1,366.

2nd. 4/7 Dragoon Guards. 1,317.

3rd. 5th Royal Inns. Dragoon Guards. 1,307.

Methuen Cup.

The Cavalry Team was placed 14th.

Revolver Thirty Cup.

3rd. Major D. S. Frazer. 15/19 Hussars.

The following also reached the final stage of this Cup.

Captain A. Holland. 3rd Carabiniers.

Captain W. Penny. 4th Hussars.

Lt.-Col. A. Turnham. 10th Hussars.

S.S.M. Renwick. Royal Scots Greys.

Cpl. Knight. 4th Hussars.

NATIONAL RIFLE ASSOCIATION.

Inter-Services Twenty Match.

The following shot in the Army Twenty Team.

Lt.-Col. A. S. Turnham. 10th Hussars.

Major D. S. Frazer. 15/19th Hussars.

Major T. G. Upton. 11th Hussars.

Final. King's Hundred.

Major D. S. Frazer. 15/19th Hussars.

KOLHAPUR CUP.

Major D. S. Frazer, 15/19th Hussars, was honoured by being selected to captain the Mother Country Team.

We offer him our heartiest congratulations.

* * * * *

REUNION CRUISE TO THE BATTLEFIELDS OF GALLIPOLI AND
PALESTINE.*Leaving 9th March, 1936.*

An interesting Reunion Cruise to the Battlefields of Palestine and Gallipoli has been arranged under the auspices of the 74th Yeomanry Division.

Major-General Sir Eric Girdwood, K.B.E., C.B., C.M.G., who commanded the 74th Yeomanry Division has already announced his intention of joining the Cruise, in addition to a number of others who served in the Near East during the Great War, among them being General Sir George Barrow, G.C.B., K.C.M.G. (Commanding the Cavalry Corps), General Sir John Shea, G.C.B., K.C.M.G., D.S.O. (Commanding the 60th Division) and Major-General Sir Stuart Hare, K.C.M.G., C.B. (Commanding the 54th Division).

The British Steamship "Athenia" which has been chartered for the cruise, will leave Southampton on the 9th March, 1936, and will call at Villefranche on the 15th March to embark those travelling by the overland route—proceed to Haifa, three and a-half days, Athens, one day, and Chanak (for the Gallipoli Peninsula) two days, thence return to Villefranche (31st March) and Southampton (5th April).

Those therefore, unable to undertake the full cruise of 28 days can complete the journey from London back to London in 18 days by travelling overland to Villefranche.

Not only to those who took part in these campaigns, but also to friends, relatives and any others interested, this cruise will provide a wonderful opportunity of visiting most of the Battlefields and War Graves. Those in Palestine, Transjordan and Syria can be visited during the steamer's $3\frac{1}{2}$ days' stay at the port of Haifa, and at Gallipoli comprehensive arrangements have already been made to visit Anzac and Suvla Bay and Cape Helles during the steamer's two days' stay at Khelia Bay.

A call will also be made at Piraeus for a visit to Athens.

The Committee of the 74th Yeomanry Divisional Dinner Club are anxious that all Officers and other ranks who served in the Near East during the Great War should have the opportunity of participating in the Cruise and will welcome communication from Secretaries or other officers of Old Comrades Associations, Dinner Clubs, or any other organisation.

Fuller details can be obtained on application to the Secretaries, 74th Yeomanry Divisional Dinner Club, 54, Parliament Street, London, S.W.1.

* * * * *

Sir,—Although rather late in the day, may I call attention to an error in footnotes to pages 501 and 510 of the "CAVALRY JOURNAL" for October, 1934. The author of the article "Cavalry in France, August-November, 1918," here states that the Northumberland Hussars were "the first Territorial unit to be *in action* on the Western Front—though not the first to land," and in the second footnote, that the Oxfordshire Hussars were "the first Territorial unit to cross the Channel, though not the first to be in action." Both these statements are incorrect. The Oxfordshire Hussars were not actually the first Territorial unit to land in France, for the London Scottish did so six days before them, on the 16th September, 1914. But they were very definitely, not only the first Territorial unit to leave for the theatre of war, but also the first Territorial unit to be in action, near the Mont des Cats, on the 5th October, 1914, the day before the

Northumberland Hussars landed in France. The error first arose in the newspapers in 1914, and has since reappeared in various quarters from time to time, though many times corrected. It is, however, finally disposed of by the definite statement in the Official History of the War, France and Belgium, Vol. II, p. 46.

I have the honour to be, Sir,

Your obedient Servant,

A. K.-F.

* * * * *

The undermentioned have become subscribers for 1935 :—

Major J. B. Browne, 16/5th Lancers.

Major J. S. Atkins, Leicestershire Yeomanry.

Major H. F. Creswick, 8th Australian Light Horse Regiment.

2nd Lieut. F. N. St. J. Fairhurst, 7th Queen's Own Hussars.

2nd Lieut. W. G. Sedgwick Rough, 14/20th Hussars.

* * * * *

AUSTRALIAN POLO.

Lord Stonehaven Cup.

The final of the Lord Stonehaven Cup 1934-35 was played between teams from 6th Light Horse Regiment (New South Wales Mounted Rifles) and 16th Light Horse (Hunter River Lancers).

The game was played during the Australian Polo Association's Annual Tournament at Kyeemagh, the 6th Light Horse, holders of the trophy, winning by 5 goals to 4, the same scores that these teams put up in last year's final.

The 6th Light Horse was represented by a team from the Forbes Troop consisting of T. Skene (1), A. N. Bray (2), R. D. Bray (3), T. L. Bray (back), Captain; and the 16th Light Horse by a team from the Dungog Troop being J. R. MacKay (1), R. J. Allison (2), A. M. Allison (3), C. W. Hooke (back), Captain.

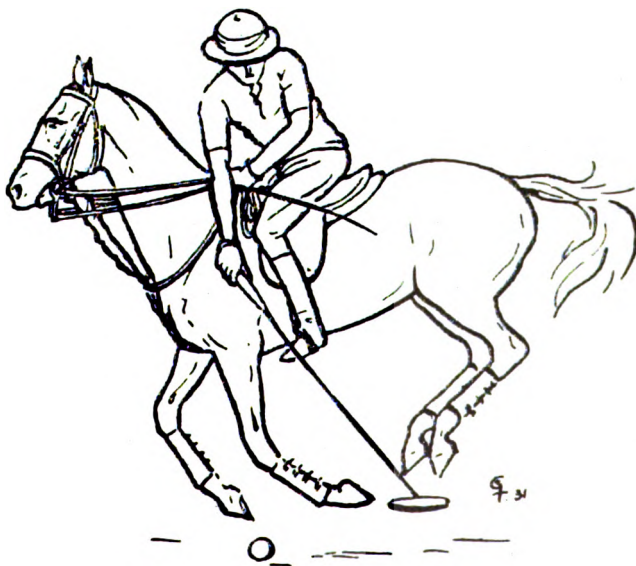
The game was fast and vigorous throughout. Skene scored for the 6th in the first minute. Allison goaled for the 16th after

some determined riding, and the first period finished with one goal all. The second chukka produced some excellent polo. After several unsuccessful attacks Skene scored his second goal, the only one of the period.

Hooke was playing finely and made a great save early in the third. Scores were levelled when A. M. Allison scored and the team took the lead when MacKay goaled after dashing riding and clean hitting by A. M. Allison and Hooke. The 6th pressed hard but could not improve their score.

The next period was the best of the match, each team attacking in turn. R. D. Bray and T. L. Bray both goaled before the end of the period to put the 6th in the lead 4 goals to 3.

Both teams scored in the next period, the goal by MacKay was an excellent one. The last chukka was commenced with the score 5 to 4, and no alteration to the score was made. The standard of the game deteriorated through over anxiety. There was much erratic hitting and scrambling play. However the interest remained intense.



OBITUARY

LORD BELLEW.

(Major the Hon. George Leopold Bryan, 10th Royal Hussars.)

To the great sorrow of all his friends, Lord Bellew died in London on June 16th last. A Tenth Hussar through and through, and during his service in the last 20 years of the 19th Century no one was better known or better loved throughout the whole of the Cavalry than "Buldoo."

A great gentleman, in the best sense of the word, the most loyal of friends, a marvellous teller of stories, and the best of companions—withal imbued to the full with the qualities of courage and humour. What more could you want? His career as a soldier started in 1876 (when 19 years of age) in the Kilkenny Militia Fusiliers, and in 1878 he joined the 10th Royal Hussars in India and took part in the Afghanistan Campaign. In 1884-1885 he served in the Expedition up the Nile for the relief of General Gordon, and on the return of the regiment he was with it until his retirement in 1897. In the South African War he served with the Imperial Yeomanry 1900 and 1901, and in the Great War we find him as Second in Command of a Territorial Battalion of the Yorkshire Regiment, of which his old friend and brother officer, Lord Southampton, was Commanding Officer. The latter writes:—"Buldoo was invaluable to me during the three years we were together. Everyone loved him; he was the life and soul of the Mess, and from his knowledge of life and soldiering most useful in every way. Always cheery, and although getting on for sixty, used always to go route marching with the men when we were training, and when he was setting the pace in front, I think the men would have been just as well pleased if he had not been such a good walker!"

As a civilian he was an elected Representative Peer for Ireland since 1914, and was for many years a Deputy Lieutenant and Justice of the Peace for the County of Kilkenny.

As a horseman he was outstanding. A very fine man to hounds, with a good eye for a country, and a rider of many winners in steeplechases. To those with knowledge of pigstick-ing, the fact that when in India he won the Kadir Cup and twice won the Ganges Cup, speaks for itself. These cups were presented by him to the regiment.

I am sure it is not possible to overstate the affection inspired by Lord Bellew in all with whom he came in contact during his long life, or the happy days the memory of him evokes in their minds.

He had thousands of friends in all walks of life, and, I cannot believe, a single enemy.

Life is mostly froth and bubble,

Two things stand like stone,

Kindness in another's trouble,

Courage in your own.

These were favourite lines of his, and, without doubt, he acted up to them.

In conclusion, I should like to refer to the happy marriage he made in 1927 to a very charming lady. It was an ideal union, and the sincere sympathies of all Tenth Hussars go out to Lady Bellew in her sorrow—we fully realise how much she has lost.



HOME AND DOMINION MAGAZINES.

The *Army Quarterly* is a good and varied issue, without however, any particularly outstanding articles. One of the most topical is that by Captain Kennedy on "The Japanese Army as a Fighting Force"; the author stresses the high moral qualities of the troops, their capacity for enduring exertion and hardship, especially in winter operations, the organising and planning ability of commanders and staffs, and the rapidity and energy of their movements, all of which go far to compensate for deficiencies of modern equipment and training, which admittedly exist. Another interesting anonymous paper points out the unlikelihood of the British army possessing in any future European war, war maps of the high standard normally used by it for training, and the necessity for its learning to construct and utilise extemporised maps of less accuracy and completeness, if it is not to find itself at a serious disadvantage in such an eventuality. An outline of the system of mapping by aerial survey, which will have to be adopted by an army engaged in hostile warfare in an imperfectly mapped area, is given. Captain Latter in discussing "Territorial Army Training" pleads for the adoption of a two-year cycle of training, if possible in the same camps for two years running, with a progressive programme, which would allow of more attention than is at present possible to higher training of companies and battalions; this he considers to be absolutely necessary, if the Territorial Army is to be ready on the outbreak of a war, to take its place, as in 1914, beside our small Regular Army in the field, and not merely serve as a basis for the building up of a national army, as seems at present to be solely envisaged. A second anonymous article pleads for the simplification and modification of Infantry Drill, so as to render it of real use for war requirements, and lessen the time at present spent by the soldier in learning com-

plicated and out of date movements and formations. There is the usual wealth of historical articles of varied interest.

The June *Fighting Forces* contains a fervent plea by the Editor for the elimination, once for all, of the "Air Frankenstein" by the abolition of bombing aircraft by international agreement. Lt.-Colonel Burne discusses the Suvla fiasco, the true causes of which he finds in the domain of morale and psychology—the chances were there in plenty, but we were not alert or energetic enough to see and seize them; it is to this fact, rather than to the poor stamina of the troops, the shortage of water, the age of the leaders, or the lack of information that we must attribute the blame for this most unhappy episode. The rest of the number is well up to standard, without any one item in it being especially noteworthy from our point of view.

The August number of the *Fighting Forces* is fuller of notable matter. Colonel Burne follows up his Sulva article by a critical description of the first landing in Gallipoli; while admitting that a great achievement was accomplished in getting on shore at all, he considers that much more might have been done to exploit this success, particularly by the detachments landed on the outer flanks had there been more thrust, flexibility of plan, and more skilful use of resources. The whole discussion is full of lively interest. Captain Tuke describes the Naval Review in vivid style; an anonymous article discusses the present value of the O.T.C. and proposes some drastic reform in it. There are also a brief account of the Sedgemoor Campaign, a description of Razmak Camp on the North-West Frontier; the first paper of a new series on the army officer's perplexities under the title of the "Survival of the Unfittest," and several other papers of minor but considerable interest. A number well above even the high standard this journal sets itself.

The *Royal Engineers Journal* has a useful paper by Major Fowle on the "R.E. problem of a Tank Brigade" and another one on a cognate subject—the best demolition methods to be used

in the destruction of power plant by a raiding force. From both of these it appears that if full value is to be got from a raid by cavalry or a mechanised force against an enemy's back areas, the Royal Engineers will have to play a leading role, and be given a free hand in the work of destruction. In less severely technical vein there is an interesting narrative of the 1934 Greenland expedition.

The two *chefs d'oeuvre* in the *Journal of the United Service Institution of India* are, first, Lt.-Colonel Kenchington's chatty and informative story of his experiences at the Headquarters of the International Saar Force; he points out that in essence its task was duty in aid of the civil power, and in fulfilling it, the principles of conduct laid down in our Manual of Military Law proved thoroughly practical and sound. The civil authorities and the police co-operated admirably; personal liaison carried out with tact and good humour proved a solvent of all difficulties. The second paper by Major-General Rowan Robinson outlines the American draft scheme of industrial mobilisation for war purposes, and draws some apposite lessons for our own consumption.

The *Royal Army Service Corps Quarterly* has an interesting paper on "Modern Military Discipline"; the writer does not advocate the total abolition of close order drill, though he would confine it mainly to the earlier stages of training, and to the inculcation of the elements of discipline; he deals also with such matters as smartness of dress, the value of tattoos, and performance of fatigues. He stresses the moral value of army discipline to the soldier about to take up a civilian career; and at the end, aptly sums up the conclusion of the whole matter; cheerful and unhesitating obedience coupled with mutual respect and esteem—these it should be the object of our systems of training to achieve. There are also, interspersed with matters mainly of R.A.S.C. interest, two useful discussions on the protection of Motor Transport from air attack, and the types of Motor Transport vehicles suitable for R.A.S.C. use in war.

The main interest of the *Royal Artillery Journal* for those who are not gunners, is to be found in its lighter fare. There are two good papers on Singapore and Mauritius, from the point of view of the officer stationed there, an amusing picture of the British Officer in 1810, as seen through the eyes of a contemporary writer, and several sporting articles of value. The serious matter is rather too technical for the average layman's taste.

The *Royal Air Force Quarterly* in an interesting anonymous article, stresses the importance of concentrating on increase of range in our naval and military machines, as air power is limited mainly by its mobility, and a great increase in range can easily be obtained if we set our minds to it. Squadron-Leader Fulljames propounds a detailed scheme for the organisation of an International Air Force. There are two papers giving in summary, the histories of the Canadian and Australian Air Force, and a good number of lighter articles of very varied interest.

There have also been received :—

The Eagle (Journal of the Royal Dragoons).

The X Royal Hussars Gazette.

XI Hussar Journal.

The Royal Tank Corps Journal.

The Lion (Journal of the 2nd Lancers (Gardners Horse)).

The Fifteenth Lancer.

The Goat (Journal of the Royal Canadian Dragoons).

The Strathconian.

The Journal of the R.A.V.C.

Horse and Foot (C.M.R. and G.R.C.P.R.C. Magazine).

Reveille.



FOREIGN MAGAZINES

THE United States "Cavalry Journal" for May and June opens with a study of J. E. B. Stuart's leading at the Battle of Brandy Station in 1863. This engagement is worthy of study since it marks the culminating point of the Confederate cavalry work. Though defeated, the Federals learnt much from their experience; in McClellan's words: "It *made* the Federal cavalry." For this reason alone the battle is thoroughly instructive. Colonel Martin continues his study of the influence exercised by mechanization and motorization on cavalry. He urges that each cavalry unit should have its own organic fighting equipment complete, so that it may go into action at an instant's notice. In motorizing troops, he states, the principle should be that fighting units must have with them their initial requirements in ammunition, rations and equipment. He proceeds to examine the application of this principle to existing cavalry units, criticising modern establishments in America. First, Lieutenant Hamilton produces a well thought out design for a cavalry reconnaissance car. This possesses good cross-country capacity; but it is not armoured, although made bullet proof as to its vital parts. Its armament consists of two machine guns; it also has radio equipment and a signalling lamp.

Lieut.-General Brandt's book on "Modern Cavalry" is next reviewed. This instalment covers the pages of the original that are devoted to Divisional Cavalry. The author considers that this cavalry should only be used as a reconnaissance unit; he therefore approves of the French system whereby every infantry regiment has a platoon of mounted despatch riders. He is strongly against employing divisional cavalry to fight in line with infantry, and urges that divisional cavalry should be kept in touch with aircraft engaged in reconnoitring in front of the division.

In the July-August number Captain Merrill gives a detailed illustrated account of a new pattern officer's shelter tent, which appears to possess several weighty advantages. Captain

Maurice Rose describes how a cavalry detachment was improvised during the Panama Canal Department manoeuvres that were held in March, 1935. The detachment was mounted on polo ponies and allotted to the 1st Coast Artillery Brigade. The Canal country is described as being ideal for cavalry work since broad gauge vehicles cannot get about on the prevalent jungle trails. The manner in which this "cavalry" ambushed a motor convoy is truly remarkable. Colonel Martin continues his study concerning the influence of mechanization on cavalry. He first deals with scout cars; these he considers to be of the highest value for reconnaissance. But he will not hear of their being used for any real fighting purposes; neither can they be employed for holding strong points, nor for demolitions. This points to the need for a motorized regimental engineer and demolition section. In turn the provision of such a section leads to the desire that the cavalry unit should possess a motorized fighting section, which should support the scout cars and demolition section—much after the fashion of the French *dragons portés*. He recommends a small motorized platoon of two sections, carried in motor lorries which might be armoured.

Lieut.-General Brandt's book is once more reviewed, this being the closing instalment of a review that is really a *précis* of the whole work. The conclusion shows that General Brandt, throughout his writings, has taken into account the present state of German cavalry and its limited armament. His work has been directed towards the future, but in effect rather gains from that fact. This final instalment deals with the whole topic of training and is of the same high standard as all the previous parts of this valuable work. These discussions on training, however, will probably appeal less to British readers, since the British service has peculiarities unknown to continental armies, whilst British officers excel, if anywhere, in this very matter of conscientious training. The keynote of General Brandt's opinions is of a twofold nature: firstly, *individual* training of the man is essential; secondly, only those formations and movements should be taught in peace that are needed in war. Lastly, the cavalryman must be instructed to work on the defensive just as much as on the offensive.

The French "Revue de Cavalerie" for May-June opens with a description of Belgian military equitation and horses. The writer, the Inspector-General of French Stud Farms, is eloquent on the importance still attached to horse flesh in Belgium; he fears that motorization is being overdone in France. Colonel Burnol describes the work of the motorized detachment in the subjugation of the Ait Hammu tribesmen in the difficult country on the borders of the Spanish zone in Morocco; clearly a good piece of work which shows what armoured vehicles can do in mountain country. Captain Becquey concludes his study of the methods of communication to be employed by cavalry in performance of its various tasks. This instalment deals mainly with communications during cavalry reconnaissance. The author is strongly against the addition of any standardized methods, but seems to prefer a liberal use of W/T. Nevertheless in his final conclusions he again declines to make any recommendations and ends with a quotation from the German Regulations in which it is stated: "Signal units can only fulfil their task when the commander has organized them on principles that are both tactically and technically correct." That means that all particular conditions demand particular treatment. Finally, Captain Licart concludes his articles on warfare in Morocco with some conclusions that are directly of interest in that they show that, in this type of fighting and in spite of modern armament, the principles deduced by Callwell in his "Small Wars" still hold the field. One detail alone is new, namely, the need for light and unbreakable W/T equipment. Licart rightly shows that existing French equipment is both too heavy and too fragile for campaigning in the Atlas mountains. Of the use of cavalry in this mode of warfare there is little that cannot be learned from our "Small Wars"; two outstanding conclusions are apparent: firstly, on broken and rocky ground the horsemen must act with boldness but never move too far from support, and never in any order involving dispersion; secondly, on level ground, any show of audacity is legitimate and generally profitable.

The July-August number opens with an anonymous article dealing with the work of the French cavalry in the mountain operations carried out during the Salonika campaign. There is

an account of the operations carried out at Pogradec in September, 1917, and of the manoeuvre of Uskub a year later. In the former incident the 4th Moroccan Spahis distinguished themselves by a five-day march during which they were opposed by one Austrian battalion, the 12th (Saxon) Jägers reinforced by some very efficient Albanian irregulars. On 8th September, a week after marching off for a trek of 60 miles over difficult mountain country, they carried the ridge known as Devoli; on the 11th they seized Pogradec. The achievement was a noteworthy success for mounted troops in such conditions, and in the face of hard fighting. One year later three French African cavalry regiments were entrusted with a not dissimilar mission, namely, that of capturing Uskub so as to cut the retreat of the German Eleventh Army. Speed was essential. On 24th September these regiments carried out a night march by the mountain road along the river Babuna. Next day a severe fight occurred round Starigrad, and only after three more days was Uskub in the hands of the French cavalry. This was achieved at the cost of a difficult flank march across mountains. The end of the fighting is not of much significance in the present connection; the salient fact is that these African horsemen, mounted on small barb horses, proved themselves a fighting force of high value and instinct with all the best qualities of mountain troops. The article contains valuable technical detail.

The constitution of "swift" Divisions in Italy has given rise to some discussion on the Continent as to what the true mission of these new formations may be. The Spanish "Revista de Estudios Militares" for July has therefore opened a discussion of the matter and offers a comparison of the new Italian, French and German views as to the use of "swift," motorized or cavalry divisions. The joint authors of this study conclude that the Regulations for the use of these formations in the three countries are fundamentally much the same. In France the various tasks allotted to cavalry divisions are well balanced, that is to say, these formations are to be prepared to carry out a variety of tasks, all of which need high mobility and great fire power. There is no trace of any organization to act in Alpine country; the probable terrain is always regarded as being well provided

with roads. The result is a mixed organization based on horse and motor, with a prospect of progressive increase of the motor. In Italy the tasks foreseen for the "swift" division are much the same, but there is an inclination to regard that formation as an important factor in battle; in addition, there is a tendency to regard such divisions as a means to secure "moral superiority." This indeed is proved by the use made of these formations during recent manœuvres. The nucleus of the "swift" division is the cavalry and cyclist elements with a proportionate attachment of motor-borne infantry guns, and the like. There is, in fact, no fixed establishment of these ancillary arms to the division, this being the result of the formation having to fight in Alpine country and probably, as often as not, in rearguard actions. Tanks and the like, therefore, will only be allotted to the "swift" divisions, as circumstances dictate.

In Germany there is a clear cut view that in addition to the normal tasks of cavalry divisions mounted troops must, in a war of movement, be entrusted with one paramount task which shall take precedence of all others. In fact there is little doubt that in Germany the principal activity of the cavalry arm is still regarded as being co-operation in the decisive battle—preferably by envelopment of a hostile flank. This is undoubtedly the lesson of August-September, 1914. Aircraft should now carry out the distant reconnaissance previously allotted to cavalry. In Russia much the same line of thought has been adopted. There is, however, the consideration that Germany has only lately been freed from the shackles of Versailles and that it is difficult to foretell what policy Germans finally intend to adopt. Nevertheless, judging by the experiments carried out in the cavalry exercises of 1927, 1928 and 1930, it would seem that German military thought is returning to the conception of "battle cavalry" pure and simple, and that the proportion of mechanized arms, motor-borne infantry and the like, will be kept down to a minimum. A cyclist battalion, motorized artillery, a few armoured cars might alone be found in the German cavalry division of the future.

RECENT PUBLICATIONS.

"Ich Dien": The Prince of Wales's Volunteers (South Lancashire). 1914-1934. By Captain H. Whalley-Kelly, *p.s.c.* (Gale & Polden.)

This regimental history was primarily written for members of the Regiment, but it has this noteworthy distinction, that it regards the Regiment as one whole, irrespective of its subdivision into Regular, Territorial or New Army Battalions. A history of this type was worth writing since the South Lancashire units soon after mobilization were multiplied by the creation of several Service Battalions, while the Territorial Battalions were duplicated by the formation of "second line" units. Finally several Transport Worker Battalions for home service were formed. The process meant that, at one time or another, the Regiment possessed twenty-one—for a few days twenty-two—battalions, of which over one-half saw hard fighting in Flanders, Gallipoli and Mesopotamia. The 1st (Regular) Battalion was one of the few units of Regulars that were detained on the North-West Frontier of India, but even in this case, with a very few exceptions, the entire personnel found employment on active service in other units.

In this history one chapter is devoted to the doings of each Battalion raised during the War. Although such a treatment means that the story is highly condensed, and so has not much to offer the student of the details of the Great War, it gains greatly from the fact that it explains and describes the formation of each new unit; it therefore supplies a bird's eye view of the expansion of a typical infantry Regiment of the old British Army between 1914-1918. This picture alone is of some value to the

reader of the official histories. To the members of the Regiment the treatment can be commended since it gives the author many opportunities to expatiate on the martial qualities that spread so remarkably from the older to the more recent units. The frequent mention of the names of commanders of battalions and companies will appeal still further to those, who served in the Regiment and will thereby be enabled to trace the doings of their friends throughout the War.

“The Bedfordshire Yeomanry in the Great War.” By L. J. C. Southern. (Rush & Warwick (Bedford), Ltd.)

No attempt is made in this book to discuss cavalry problems; it is simply a record of the War experiences of the Regimental family which, as they were rather depressing, will, it is hoped, reconcile its present members to their new rôle as gunners.

The Regiment did not reach France till 10th June, 1915, and by that time cavalry had been relegated to back areas waiting for the “Gap.”

With the 9th Cavalry Brigade it was moved about as hopes of the “Gap” were raised; but neither at Arras nor at Cambrai was it seriously involved in attempts to exploit success, though on the latter occasion it took part in checking the German counter attack.

It is hardly surprising that successive disappointments produced some depression which reached a climax when in March, 1918, it was decided to convert the Regiment into machine gunners. The storm-burst found it neither Cavalry nor Infantry, horses and much of its equipment having been withdrawn. New horses and equipment restored its status and morale and on 28th March it rejoined the 1st Cavalry Division. On the 30th the Regiment played a distinguished part in defeating a dangerous attack on Villers Bretonneux, but this was the last occasion on which it was seriously engaged as an integral unit. For on April 5th the Regiment was disbanded and distributed by squadrons as reinforcements to the 8th, 15th and 19th Hussars. A depressing ending though the squadrons retained their identity.

A foreword by Lt.-Col. C. M. Headlam, D.S.O., M.P., is of general interest as it reminds one of the difficulties the T.A. encountered in 1914 when called on for an overseas war.

C.W.G.

"War from the Air." By Air-Commodore L. E. O. Charlton. (Nelson.) 6s.

Air-Commodore Charlton's aim is to make an apprehensive and enquiring public aware of the full implications of the term "Air Power," and his argument is summed up by himself as follows :—

"Although the lesson of aircraft was easily deducible from a study of the past, the military mind was slow to grasp it. During the Great War, aircraft were grossly misused as peace-compelling weapons of offence, and since then, by a natural process of evolution, their development has altered the rôle of an army and caused that of a navy largely to lapse. The impossibility of adequate defence against air attack is bound to result in the mutual destruction of war-making countries, without hope of victory for either side."

The author, in fact, regards aircraft as an invention of the Devil—he says so in as many words! His thesis is firmly and persuasively stated; as regards the naval aspect, he regards fleets and commercial ships in war as being equally easy prey for attacking aeroplanes, and the question of protection of maritime traffic routes within easy reach of hostile air bases as insoluble under present conditions. As regards armies, he allows them at best a passive defensive role behind fortified lines, while offensive action in the air is devoted to securing a decision. This decision can most quickly and surely be secured by bombing attacks against civil objectives, protection from which can be ensured neither by fighting aircraft nor by ground defences. Unless, therefore, air forces can be internationalised, and confined solely to enforcing the punitive sanctions ordered by a World Tribunal, the next world war, fought in the air, will bring ruin to civilisation.

The thesis, of course, is by now a familiar one, and it is only fair to say that even in the technical and Service journals, many of the author's points have been seriously and knowledgeably contested. However great a sense of disquietude it may arouse, however, the book is well worth studying and pondering by soldier, sailor, airman and citizen alike; it is brief, readable, and lucid in the extreme, and no-one in these perilous and anxious times can afford to shut his eyes to the matter with which it deals.

“The War Office.” By H. Gordon. (Putman.) 7s. 6d.

The War Office, far too long a much misunderstood Government Department, has found an able explainer and defender in Mr. Gordon, who has spent twenty-seven years as a Civil Servant there, and knows its problems, difficulties, intricacies and peculiarities from A to Z. He starts with its history, and a very remarkable, amusing, and at times almost incomprehensible history it is, from the days of the first permanent Council of War under James I, through the turbulent 17th and leisurely 18th Centuries, and the inextricable tangle of authority during the Revolutionary, Napoleonic and Crimean wars, to the reorganisation and centralisation just in time for the Great War. From this date on, Mr. Gordon deals with matters of which he has personal experience and knowledge. All the departments are described in turn—the General Staff, which lays down the military policy; the A.G., who deals with the matter of men; the Q.M.G., who deals with the matter of maintenance, the M.G.O., who deals with the matter of arms; other matters dealt with by the Ministers themselves; the Finance Branch, and the Central Departments. Finally, we have a sketch of war and post-war developments. Mr. Gordon has a sense of humour, and considerable powers of description and elucidation, for all of which his subject affords ample scope. Much of his story can hardly be called, or expected to be, enthralling or easy reading, but none of it is without interest or value for the soldier who wishes to know—and all of us ought to know—how the British Army of to-day is raised, maintained, and managed.

“Wicket Keeping.” By Captain R. T. Stanyforth. (Gale & Polden.) 5s.

Captain Stanyforth, who in his time has kept wicket for the Army, Yorkshire, and England, has been, he tells us, induced to write this little book by the fact that in the majority of books on cricket, the duties of this important, difficult and thankless post are treated at best superficially, at worst on entirely wrong and misleading lines. He has written helpfully, thoughtfully and interestingly, treating of such matters as qualifications, training, care of the hands, equipment and appealing, as well as of the various duties in detail. Some amusing personal reminiscences add to the pleasure of reading, as do a series of most excellent photographs of actual incidents of match play. The reviewer, who has at his time of life, alas! merely an academic interest in the subject, read the book through at a sitting, and enjoyed it thoroughly.

“The Man With Four Lives.” By W. J. Cowen. (Heinemann.) 7s. 6d.

This is a mystery novel of the Great War—the story of a German who, after being killed three times in succession, reappeared in a different guise to the British officer, who had slain him and finally so obsessed him as to drive him to suicide. The explanation will hardly elude the acute reader, even if it does not occur to him at once; but the story is well and convincingly worked out and the author, an American, is to be congratulated in having portrayed so successfully the inner life of the British army, and the atmosphere of the war in France.

“Mysteries of the Great War.” By H. T. Wilkins. (Allen.) 15s.

Mr. Wilkins' purpose in this book, to use his own words is “to look Mars straight in his ugly face,” and the whole book is written in this turgid windy style, which before long becomes decidedly irritating. This is a pity, for with commendable industry he has sought out many a strange and mysterious occurrence of the war on land, sea and air, and told them with great,

if not always quite convincing detail. His list of pet aversions—kings, generals, staffs, statesmen, pressmen, financiers, and padres are only a few of them—must almost be as long as the list of mysteries with which he deals, and one wonders how far they have consciously or unconsciously biassed his narrative. He is always ready with an explanation of his mysteries—sometimes too ready, as when he gives several contradictory ones in succession, and leaves the reader to choose for himself between them. The book is interesting enough and at times exciting; but one rises from its perusal with the feeling that it might have been much better if the author had curbed his mannerisms, sternly excised most of the references and his multitudinous *bêtes noires*, and remembered the adage about a plain tale simply told.

“The Campaign of the Marne, 1914.” By S. Tyng. (Milford.) 21s.

This is a history of the Marne campaign by an American author, and a very full and good one it is. He has read widely, and writes clearly and at times vividly, and his work must rank as the best single volume account of the operations as a whole that has yet appeared. On the various disputed points of his story his judgments are always reasonable and well argued, though in many cases of course disagreement with them is possible. He has a high opinion of Joffre, whom he regards as the true victor of the Marne, despite the claim of Gallieni to have inspired the generalissimo to strike at the critical moment. He rebuts the accusations of Lanrezac that Joffre failed to appreciate the danger to his left wing in the opening phase of the campaign, and also declares that, so far from Sarraill having saved Verdun, he all but sacrificed it by unintelligent adherence to orders that gave him wide discretion. The German pleas that only the weakmindedness of Bulow at a critical moment robbed them of a decisive victory, and that Hentsch exceeded his powers in ordering the Ist Army to retreat in conformity with its neighbours are shown to be invalid. On all these points and many others Mr. Tyng is well worth reading, though not every-

one will be prepared to accept all his opinions—the reviewer certainly is not.

There is a full array of appendices containing documents, orders of battle, &c., and a lengthy bibliography. The maps are good enough, though some of them face the wrong way, and not all of the places mentioned in the text appear on them; a good general map would have been of service. These are minor blemishes in an otherwise excellent book.

E. W. S.

“Riders of To-morrow.” By Captain J. E. Hance (with a Foreword by Countess Fortescue.) (Country Life, Ltd.) 7s. 6d.

Captain Hance, who is a well known teacher of riding and who runs a School of Equitation at Malvern, has produced a book which should go far to set children on the right lines. His method of instruction is conveyed in the course of a story concerning the riding adventures of a boy and a girl, who would have been taught how to hunt before they had learnt to ride, by an enthusiastic father, had it not been for the arrival of the “fairy godmother,” Uncle Travers (in reality Captain Hance).

It is no uncommon sight to see children hunting, who have never been sufficiently grounded in the elements of riding, but the advent of the Pony Club, if an Uncle Travers is not at hand, should go far to correct this.

Captain Hance’s main theme is that a sound progressive system of instruction is more important than an early start. Great attention must be paid to detail from the very beginning—haphazard methods will only do more harm than good. He stresses that “the correct position in the saddle” is half the battle won.

The book is written in a simple form and forms a first-rate guide to parents in the art of teaching and at the same time it is an amusing, instructive and interesting story for children. There are chapters on buying the correct type of pony, elementary instruction in an improvised riding school, jumping, Pony Club Gymkhanas, Hunter Trials and hunting. Parents should

certainly spend seven and sixpence on this clear exposition of Captain Hance's practical methods of teaching the young how to ride correctly and so avoid troubles and bad habits, which are often not only difficult but also expensive to eradicate.

"Sport." By Lord Dorchester. (Rich & Cowan.) 7s. 6d. net.

This book belongs to the "In My Time Series" and deals with changes and developments that have, since 1884, taken place in hunting and shooting, which are the only sports referred to. It is a pity that Lord Dorchester has excluded his experiences of fishing and stalking, in both of which he excelled.

It has often been stated that fox-hunting is on its last legs, but in spite of difficulties, such as motor cars, wire and shooting syndicates, it still thrives. The author remarks that one of the greatest changes is the influx of women into the hunting field. He is enthusiastic for the Children's Pony Clubs, which should have a flourishing future and be the means of dispelling that lack of hound knowledge which is so noticeable to-day. He concludes his survey by declaring "that while the present generation of hunting folk know and care less about hounds and hunting, yet on the average they are better riders than the average of my generation." Turning to other countries he gives us a vivid and interesting description of a boar hunt in Normandy and of fox hunting in America.

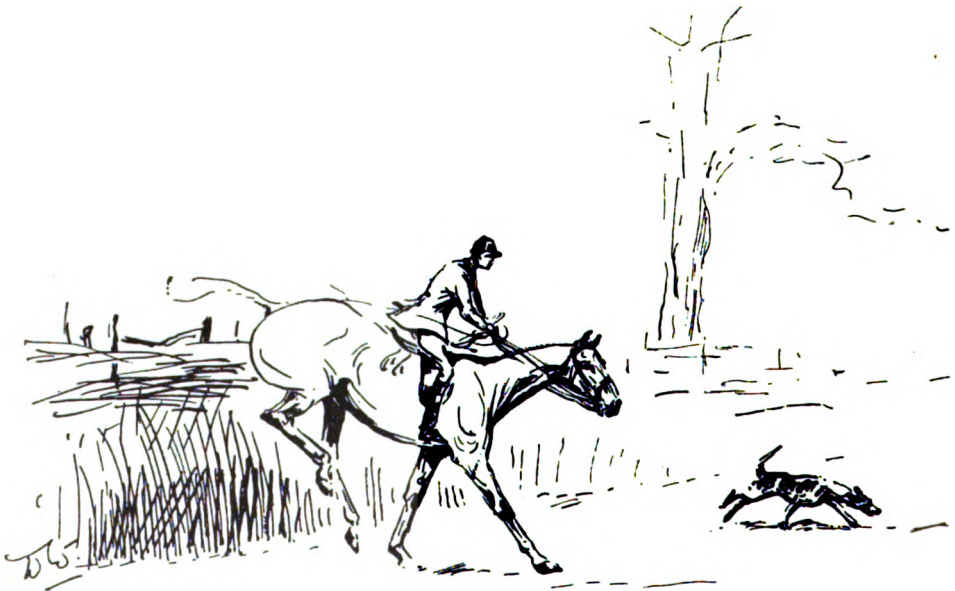
The second half of the book is devoted to shooting, in which his experiences are ably and enthusiastically described with a wealth of detail. His views on "bumper years" and their result on the birds of succeeding years are well worth noting. In spite of improvements to modern sporting guns he does not consider that the pre-war "shooting giants" will be superseded. A most interesting comparison of grouse-driving and partridge-driving leads to the conclusion "that the really good partridge-shot will never be bad at grouse, while there are many extremely good grouse shots who will never be good at partridges." Having had the advantage of shooting woodcock in Macedonia, where extremes of temperature succeed each other rapidly, he has developed the theory of the "woodcock contour," i.e., the

heights where, at certain temperatures, the birds will be found. This theory, however, is inapplicable to most parts of the British Isles.

The concluding chapter describes a pre-war boar-drive in Central Europe, where Lord Dorchester shot the biggest boar of the day only to find that, at the end of the day's sport, it had been counted in the bag of a royal rifle. The excuse, as given by the head keeper, that "Royalty always kills the biggest boar" had to be humbly swallowed.

"Sport" is a thoroughly interesting book, full of personal anecdotes and forms a welcome addition to the library of the sportsman.

O.J.F.F.



**RETURN TO the circulation desk of any
University of California Library
or to the**

**NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station
University of California
Richmond, CA 94804-4698**

**ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
2-month loans may be renewed by calling
(415) 642-6233**

**1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books
to NRLF**

**Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days
prior to due date**

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

LIBRARY USE AUG 22 '88
LIBRARY USE OCT 24 '88

LD 21-100m-7,'39 (402s)

RETURN CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT

TO 202 Main Library

642-3403

LOAN PERIOD 1

2

3

4

5

6

LIBRARY USE

This book is due before closing time on the last date stamped below

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

LIBRARY

1977

REC. CIR. JUL 7 '71

~~Mar 5~~ FEB 17 1932

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY

FORM NO. DD6A, 8m, 477

BERKELEY, CA 94720

